Volume 16, Number 3, September 1990

A55-6 f

International Family Planning Perspectives

A Fertility Puzzle in Sri Lanka

Contraceptive Prevalence in Niger
Islam, Procreation and the Law
Reproductive Intent and Fertility Rates

A Publication of
The Alan Guttmacher Institute

International Family Planning Perspectives

ISSN 0162-2749
Volume 16, Number 3, September 1990

Published quarterly by
The Alan Guttmacher Institute

President: Jeannie I. Rosoff
Director of Publications and Editor-in-Chief:
Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg

Executive Editor: Jeanette H. Johnson
Editor: Michael Klitsch
Associate Editors: Frances A. Althaus,
Martha B. Witwer
Assistant Editors: Lisa Remez, Rebecca M. Turner
Production Editor: Patricia Rind
Copy Editor: Donna Cohen
Senior Production Assistants: Paul Helou,
Georges Louis-Jacques
Production Assistant: Elizabeth LaPorta
Administrative Assistant: Ruth A. Zlotnick

Contributing Editor, Law and
Public Policy: Susan Cohen

Consulting Editor:
Charles Westoff

Editorial Office:
111 Fifth Avenue
New York, N.Y. 10003
United States of America

© 1990 by The Alan Guttmacher Institute, An Independent, Nonprofit Corporation for Research, Policy Analysis and Public Education; all rights, including translation into other languages, reserved under the Universal Copyright Convention, the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works and the International and Pan American Copyright Convention.
Second-class postage paid at New York, N.Y. Postmaster: Send address changes to International Family Planning Perspectives, 111 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10003.

Table of Contents

Page

Update 82

Articles

Reproductive Intentions And Fertility Rates — Charles F. Westoff — 84

Results of a Contraceptive Prevalence Survey in Niamey, Niger — Maria J. Wawer, Lynne Gaffikin, Voahangi Ravao, Halima Maidouka and Kadi Traoré — 90

Fertility and Its Control: The Puzzle Of Sri Lanka — Indra Gajanayake and John Caldwell — 97

The Relationship Between Fertility And Contraceptive Prevalence In Zimbabwe — Donald J. Adamchak and Michael T. Mbizvo — 103

Comment

Islam, Procreation and the Law — Zulie Sachedina — 107

Digest

Few in Burkina Faso Use Contraceptives, but Many Would Consider Doing So 112
Tunisian Fertility Fell, Age at Marriage Increased in the 1980s 113
Children Under Age Five Account for Almost Half of All Mortality in Bolivia 115
Many Births in Egypt Are Unwanted, Despite Wide Use of Modern Methods 116
Women in Singapore Find New Hormonal Implants Preferable to Injectables 118

Letters from Readers 119

Note to Authors 121

UPDATE

Vasectomy Without a Scalpel

A new technique for performing vasectomy without a scalpel proved to be faster and produced fewer complications than standard vasectomy when the two techniques were compared during the annual King's birthday vasectomy festival in Thailand.[1] In the no-scalpel technique, the skin of the scrotum is punctured with a dissecting clamp, the puncture is delicately widened and each vas deferens is ligated through the puncture; thus, the technique involves a much smaller incision than the standard vasectomy technique. On the King's birthday in December 1987, 1,203 vasectomies were performed by 28 physicians as part of the proceedings. In 43 percent of the procedures, physicians used the standard method of vasectomy and in 57 percent physicians used the no-scalpel method. The 16 physicians using the standard method averaged 33 vasectomies each that day, while the 12 who used the no-scalpel method completed an average of 57 operations. Nineteen men reported some sort of complication over the next 12 days; 16 of them had had a standard vasectomy (a complication rate of 3.1 per 100 procedures) and just three had had a no-scalpel vasectomy (0.4 per 100).

1. A. Nirapathpongporn, D. H. Huber and J. N. Krieger, "No-Scalpel Vasectomy at the King's Birthday Vasectomy Festival," *Lancet*, **1**:894, 1990.

Small Thai Families Are Better Off

In rural areas of Thailand, families with 1–2 children appear to have more savings and more modern consumer goods and their children achieve more years of education than is the case with families with four or more children, according to the results of several recent analyses.[1] A comparison of 306 families with 1–2 children and 306 families with four or more children revealed that after family background characteristics had been controlled for as closely as possible, children in the smaller families were more likely to have attained some secondary education (38 percent) than were those from families with four children (31 percent) or with five or more (25 percent). Furthermore, among couples whose land and assets were comparable when they began childbearing, those who had had a small family were more likely than those with a large family to have saved $200 or more (30 percent vs. 20 percent) and were less likely to have no savings (40 percent vs. 60 percent). In addition, even after potentially confounding factors were controlled for, small families were consistently more likely than large families to own a television set, a refrigerator and an electric or gas stove.

1. "Family Size and Well-Being: Evidence from Thailand," *Asia-Pacific Population and Policy*, No. 12, Mar. 1990.

Reducing Mortality in Bangladesh

A community-based maternal and child health and family planning program conducted in Matlab, Bangladesh, since the mid-1970s appears to have reduced child mortality by about one-third and to have produced smaller but statistically significant decreases in neonatal and maternal mortality.[1] Women living in half of Matlab were regularly visited at home by community health workers, who provided family planning services, trained women in the use of oral rehydration therapy, provided immunization services, distributed nutritional supplements for pregnant women and young children, trained traditional birth attendants, offered nutritional advice, treated minor illnesses and referred people who were severely ill to a local clinic. During 1986 and 1987, the mortality rate among children 6–35 months of age was 17.2 deaths per 1,000, 32 percent lower than the rate among comparable children in the half of Matlab not participating in the project. Mortality was especially reduced for respiratory infections (by 53 percent) and diarrheal diseases (by 35 percent). In addition, newborns in the study area were 17 percent less likely to die than were newborns in the comparison area, almost entirely because mortality from neonatal tetanus was 79 percent lower in the study area. Finally, the maternal mortality rate was marginally lower in the study area, mostly because of the significantly lower rates of death from general obstetric causes (42 percent lower) and from the effects of abortion (62 percent lower). The investigators conclude that a few preventive components of the program—measles and tetanus immunization and family planning services—were effective in reducing mortality, but that increasing the availability of curative services would help cut mortality even more.

1. V. Fauveau et al., "The Effect of Maternal and Child Health and Family Planning Services on Mortality: Is Prevention Enough?" *British Medical Journal*, **301**:103, 1990.

Uganda's AIDS Problem

The prevalence of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection in Uganda has reached such a high level, according to a recent review article, that designation of risk groups is largely irrelevant.[1] A national serologic survey conducted in 1988 found that rates of seropositivity for HIV infection ranged from seven percent to 12 percent in rural areas and from eight percent to 30 percent in urban areas. At such high levels of seroprevalence, the article's author notes, members of all societal groups are at risk. Cases of tuberculosis, which is closely associated with AIDS in Africa, have proliferated in Uganda recently, with approximately 30 percent of patients admitted to Kampala's main hospital now diagnosed as having the disease.

In addition, the incidence of cerebral malaria has increased among HIV-positive men and women from areas where malaria is endemic, even though such people usually are at low risk of serious malarial complications because of their acquired immunity. Because of cultural taboos, many Ugandan health workers are hesitant to tell patients of a positive HIV test or an AIDS diagnosis; furthermore, the patients generally do not want to hear their diagnosis. Thus, in Uganda, such Western concepts as informed consent and pretest and posttest counseling are problematic. Moreover, simple drugs that could be used to treat the many manifestations of AIDS are largely unavailable. The reviewer concludes that if African AIDS patients are to be treated compassionately and effectively, "huge infusions of education, money and personnel will be needed."

1. R. W. Goodgame, "AIDS in Uganda—Clinical and Social Features," *New England Journal of Medicine*, **323:**383, 1990.

Copper T's Lifespan Grows

Although the suggested effective life of copper IUDs generally ranges from three to six years, a series of long-term multicenter studies conducted by the World Health Organization (WHO) suggests that such IUDs provide contraceptive protection for even longer.[1] Since 1979, the WHO has organized several randomized comparative trials of IUDs such as the TCu 220C, the TCu 380A, the Multiload 250 and the Nova T at centers in 15 countries around the world, involving more than 8,000 women. The three-year pregnancy rate among users of the TCu 380A (1.0 percent) was only slightly lower than the five-year rate (1.4 percent) and the seven-year rate (1.6 percent). Comparable pregnancy rates among users of the TCu 220C were 3.4 percent, 4.0 percent and 4.9 percent, respectively. When data from a center in China where IUD users had relatively high failure rates were excluded, the seven-year failure rate for users of the TCu 380A was 1.0 percent, while the rate for users of the TCu 220C was 3.6 percent. The WHO plans to extend the study to examine even longer term IUD use. The investigators note that for developing-country providers, there are "advantages in not having to replace copper-bearing IUDs among women who have had no medical reason for removal of the device at the currently recommended or regulatory-authority approved times of three to six years"; among them is reducing the risk of pelvic inflammatory disease (which is at its highest shortly after insertion) and of uterine perforation. "The extremely low pregnancy rates found with the TCu 380A, even after prolonged use," the researchers conclude, "should permit . . . consideration [of the TCu 380A] as a very long-term or even permanent method of fertility regulation and . . . as a nonsurgical alternative to tubal ligation."

1. Task Force on the Safety and Efficacy of Fertility-Regulating Methods, WHO Special Programme of Research, Development and Research Training in Human Reproduction, "The TCu380A, TCu220C, Multiload 250 and Nova T IUDs at 3, 5 and 7 Years of Use—Results from Three Randomized Multicentre Trials," *Contraception*, **42:**141, 1990.

AIDS Is Leading Killer in Abidjan

More than one-third of all adults who die in Abidjan, the capital of Côte d'Ivoire, are infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), according to a study of cadavers conducted in 1988 and 1989.[1] Over a pair of two-month periods, all adult cadavers received by the morgues of Abidjan's two largest hospitals were studied for HIV infection. Overall, 41 percent of males and 32 percent of females had been HIV-positive at the time of death, and 15–16 percent of deaths had been attributed to AIDS. Rates of HIV seropositivity were highest among 30–39-year-olds (53 percent of males and 40 percent of females). Among men, AIDS has become the leading cause of death (15 percent of all deaths), exceeding unintentional injury (14 percent) and tuberculosis (11 percent). Among women, the percentage of annual deaths caused by AIDS (13 percent) is surpassed only by maternal mortality (15 percent) and is followed by cancer (10 percent). The researchers note that "28 percent of all adult female deaths . . . were due to AIDS, pregnancy-related conditions or induced abortions, illustrating how reproductive health dominates the lives and deaths of women in this city."

1. K. M. DeCock et al., "AIDS—The Leading Cause of Adult Death in the West African City of Abidjan, Ivory Coast," *Science*, **249:**793, 1990.

China Is Vast but Not Yet Uniform

Levels of fertility, contraceptive use and socioeconomic development vary substantially among China's 28 provinces, according to a detailed analysis of data from the 1982 census.[1] For example, the total fertility rate ranges from 1.3 lifetime births per woman in Shanghai to almost 4.4 births per woman in Guizhou and averages 2.6 births per woman for the country as a whole. Detailed multivariate analyses reveal that both contraceptive use and socioeconomic development were closely related to fertility decline in the provinces. This suggests, the investigators conclude, that family planning efforts alone were not wholly responsible for the overall fertility decline that has occurred in China, and that greater attention must be paid to improving socioeconomic conditions in less-developed Chinese provinces if the wide fertility differentials are to be reduced. Furthermore, they point out that if other developing countries are to "solve [their] demographic problems, it is imperative to reform and improve their respective socioeconomic structures, rather than simply rely on family planning programs designed by their respective governments."

1. G. Baochang, "On the Effects of Socioeconomic Development and Family Planning on the Decline of Fertility in China," *Chinese Journal of Population*, **1:**125, 1989.

Training Is Vital for FP Providers

Family planning counselors in Ghana who had received special training at five-day workshops were just as likely as untrained counselors to treat younger women and unmarried women disrespectfully, although the former group did provide their clients with more complete information about contraceptive methods than the latter women.[1] Investigators selected 18 women from large towns in the Ashanti area of Ghana and asked them to visit several local clinics seeking family planning services, carefully observe what went on at the clinic and report to the investigators afterwards. These "mystery clients" made 36 clinic visits in all—one each to a clinic with a trained counselor and to a clinic with an untrained counselor. In general, trained counselors presented information on a wider variety of family planning methods and offered more information about individual methods, while untrained counselors sometimes made the client's decision for her rather than allowing her to choose a method herself. However, the older clients generally reported that the counselors were friendly, while the younger (often unmarried) clients said that counselors, whether or not they were trained, were often harsh and dismissive. As a result, local training sessions were subsequently modified to emphasize more strongly the importance of providing value-neutral family planning services.

1. D. Huntington, C. Lettenmaier and I. Obeng-Quaidoo, "User's Perspective of Counseling Training in Ghana: The 'Mystery Client' Trial," *Studies in Family Planning*, **21:**171, 1990.

Reproductive Intentions and Fertility Rates

An examination of data from 134 surveys in 84 countries shows the total fertility rate and the percentage of women who want no more children to be strongly and inversely associated, both in general and among developing nations.

By Charles F. Westoff

Summary

An evaluation of whether the stated desire to terminate childbearing is a valid predictor of fertility, using national data from 134 surveys conducted over the past 10–15 years, reveals a strong relationship between the total fertility rate and the percentage of women who want no more children, even when the comparison is restricted to developing countries only. More than two-thirds of this strong association acts through contraceptive prevalence. Further analyses confirm the relationship between intention and fertility across time for those countries for which there were two sources of data about five years apart (on average). The conclusion reached is that the proportion of women reporting that they want no more children has high predictive validity and is therefore a useful tool for short-term fertility forecasting.

Introduction

In a recent article critical of what he perceives as the unfortunate directions of current population research, Paul Demeny echoed earlier skepticism about the validity of measures of reproductive preferences. Using a finding from the World Fertility Survey (WFS)—that only 8.2 percent of Nigerian women with six children did not want additional children—to illustrate his point, Demeny concluded that "it is obvious that an appropriate change in the way in which the question was asked, or a different set of instructions to the survey takers, could have produced a drastically different figure—say, 30 percent or 55 percent."[1]

Two decades before, Philip Hauser had launched a similar attack on the reliability and validity of the kinds of data typically collected in Knowledge, Attitudes and Practices (KAP) surveys, the usefulness of which had been espoused by both Bernard Berelson and W. Parker Mauldin.[2] For example, questions on ideal family size prompted Hauser's observation that it "is quite possible that many of the responses in KAP surveys are efforts at politeness to meaningless queries or forced responses to questions to which the respondent really has no answer either before or after the question is put."[3]

As was noted in a recent article, "the measurement of reproductive motivation has long been one of the more controversial areas in demography."[4] Despite recurrent criticisms of the "softness" and questionable utility of attitudinal measures, questions on reproductive intentions, ideal family size, the "wantedness" of past births, the intention to practice contraception, and similar topics continue to be included in these surveys.[5]

Twenty-five years have passed since the controversy began; during this period, several hundred new fertility and contraceptive prevalence surveys have been conducted throughout the world, and some limited methodological explorations have been made of the validity and reliability of the key measures included. It seems appropriate to reexamine the question of the validity of measures of reproductive motivation—in this instance, the desire to limit fertility, which is the most commonly used index of the potential market for birth control. Can one take seriously the estimates of the proportions of women who say they want no more children? Or, as Demeny evidently believes, are such estimates so sensitive to slight changes in wording as to be worthless in predicting reproductive behavior?

Other than analyses of the internal consistency of expected associations with age and parity, the methodological work undertaken to answer this question has concentrated largely on whether individual women can, in effect, accurately predict their own future reproductive performance. The general picture that has emerged from several longitudinal studies is that correlations between reproductive preferences and actual fertility at some later time are statistically significant but small in magnitude.[6] That these observed correlations among individual women are higher than those between any other social or economic characteristic and a woman's subsequent fertility is not considered sufficient consolation, considering that some 80–90 percent of the variance remains unaccounted for.

In the aggregate, however, a strong correspondence has been observed between average intentions or family-size preferences and average fertility or the proportions bearing a child over a shorter time period[7] and proportions accepting family planning.[8] Nonetheless, the strikingly high aggregate correspondence seen in these studies typically has been attributed to compensating error (offsetting results of changes in intentions, infecundity and contraceptive failures).

It seems clear, though, that *demographic* interests are best served by aggregate measures and their relationships; the appropriate level of analysis is whether populations on average behave as these populations on average say they are going to behave, not whether individuals' subsequent behavior is consistent with their reported intention.* This point of view results from the argument that in every

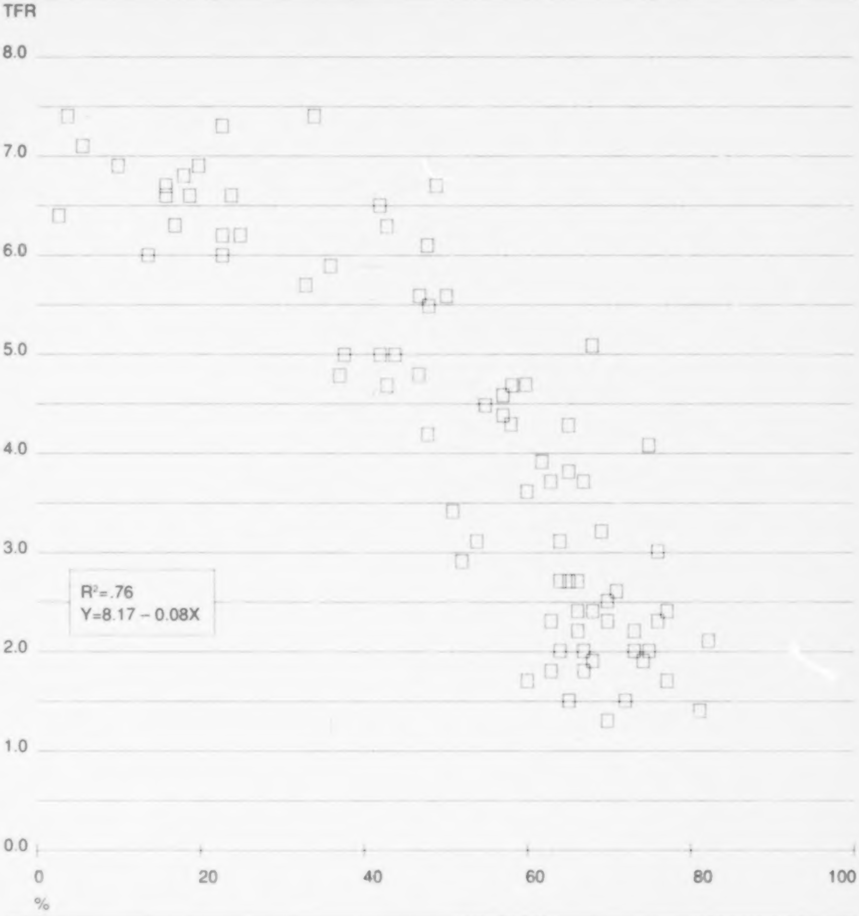
---

Charles F. Westoff is professor of sociology and demographic studies and director of the Office of Population Research at Princeton University. The author would like to thank German Rodriguez, who offered many helpful suggestions at various stages of the analysis; in addition, Noreen Goldman, Lorenzo Moreno, John Bongaarts and, especially, Norman Ryder provided careful readings of the manuscript.

*Some association at the individual level is of course required, to lend confidence to consistency at the aggregate level and to the inference of direct and indirect causal connections. One cannot rely solely on compensating error.

population there is a norm concerning fertility defining a central tendency; around this norm is some variation, which stems both from the existence of subcultural norms (e.g., among different ethnic, class, regional or religious subgroups) and from variations in the degree of deviation from norms that is considered acceptable. Also, differences in fecundability, attitudinal stability and contraceptive efficacy act as "noise" in the system of individual statistical accountability, but they are, on average, dampened out in large populations.

Figure 1. Relationship between total fertility rate (TFR) and percentage of married women who want no more children, 84 countries



Methodology

This article evaluates, at the population level, how well the desire to terminate childbearing relates to fertility. Data (mostly national in scope) have been assembled from 134 surveys conducted in 84 different populations over the past 10–15 years. The main sources of these survey data are the WFS, Contraceptive Prevalence Surveys, the Demographic and Health Surveys (DHS) and various surveys conducted by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control.

That the level of aggregation is national is not ideal, since there are enormous variations nationally in population size and (perhaps more important) in internal diversity. Although disaggregation by ethnic or regional identity, by education or by other characteristics might be preferable (and is feasible), the national-level data will suffice for the present. Indeed, it would be interesting to see how the relationships described in this article, which are based on national populations, would change if the units of observation were regions, urban-rural areas or even separate educational categories.

Estimates of the proportion of women who want no more births and of the total fertility rate (TFR) have many problems. One is that different surveys have used different forms of the basic question on reproductive intentions;[*] another is that there are no measures of the certainty or intensity of such attitudes. Among other problems are that sample sizes vary, resulting in different magnitudes of sampling error, and that survey organizations and their field staff vary in quality. In short, all of these limitations are potential sources of the statistical noise that critics believe is responsible for meaningless answers. Moreover, in some surveys, married women aged 15–49 are questioned, while other surveys are restricted to married women aged 15–44. In many, such as in the WFS, the denominator for reproductive intentions is restricted to fecund, nonpregnant women because women who reported themselves as infecund were not asked the question.

Another problem is the intercountry comparability of the proportion of women who intend to have no more births, which is affected both by the age and parity distributions of the populations and by the factors that determine age at childbearing, such as age at marriage, age at first birth and length of birth intervals. Variations in these parameters influence not only the proportion saying they want no more births but the contraceptive prevalence rate, the TFR itself and the interrelationships between these measures.

Ostensibly, the TFR is afflicted with fewer measurement problems than are reproductive intentions or contraceptive practice. However, estimates of TFRs vary by source, the main sources being the United Nations and the U.S. Bureau of the Census (and the government sources on which they depend) and the surveys themselves (which are the preferred sources, and the main source of fertility data used in this article). Again, the accuracy of these sources varies, as does the base for their estimates: Some are based on women aged 15–49, and others on women 15–44; some are based on single-year estimates, while others are measured over two-year or five-year periods before the survey. In addition, dates of birth are reported more reliably in some countries than in others. All of these factors introduce further noise into the association between the two variables.

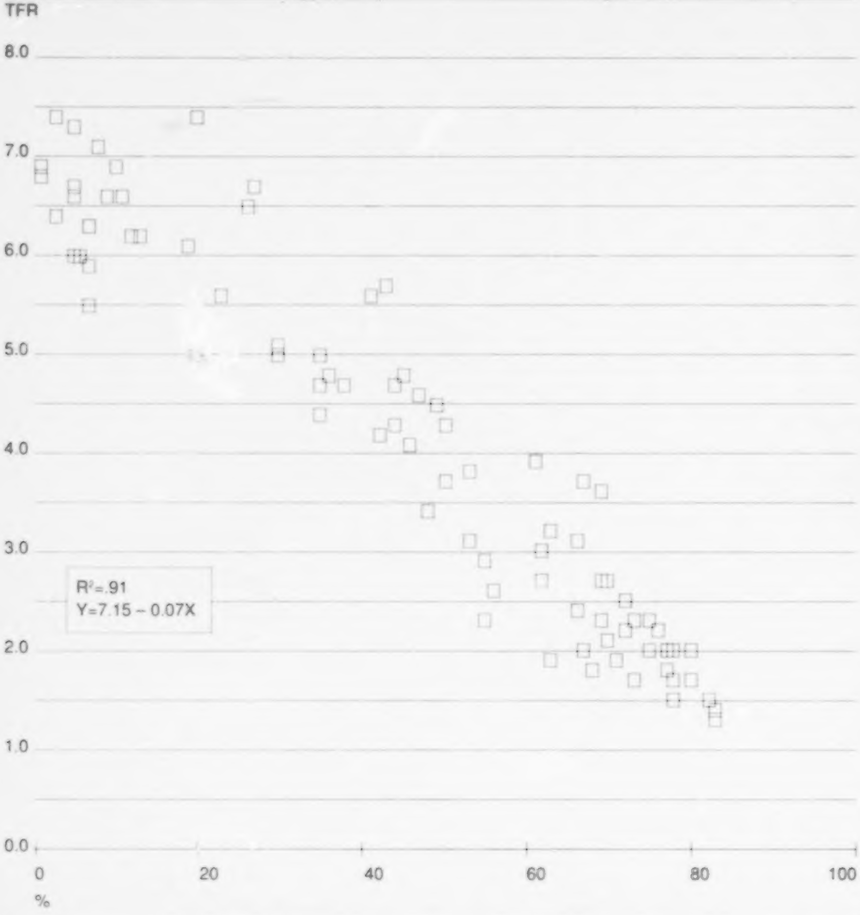
Results

In view of these problems, it is remarkable that when the TFR is related to the percentage of women who want no more children in 84 populations (see Figure 1), there is such a strong inverse association be-

---

[*] The three major fertility surveys used the following questions: "Do you want to have children in the future?" (Contraceptive Prevalence Survey); "Do you want to have another child sometime?" (WFS); "Would you like to have another child or would you prefer not to have any more children?" (DHS).

Figure 2. Relationship between TFR and percentage of married women using a contraceptive method, 84 countries



tween them (an R^2 of .76). Furthermore, the result for developing countries alone (68 of the 84 countries shown in Figure 1) is the same. (When the apparent slight curvilinearity suggested in Figure 1 is tested by squaring the TFR, the association with reproductive intentions increases to .80.)

How should this general association be interpreted? Is it likely that, rather than fertility responding to reproductive intentions, the reverse is true—that stated intentions are just a rationalization of behavior? Or can we conclude that the high degree of association provides evidence of the validity of reported desires to terminate childbearing?

If we think about the actual process that presumably connects these variables, a simple and appealing model is the one in which women who want to terminate fertility practice contraception to achieve that goal. Earlier studies have found a very high correlation between fertility and the contraceptive prevalence rate. The most recent analysis, conducted by W. Parker Mauldin and Sheldon J. Segal for 86 countries, produced an R^2 of .87,[9] which is remarkably high, considering the role played by other, noncontraceptive variables, such as age at marriage, breastfeeding and other determinants of fertility, including contraceptive efficacy. Moreover, many of the same data quality problems described above pertain here, including the restriction of the prevalence measure to currently married women and the time lag between the measurement of current fertility and contraceptive practice.

The Mauldin-Segal analysis is replicated in Figure 2, with updated data for some countries; the result is essentially the same as the association they reported (R^2=.91). Obviously, there must be a strong relationship between measures of reproductive intention and contraceptive prevalence. This is demonstrated in Figure 3, which shows that 78 percent of the variance in contraceptive prevalence is held in common with reproductive intention. This finding is another direct validation of information on intentions.

It would be misleading to argue that the practice of contraception determines reproductive preference rather than the more obvious interpretation that populations in which high proportions of women want no more children are likely to have large proportions of couples practicing fertility control. This is not to deny the likelihood that both phenomena occur more or less simultaneously—namely, that the emergence both of an interest in restricting fertility and of contraceptive practice to implement this motive is part of a complex of social change in which the two factors interact and reinforce each other. Nor is it to deny the possibility that supply can generate demand, that the availability of and knowledge about contraceptives can influence the adoption of contraceptive use or that fertility regulation may increase more rapidly than reported intentions to terminate fertility* (i.e., that changes in behavior may occur more rapidly than changes in the norms about behavior).† The argument is simply that the process is primarily demand-driven: The practice of contraception is largely the result of an interest in controlling fertility.

Aside from considerations of data quality, that part of the variance not held in common between the intention to terminate fertility and contraceptive practice is probably attributable mainly to a combination of the unmet need for family planning (women exposed to the risk of an unwanted birth who are not practicing contraception) and of the practice of contraception for purposes of spacing births. The "unmet need" aspect can be inferred from some of the outlying countries in Figure 3 (although these particular cases

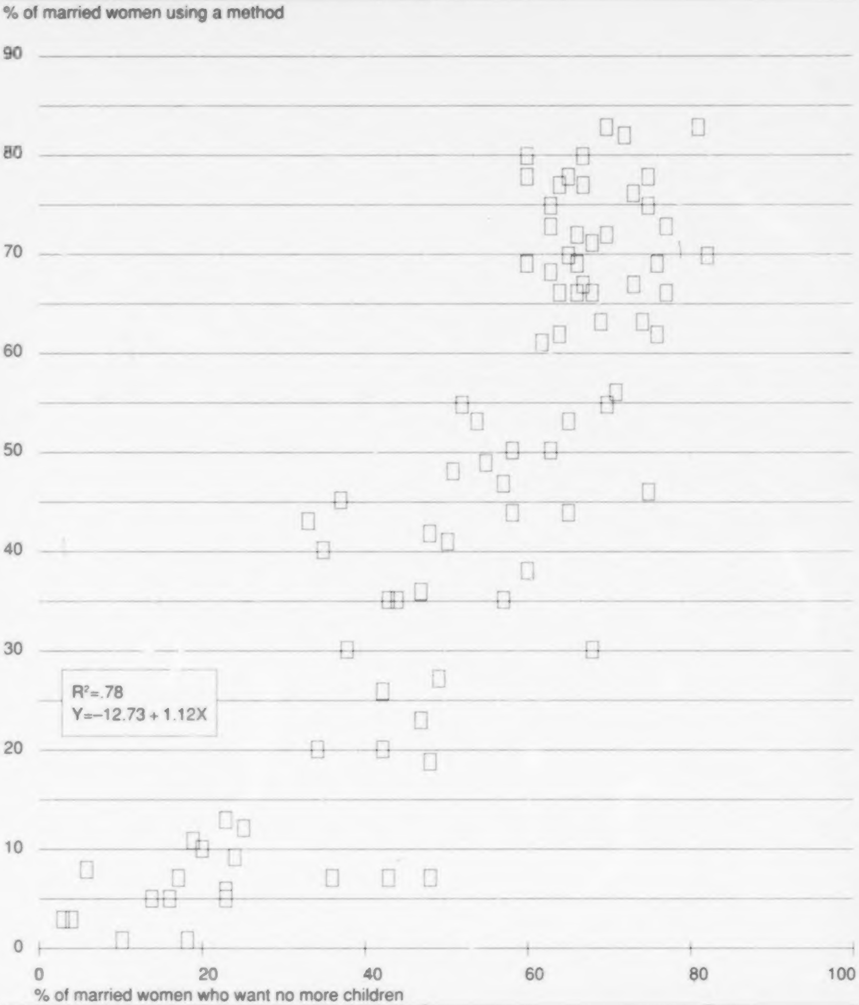
---

*Some evidence for this is presented by R. E. Lightbourne in "Quality of the WFS Fertility Preference Data," a background paper presented at "World Fertility Symposium: 1971/2–1984," London, April 1984. For a methodological discussion of some of these issues, see also R. E. Lightbourne, "Reproductive Preferences and Behaviour," in J. Cleland and C. Scott, *The World Fertility Survey: An Assessment*, Oxford University Press, 1987, pp. 838–861.

†In the United States, such a phenomenon can be clearly detected in attitudes toward childlessness and the proportions remaining childless. As recorded by the Current Population Survey series, the intention to remain childless has increased only slightly, while childlessness itself is increasing rapidly. Apparently, American women continue to believe that they will have children eventually, but have increasingly postponed childbearing to the point where, for one reason or another, the event never occurs. A similar picture can be seen in connection with the one-child family: The norm of the two-child family is still quite strong, so that remaining childless or having only one child is far out in front of any normative change.

cannot be identified in the figure): For example, in Bangladesh, Pakistan, Nepal and, to a lesser extent, Egypt and Kenya, the percentage of women who want no more children "predicts" a contraceptive prevalence rate considerably higher than the survey result. Similar discrepancies occur in Bolivia, Peru and Haiti—and in some European countries as well, probably for similar reasons (along with extensive use of abortion).

Figure 3. Relationship between percentage of married women using a contraceptive method and percentage who want no more children, 85 countries



One statistical check on the possibility that fertility determines preferences is to control for parity and then estimate the relationship between intention and fertility. Circularity is of some concern here, since intention is affected by parity and parity, in turn, is another measure of fertility. There are various ways to evaluate this; the simple procedure adopted here is to examine the relationship for a fixed level of actual fertility—women with exactly two births (counting a current pregnancy as a birth). The results for a subset of 61 countries with the appropriate data are interesting: The proportion of the variance in fertility (90 percent) and in contraceptive prevalence (86 percent) explained by the reproductive intentions of women with two children is even higher than the proportion of the variance explained among women of all parities. This result strengthens the interpretation that the measure of reproductive intentions is a valid predictor of fertility.

Intentions and Change in Fertility

The conclusions derived from the preceding cross-sectional analyses would be further corroborated if it were possible to demonstrate that a relationship between intentions and fertility exists across time. However, the data are considerably less than ideal for this purpose. One approach is to estimate the relationship between reproductive intentions and fertility as measured a few years later for those countries in which at least two surveys were conducted, or for those countries with only one survey but for which fertility rates at a later date can be derived from other sources. The interval of time between the two measurements varies around an average of five years.* The result (Figure 4—page 88) is an R^2 of .71, only slightly lower than that for the cross-section in Figure 1. Yet another refinement is to examine the association between subsequent fertility and the proportion of parity-two women who want no more children (not shown); in this case, the R^2 is .80.

Since there is a high serial correlation between fertility rates at two points close in time, other measures of change were explored, such as the amount or rate of change in the TFR and in the proportion who want no more children, but this effort proved unrewarding: The associations were statistically significant but low. It is probably demanding too much of the data to take such an approach, since the time intervals between fertility and the measurement of reproductive intention are not the same for all of the countries. Moreover, the amount of change in intention is influenced by the initial level.

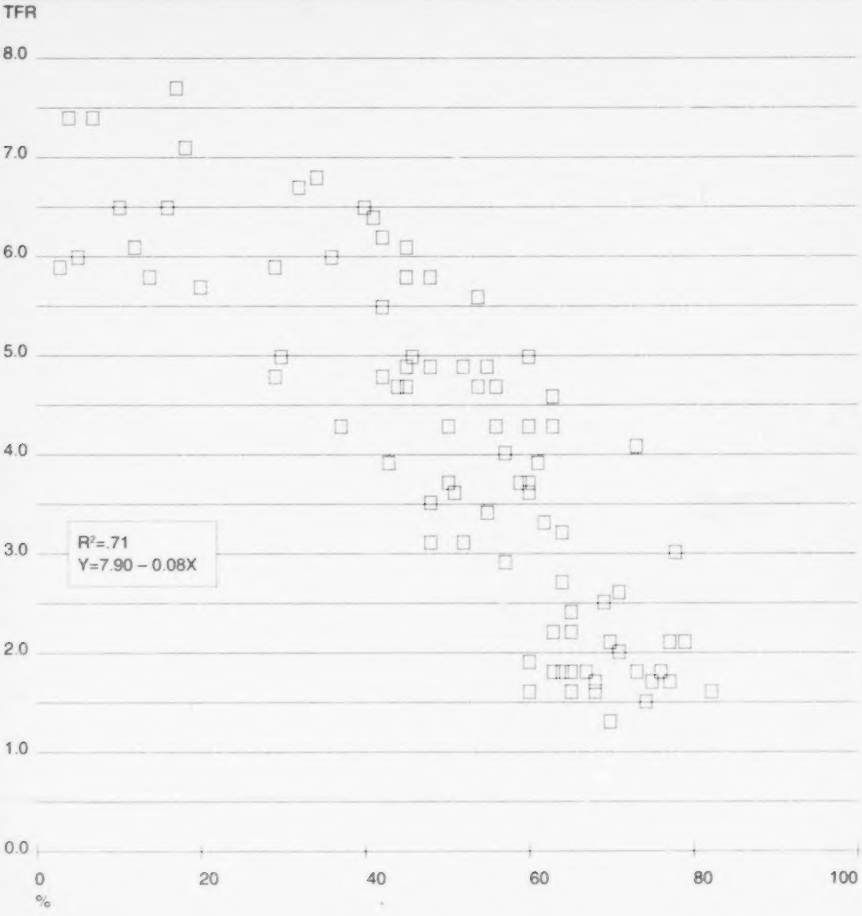
To address the issue of serial correlation, we estimated the partial correlation between reproductive intentions and the subsequent TFR while holding the initial TFR constant in the few years prior to the survey. The result was a drop in the value of the initial correlation, from –.84 to –.29. However, this should be regarded as an extreme test of the contribution of intentions, since the correlation between the TFRs at two points so close in time is very high (.97). For what it is worth, the fertility rate at a given time is clearly the best single predictor of the fertility rate following a short interval; on the other hand, reproductive intentions have some validity for the short-term prediction of fertility, and such a measure may therefore be of interest as a dependent variable in its own right.

As was noted earlier, the effect of reproductive intentions on fertility appears to operate primarily through the intermediate variable of contraceptive practice. The statistical procedure of path analysis can elucidate these connections and can permit quantification of both the direct effect

---

*For some countries, the measure is the average TFR over the five-year period preceding the second survey; for others, the measure is the TFR for a particular year about five years later, on average.

Figure 4. Relationship between percentage of married women who want no more children and subsequent TFR,* 87 countries



*An average of five years after data on reproductive intentions.

of intentions on fertility and the indirect effect mediated through the intervening variable of contraceptive practice. As Figure 5 shows, the total effect of intentions on subsequent fertility is seen in the correlation of –.84, of which 70 percent is mediated through contraceptive prevalence and 30 percent is a direct connection. We can only speculate about the nature of this direct connection; it probably operates mainly through abortion, and perhaps is also influenced by variations in coital frequency and durations of breastfeeding.

Age-Specific Fertility

So far, this analysis has focused on the relationship between the TFR and the overall proportion of women who want no more children. To test the relationship at a more disaggregated level (and with the hope that it might elucidate the underlying structure of this relationship further), the data were divided into five-year age-groups. For each country for which suitable national data were available, a file was constructed to include age-specific estimates of the proportion of married women who wanted no more children, of the proportion of married women who were currently using contraceptives and of fertility itself. Since we are interested in how accurately intentions predict fertility, the analysis is focused on the relationship from one age-category to the next—for example, between the proportion of women 25–29 years of age who wanted no more children and the fertility rate of women 30–34 years of age five years later (typically, averaged over the preceding five years).

The results support the earlier analysis: On a base of 299 observations, 70 percent of the variance in the age-specific fertility rates was explained by the proportion of women who said they wanted no more children. One difficulty with pooling age-specific rates, however, is that we capitalize on the strong connections that age has with both intentions and fertility. If initial age is held constant and the partial correlation between initial intentions and subsequent fertility is estimated, the magnitude drops from –.84 to –.48, and the proportion of the variance explained falls to 23 percent. Of course, age is closely involved in the basic connections between reproductive intentions and fertility.

The more direct way to evaluate how well age-specific fertility rates can be predicted from intentions to terminate childbearing is to examine the association separately for each age-group. This limits the sample size, however, since there are only 47 populations for which the requisite data (age-specific reproductive intentions, with age-specific fertility rates measured in a succeeding period) are readily available, compared with the 84 populations in the preceding analysis with the TFR. With some caution about statistical stability (although all results are statistically significant), we present estimates in Table 1 of the percentage of the variance explained. For purposes of comparison, the predictive value of contraceptive prevalence is shown as well. It is clear that this behavioral variable accounts for considerably more of the variance in fertility than does intention: The estimated R^2 for reproductive intentions and fertility at age 15–19 is particularly low (.09); this is not surprising when we consider that few teenagers report not wanting any more children (an average of 14 percent across the 47 countries). In addition, adolescence is a transitional stage during which young women generally move from single to married status, further obfuscating the relationship. For the opposite reason, the value at the oldest age is also of little interest, because large proportions of older women (an average of 79 percent) want no more children and because their fertility is extremely low.

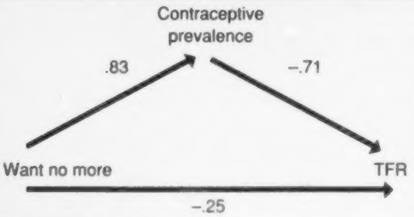
Besides the fact that prevalence, unlike intention, is a measure of behavior, one of the reasons that contraceptive prevalence is a better predictor of fertility among women younger than 40 than the intention to cease childbearing is that contraception is also practiced by many couples younger than 40 who want more children but who want to postpone or space births. This is, of course, reflected in short-term period fertility rates.*

Why is reproductive intention so much better a predictor of the TFR than of age-

---

*Data on spacing intentions are primarily available only among countries participating in the DHS. Thus, it is impossible to estimate their association with subsequent fertility.

Figure 5. Path diagram of the direct and indirect effect of reproductive intentions on TFR



Direct effect = −.25

Indirect effect = −.59

Total effect = −.84

specific fertility rates? One may argue that higher levels of aggregation lead to higher associations because they dampen much of the error variance, but this effect is not so apparent with contraceptive prevalence, which shows a strong association with age-specific fertility rates, as it does with the TFR. As noted above, contraception is also practiced by women who want more children but who want to postpone fertility. Undoubtedly, the covariation of age both with reproductive intentions and with fertility augments the association with the TFR. Perhaps the explanation lies in the notion that the TFR is a surrogate for completed fertility and that wanting no more children is an index of having reached that point. At any given time, women are either trying or not trying to avoid having another child. Such behavior, in the aggregate, is reflected directly in the period TFR, quite aside from whether couples do or do not have any explicit family size in mind. This kind of symmetry is not present so clearly in the connections between wanting or not wanting to terminate childbearing at one age and the fertility rate at the next older age.

Conclusions

Information on reproductive intentions is clearly important to those concerned with trends in fertility. The measurement of these intentions, on the other hand, has long been regarded with skepticism by critics of family planning research. The analysis reported here is an attempt to evaluate the validity of one of the most widely used such measures, the stated intention or preference not to have any more children. Earlier studies of the validity of intentions have concentrated on whether the fertility of individual women is consistent with their earlier stated intentions; the present analysis focuses on the aggregate level and addresses the question of how closely the proportion of women who report wanting no more children relates to the fertility rate.

The results demonstrate a high level of validity, with about three-quarters of the variance in the TFR associated with the percentage of women who reported that they want no more children. The association between the TFR and the contraceptive prevalence rate is higher (R^2 of .91). Contraceptive practice is, of course, the link between intentions and fertility, and the R^2 between intentions and prevalence is .78. The "unexplained" part of this variance (aside from measurement error) is composed of those women who want no more children but who are not practicing contraception (those with an unmet need) and women who are practicing contraception for spacing rather than limiting births.

Intentions and prevalence are current-status estimates, whereas the TFR is assessed for the recent past; thus, there is the possibility that intentions are influenced by fertility. Several further analyses intended to circumvent this problem by examining the relationship between intention and fertility several years later and the associations with intention for women with exactly two children revealed similar high correlations.

The same general type of analysis was also undertaken at a lower level of aggregation, at the level of the age-specific fertility rate. The results are similar, although the predictive values are much lower than for the TFR. The conclusion seems clear: The measurement of reproductive intentions has a high level of aggregate validity, and its inclusion in fertility and contraceptive surveys is amply justified.

Table 1. Percentage of the variance in age-specific fertility rates explained by women's initial reproductive intentions and contraceptive prevalence, by age-group, 47 countries

Age-group	% of variance explained by:	
	Intentions	Prevalence
15–19	9	52
20–24	27	73
25–29	28	66
30–34	47	67
35–39	38	64
40–44	45	47

References

1. P. Demeny, "Social Science and Population Policy," *Population and Development Review,* **14:**479, 1988.

2. B. Berelson, "KAP Studies on Fertility," in B. Berelson et al., eds., *Family Planning and Population Programs,* University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1966; and W. P. Mauldin, "Fertility Studies: Knowledge, Attitude, and Practice," *Studies in Family Planning,* No. 7, June 1965, pp. 1–10.

3. P. M. Hauser, "Family Planning and Population Programs: A Book Review Article," *Demography,* **4:**404; 1967.

4. R. Lightbourne, Jr., "New Approaches for Estimating the Demand for Children," *United Nations Population Bulletin,* No. 23/24, 1987, p. 21.

5. United Nations, "Fertility Preferences: Selected Findings from the World Fertility Survey Data," in United Nations, *Fertility Levels, Patterns and Differentials: A Comparative Analysis Using WFS Data,* New York, 1985; M. M. Kent and A. Larson, *Family Size Preferences: Evidence from the World Fertility Surveys,* Population Reference Bureau, April, 1982; K. A. London et al., "Fertility and Family Planning Surveys: An Update," *Population Reports,* Series M, No. 8, 1985; J. E. Laing, "The Relationship Between Attitudes and Behavior: The Case of Family Planning," in D. J. Bogue, ed., *Further Sociological Contributions to Family Planning Research,* University of Chicago, 1970, pp. 223–357.

6. C. F. Westoff, "The Validity of Birth Intentions: Evidence from U.S. Longitudinal Studies," in G. E. Hendershot and P. J. Placek, *Predicting Fertility,* Lexington Books, Lexington, Mass., 1981, pp. 51–60.

7. Ibid.; G. E. Hendershot and P. J. Placek, "The Validity and Reliability of Birth Expectations," in G. E. Hendershot and P. J. Placek, 1981, pp. 61–74 (see reference 6); R. Freedman, A. I. Hermalin and M. C. Chang, "Do Statements About Family Size Predict Fertility? The Case of Taiwan, 1967–70," *Demography,* **12:**407–416, 1975; G. B. Rodgers, "Fertility and Desired Fertility: Longitudinal Evidence from Thailand," *Population Studies,* **30:**511–526, 1976; A. I. Hermalin et. al., "Do Intentions Predict Fertility? The Experience in Taiwan, 1967–74," *Studies in Family Planning,* **10:**75–94, 1979; R. D. Lee, "Aiming at a Moving Target: Period Fertility and Changing Reproductive Goals," *Population Studies,* **34:**205–226, 1980; and A. Monnier, "Fertility Intentions and Actual Behavior. A Longitudinal Study: 1974, 1976, 1979," *Population: English Selection No. 1,* Vol. 44, Supplement, pp. 237–254, 1989.

8. R. Freedman and J. Y. Takeshita, *Family Planning in Taiwan: Tradition and Change,* Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J., 1969.

9. W. P. Mauldin and S. J. Segal, "Prevalence of Contraceptive Use: Trends and Issues," *Studies in Family Planning,* **19:**335–353, 1988.

Resumen

Una determinación de si el deseo declarado de terminar de tener hijos predice con exactitud la fecundidad, utilizando datos nacionales de 134 encuestas realizadas en los últimos 10–15 años, revela que existe una importante relación entre la tasa global de fecundidad y el porcentaje de mujeres que no desean tener más hijos, aun cuando la comparación se restringe únicamente a los países en vías de desarrollo. Más de dos tercios de esta fuerte asociación se actua a través de la prevalencia de anticonceptivos. Los análisis posteriores confirman la relación entre intención y fecundidad en el transcurso del tiempo en países para los cuales se disponían de dos fuentes de datos separadas por cinco años aproximadamente (en promedio). Se llegó a la conclusión de que la proporción de mujeres que declararon no desear más hijos tiene una validez de predicción muy elevada, siendo, por lo tanto, un instrumento útil en el pronóstico de la fecundidad a corto plazo.

(Continued on page 96)

Results of a Contraceptive Prevalence Survey in Niamey, Niger

General knowledge of contraceptives is high among younger women in Niger, but levels of use remain low. No respondent younger than 20 admitted using modern contraceptives, yet 90 percent said they were interested in family planning.

By Maria J. Wawer, Lynne Gaffikin, Voahangi Ravao,
Halima Maidouka and Kadi Traoré

Summary

A community-based knowledge, attitudes and practices survey was conducted among women in Niamey, Niger, more than two years after the initiation of the first public-sector family planning program in 1984. Prevalence of modern method use was nine percent among women aged 15–49 and 10 percent among those currently in union, which may represent one of the highest levels in the Sahel. Eighty-seven percent of respondents indicated interest in using family planning in the future. More than 75 percent of all women of reproductive age knew of at least one modern method without prompting: Radio and television had reached a larger proportion of the population with family planning information than had the more traditional method of communication, the community meeting. Survey and focus group results indicate a general acceptance of birth spacing as well as a need for more personalized communication by program staff and clarification of Islam's position on family planning.

Maria J. Wawer is assistant clinical professor, Columbia University, School of Public Health, and deputy director of the Operations Research Program, Columbia University Center for Population and Family Health; Lynne Gaffikin is a former consultant to Columbia University for the Niger Operations Research Project; Voahangi Ravao is the former Columbia University resident advisor in Niamey; Halima Maidouka is former director, Centre National de Santé Familiale (CNSF) and is now national director, Direction de la Planification Familiale, Ministère des Affaires Sociales et de la Promotion de la Femme, Niamey, Niger; and Kadi Traoré is former social worker, CNSF, and is now chief, Division de l'Information, Education et Communication, Direction de la Planification Familiale. The study was supported by the Agency for International Development (AID) under Cooperative Agreement DPE-3030-A-00-4049. The authors wish to thank the members of the Research Division, Office of Population, AID; the AID office in Niamey; the Nigerien Ministry of Public Health and Social Affairs; the Nigerien Ministry of Planning; and colleagues at Columbia University, for assistance in project implementation and in review of this document.

Introduction

The francophone Sahelian countries of Africa* have very low rates of modern contraceptive use. The 1986 national Demographic and Health Survey (DHS) in Senegal indicated that 2.6 percent of all women of reproductive age were using a modern method,† rising to 6.7 percent among those currently in union residing in urban areas.[1] For the subgroup of women in union living in the capital city of Dakar, the rate was 7.5 percent.[2] A 1987 survey in Ouagadougou, the capital of Burkina Faso, indicated a rate of modern contraceptive use of 4.9 percent among women of reproductive age currently living in union.[3] Recently, use of modern methods was reported by only 1.2 percent of women in union who live in urban areas in Mali.[4]

Nonuse of modern methods in the Sahel has been attributed to many factors, including the desire for multiple offspring because of the economic value of children and because of relatively high infant and child mortality rates; conservative attitudes about the role of women; lack of family planning information and services; and government policies inimical to contraceptive distribution. The French law of 1920, which prohibited contraceptive promotion and distribution, remained in force into the 1980s in all but one of the Sahelian countries.[5]

Niger, a landlocked country in the Sahelian region, has a total estimated population of 7.2 million, and an annual rate of growth of approximately 3.1 percent,[6] based on preliminary estimates from the 1987 national census. Niger is one of the poorest countries in the world: The World Bank estimates that the annual per capita gross national product in 1986 was U.S. $260.[7] Economic problems in the 1970s and 1980s, engendered by the oil crisis and severe drought, led to the recognition by Nigerien policymakers that the already inadequate social services could not keep pace with the growing population. This realization, and a growing appreciation of the health benefits of adequate childspacing, resulted in both the abrogation of the 1920 law prohibiting contraception and the development of a population policy. In November 1984, the Ministry of Public Health and Social Affairs (MOPHSA) instituted Niger's first official family planning program, in the capital city of Niamey. The program was vigorously supported by the highest levels of government, including the president. Its focus was the Centre National de Santé Familiale (CNSF), located in a residential area, which served as a family planning clinic and as the primary family health training and research center for the country.

Before the inauguration of the CNSF, a small number of private and public-sector physicians and midwives in Niamey had offered limited family planning services, consisting primarily of dispensing oral contraceptives. However, when the CNSF opened, the ministry requested that all other public-sector family planning services be temporarily stopped so that program planning, service delivery and training for family planning providers could be consolidated within the CNSF. Consequently, it became virtually the sole source of public-sector contraceptive supplies in the capital city until 1987, when limited services were decentralized to maternal and child health clinics.

During its first two and a half years of operation (1984–1987), the CNSF offered oral contraceptives, injectables, IUDs and male and female barrier methods. Care was provided by trained midwives, who referred patients needing medical evaluations or procedures (including tubal ligations) to physicians in private and public-sector clinics. CNSF medical and social service staff also provided gynecologic and limited pediatric services, conducted contraceptive service delivery research and participated in family health information, education and communication (IEC) activities.

---

*Burkina Faso, Chad, Mali, Mauritania, Niger and Senegal.

†Modern methods as defined here are oral contraceptives, the IUD, injectables, female barrier methods, condoms and voluntary sterilization.

The IEC involved use of mass media as well as community outreach programs. CNSF staff gave numerous radio, television and newspaper interviews about the benefits of childspacing, and obtained media coverage of all conferences held at the center, at which the presence of national religious and political leaders was highlighted. For example, three months after the inauguration of the CNSF, the MOPHSA cosponsored a national conference on family health, which brought together representatives from relevant ministries and influential religious and secular leaders, along with the press.[8] Discussions and statements supportive of childspacing made by religious and political leaders received wide publicity.[9] Other news stories regarding the CNSF and its services appeared regularly in the media.

For the community outreach component, a team of CNSF and MOPHSA staff conducted a series of IEC meetings in the 50 Niamey neighborhoods in 1986. (Such talks are a traditional means of providing information in Niger communities.) The number of new and return visits to the CNSF increased by 25 percent during the first two months following these meetings, but dropped within three months to its previous level. In 1987, the CNSF conducted 25 additional meetings, with a stronger family planning message, in half the neighborhoods. Local residents were invited to attend these meetings, which were held in the evening and lasted about two hours. Each session was conducted by a trained CNSF staff member who discussed the advantages of family planning and described the various methods. Women were invited to visit the CNSF for family planning advice and contraceptive services; men were advised to encourage their spouses to visit the center or to do so themselves, to receive condoms. Between 200 and 350 adults attended each meeting, for a total of 7,000 participants (of an estimated adult population of 100,000 in the intervention neighborhoods); about twice as many women as men attended.

Before proceeding with additional activities, including decentralization of services, the MOPHSA wished to answer a number of questions: Are community meetings an effective way of reaching the population with family planning messages? What proportion of the Niamey population is receiving family planning services? What characteristics are associated with attendance at the CNSF and with acceptance of family planning?

An operations research project was developed to explore these questions. Two community-based knowledge, attitude and practice (KAP) surveys were conducted (one with men and one with women) and several focus groups were held to assess the effects of the CNSF service delivery and IEC efforts. This article summarizes the results of the female KAP survey and focus groups. Male KAP results are reported elsewhere.[10]

Methods

The female KAP survey was conducted during a six-week period in April and May 1987, following the second round of neighborhood family health information sessions. The 50 neighborhoods of Niamey were stratified into three socioeconomic levels on the basis of housing quality and population density. Twelve neighborhoods were randomly selected by socioeconomic strata, to yield two high-, six middle- and four low-income neighborhoods to be included in the survey.

Subsequently, in each of the 12 neighborhoods, five clusters of 20 households were randomly chosen. Each cluster was visited prior to the survey to conduct a census of eligible women in each household and to randomly identify one eligible respondent per household to be interviewed. Eligibility criteria for respondents were age (15–49 years) and residence in Niamey for at least six months of the previous year. In all, 100 women were selected per neighborhood (20 women in each of the five clusters in each neighborhood), for a projected sample of 1,200 respondents.

A total of 1,149 interviews were successfully completed. Only seven subjects refused to be interviewed; another 44 could not be reached despite three return visits to the household. The KAP data were weighted to adjust for neighborhood size in relation to the overall population of the city, and for the number of eligible women present in each sample household, since the sampling scheme underrepresented women residing in multiple female households (including women in polygynous households). Overall KAP results are reported for the weighted sample. In reporting contraceptive prevalence, selected data are also presented. Each use of such data is noted in the text.

Six focus groups on family planning issues were conducted: two with young unmarried women, two with young mothers (aged 19–24) and two with older mothers (aged 25 and over). These participants were chosen from households identified by community leaders in the various neighborhoods. Group facilitators were trained social workers from the CNSF and the development division of the city of Niamey. The group sessions, each lasting approximately 1.5 hours, were tape recorded, and a trained observer was present to record interactions and take notes.

Background Characteristics

Major social and demographic characteristics of the respondents are shown in Table 1 (page 92). The average age of the women was 27.3 and nearly 98 percent were Muslim (not shown). More than two-thirds of the sample had migrated to Niamey after age 12, and most of the migrants came from rural zones or smaller Nigerien cities. The migration data are compatible with the rapid growth of Niamey: In 1977, its population was approximately 240,000; by 1987, estimates placed the population at 400,000.[11]

Fifty-three percent of the women in the sample had received no formal education and another eight percent had attended Koranic school, which is primarily religious education. Slightly more than 60 percent said they were unable to read a letter or a newspaper. Thirty-nine percent of the respondents reported being involved in income-generating activities. As one measure of socioeconomic level, respondents were questioned about household possessions, specifically radios, televisions, cars, motorcycles or motor scooters. Twenty-nine percent reported having no such equipment, and 34 percent had no radio or television. (The distribution of radios and televisions is shown in Table 1.)

Forty-six percent of the women were currently in monogamous marriages, and 28 percent were married to men who had at least one other wife. Eight percent were in consensual unions, defined as partners residing together continuously or for portions of the year without formal marriage. Just over 10 percent of women younger than 25 were in polygynous unions, a proportion that increased to almost half among those older than 35. The data suggest a trend away from polygynous marriages; however, since the husbands of these younger women also tend to be younger, and may enter into additional

Table 1. Percentage distribution of respondents (N=1,149), by selected characteristics, Niamey, Niger, 1987

Characteristic	%
Age	
15–19	18.7
20–24	22.5
25–29	21.0
30–34	16.9
35–39	11.5
40–44	7.1
45–49	2.0
Unknown	0.3
Residence before age 12	
Niamey	32.1
Other city	10.9
Rural	45.2
Other country	11.7
Unknown	0.1
Education	
None	53.4
Koranic	7.6
Primary	17.3
Secondary/postsec.	21.3
Unknown	0.4
Profession	
Housewife	52.7
Small commerce/agriculture	32.3
Skilled worker	6.7
Student	8.2
Unknown	0.1
Household possessions	
Television and radio	31.4
Television only	2.5
Radio only	31.6
Neither	34.1
Unknown	0.4
Marital status	
Monogamous	45.8
Polygynous	28.1
Consensual union	7.8
Single/widowed divorced/separated	18.3
Ethnic group	
Djerma	46.0
Haoussa/Peuhl	27.3
Other Niger	16.1
Other country	10.6
Total	100.0

marriages in later years, the data are inconclusive. The two major ethnic groups in Niamey, the Djermas and the Haoussas, are generally more urbanized and more highly educated than other groups that have more recently migrated to the city.

Average age at first marriage for the 918 ever-married women in the sample (not including those in consensual unions) was 15.6 years; 15 percent were younger than 13 when they married. Age at first marriage did not vary significantly by ethnic group, but marked differentials were noted by age-group, level of education and whether the respondent was in a monogamous or polygynous marriage (Table 2). Given that slightly more than half of the women younger than 20 had not yet entered into a formal marriage, the average age at first marriage for this cohort will increase with time as more of these young women enter into union.

Fifteen percent of the currently married women in the sample were pregnant at the time of the survey. (Seven percent of the 89 women who were in consensual unions, but not formally married, were also pregnant.) The average number of live births among the 918 ever-married women in the sample was 4.2. Table 2 shows parity for ever-married women by education, marital status and age. Parity was lower among women with higher educational levels and among those in monogamous marriages.

Standardization by age reduced, but did not eliminate, the parity differentials associated with education and type of marriage. Because data on duration of marriage by type of union were not collected, standardization of parity for this variable was not possible. Of the 918 ever-married women, 839 had experienced a live birth. Half of these women had their first birth before age 18. Average age at first live birth increased from 17.6 for women with no schooling or only Koranic education to 18.4 years for women who attended primary school and to 20.3 years for respondents who had received secondary or postsecondary education. Similarly, women in the lowest socioeconomic group (as measured by a lack of all the household possessions listed previously) experienced their first live birth at 17.7 years on average, compared to 19.3 years for women in the highest group (as measured by the possession of a car and at least one other item, such as a radio, television, bicycle or motorcycle.)

On average, each woman had experienced the death of 0.8 children. The average number of infant or child deaths increased from 0.2 among mothers with at least some secondary education (a ratio of one death per 14 live births) to 1.0 among those with no schooling (a ratio of one death per 3.9 live births). Of the 918 ever-married women interviewed, 728 had at least two children. The average interval between the last two births was 35 months, which closely approximates the three-year spacing considered ideal by the majority of respondents. However, 30 percent of women with two or more children reported 24 months or less between their last two births. (When possible, interviewers verified childrens' birth dates by examining civil registration cards.)

Traditional postpartum abstinence in Niamey tends to be relatively short, in keeping with the Islamic practice of 40 days of abstinence. A quarter of respondents had abstained for only one month, and another quarter for two months. Fewer than 10 percent of respondents reported abstaining for more than six months. The average duration of breastfeeding was 19.8 months. Shorter breastfeeding durations were associated with more education and with higher socioeconomic status.

Table 2. Among ever-married respondents (N=918), average age at first marriage* and mean number of children ever born, by selected characteristics

Characteristic	Age at marriage	Number of children
Total	**15.6**	**4.2**
Education		
None	14.5	4.7
Koranic	15.1	4.0
Primary	16.7	3.8
Secondary/postsec.	19.4	2.8
Marital status		
Polygynous	14.8	5.1
Monogamous	16.1	3.9
Age		
<20	14.7	1.4
20–24	15.5	2.2
25–29	16.5	3.6
30–34	15.9	5.1
35–39	15.1	6.2
40–49	14.6	7.7

*Refers to formal marriage.

For the sample as a whole, the average desired number of children was 5.4. Women who did not yet have children indicated on average that they desired 4.4 children (a mode of three children), while those who already had children indicated that an average of 5.8 children (a mode of five) were desired. When women with living children were asked how many additional children they wanted, the mean total desired family size (determined by adding current plus wanted children) was 5.9. Fewer than 15 percent of respondents stated they did not know how many children they desired or gave nonnumeric answers such as "It's God's decision." Eighteen percent of all respondents said they did not want to have any additional children, a proportion that increased to 25 percent among women aged 30–34, and to 56 percent among those aged 35–49. Twenty-one percent of women with 3–5 children desired no more, as did almost 60 percent of women with six or more children.

Contraceptive Knowledge and Use

Knowledge of modern family planning methods in this population was high. Seventy-six percent of all respondents could

Table 3. Percentage of respondents who know of, ever used and currently use contraceptive methods, by method (N=1,149)

Method	Knowledge (prompted)	Ever use	Current use
Modern	**92.7**	**15.4**	**8.5**
Pill	85.5	10.7	3.9
IUD	78.5	3.9	2.2
Tubal ligation	80.5	0.9	0.9
Injectable	70.3	1.7	0.7
Condom	47.3	2.3	0.6
Spermicides	28.3	1.5	0.1
Other	**78.1**	**30.5**	**16.9**
Abstinence*	57.5	17.0	4.4
Rhythm	57.1	20.3	7.6
Withdrawal	31.9	8.8	2.9
Traditional	66.4	9.4	2.0

*Most cases refer to postpartum abstinence.

name at least one modern contraceptive method without prompting, and 93 percent recognized at least one method with prompting (Table 3). Knowledge of all methods was highest in the 30–34 age-group, and lowest among women under 20. However, even in the latter group, upon prompting, 79 percent recognized at least one modern method.

Knowledge of more traditional methods of family planning (withdrawal, abstinence, rhythm based on traditional systems, charms and herbs) was lower than that of most modern methods. The highest levels of knowledge of rhythm and abstinence were found in respondents older than 40. Interviewers were trained to probe for a distinction between knowledge of traditional rhythm methods and modern natural family planning. No evidence was found of usage of modern calendar methods, basal body temperature, or cervical mucus monitoring—findings that are compatible with the absence of a natural family planning program in the city.

The current prevalence rate of modern method use, weighted for neighborhood size and the number of eligible women per household, was 8.5 percent, a high level for a Sahelian city. Another 17 percent of the sample reported current use of other methods (withdrawal, rhythm, abstinence, and traditional charms and herbs). In the original unweighted data, use of modern methods was reported by 11 percent of respondents, and use of traditional methods by 18 percent. Thus, more than a quarter of all respondents report current attempts to control their fertility.

When use of modern methods was examined by subgroups, weighted prevalence was 10 percent for women currently in union and 15 percent for the group of respondents who were currently married, not pregnant and not likely to be practicing postpartum abstinence. Oral contraceptives represented the modern method used most frequently, followed by the IUD. Just under one percent of the sample reported use of tubal ligation; these responses were found to be plausible with respect to age and parity. (Tubal ligation is performed in Niamey for health reasons, although it is possible that some women confused other gynecologic procedures for tubal ligation.) No respondent under the age of 20 reported current use of a modern method, although seven percent of women in this age-group reported use of traditional methods, including withdrawal and rhythm. Current use of modern methods was highest in the 30–34 age-group, at 16 percent. The relationship between age and use of modern methods was highly significant (p<.001, by Chi square).

Current use of modern methods also varied significantly according to number of living children, education, marital status, place of residence until age 12, ethnicity and neighborhood socioeconomic level (Table 4). The proportion of women currently using a modern method increased from one percent among women with no children to 15 percent among those with six or more, and from five percent among women with no formal education to 14 percent among those with primary schooling. Rates of contraceptive use were higher among women in monogamous marriages and among those who had lived in Niamey since childhood (11 percent each) than among comparison groups. Differences among ethnic groups were not large but were statistically significant at p<.05.

The contraceptive prevalence rate (unweighted for neighborhood population size) among the combined population in the four poorest neighborhoods was three percent (range, 0–5 percent), rising to nine percent in the six intermediate neighborhoods (range, 7–12 percent) and to 27 percent in the two neighborhoods of highest socioeconomic level (23 percent and 31 percent, respectively). The rate was five percent among the 338 women who did not have a radio, television, motorcycle or car, and 23 percent among the 229 women who had a car and at least one of the other possessions (not shown).

Just over 15 percent of all respondents reported ever-use of modern methods. Of the 79 women (seven percent of all respondents) who had previously used a modern method but were not currently doing so, approximately half were not using any family planning method and half stated they had switched to a traditional method. (Since modern methods were not readily available prior to the inauguration of the CNSF in late 1984, many of those who discontinued use of these methods had probably started using them within the two and a half years since the program began.) Only one-third of women who had ever used the pill were still using oral contraceptives at the time of the survey. Half of the respondents reporting ever-use of the IUD or injectables were current users of these methods. The lowest rate of continuation was found among ever-users of barrier contraceptives; only one-quarter of this group were still using such methods.

Forty percent of previous users of modern methods indicated they were currently pregnant, had been so recently or desired a child. A quarter reported health concerns,

Table 4. Percentage of women currently using modern methods, by selected characteristics

Characteristic	%	N†
Age**		
15–19	0.0	215
20–24	6.9	258
25–29	10.1	241
30–34	15.8	194
35–39	10.9	132
40–44	9.8	105
Living children**		
None	1.3	295
1–2	8.7	321
3–5	10.5	345
≥6	14.9	186
Education**		
None	5.3	614
Koranic	7.9	87
Primary	13.6	199
Second./postsec.	12.2	245
Marital status**		
Monogamous	11.4	526
Polygynous	7.3	323
Consensual union	9.6	90
Single/div./wid.	2.8	210
Ethnic group*		
Djerma	8.8	532
Haoussa	8.7	314
Other Nigerien	6.5	181
Non-Nigerien	9.7	122
Residence before age 12*		
Niamey	11.4	369
Other city, Niger	8.4	125
Rural Niger	6.3	519
Neighborhood socioeconomic level‡		
High	27.2	180
Medium	9.1	578
Low	2.9	391

*Statistically significant at p<.05, Chi square test.

**Statistically significant at p<.001, Chi square test.

†Total is 1,149; not all add to total because of missing data.

‡Unweighted by population size.

cost and distance to service sites as reasons for discontinuation. Additional reasons, each cited by fewer than five percent, included menopause, spouse's objections or no current sexual relations. Twenty-five percent provided no reason for discontinuation.

The CNSF represented the single most important source of contraceptives in Niamey, cited by 55 percent of current users. Maternal and child health clinics and maternities were cited by 38 percent of current users, a finding that is compatible with the 1987 decentralization of family planning services to selected sites. Ten percent of respondents named other sources, such as clinics in the private sector. (Respondents could name more than one source of methods. A proportion of those naming maternities may have received contraceptives from private maternity centers; the questionnaire did not differentiate private from public-sector sites.) Two-thirds of all respondents had visited a maternal or child health care center at least once during the two years prior to the survey, suggesting that these centers are important sites for providing family planning information and services.

The most common reasons given for not using family planning were recent, current or desired pregnancy (mentioned by 33 percent of nonusers) and lack of information, particularly personalized communication (reported by 25 percent of nonusers). The latter group made statements such as: "No one talked to me about family planning," "I've never thought of it," or "I need more information." Husband's disapproval, religious constraints, fear of health effects and difficulty in acquiring methods were each cited by fewer than five percent of respondents. Only one-third of the women said that they had ever discussed family planning issues with their spouses, and only two percent named their husband as an important source of information on the subject. Eighty-seven percent of respondents indicated an interest in using family planning in the future. The proportion showing such interest was highest among women aged 15–24 (95 percent) and lowest in the 40–49 age-group (44 percent).

One goal of our survey was to assess the effects of the family planning IEC efforts. A total of 132 respondents (12 percent) indicated they had attended a family planning meeting. Within this group, 82 said they had been present at the most recent series of meetings, held in the 25 neighborhoods in 1987. Attendees demonstrated enhanced knowledge of family planning methods: Ninety percent spontaneously cited at least one modern method, compared with 74 percent among other respondents. However, no statistically significant differences in contraceptive prevalence rates were found between those who said they had attended any of the CNSF sessions and those who had not. Almost 12 percent of all respondents said they knew someone who had attended a meeting, and 15 percent said they had received family planning information as a result of the meetings, either directly or from another person who attended.

The importance of community meetings as sources of information for the population as a whole appears relatively limited compared to that of the mass media. When respondents were asked to name sources of family planning information, 63 percent stated they had received information directly from the media, particularly radio and television. (As noted earlier, two-thirds of respondents had a radio, television or both in the home, and almost 40 percent were literate.) Next in importance as sources of information were maternal and child health clinics (30 percent) and friends (29 percent).

Focus Groups

Focus-group participants generally expressed positive attitudes regarding family planning and the use of contraceptive methods. Reasons frequently cited for this were the need for women to rest between pregnancies, the desire for healthy infants and, to a lesser degree, financial considerations. Participants indicated that childspacing had traditionally been practiced in Niger. Women were aware that the duration of breastfeeding was becoming shorter, and that closely spaced births were more common. Although a few women expressed the belief that frequent births were hereditary and thus could not be avoided, or that only God can select the timing and number of children a couple has, more common remarks included:

"A long space between children is good, since everyone wants strong children."

"I know how bad having many babies close together can be for one's health, because I saw my sister suffer in this way."

"I don't want to have too many children, because life these days is very expensive."

"Before, there weren't many babies born close together because women didn't get their periods after the last birth for a year or more. Now, women see their periods very soon and get pregnant quickly."

Comments about family size revealed a desire for fewer children, compared with traditional family norms. Typical comments included:

"I want only three children because life these days is so expensive."

"I don't want to have more children than I could care for myself, if necessary."

"Having more than five children these days is very hard. I wouldn't want to do it."

Although much of the discussion centered on the desired number of children, participants generally expressed more comfort with the idea of childspacing than with the idea of deliberately using contraception to limit family size. Concern was voiced that the Islamic religion sanctioned the former but not the latter, except in cases of severe health risk:

"A long space between births is fine, but you shouldn't decide on the number of kids you have."

"The Koran accepts childspacing . . . and even limiting the number of babies a woman has, but only if her life is in danger."

"If you only have a few children, what will happen if some die?"

Few concerns arose regarding health risks associated with the use of contraceptives. However, the perception that men may be less favorably disposed to family planning was raised, and participants tended to agree that women did not discuss the issue with men very openly:

"Our [male] friends and spouses won't want us to use modern methods, because they think we'll be unfaithful to them."

"Men want lots of kids; it makes them feel strong."

Responsibility for avoiding unwanted pregnancies was generally, but not exclusively, acknowledged to be the woman's:

"It's a girl's responsibility [to take precautions], because once you're with [your boyfriend or partner], you can't refuse."

"There are a few young men who buy . . . methods . . . to avoid having children."

Discussion

Survey data indicate that the female population of Niamey has many characteristics common to African societies: early age at first marriage and childbirth, high parity and a relatively long breastfeeding period. In addition, the proportions of respondents aged 25–39, of those having received any formal education, of those in polygynous union, and of those reporting the presence of a radio or television in the household were similar to the proportions determined in separate community surveys conducted in Niamey and other capital cities of the Sahel.[12] Socioeconomic status, as measured by educational levels and household possessions, was low for the majority of respondents.

Nonetheless, the prevalence rate of use of modern contraceptive methods—nine percent among respondents aged 15–49 and 10 percent among those currently in union—was higher than expected, and may be the highest of any Sahelian capital city. The rate is encouraging because the official government family planning program (the predominant source of contraceptives reported by respondents) was initiated only two and a half years prior to the survey. Dakar is the only other city in the region with a documented contraceptive prevalence rate in a similar range (eight percent among women in union),[13] and the family health program in Senegal officially started almost a decade earlier.

Sociodemographic variables associated with greater use were similar to those found in other African surveys: higher educational and socioeconomic levels, higher parity and age between 30 and 35 years. Urbanization, as measured by residence in Niamey before age 12, was also associated with greater use. Even among women with no education, however, more than 70 percent could spontaneously name at least one modern method and more than 50 percent indicated an interest in using contraceptives in the future. Average desired family size among women who do not yet have children is just over four, a substantial decline from African levels in the past.

Results from this cross-sectional survey cannot be used to determine the rapidity of family planning acceptance in Niamey. However, the limited data available suggest that the new government family planning program is contributing to a trend of increased contraceptive use. In a 1985 study, 166 randomly selected first-time clients of the CNSF were interviewed a few months after the center opened; although 80 percent of the new clients sought family planning services, only 6.6 percent were already using a modern method.[14] Given that women who attend clinics are more likely to use contraceptives, this prevalence rate probably represents an overestimate of general contraceptive prevalence in 1985.

Two subsequent community-based IEC surveys were conducted in Niamey in 1988 and 1989. Women in both surveys were selected through random household cluster sampling similar to that used in the study described in this article. In the 1988 survey, 13 percent of the respondents of reproductive age reported current use of modern methods, as did 22 percent of those in the 1989 survey.[15] Respondents in the 1988 survey were questioned about their source of contraception, and more than 90 percent reported receiving their services from the public sector (as did more than 80 percent of current users in our survey). Since the samples were not all drawn in the same manner and the respondents may not be directly comparable, these data cannot be interpreted as definitive proof of an increase in prevalence between 1985 and 1989. However, the results suggest a trend and may indicate that, where service delivery exists and is well publicized, an increase in contraceptive prevalence levels can occur fairly rapidly even in a conservative African Moslem city such as Niamey.

Our survey results show that community meetings—a time-honored Nigerien method of providing information to the general public—may not serve a particularly efficient role in promoting family planning. The proportion of persons reached directly by the meetings is low compared with those who receive their information from the mass media, as two-thirds of respondents reported that they did. Survey data also show relatively high levels of spontaneous and prompted knowledge of at least one modern method (76 percent and 93 percent, respectively). In such a setting, additional gains in knowledge can be marginal at best. Contraceptive prevalence levels among community meeting attendees (the group most directly touched by the program) were not statistically different from the overall survey population.

The KAP survey and focus-group data suggest several options for program improvement. Among these are interventions that may decrease contraceptive dropout rates. Although it is recognized that 40 percent or more of those who discontinued use may have done so because they had been using a method for spacing and stopped to have another child (a percentage similar to that found in the 1988 IEC survey), another 25 percent appear to have discontinued use because of health concerns, cost or distance to service sites. The family planning program in Niger could address these barriers by providing personalized counseling, with greater emphasis on selection of the most approriate method for each client, follow-up of those who discontinue use and wider dissemination of the information that contraceptives are provided free of charge to women with financial need.

Outreach and education targeting underserved groups, including younger women and residents of lower socioeconomic neighborhoods, represents another potential opportunity to increase contraceptive use. Outreach directed toward young women is particularly important, given the early age at first marriage and first birth among women in Niger. General knowledge of contraceptives and interest in family planning appear to be high among younger women, but levels of use remain very low. For example, no respondents younger than 20 admitted use of modern family planning methods, and only five percent in this age-group used withdrawal or rhythm, but 90 percent said they were interested in family planning. The KAP finding that nonusers indicated they "had never thought of family planning" suggests that more personalized messages stressing the relevance of family planning for individuals with various life situations and needs may be effective in future IEC efforts.

Focus-group data reinforce the impression that the concept of childspacing and contraceptive use are well accepted and that family size norms are declining. Clarification of Islam's position on family planning (which includes the concept that each family should not have more children than it can care for)[16] may require further emphasis through the mass media and other avenues of communication, such as religious gatherings. In the male KAP survey conducted in Niamey in the same time period as the women's study reported here, the majority of the men interviewed expressed positive attitudes towards family planning. Such data need to be publicized to encourage more discussion of these issues between partners.

Assisted by survey findings (particularly the widespread acceptance of the idea of family planning), the recently created Direction de la Planification Familiale in the Ministère des Affaires Sociales et de la Promotion de la Femme, the CNSF and the MOPHSA are strengthening two aspects of their program. With donor support, they are developing IEC strategies that concentrate on the mass media approach and include nondidactic forms of delivering messages, such as dramas. In addition, they have decentralized service delivery points within Niamey and expanded services outside the city, and are exploring the possibility of training paramedical staff in family planning.

References

1. S. Ndiaye, I. Sarr and M. Ayad, "Enquête Démographique et de Santé au Sénégal 1986," Ministère de l'Economie et des Finances, Direction de la Statistique,

Division des Enquêtes et de la Démographie, Dakar, Sénégal, and Institute for Resource Development, Columbia, Md., 1988.

2. M. Ayad, Institute for Resource Development, personal communication, 1990.

3. T. McGinn et al., "Family Planning in Burkina Faso: Results of a Survey," *Studies in Family Planning*, **20**:6, Part 1, 1989, p. 325.

4. B. Traoré, M. K. Konaté and C. Stanton, "Enquête Démographique et de Santé au Mali, 1987," Centre d'Etude et de Recherche sur la Population pour le Développement, Institut du Sahel, Bamako, Mali, and Institute for Resource Development, Columbia, Md., 1989.

5. J. C. Caldwell and P. Caldwell, "Is the Asian Family Planning Program Model Suited to Africa?" *Studies in Family Planning*, **19**:19, 1988; O. Frank, "The Demand for Fertility Control in Africa," *Studies in Family Planning*, **18**:181, 1987; and S. L. Isaacs, "Reproductive Rights 1983: An International Survey," *Columbia Human Rights Law Review*, **14**:311, and file materials, Columbia University, Center for Population and Family Health, Development Law and Policy Program, New York, 1988.

6. S. Wright, personal communication, 1988.

7. World Bank, *World Development Report 1988*, Oxford University Press, New York, 1988.

8. Ministère de la Santé Publique et des Affaires Sociales and Columbia University Center for Population and Family Health, "Rapport Final: Séminaire National sur la Santé Familiale et le Développement," Niamey, Niger, Jan. 18–25, 1985.

9. Boubacar Zibo, "Santé familiale et développement: L'impact de l'Islam, le voile de l'obscurantisme leve," *Le Sahel, Quotidien Nigérien d'Information*, p. 3153, Jan. 24, 1985.

10. Ministère de la Santé Publique et des Affaires Sociales, "Rapport de l'Enquête en Santé Familiale Connaissances, Attitudes, Pratiques (CAP): Projet de Recherche Opérationnelle, Ville de Niamey, Niger," Centre National de Santé Familiale, Niamey, and Columbia University Center for Population and Family Health, New York, 1987.

11. O. Frank, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 5).

12. S. Ndiaye, I. Sarr and M. Ayad, op. cit. (see reference 1); M. Ayad, 1990, op. cit. (see reference 2); T. McGinn et al., 1989, op. cit. (see reference 3); B Traoré, M. K. Konaté and C. Stanton, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 4); and D. Huntington, "Baseline Survey: Women's Knowledge, Attitudes and Practices, Interim Report," Niger Family Health Project AF-NIR-01, Center for Communication Programs, Population Communication Services, Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Md., Nov. 1988.

13. M. Ayad, 1990, op. cit. (see reference 2).

14. Family Health International, "Survey of Vanguard Clients at the National Family Health Center, Niamey, Niger: Final Report," Research Triangle Park, N.C., Apr. 1987, p. 65.

15. D. Huntington, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 12); and Directorate of Family Health and Population Communication Services, "Household Survey of Family Planning Knowledge, Attitudes and Practices, Niamey, Maradi and Zinder, 1989," Ministère de la Santé Publique et des Affaires Sociales, Niamey, Niger, and Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Md., 1989.

16. D. Huntington, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 12).

Resumen

Se realizó una encuesta comunitaria acerca de los conocimientos, actitudes y costumbres entre las mujeres de Niamey, Niger, más de dos años después de iniciarse el primer programa de planifación de la familia organizado por el sector público en 1984. La prevalencia de uso de métodos modernos fue del nueve por ciento entre las mujeres de 15 a 49 años de edad, y del 10 por ciento entre las actualmente en unión, lo cual posiblemente represente la tasa más elevada del Sahel. El ochenta y siete por ciento de las encuestadas expresaron interés en el uso de planifación familiar en el futuro. Más del 75 por ciento de todas las mujeres en edad reproductiva conocían espontáneamente por lo menos un método moderno: la radio y la televisión habían informado sobre la planficación familiar a una mayor proporción de la población que el método de comunicación tradicional, la reunión comunitaria. Los resultados de la encuesta y de los grupos focales indican que hay aceptación general del expaciamiento de los nacimientos, apuntando asimismo que hay necesidad de comunicación más personal por parte del personal del programa y de una aclaración de la posición de Islam con respecto a la planficación familiar.

Résumé

Una enquête sur les connaissances, les attitudes et les pratiques a été effectuée auprès de communautés de femmes à Niamey, Niger, plus de deux ans après la mise sur pied du premier programme de planification familiale dans le secteur public en 1984. Les méthodes modernes étaient utilisées par neuf pour cent des femmes âgées de 15 à 49 ans, et 10 pour cent des femmes alors unies à un homme, ce qui peut représenter l'un des niveaux de prévalence les plus élevés au Sahel. Quatre-vingt-sept pour cent des femmes interrogées ont manifesté un intérêt à utiliser des méthodes contraceptives dans l'avenir. Plus de 75 pour cent de toutes les femmes en âge de procréer connaissaient au moins une méthode moderne sans qu'une description ne leur en soit donnée. La radio et la télévision avaient véhiculé des informations de planification familiale à une proportion plus importante de la population que ne l'avait fait la réunion communautaire, méthode de communication plus traditionnelle. Les résultats de l'enquête et des groupes de discussion indiquent une acceptation générale de l'espacement des naissances ainsi que la nécessité de communications plus personnalisées par le personnel du programme, et le besoin de clarification de la position islamique sur la planification familiale.

Reproductive Intentions and Fertility Rates

(Continued from page 89)

Résumé

Une évaluation du désir exprimé de ne plus avoir d'enfants en tant qu'indicateur valable de fécondité, sur la base de données nationales relevées dans le cadre de 134 études menées au cours de ces 10–15 dernières années, révèle un rapport étroit entre l'indice synthétique de fécondité et le pourcentage des femmes qui ne veulent plus d'enfants, et ce même lorsque la comparaison est limitée aux seuls pays en voie de développement. Ce rapport a pour intermédiaire, pour plus des deux tiers, la prévalence contraceptive. D'autres analyses confirment le rapport entre intention et fécondité à travers le temps dans les pays pour lesquels on dispose de deux sources de données obtenues à environ cinq ans d'intervalle (en moyenne). La conclusion en est tirée que la proportion des femmes qui déclarent ne plus vouloir d'enfants présente une valeur de prédiction élevée et peut donc servir de moyen utile aux prévisions de fécondité à court terme.

Fertility and Its Control: The Puzzle of Sri Lanka

> **"[A 1985 survey] helped establish what researchers had long believed were the main reasons leading to underestimation of contraceptive practice: Modern methods could be discussed openly, but traditional methods . . . could not."**

By Indra Gajanayake and John Caldwell

Summary

The contraceptive prevalence rate reported in the 1975 Sri Lanka Fertility Survey (SLFS) was lower than would have been expected, given the country's low level of fertility. Later surveys, such as the 1982 Contraceptive Prevalence Survey and the 1987 Demographic and Health Survey, showed a pattern of rising prevalence with little change in the level of fertility. In all three surveys, fertility levels predicted from reported contraceptive prevalence were higher than the actual rates, but the disparity was largest for 1975.

The apparent discrepancy between fertility and contraceptive use was caused by substantial underreporting of use of traditional methods in the SLFS and more accurate reporting in successive surveys. Contraceptive use was understated primarily because traditional methods were not perceived by their users as methods of fertility control. Former users of traditional methods, who later accepted sterilization and were less reluctant to report its use, account for much of the observed increase in contraceptive prevalence between surveys.

Introduction

Despite its low per-capita income, Sri Lanka has managed to lower its fertility level remarkably over the last four decades. The crude birthrate, which was 38.1 births per 1,000 women aged 15–44 in the period 1951–1955, had fallen to 28.7 by 1971–1974 and to 28.0 by 1981. In the 1950s and 1960s, the major factors in the declining birthrate were rising age at marriage and declining proportions of women marrying;[1] in the 1970s, marital fertility control had a greater impact.[2]

The decline in Sri Lanka's marital fertility may well be explained by social and demographic factors such as high female literacy and mass education,[3] decreasing infant mortality,[4] high social welfare standards and high aspirations in the face of a worsening economy and increasing unemployment.[5] However, perhaps because substantial resources have been channeled into family planning activities, greater acceptance of modern contraceptives through increased availability and publicity has been considered the major agent of change. In fact, there is evidence that the decline in marital fertility had started before the national family planning program could have had much impact[6] and that fertility control in Sri Lanka probably began with traditional methods. The use of such methods appears to have been widespread enough and effective enough that it kept abortion at fairly low levels.[7]

Fertility levels in Sri Lanka probably never far exceeded those found in the 1970s in many developing countries with fairly high levels of contraceptive use. Indeed, the highest five-year average birthrate on record in Sri Lanka is 40.4 for the period 1926–1930; the highest recorded average number of children ever born, for the period 1895–1925, does not exceed six.[8] In the mid-1970s, in Thailand, the Philippines, the Republic of Korea and Malaysia, countries in which 33–36 percent of currently married women were using a contraceptive method, completed fertility for women aged 40–49 ranged from five to seven children.[9] In 1953, when Sri Lanka had only three family planning clinics,* the number of children ever born did not exceed six and the crude birthrate was 39.[10] Even allowing for underregistration of births (estimated by the Department of Census and Statistics at 12 percent in 1953), Sri Lanka's fertility was low compared with that of the other Asian countries. By 1975, according to the Sri Lanka Fertility Survey (SLFS), contraceptive prevalence among currently married women was 32 percent; nevertheless, the number of children ever born had declined only slightly.[11]

In 1975, the majority of contraceptive users were relying on either traditional methods (41 percent) or sterilization (31 percent). By 1982, when the Contraceptive Prevalence Survey (CPS) was conducted, reported prevalence had increased to 55 percent, with traditional methods accounting for 44 percent of current use and sterilization accounting for 38 percent.[12] The 1987 Demographic and Health Survey (DHS) found that prevalence of contraceptive use in the survey area,† which excluded the northern and eastern provinces, had risen to 62 percent of currently married women;[13] results for the same area from the two earlier surveys yielded contraceptive prevalence rates of 34 percent in 1975 and 58 percent in 1982.[14] DHS data also show that the method mix had changed in favor of modern methods, with

---

Indra Gajanayake is a visiting fellow at the National Centre for Epidemiology and Population Health, The Australian National University, Canberra, and John Caldwell is director of the Health Transition Centre at that institution. The Sri Lankan Demographic Change Project used the resources of the Demographic Training and Research Unit of the University of Colombo, Sri Lanka, and the Department of Demography, Research School of Social Sciences, The Australian National University. The latter institution provided the project's major funding, which was supplemented by grants from The Rockefeller Foundation and The Ford Foundation. Ros Goodwin, Wendy Cosford and Yaw Ofosu assisted with research. This article was adapted from a presentation at the general conference of the International Union for the Scientific Study of Population, Sept. 20–27, 1989, in New Delhi, India.

*Organized family planning activities were already taking place on a small scale with Swedish aid when the government program became active in 1968. The Family Planning Association distributed foam tablets, diaphragms and spermicidal jelly and provided instruction on how to determine the infertile part of the menstrual cycle. (See: A. Kinch, "A Preliminary Report from the Sweden-Ceylon Family Planning Pilot Project," in C. V. Kiser, ed., *Research in Family Planning*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J.,1962.)

†The northern and eastern provinces were excluded from the DHS because of civil disturbances. They contain approximately 14 percent of the population, mostly Sri Lankan Tamils and Moors whose reported use of contraceptives is below that of the Sinhalese.

Table 1. Contraceptive prevalence, effectiveness and combined effect, by year, Sri Lanka, 1975, 1982, 1987

Year	Prevalence (%)	Effectiveness	Combined effect (%)
1975 (SLFS)	32	0.84	27
1982 (CPS)	55	0.83	45
1987 (DHS)*	62	0.87	54

*The 1987 estimates exclude the northern and eastern provinces. Comparable estimates of prevalence, effectiveness and combined effect for 1975 are 34, 0.84 and 28, and for 1982 are 58, 0.84 and 48.

Sources: **Prevalence**—estimated from age-specific data. For 1975: I. Gajanayake, 1983, see reference 16; for 1982: see reference 12; and for 1987: see reference 13. **Effectiveness**—estimated from standard rates: pill 0.90, IUD 0.95, sterilization 1.0 and all other methods 0.70 (see: J. Bongaarts and R. Potter, 1983, reference 21); and from method-specific use rates: for 1975, see J. Bongaarts and R. Potter, 1983, reference 21; for 1982, see reference 12; for 1987 and for comparable areas in 1975 and 1982, see reference 13.

sterilization accounting for 48 percent and traditional methods for 34 percent of current use. Comparable figures in 1975 were 31 percent and 41 percent, respectively, and in 1982, 38 percent and 45 percent.

The change in fertility rates during this period, however, is not consistent with the rise in reported contraceptive use. Three-year average birthrates centered on 1975 and 1981 are 27.6 and 27.7, respectively; the corresponding provisional figure for 1986 is 22.8.[15] The total fertility rates (TFRs) for 1975 and 1981, estimated as three-year averages, are 3.8 and 3.4 lifetime births per woman, respectively, close to the respective single-year estimates of 3.5 and 3.7. The five-year average (1982–1987) of 2.8, generated from the DHS, is probably too low, because the survey excluded areas with above-average fertility.

According to the SLFS, women living on Sri Lanka's tea estates had lower levels of fertility than women in the rest of the country, despite lower contraceptive prevalence.[16] They had a TFR of 3.2 and a total marital fertility rate (TMFR) of 5.6 for the period 1970–1975, compared with 3.8 and 7.1, respectively, for the entire population; however, the proportion of currently married estate women who reported using a contraceptive method was only 18 percent, compared with 32 percent among all currently married Sri Lankan women. Indeed, one author has shown not only that the marital fertility of estate women was lower than that of Sri Lankan women overall, but that it was being controlled before the government program had begun.[17]

Between 1975 and 1987, reported current use of a contraceptive method rose from 18 percent to 51 percent on the estates; this was almost entirely the result of an increase in the prevalence of sterilization from 10 percent to 40 percent. Sterilization was the most widely reported contraceptive method in both the SLFS (55 percent of users) and the DHS (78 percent).[18] In contrast, the combined share of traditional methods decreased from 21 to 14 percent. Nevertheless, hardly any change occurred in the level of fertility on the estates: The TFR for the period 1970–1975 was 3.2, and 12 years later, for the period 1982–1987, it was 3.4.[19]

In this article, we discuss why there has been an apparent discrepancy between contraceptive prevalence and levels of fertility in Sri Lanka in the last decade and a half; we argue that the underreporting of traditional methods in the earlier surveys is the major reason. In doing so, we draw on the vital registration system, census data, findings from the SLFS (1975), the CPS (1982), the Sri Lanka Contraceptive Survey (1985), the DHS (1987) and the Sri Lanka Demographic Change Project (1985, 1987) and focus on the tea estates and on the country as a whole.

Contraceptive Use and Fertility

Between 1975 and 1982, reported contraceptive prevalence in Sri Lanka increased by about 70 percent, but overall use effectiveness (calculated as the sum of the products of the standard effectiveness of each specific method and the proportion of users relying on that method) changed little. Between 1982 and 1987, both prevalence and effectiveness showed a modest increase (Table 1). The stagnation in contraceptive effectiveness between the SLFS and the CPS was largely the combined result of a sharp drop in IUD use, which reduced the method share from 14 percent to five percent, and a sharp rise in sterilization.[20] Together, changes in prevalence and effectiveness should have had an impact on fertility that was greater between 1975 and 1982 than in the five years that followed, largely because of the rise in prevalence.

A high degree of correlation exists between contraceptive prevalence and fertility levels. This correlation has been expressed in terms of linear regression equations in which the crude birthrate, the TFR or the TMFR is the fertility variable.[21] To avoid any confounding effects of population structure on fertility, we use only the equations that link prevalence to the TFR or the TMFR[22] to predict fertility levels from given prevalence levels.* We then compare these with the fertility levels estimated from birth history data in the surveys (Table 2).

The fertility levels estimated from reported contraceptive prevalence are close to the direct estimates except for the 1974 TFR. Given the levels of contraceptive use reported in the SLFS, we would expect a TFR of at least five children per woman, but the average was actually only four. This suggests that either the observed TFR or the reported contraceptive prevalence is too low. The TFR is not underestimated because it is close to 3.76 and 3.81, the estimates derived from the registration system for 1974 and 1975, respectively, and to other indirect estimates.† We conclude that contraceptive prevalence must have been substantially underreported in the SLFS.

We also note that the other predicted TFRs tend to be higher than the observed rates, although the differences are small, suggesting that any underestimation in the two later surveys would have been less than in the SLFS. Moreover, between 1974 and 1981, the actual TFR hardly changed—it even showed signs of an increase—while the reported prevalence levels predicted that the TFR would decline by about 1.5 children. This suggests that the higher prevalence reported in the CPS includes some actual contraceptive use that was not reported in the SLFS. The marital fertility levels estimated by employing John Bongaarts's equation are close to, but tend to be higher than, the direct estimates from birth histories. Again, the two estimates for 1974 differ most. Ian Diamond's equation, which has more predictive power, also suggested, for 1975, a TMFR that was higher than the actual, while predicting lower values for the two later years.‡ Again, the actual fertility decline between

---

*One set of estimates is derived from the equation TFR $= 7.3 - 6.4U$, ($R^2=.72$), and TMFR $= 9.5 - 4.8U$, ($R^2=.40$), where U is the given prevalence level. The TFR and the TMFR are based on data from 22 developing countries, excluding Korea. (See: J. Bongaarts and R. G. Potter, 1983, reference 21.) A second estimate of the TMFR uses the equation TMFR $= 10.2 - .082U$, ($R^2=.71$), based on developing and developed countries, for its better predictive power. (See: I. Diamond, 1989, reference 22.)

†The estimate based on the Own-Children Method for the period 1971–1975 is 3.9, and the estimate based on Rele's method for the period 1972–1976 is 3.7. (See: ESCAP, 1986, reference 2.)

‡The variant of the equation (see: I. Diamond, 1989, reference 22) that includes SLFS data from developed, as well as developing, countries explains 66 percent of the variation in TFR and yields the following marginally lower predicted values: 5.04, 3.43 and 2.94 for 1974, 1981 and 1987, respectively. The predicted TMFR values are also lower in comparison with Bongaarts's estimates. The most likely reason for this discrepancy is the inclusion in Diamond's regression of developed countries, where contraceptives are mostly modern and use-effectiveness is higher than in developing countries.

Table 2. Predicted and actual TFR and TMFR, 1974, 1981, 1987

Year	TFR		TMFR		
	Predicted	Actual	Predicted from Bongaarts's equation	Diamond's equation	Actual
1974 (SLFS)*	5.24	3.53	7.95	7.58	7.02
1981 (CPS)*	3.77	3.71	6.83	5.69	6.34
1987 (DHS)	3.32	2.82†	6.50	5.12	6.29‡

*The "actual" values are direct estimates calculated from birth histories reported in specific surveys. Thus, the year of the calculation may precede the year of the survey.

†Based on DHS data for the five years preceding the survey.

‡Based on the above rates and the average of proportions married in 1981 and 1987.

Sources: **TFR and 1987 TMFR**—see reference 13. **TMFR for 1974 and 1981**—see reference 20.

successive surveys remains less than what reported prevalence would predict. Relatively low reporting of contraceptive use in the SLFS, compared with the CPS, could explain why the change in fertility actually observed between the respective years is small when compared with the expected change. This reasoning probably also explains why the actual change in the TMFR between the 1982 CPS and the 1987 DHS is smaller than the predicted change.

On the basis of the same empirical relationships, we estimate prevalence levels compatible with fertility rates derived from the vital registration system (Table 3—page 100). Comparison of these estimates with those reported in Table 1 for the surveys indicates that at the time of the SLFS, prevalence might have been higher by 10–20 percentage points, and that underreporting was most serious in the SLFS. The differential reporting of contraceptive use in successive surveys certainly is partly responsible for discrepancies between fertility and contraceptive use trends.

In addition, the level of use of traditional contraceptive methods detected in the Family Health Impact Surveys of 1971 and 1977—24 percent and 22 percent, respectively—is close to the CPS estimate of 25 percent, but is significantly higher than the SLFS figure of 13 percent, suggesting that the SLFS had markedly underestimated use of fertility control.[23] This further strengthens the argument that the apparent increase in contraceptive prevalence between 1975 and 1982 is an overstatement caused by more serious underestimation of contraceptive prevalence in the SLFS than in the CPS. Apart from errors associated with the estimation procedures, this underestimation would make the actual fertility levels seem low in comparison with those predicted by reported contraceptive prevalence.

On the estates, average use-effectiveness rose from 16 percent to 48 percent between the SLFS and the DHS as large numbers of women who had used IUDs or traditional methods switched to sterilization. If estate fertility was predicted on the basis of reported contraceptive use, employing Bongaarts's equation, the TFRs for 1975 and 1987 would have been 6.1 and 4.0, respectively; the TMFR for 1975 would have been 8.6. These figures are well above the actual rates, which were 3.2, 3.4 and 5.6, respectively. All the predicted values are too high, but the disparity is greatest for 1975. Defying the predicted lowering of the TFR by two children in the period between the SLFS and the DHS, actual fertility showed no signs of decline. These observations are strikingly similar to those made about the entire country. In the estates, too, reported use of contraceptive methods was clearly too low, and there was more underreporting in the SLFS than in the DHS.

Unreported Fertility Control

The above review poses another, more general, question: Do conventional demographic surveys capture all behavior that controls marital fertility? There is ample evidence that, in Sri Lanka, reports of contraceptive use in such surveys understate actual fertility control behavior.[24] Further, estimates based on birth history data (Table 3) yield fairly high expected prevalence levels of 31–35 percent for 1963 and 39–50 percent for 1971; the latter is, in fact, higher than the SLFS estimate of 32 percent. That fertility control is not a recent phenomenon is also evident from our survey of women aged 60 or older: Of the 55 respondents who gave a firm answer to the question "Did people try to prevent births in former times?" 73 percent said yes.* All except two mentioned rhythm, abstinence, withdrawal or some combination of these methods.

Analysis of the fertility of never-users of contraceptive methods, based on SLFS data, revealed that their fertility was under voluntary control.[25] Never-users' fertility showed a significant departure from the standard natural fertility schedule formulated by Ansley Coale and James Trussell,[26] yielding "m" values† of 0.96 and 0.66, respectively, for the most recent periods of 12 months and 60 months prior to the survey. The marital fertility of never-users in the 35–39 age-group varied between 25 percent and 37 percent of the level in the 20–24 age-group, very low in comparison both with 68 percent for the Coale and Trussell natural fertility population and with 56 percent for the average of five non-European populations of never-users compiled by Henri Leridon.[27] The duration ratios (DRATs),[28] which would be more or less constant with age in the absence of fertility control, showed a monotonic decline from 0.79 for the 20–24 age-group to 0.60 for the 40–44 age-group,[29] and, with a mean of 0.67, indicated that their level of fertility was little more than two-thirds of the natural standard.‡ On average, never-users aged 45 or more had ceased childbearing by age 35 (about two years earlier than ever-users), at a marriage duration of 16.5 years.[30] Estate never-users also demonstrated a high degree of fertility control (m=0.83) and a low level of natural fertility (DRAT=0.59) equivalent to about 60 percent of what could be expected according to the age pattern of natural fertility embodied in the Coale and Trussell standard.[31] The Sri Lankan data could have been affected by infecundity and subfecundity, but this would also be true of all the data used for comparison, and there is no evidence of fecundity being markedly lower in Sri Lanka.

The Sri Lanka Contraceptive Survey

Recognizing the need for more reliable measurement of contraceptive use, particularly that of traditional methods, the Department of Census and Statistics, in collaboration with Family Health International, launched a two-phase study called the Sri Lanka Contraceptive Survey

---

*This finding is from the first stage (1985) of the Sri Lankan Demographic Change Project, carried out jointly by the Department of Demography, Research School of Social Sciences, Australian National University, and the Demographic Training and Research Unit, University of Colombo, Sri Lanka.

†The index "m" describes the degree of fertility control in a population by comparing the fertility of women aged 30–39 with that of Hutterite women, the archetypal population with no control of fertility.

‡DRAT is a measure of fertility relative to the Coale and Trussell standard natural fertility schedule. DRAT is computed for each individual as the ratio of the actual lifetime parity to the expected. If the data are free of gross omissions and fertility follows the age pattern of the standard, DRAT will be more or less constant, whatever the age. Its decline indicates departure from the natural regime of fertility.

Table 3. TFRs and TMFRs from birth registration data and corresponding estimates of contraceptive prevalence rates (CPR), by year

Year	TFR*	CPR†	TMFR	CPR‡
1963	5.04	35	8.02	31
1971	4.12	50	7.62	39
1975	3.78	55	7.28§	46
1981	3.40	61	6.91	53

*Three-year averages centered on the stated year.

†Based on the equation TFR=7.3–6.4u; see reference 20.

‡Based on the equation TMFR=9.5–4.8u (see reference 20). Estimates of prevalence derived from Diamond's equation are lower, viz. 26, 31, 36 and 40 percent for 1963, 1971, 1975 and 1981, respectively (see reference 22).

§Based on the average age-specific fertility rates for 1974, 1975 and 1976, and the average age-specific proportions married in 1971 and 1981.

Sources: **Registration data**—1963, 1971 and 1981, see ESCAP, 1986, reference 2; 1975, see Department of Registrar-General, *Bulletin of Vital Statistics 1980*, Ministry of Home Affairs, Colombo, 1983.

(SLCS). The first phase, which was carried out in 1984, used an anthropological approach, including local residence, participant observation and discussion. Those findings were used to determine the best survey technique for the second phase, a follow-up survey of a sample of 1982 CPS respondents and a subsample of their husbands. In the second phase, special modules were used to obtain detailed information on each method used to delay or prevent pregnancy.[32]

The exploratory study collected data from 200 respondents living in urban, rural and estate areas, and from the major ethnic groups. Analysis of these data showed that reported current method use in 1984 was more than one-third higher than the CPS estimate of 55 percent in 1982.[33] It also found that the respondents' descriptions of rhythm use tended to be so confusing that the interviewers believed the method was not used or was used so poorly that it was ineffective; therefore, they discounted the responses. But although the majority of the respondents underestimated the safe period, they used the method effectively. Likewise, those who used withdrawal only during the unsafe periods were likely to be omitted. This study helped establish what researchers had long believed was the main reason leading to underestimation of contraceptive practice: Modern methods could be discussed openly, but traditional methods, which were described as practices or habits rather than as methods of contraception, could not.[34]

The insights gained in the exploratory study were used in collecting data from 2,310 respondents (1,733 women and a subsample of 577 husbands) in the second phase of the SLCS; as a result, reported ever-use increased by more than two-thirds, from 51 percent without probing to 86 percent with probing.[35] The gain in ever-use resulting from probing was much greater for traditional methods (from 26 percent to 63 percent) than for modern methods (from 42 percent to 53 percent). The SLCS also found a higher overall current-use rate than had the CPS three years earlier (69 percent vs. 62 percent), but the level of traditional method use was the same (Table 4). If traditional methods had continued unchanged, the techniques used in the SLCS would have yielded a higher prevalence for these methods than the CPS had found in 1982, and traditional method share among current users would not have shown a decline from 42 percent to 38 percent.

Nearly all the reported increase in prevalence is for sterilization; because respondents find it easier to discuss modern methods, this probably is an actual increase in use rather than an increase in reporting of use resulting from the new approach adopted in the SLCS. This suggests that as users of traditional methods switch to sterilization, they may be less reluctant to report use of the new method, and that reported contraceptive prevalence may therefore become more accurate. The SLCS revealed that among women whose penultimate method was traditional, 45 percent switched to sterilization, and of those who started fertility control with a traditional method, 29 percent eventually switched to sterilization.[36]

Sterilization drew its acceptors, in almost equal proportions, from women who used traditional methods and from those who used no method.[37] Two factors that may have contributed to this pattern are that respondents in the CPS had been married for at least three years and that the majority had already achieved their desired family size.[38] However, it is logical to extrapolate this pattern of method switching to the period between 1975 and 1982, given that increased payment to sterilization acceptors was followed by large increases in its acceptance. Subsequent acceptance of sterilization by women relying on traditional methods (who may not have been counted as users in the SLFS) would explain, at least partly, the higher contraceptive prevalence reported in the 1982 CPS, which employed survey techniques very similar to those used in the 1975 SLFS.

However, the questionnaires used in the two surveys were not identical. The CPS did not list abstinence as a separate method and recorded its use only if respondents mentioned it spontaneously, whereas the SLFS included it in the list of methods to be read to the respondent; nevertheless, the CPS reported higher use of abstinence. Another difference was that the CPS defined "current use" as use at any time during the month prior to the survey, while the SLFS defined it as use at the time of the survey.[39] It is possible that this variation accounts for part of the increase in reported contraceptive prevalence between 1975 and 1982.

Understatement of traditional method use is also attributed to multiple method use.[40] There is evidence that multiple method use existed at the time of the CPS, with two-thirds of those who used multiple methods relying on rhythm and withdrawal, and most of the others using a traditional method along with condoms.[41] Multiple use probably existed at the time of the SLFS as well. Neither the CPS nor the SLFS was designed to report multiple use; they merely recorded the methods each respondent found easiest to report. Both surveys, therefore, must have underestimated traditional method use.

According to the 1985 SLCS, 9.4 percent of currently married women were using more than one method, with 7.4 percent relying on rhythm with withdrawal, and two percent using one of those methods along with condoms.[42] Given that women are more reticent about traditional methods and "male methods" such as condoms,[43] much of this use could have been missed in surveys such as the SLFS and the CPS, which collected data only from women. Data on current contraception, collected from the husbands in the 1985 SLCS, showed that women tend to report lower use than do their husbands, particularly of the condom, rhythm, withdrawal and abstinence.[44] The overall contraceptive prevalence reported by the wives was 71 percent; prevalence reported by the husbands was 81 percent. On this basis alone, the SLFS and the CPS may have underestimated contraceptive prevalence by at least 10 percentage points.

Clearly, the research instruments and interview techniques employed in the SLFS and the CPS could have resulted in substantial underestimation of contraceptive prevalence, mainly by undercounting users of traditional methods. Therefore, underestimation in the CPS was probably lower than in the SLFS to the extent that women who used traditional methods in 1975 had accepted sterilization by 1982. Widening the reference period to one

Table 4. Percentage contraceptive prevalence and method share, by survey, according to method

Survey	Total	Pill	IUD	Condom	Other modern	Sterilization	Traditional*
1982 CPS							
Prevalence	54.9	2.6	2.5	3.2	1.4	20.7	24.5
Method share	100.0	4.7	5.0	5.7	1.7	38.0	45.0
1982 CPS†							
Prevalence	61.6	2.8	3.5	3.2	1.2	24.8	26.1
Method share	100.0	4.5	5.7	5.2	1.9	40.3	42.4
1985 SLCS							
Prevalence	69.0	2.8	2.6	1.9	1.1	34.5	26.1
Method share	100.0	4.0	3.8	2.7	1.6	50.0	37.8
1987 DHS							
Prevalence	61.7	4.1	2.1	1.9	2.8	29.8	21.1
Method share	100.0	6.6	3.4	3.1	4.4	48.3	34.2

*Rhythm, withdrawal and abstinence practiced singly or in combination, including the 2.0 percent who were using condoms along with rhythm or withdrawal.

†Figures are for currently married women 18–49 who were married for three years or more and living in the 17 districts covered in the 1985 SLCS.

Sources: For 1982 and 1985, see reference 14; for 1987, see reference 13.

month preceding the survey also probably helped to increase reported prevalence in the CPS. The contraceptive use rate calculated from the CPS data, therefore, is less of an underestimate than the corresponding SLFS figure; nevertheless, neither survey captured contraceptive use in full.

The second phase of the 1985 SLCS collected no data on the estate population; therefore, we cannot assess the effect of survey techniques and instruments on reported contraceptive use. Still, some insights were gained during the exploratory phase of the survey. There were many more refusals to discuss contraceptive use on the estates than elsewhere, and much of the respondents' reticence was caused by the inability of the interviewers to gain their confidence.[45] Another reason for the underreporting of contraceptive behavior may be that marital sexual abstinence appeared to be far more common on the estates than elsewhere, and was regarded as normal.[46] Respondents also reported a higher level of abstinence during a famine that preceded the 1975 SLFS and was particularly acute on the estates.

The Demographic Change Project

More intensive field methods were employed in the 1985 Sri Lanka Demographic Change Project in an effort to solve the problem of the understatement of fertility control. In our research in eight lowland sites in the southwest, we first asked couples one question about fertility control. Later in the interview, we questioned the couples about the use of a method, after a repetitive series of questions and explanations that established beyond doubt that they completely understood what the method was. This also ensured that by the time the interviewers asked about method use, they had no hesitation about employing the necessary language and descriptions. When we used this two-stage procedure, the proportion stating that they had used fertility control rose from 55 percent in the first stage to 65 percent after the more exhaustive questions. The greatest increases were in the use of rhythm and abstinence. The extent to which these methods were used became clearer when we probed into each interbirth interval that exceeded three years. Of 1,391 such intervals, 26 percent were achieved with rhythm only, seven percent with withdrawal (alone or in combination with other traditional methods) and 13 percent with abstinence or infrequent sex; another 16 percent were reported to have occurred naturally.* It is quite possible that the last category includes unreported low coital frequency.

In our 1987 research on a tea estate, the use of the two-stage procedure resulted in an increase in reported prevalence from 55 percent to 61 percent. The increase was probably smaller than in 1985 because the interviewers were more experienced and asked the first round of questions with greater precision, clarity and self-confidence. The result was unusually detailed information about the estate population's methods of fertility control. This shed light on the relatively low levels of fertility among the estate women, who had low levels of education but very high levels of employment. The main methods of fertility control previously underreported were infrequent sexual relations, with a prevalence of almost 30 percent for women over 30, and permanent sexual abstinence, rising from 15 percent among women aged 30–39 to 35 percent among those aged 40–49.

A few respondents explained these high levels by saying that the wife's income as a tea plucker—half the family income and often the sole grounds on which the family's housing was retained—would be endangered if she were to be physically weakened by too many pregnancies. Of 125 interbirth intervals exceeding three years, 16 percent were reportedly achieved by infrequent sex, six percent by sexual abstinence and eight percent by rhythm, while 34 percent were said to be natural. Breastfeeding was said to account for only one percent and abortion for less than one percent. Christopher Langford argued that estate women probably used induced abortion to control their fertility,[47] but our research on estate women provided strong evidence that their low fertility resulted from low coital frequency and sexual abstinence, not from induced abortion.

Conclusion

In 1975, the actual fertility level in Sri Lanka was well below what might have been predicted on the basis of contraceptive prevalence, because of substantial underreporting of contraceptive use, particularly of traditional methods, in the SLFS. In the late 1970s and early 1980s, large numbers of traditional method users accepted sterilization as the result of extensive promotional campaigns and the inducement of compensation payments. Among them were many who, through reluctance to discuss private aspects of their lives, had given the impression that they were doing nothing to space or limit their families; however, they had no difficulty in reporting acceptance of sterilization. As a result, contraceptive use rates increased substantially, but fertility did not decrease accordingly.

The discrepancy between Sri Lanka's low fertility and its low reported level of fertility control can be accounted for by a high level of rhythm, some withdrawal and substantial practice of abstinence and low coital frequency. The high prevalence of rhythm in Sri Lanka appears to be unusual in Asia. In many ways, Sri Lanka resembles continental Europe in its fertility transition, probably because of the level of income and the level of education already attained there between World War I and World War II. During that period, nuns taught the rhythm method to Sri Lanka's Roman Catholic minority. The use of rhythm spread to the Buddhist and Tamil communities, where its emphasis on self-restraint appealed to fundamental Buddhist and Hindu concepts.

---

*Breastfeeding, spousal separation and abortion account for 2.9, 5.6 and 1.0 percent of the intervals, respectively.

Because this community, unlike southern Europe, had no religious proscriptions against withdrawal, there was a growing tendency to employ that method during the unsafe segment of the menstrual cycle. It was this double use that seems to have caused confusion when interviewers sought information about methods of contraception. Fertility trends in the 1930s suggested fertility control, but the possibility was discounted because contraceptive sales were minimal.[48] The explanation was undoubtedly the use of rhythm and withdrawal, because information about those methods was accessible to the literate through family planning manuals in the indigenous languages of both the major communities. Rhythm appears to have been used remarkably effectively, largely because it was not understood that there was a safe period early in the monthly cycle; therefore, all sexual relations were compressed into a few very safe days at the end of the cycle.[49]

The estate women, with their low reported levels of contraceptive use and low fertility, posed an even greater problem to demographers. It is clear now that the low fertility of these women was largely the result not of induced abortion, but of low coital frequency and terminal sexual abstinence, used because of an unusual economic situation.

The case of Sri Lanka underscores the importance of sensitivity to cultural norms and their use in the field, as well as the need to adapt survey techniques and instruments to suit the particular field study in question.

References

1. C. H. S. Jayewardene and S. Selvaratnam, "Fertility Levels and Trends in Ceylon," in International Union for the Scientific Study of Population (IUSSP), *Contributed Papers, Sydney Conference, Australia*, Australian National University Press, Canberra, 1967; N. H. Wright, "Recent Fertility Change in Ceylon and Prospects for the National Family Planning Program," *Demography*, **5**:745, 1968; and D. F. Fernando, "Recent Fertility Decline in Ceylon," *Population Studies*, **26**:445, 1972.

2. I. Alam and J. G. Cleland, "Illustrative Analysis: Recent Fertility Trends in Sri Lanka," *WFS Scientific Report*, No. 25, 1981; I. Gajanayake, "Recent Regional Fertility Patterns in Sri Lanka," *Sri Lanka Journal of Social Science*, **7**:1, 1984; and United Nations, Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific (ESCAP), *Levels and Trends of Fertility in Sri Lanka: A District Level Analysis*, Asian Population Studies Series, No. 62-F, 1986.

3. J. C. Caldwell, "Mass Education as a Determinant of the Timing of Fertility Decline," *Population and Development Review*, **6**:225, 1980.

4. S. H. Preston, ed., *The Effects of Infant and Child Mortality on Fertility*, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

5. I. Alam and J. G. Cleland, 1981, op. cit. (see reference 2).

6. Ibid.

7. J. C. Caldwell et al., "The Role of Traditional Fertility Regulation in Sri Lanka," *Studies in Family Planning*, **18**:1, 1987.

8. ESCAP, *Population of Sri Lanka*, Bangkok, 1976.

9. Department of International Economic and Social Affairs, *Fertility Behaviour in the Context of Development: Evidence from the World Fertility Survey*, United Nations, New York, 1987.

10. ESCAP, 1976, op. cit. (see reference 8).

11. Department of Census and Statistics, *First Report, World Fertility Survey, Sri Lanka, 1975*, Ministry of Plan Implementation, Colombo, 1978.

12. ——, *Sri Lanka Contraceptive Prevalence Survey Report, 1982*, Ministry of Plan Implementation, Colombo, 1983.

13. ——, *Demographic and Health Survey 1987*, Ministry of Plan Implementation, Colombo, 1988.

14. ——, *Contraceptive Survey 1985*, Ministry of Plan Implementation, Colombo, 1988.

15. Ministry of Health, *Annual Health Bulletin Sri Lanka 1987*, Colombo, 1987.

16. I. Alam and J. G. Cleland, 1981, op. cit. (see reference 2); C. M. Langford, "The Fertility of Tamil Estate Workers in Sri Lanka," *WFS Scientific Report*, No. 31, 1982; and I. Gajanayake, "Breastfeeding, Contraception and Marital Fertility in Sri Lanka," *University of Colombo Review*, **1**:44, 1983.

17. C. M. Langford, 1982, op. cit. (see reference 16).

18. Department of Census and Statistics, 1978, op. cit. (see reference 11); and Department of Census and Statistics, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 13).

19. I. Alam and J. G. Cleland, 1981, op. cit. (see reference 2); and Department of Census and Statistics, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 13).

20. Department of Census and Statistics, 1983, op. cit. (see reference 12); and ——, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 14).

21. B. Berelson, "World Population: Status Report," *Reports on Population/Family Planning*, No. 15, The Population Council, New York, 1974; and J. Bongaarts and R. G. Potter, *Fertility, Biology, and Behavior: An Analysis of the Proximate Determinants*, Academic Press, New York, 1983.

22. J. Bongaarts and R. G. Potter, 1983, op. cit. (see reference 21); and I. Diamond, "On the Prediction of Total Fertility Rate by Observed Contraceptive Use," Contributed Paper, IUSSP International Population Conference, New Delhi, Sept. 20–27, 1989.

23. J. C. Caldwell et al., 1987, op. cit. (see reference 7).

24. Ibid.; I. Gajanayake, 1983, op. cit. (see reference 16); and ——, "Cessation of Childbearing in the Absence of Contraception," *Journal of Biosocial Science*, **19**:65, 1987.

25. ——, "Intermediate Fertility Variables in Sri Lanka," unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, Vrije Universiteit, Brussels, 1982; and ——, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 24).

26. A. J. Coale and T. J. Trussell, "A New Procedure for Fitting Optimal Values of the Parameter of a Model Schedule of Marital Fertility Rates," *Population Index*, **44**:203, 1978.

27. I. Gajanayake, 1982, op. cit. (see reference 25).

28. B. Boulier and M. Rosenzweig, "Age, Biological Factors and Socioeconomic Determinants of Fertility: A New Measure of Cumulative Fertility for Use in the Socioeconomic Analysis of Family Size," *Demography*, **15**:487, 1978.

29. I. Gajanayake, 1982, op. cit. (see reference 25).

30. Ibid.; and ——, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 24).

31. ——, 1982, op. cit. (see reference 25).

32. Department of Census and Statistics, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 14); and J. C. Caldwell et al., 1987, op. cit. (see reference 7).

33. J. C. Caldwell et al., 1987, op. cit. (see reference 7).

34. Department of Census and Statistics, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 14).

35. Ibid.

36. Ibid.

37. Ibid.

38. Ibid.

39. ——, 1983, op. cit. (see reference 12).

40. J. C. Caldwell et al., 1987, op. cit. (see reference 7).

41. I. Gajanayake, "Traditional Contraception in Sri Lanka," in R. A. Bulatao, J.A. Palmore and S. E. Ward, eds., *Choosing a Contraceptive: Method Choice in Asia and the United States*, Westview Press, Boulder, Colo., 1989.

42. Department of Census and Statistics, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 14).

43. Ibid.

44. Ibid.

45. J. C. Caldwell et al., 1987, op. cit. (see reference 7).

46. Ibid.

47. C. M. Langford, 1982, op. cit. (see reference 16).

48. N. K. Sarkar, *The Demography of Ceylon*, Ceylon Government Press, Colombo, 1957.

49. J. C. Caldwell et al., 1987, op. cit. (see reference 7).

Resumen

La tasa de uso anticonceptivo encontrado en la Encuesta de Fecundidad de Sri Lanka (EFSL) de 1975 fue inferior al que se hubiera esperado, teniendo en cuenta el bajo nivel de fecundidad en el país. Encuestas posteriores, como la Encuesta de Prevalencia de Uso Anticonceptivo de 1982 y la Encuesta Demográfica y de Salud de 1987, acusaron un aumento en la tendencia de uso de anticonceptivos, con poca variación en la tasa de fecundidad. En las tres encuestas, las tasas de fecundidad esperadas en base al uso declarado de anticonceptivos eran más elevadas que la tasa verdadera, pero la mayor disparidad se acusó en 1975.

La disparidad aparente entre la fecundidad y el uso de anticonceptivos se explica por una

(Continued on page 111)

The Relationship Between Fertility And Contraceptive Prevalence in Zimbabwe

In Zimbabwe, the total fertility rate is greater than would be expected given the contraceptive prevalence rate; this discrepancy is caused in part by the degree of overlap between contraceptive use and postpartum amenorrhea.

By Donald J. Adamchak and Michael T. Mbizvo

Summary

In 1984, the total fertility rate (TFR) in Zimbabwe was 6.5 lifetime births and the contraceptive prevalence rate was 38 percent among married women aged 15–49; in 1988, the TFR dropped to 5.7 and contraceptive prevalence rose to 43 percent. Estimates of the contraceptive prevalence rates expected to be associated with these TFRs, however, are 12 percent for 1984 and 23 percent for 1988. An extensive overlap is shown between postpartum amenorrhea and early adoption of contraceptive practice: In 1988, 29 percent of total contraceptive use after the last birth overlapped with postpartum amenorrhea. Consequently, the nonoverlapping contraceptive prevalence rate for that year is calculated to be 31 percent. Overlap with postpartum amenorrhea, therefore, accounts for nearly half the difference between the expected and observed contraceptive prevalence rate in Zimbabwe.

Introduction

Zimbabwe has one of the highest reported contraceptive prevalence rates in Africa. The 1984 Zimbabwe Reproductive Health Survey (ZRHS) found that 38 percent of married women aged 15–49 were currently practicing contraception; 27 percent were using modern methods and 11 percent, traditional methods.[1] According to the 1988 Zimbabwe Demographic Health Survey (ZDHS), contraceptive prevalence had increased to 43 percent of married women aged 15–49, with 36 percent using modern methods and seven percent, traditional methods.[2] Similarly, findings from the 1988 Zimbabwe Male Fertility Survey (ZMFS) indicate a contraceptive prevalence rate of 45 percent, with modern methods accounting for 38 percent of use and traditional methods, seven percent.[3]

The corresponding total fertility rates (TFRs) for each of the three surveys were 6.5, 5.7 and 6.1, respectively; these are far in excess of the expected rates, given the high observed levels of contraceptive prevalence. According to the model designed by W. Parker Mauldi and Sheldon Segal,[4] the resulting TFRs should be approximately 4.6, 4.3 and 4.1, given the observed contraceptive prevalence rates of 38, 43 and 45 percent, respectively. Conversely, Mauldin and Segal estimated that the observed TFRs of 6.5, 6.1 and 5.7 should correspond to prevalence rates of approximately 12, 18 and 23 percent. The question, therefore, is: Why does Zimbabwe have high levels of contraceptive prevalence *and* high fertility?

Several researchers have examined this TFR–contraceptive prevalence inconsistency. Ann Way and her colleagues concluded that in the absence of trend data on the proximate determinants of fertility, one can only speculate why fertility rates in Zimbabwe are as high as those recorded in the ZRHS.[5] Esther Boohene and Thomas Dow indicated that modern contraceptive methods are used in Zimbabwe primarily for spacing, rather than for limiting, births.[6] Furthermore, they hypothesized that there could be an extensive overlap between contraceptive use and postpartum amenorrhea because of a relatively long period of breastfeeding and the adoption of a modern method soon after the birth of a child. In this article, we attempt to explain the TFR–contraceptive prevalence inconsistency by empirically testing the hypothesis offered by Boohene and Dow.

Methodology and Sample

We calculated the TFRs and contraceptive prevalence rates from data collected in the 1984 ZRHS, the 1988 ZDHS and the 1988 ZMFS. The expected contraceptive prevalence rates were interpolated from Mauldin and Segal's model of the relationship between the TFR and contraceptive prevalence at the country level. The data used to test this relationship come from the 1988 ZDHS and the 1988 ZMFS.

Our survey of contraceptive attitudes and behavior among males, the 1988 ZMFS, asked each respondent which method his wife had used after her last birth, how soon after childbirth the method was adopted and the duration of use. Since Boohene and Dow suggested that women could have been doubly protected from pregnancy through the overlapping of contraceptive use and postpartum amenorrhea, we included the above items in our questionnaire to determine the extent of an overlap and thus to distinguish between the observed level of contraceptive protection and the nonoverlapping level of protection.

The ZMFS employed a stratified cluster sampling design with proportional distribution of households. Zimbabwe is composed of eight provinces, with each province containing three main administrative areas—urban and semiurban areas (32 percent of households), communal farming areas (50 percent) and commercial farming areas (18 percent). These three broad administrative areas reflect the sustenance organization and economic activities in Zimbabwe.

For survey purposes, the administrative areas had been divided into 4,068 enumeration areas by the Zimbabwe Central Statistical Office, which conducted an in-

---

Donald J. Adamchak is associate professor in the Department of Sociology, Kansas State University, Manhattan, Kans. Michael T. Mbizvo is senior lecturer in the Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, University of Zimbabwe, Harare. The authors are grateful to the staff (especially the team of research assistants) of the Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, University of Zimbabwe, for their support in carrying out this study. The authors would also like to thank the Zimbabwe Government's Central Statistical Office, the local enumeration area district administrators and the Zimbabwe National Family Planning Council. The project on which this article is based was funded by a grant from The Rockefeller Foundation.

Table 1. Selected measures of fertility and contraceptive use, by survey, Zimbabwe, 1984–1988

Measure	1984 ZRHS	1988 ZDHS	1988 ZMFS
TFR*			
Women aged 15–44	6.47	5.53	5.78
Women aged 15–49	6.52	5.70	6.10
No. of children ever born			
Women aged 15–49	3.9	4.1	4.1
Women aged 40–49	7.3	7.0	7.5
Prevalence rate†			
Total	38.4	43.1	45.4‡
Modern methods	26.6	36.1	38.0
Pill	22.6	31.0	33.4
Condom	0.7	1.2	2.7
Injection	0.8	0.3	0.1
IUD	0.7	1.1	1.0
Vaginals	0.1	0.0	0.0
Female sterilization	1.6	2.3	0.8
Male sterilization	0.1	0.2	0.0
Traditional methods	11.8	7.0	7.4‡
Abstinence	2.1	0.3	8.1
Rhythm	0.6	0.0	3.5
Withdrawal	6.5	5.1	4.3
Other	2.6	1.5	0.5
% ever used			
Any method	65.7	79.0	76.8
Modern method	46.7	63.0	55.6
Traditional method	43.7	48.1	60.8

*For the ZRHS and the ZMFS, currently married women and married women (as reported by their husbands), respectively, calculated 0–12 months prior to the surveys; for the ZDHS, currently married women calculated 0–4 years prior to the survey.

†For the ZRHS and the ZDHS, currently married women aged 15–49; for the ZMFS, all currently married men with one wife and no other sex partners during the year prior to the survey. This was done in order to avoid overreporting current use and ever-use.

‡Adjusted to account for differences in definition of methods between surveys. See footnote on page 104.

tercensal demographic survey in 1987 using 273 representative enumeration areas. We chose a subsample of 11, and obtained the household master file lists (names and addresses) for each. We then systematically sampled each enumeration area type (four communal, three commercial and four urban) with household proportions based on a total of 700 respondents. The sampling frame resulted in 711 respondents. However, in this analysis we use only respondents whose wives were younger than 50. In addition, respondents who reported more than one wife during the year prior to the survey were excluded from the sample. (Just five percent of the sample had two or more wives.) Thus, the final sample size for this analysis is 435.

The sample is representative of the Shona-speaking population, which makes up 80 percent of the population of Zimbabwe. Field work was conducted from April through June 1988. Although the sample is representative of the economic and administrative areas in Zimbabwe, it is nevertheless biased toward the older age-groups. Rural areas, particularly the communal farming areas, are disproportionately over-represented by older men because of the extensive age-selective labor migration to urban areas. To correct for this biased age distribution, we weighted the sample by five-year age-groups based on the arithmetic mean of the 1985 and 1990 United Nations population projections for Zimbabwe.[7]

Table 1 compares the three survey samples on a number of fertility-related characteristics. The TFRs declined over the four-year period between surveys, and although the TFRs reported in the ZMFS are higher than those found in the ZDHS, the difference is not statistically significant. The number of children ever born was 4.1 among all women aged 15–49 in both 1988 surveys and 7.0 and 7.5 for women aged 40–49 in the 1988 ZDHS and the 1988 ZMFS, respectively.

The level of contraceptive prevalence increased over the four-year period between the surveys. The rise in prevalence from 1984 to 1988 was the result of a substantial increase in the use of modern methods, particularly the pill. The rates reported in the two later surveys were nearly identical—45 percent in the ZMFS and 43 percent in the ZDHS—after we adjusted for differences in the definition of traditional methods.* Ever-use of contraceptives was also similar, with 79 percent of women in the ZDHS reporting that they had ever used a method and 77 percent of the men in the ZMFS saying their wives had done so. Based on these sample comparisons, the surveys yield similar information, suggesting that men can be reliable sources of fertility and family planning information in Zimbabwe.

Table 2. Percentage distribution of respondents, by family planning method used after last birth and timing of method use, ZMFS, 1988

Method and timing (N=435)	%
Method used	
Pill	64.3
Condom	4.4
Injection	0.5
IUD	1.4
Female sterilization	0.9
Vaginal foam	0.0
Diaphragm	0.0
Male sterilization	0.0
Rhythm	1.1
Abstinence	3.7
Withdrawal	6.2
Other	0.2
No use after last birth	9.7
Never used	7.6
Initiation of use (in months after last birth)*	
0–3	37.6
4–6	24.5
7–9	7.4
10–12	3.9
≥13	1.9
Don't know	7.6
No use after last birth	9.5
Never used	7.6
Total	100.0

*N=433 because of missing data for two respondents.

Contraceptive Use and Timing

Table 2 presents data on the contraceptive method used after the most recent birth by the wives of ZMFS respondents. The data are not the same as the contraceptive prevalence rates because only women who had had a child were included and the men were reporting on births that occurred over time. The data suggest widespread use of a contraceptive method after childbirth: Nearly 72 percent of the

Table 3. Percentage distribution of wives, by duration of family planning use after last birth, according to type of use, ZMFS, 1988

Duration in months	Any method (N=433)	Modern method (N=285)	Not currently using (N=29)
0–12	30.7	38.2	27.6
13–24	22.6	31.6	31.0
25–36	9.7	13.3	13.8
37–48	5.5	8.1	10.3
≥49	7.2	8.8	17.2
Don't know	7.2	na	na
No use after last birth	9.5	na	na
Never used	7.6	na	na
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0

Note: na=not applicable; only respondents of known duration of use were included in the modern method and not currently using categories.

---

*Although the ZDHS and the ZMFS found similar levels of modern contraceptive use, there is a marked difference in the current use of traditional methods—seven percent vs. 16 percent, respectively. This is because of the definitions of abstinence and rhythm used. In the ZDHS, periodic abstinence/rhythm was defined as avoiding "having intercourse on certain days of the month when the woman is more likely to become pregnant." Postpartum abstinence was not included as a method. However, data on it were collected in the health and breastfeeding module of the survey, indicating that the median duration of postpartum abstinence was 4.3 months and that nearly 60 percent of mothers whose babies were aged 2–3 months had not yet resumed intercourse. Given the different definitions of rhythm/abstinence and the relative consistency between the reported levels of current modern use and withdrawal, we adjusted the proportion of traditional method use in the ZMFS to reflect that found in the ZDHS (that is, the percentage using traditional methods divided by the percentage using modern methods).

male respondents said that their wives had used a modern method, or that they themselves had used condoms, after the birth of their last child. The pill accounted for 90 percent of use of modern methods (i.e., the pill, the condom, the IUD, injections and female sterilization). Additionally, 11 percent indicated that they had used a traditional method (i.e., withdrawal, abstinence, rhythm and other) and 17 percent used no method after the birth of their last child or had never used family planning.

As to the timing of the initiation of use, 62 percent of all women (and 83 percent of women who used a modern method, not shown) began use within six months of giving birth. The average time between childbirth and initiation of contraceptive use was 4.5 months for any method and 4.4 months for a modern method (not shown).

The duration of method use after the most recent birth is shown in Table 3 by type of use. Nearly 45 percent of all women had used a method for more than one year, as did nearly 62 percent of those who used a modern method. The mean duration of use after the last birth was 21.1 months for any method and 21.3 months for a modern method. However, because many women were still practicing contraception at the time of the survey, their stated length of current use would necessarily result in an underestimate of average duration of use, especially since overall contraceptive prevalence is high and the level after the birth of a child is even higher. Therefore, we would expect women who had stopped using a method to have used that method for a longer period than a sample of women that included current users. The number of women who were no longer using a method is small (N=29), but 72 percent had used a method for over one year. The longer mean duration of use among this latter group was 27.6 months, a more accurate estimate of the closed interval of contraceptive use after the last birth. We used this mean to calculate the prevalence of contraceptive use that does not overlap with postpartum amenorrhea. In summary, Tables 2 and 3 strongly indicate that family planning use is widespread, is started relatively soon after childbirth and is used for slightly more than 27 months.

Nonoverlapping Use

The prevalence of breastfeeding is a strong determinant of postpartum amenorrhea. Boohene and Dow stated that the duration of postpartum amenorrhea in Zimbabwe is approximately 14 months, when associated with an average duration of breastfeeding of 21 months.[8] Hilary Page found that typical breastfeeding durations in Sub-Saharan Africa ranged from 18 to 24 months, which translates into a 12-month or slightly longer period of postpartum amenorrhea.[9] In the model developed by John Bongaarts and Robert Potter, the duration of breastfeeding explained 96 percent of the variance in the duration of postpartum amenorrhea, and approximately 60–70 percent of the duration of breastfeeding was determined to be amenorrheic.[10] In addition, findings from the ZDHS indicate that the median duration of breastfeeding is 19.3 months, while the median duration of postpartum amenorrhea is 12.6 months.[11] We used this estimate of postpartum amenorrhea in our assessment of its overlap with contraceptive prevalence.*

Figure 1 (page 106) diagrams the postpartum fertility status of wives of ZMFS respondents who used a family planning method after their last birth.† The mean initiation of use of any method was 4.5 months after childbirth. The next 8.1 months of the estimated 12.6 months of postpartum amenorrhea overlap with contraceptive use. In other words, 19.5 of the 27.6 months of use was nonoverlapping, representing 71 percent of total use. The remaining 29 percent of contraceptive use overlaps with postpartum amenorrhea.

Multiplying the total prevalence rate of 43 percent among women aged 15–49 from the 1988 ZDHS by the proportion of nonoverlapping use yields a prevalence of nonoverlapping use of 31 percent. Similarly, using the ZDHS contraceptive prevalence of 45 percent among women aged 15–44 results in a nonoverlapping prevalence of 32 percent. Finally, using the contraceptive prevalence rate of 45 percent among women aged 15–49 from the ZMFS data yields a nonoverlapping prevalence rate of 32 percent.

Our findings appear to empirically validate the previously untested assertions made by Boohene and Dow that extensive overlap exists between contraceptive use and postpartum amenorrhea, caused by the relatively early adoption of a method after childbirth and by the long and nearly universal period of breastfeeding. Based on our estimate of the proportion of total contraceptive use that is nonoverlapping, we calculated nonoverlapping contraceptive prevalence in Zimbabwe to be 31–32 percent, compared with the observed prevalence rates of 43–45 percent found in the two 1988 surveys (see Table 4).

Table 4. Total fertility rates and various contraceptive prevalence rates, by survey and age of women

Survey and age of women	TFR	Contraceptive prevalence rates			Expected divided by observed	Expected divided by nonoverlapping
		Observed	Nonoverlapping	Expected		
ZMFS						
15–49	6.1	45.4	32.1	17.6	38.8	54.8
15–44	5.8	45.4	32.1	21.8	48.0	67.9
ZDHS						
15–49	5.7	43.1	30.5	23.2	53.8	76.1
15–44	5.5	45.3	32.0	26.0	57.4	81.3

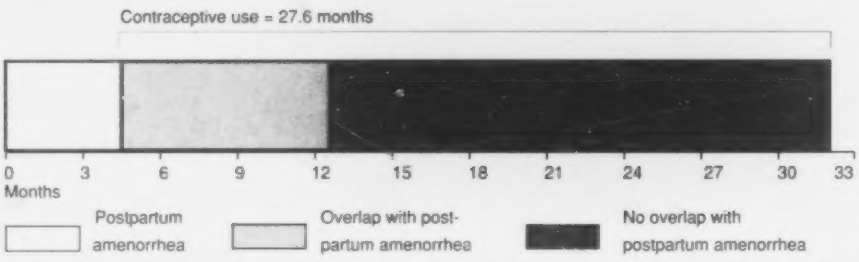
The table also shows the results of comparing the expected prevalence rates (derived from the TFR using the Mauldin and Segal model) with the observed rates. Thus for a TFR of 6.1, the expected contraceptive prevalence accounts for only 39 percent of the observed prevalence. However, the expected contraceptive prevalence accounts for 55 percent of what we have calculated to be the prevalence of nonoverlapping use. Similarly, for a TFR of 5.5, the expected prevalence rates represent 57 percent of the observed total use and 81

---

*In addition to the contribution of lactational amenorrhea, two other factors can delay ovulation and conception to some degree. First, postpartum amenorrhea among women who do not breastfeed will usually range from 1.5 to three months. However, among women who do breastfeed, this postpartum amenorrheac period overlaps with the lactational amenorrhea period. Second, the cultural practice of postpartum abstinence, which can last up to two or three years in Africa, overlaps significantly with breastfeeding and, therefore, with postpartum amenorrhea. The 1988 ZDHS found that the median duration of postpartum abstinence in Zimbabwe was only 4.3 months. Since breastfeeding is nearly universal and has a median duration of 19.3 months, postpartum abstinence does not appear to have a significant independent effect.

†Figure 1 can be characterized as an aggregate model of the relationship between postpartum amenorrhea and the initiation and duration of contraceptive use. However, we do not know the relationship between contraceptive use (initiation and duration after last birth) and breastfeeding behavior of individual women. It is possible, although unlikely, that women who are using a contraceptive method are breastfeeding for short periods and that nonusers are breastfeeding for very long periods of time.

Figure 1. Contraceptive use since last birth, by month since birth, Zimbabwe, 1988



percent of the nonoverlapping use. Our analysis indicates that the expected contraceptive prevalence is much closer to nonoverlapping prevalence than it is to observed prevalence. The differences between our estimates of nonoverlapping contraceptive prevalence and Mauldin and Segal's estimates of expected prevalence at the given TFRs could be caused by the effects of other proximate determinants of fertility.

Discussion

As long as contraceptive methods are adopted shortly after birth and current breastfeeding patterns continue—meaning that postpartum amenorrhea continues to last approximately 12 months—significant differences between observed and nonoverlapping contraceptive prevalence may exist.

These findings could have important implications for family planning programs in Sub-Saharan Africa and for expectations concerning fertility decline. First, expected fertility declines could be delayed, particularly if birth intervals do not increase. If birth intervals increase, contraceptive use may become more effective in preventing births, since family planning methods may be used for a longer period of time beyond the overlapping of postpartum amenorrhea with the method used. However, an increase does not seem probable, because the 1984 ZRHS found that 42 percent of women reported an ideal birth interval of less than two years and 33 percent reported an interval of two to three years. Results from the 1988 ZMFS indicate that these preferences changed little over the period between the surveys: Forty-five percent of men reported an ideal birth interval of less than two years and 34 percent preferred an interval of two to three years. These findings suggest that contraception is used primarily for spacing, which 53 percent of the total sample and 66 percent of ever-users indicated in the survey. Therefore, a realistic approach to bringing about fertility decline in Zimbabwe would be the implementation of Information, Education and Communication (IEC) programs to promote spacing intervals of more than three years.

Second, if breastfeeding duration, and therefore postpartum amenorrhea, decreases, contraceptive use will become comparatively more efficient. However, fertility could increase at the societal level, since the diffusion of a shortened breastfeeding duration could precede or be more widespread than the adoption of contraceptive practice.

Third, family planning programs and their supporting agencies need to set realistic goals that consider the differences or potential differences between observed and nonoverlapping contraceptive prevalence. Since Zimbabwe has one of the highest contraceptive prevalence rates in Africa, it could be used as a model in understanding the dynamics of this relationship.

Fourth, to assess the magnitude of the postpartum amenorrhea–contraceptive prevalence overlap, we strongly recommend including the variables used in this research in future surveys. These variables are the specific method, if any, used after the last birth; the timing of method adoption after the last birth; and the duration of method use after the last birth.

Finally, the notion of "excess fertility" for a given level of contraceptive prevalence may no longer be suitable in the context of these findings. Rather, a significant proportion of observed contraceptive prevalence appears to be in "excess," as it is far greater than the expected TFR level would indicate because of the redundancy with postpartum amenorrhea. It is essential that family planning program officials know the true extent of overlap to develop realistic fertility estimates and goals for their programs. Understanding the advantages of adopting contraceptive use shortly after birth is also important. A population that is responsive to using family planning for spacing births should eventually adopt family planning for limiting births. The general acceptance of family planning and the early adoption of contraceptive practice soon after birth in Zimbabwe will expedite that process.

Like Zimbabwe, other developing countries with relatively high levels of contraceptive prevalence and fertility may be experiencing considerable overlap between postpartum amenorrhea and contraceptive use. Determining the existence and magnitude of such an overlap could add a new dimension to family planning program design, goals and evaluation.

References

1. Zimbabwe National Family Planning Council and Westinghouse Public Applied Systems, *1984 Zimbabwe Reproductive Health Survey*, Harare, Zimbabwe, and Columbia, Md., 1985.

2. Central Statistical Office and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., *Zimbabwe Demographic and Health Survey 1988*, Harare, Zimbabwe, and Columbia, Md., 1989.

3. D. J. Adamchak and M. T. Mbizvo, "Male Fertility and Contraceptive Attitudes and Behavior: The Role of Men in Family Planning in Zimbabwe, Final Report," The Rockefeller Foundation, New York (forthcoming).

4. W. P. Mauldin and S. J. Segal, "Prevalence of Contraceptive Use: Trends and Issues," *Studies in Family Planning*, **19:**335, 1988.

5. E. Boohene and T. E. Dow, Jr., "Contraceptive Prevalence and Family Planning Program Effort in Zimbabwe," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **13:**1, 1987.

6. A. A. Way, A. R. Cross and S. Kumar, "Family Planning in Botswana, Kenya and Zimbabwe," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **13:**7, 1987.

7. Department of International Economic and Social Affairs, United Nations, *World Population Prospects: Estimates and Projections as Assessed in 1984*, Population Studies No. 98, New York, 1986.

8. E. Boohene and T. E. Dow, Jr., 1987, op. cit. (see reference 5).

9. H. Page, "Fertility and Family Planning in Sub-Saharan Africa," in E. van de Walle, P. O. Oh[illegible]ike and M. D. Sala-Diakanda, eds., *The State of African Demography*, International Union for the Scientific Study of Population, Liège, Belgium, 1988.

10. J. Bongaarts and R. G. Potter, *Fertility, Biology and Behavior: An Analysis of the Proximate Determinants*, Academic Press, New York, 1983.

11. Central Statistical Office and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., 1989, op. cit. (see reference 2).

Resumen

En 1984, la tasa global de fecundidad (TGF) en Zimbabwe era de 6,5 nacimientos por mujer y la tasa de uso anticonceptivo era de 38 por ciento entre las casadas de 15 a 49 años de edad; en 1988, la TGF bajó a 5,7 y la prevalen-

(Continued on page 111)

Comment

Islam, Procreation and the Law

By Zulie Sachedina

Islam is a faith with over a billion adherents worldwide. Complexity and diversity within this large population, as well as the relationship between Islam and the state, often result in a variety of attitudes and approaches regarding reproductive issues.

In about the year 610 A.D., Muhammad received his first revelation from Allah; this commenced his prophethood and the religion of Islam. Prophet Muhammad conveyed to his fellow citizens a twofold summons—to recognize a sovereign divine power that fashions and controls human destiny, and to commit themselves in constant obedience to following the pattern ordained by the divine will.[1]

The message Muhammad preached to the Arabs came to him through a series of revelations Allah gave him throughout Muhammad's prophethood until the end of his life. The revelations were collected in a book called the Quran, which is the fundamental authority for Muslims in all matters of religious belief and practice and of the law. The Quran is viewed by Muslims as "Kalam Allah," or the very words of God.[2]

Islam is a comprehensive system that regulates the spiritual as well as civic aspects of individual and communal life.[3] However, it has no clergy and no central authority to proclaim the position of the entire Muslim community on any matter, so there has been opportunity for different interpretations of the Scriptures.

The rules and regulations that were revealed to Muhammad are called Shari'ah—a guide or road map to a successful life in the world and to communion with God.[4] The Shari'ah is often described as law, but this term is misleading because the obligations that arise under it frequently fall upon individuals; each person stands in an immediate relationship of accountability with God. Although aspects of the Shari'ah are often incorporated by particular state governments to fashion the laws of the country, Shari'ah itself is more accurately viewed as a detailed code of conduct. To Muslims, Shari'ah is infallible because it is mandated by God, and represents the eternal will of the universe's creator.[5]

The divine Shari'ah is comprehensive and is viewed as offering all the guidance necessary to humankind. Islamic jurists have emphasized the completeness of the Shari'ah, which classifies all human actions without exception into one of five categories: obligatory, recommended, permitted, disapproved but not forbidden, or absolutely forbidden.[6] Even when an action is categorized as forbidden, it may be undertaken if the alternative would do more harm.

The billion Muslims of this world are divided into various sects and schools of thought. In general, however, the Islamic community falls into two great divisions—the Sunnis and the Shi'is. The Shi'is got their name from Ali, the cousin and son-in-law of the Prophet. The claim that "Imamah" (leadership) remained with the Prophet's family has been a cardinal Shiite doctrine throughout history.[7]

At present, there are four major schools of interpretation within the Sunni sect, developed around the interpretations of particular jurists. Each is typically associated with a particular region and all are considered "true Islam." The Maliki school, which follows the interpretations of jurist Malik ibn Annas, is the norm in much of North Africa except in Egypt. The Hanafi school, following jurist Abu Hanifah, prevailed in the Ottoman Empire and in Central Asia and was taken to the Indian subcontinent by the Muslim conquerors. The strictest doctrine is that of the Hanbali school, following the interpretation of Ahmad bin Hanbali, which today is confined to the Arabian peninsula. The Shafi'i school, following the interpretations of Al Shafi'i, prevails in much of the rest of the Islamic world, including Indonesia, Egypt, Syria and East Africa.[8]

The implementation of a code of conduct such as the Shari'ah requires reliable methods of applying its broad principles to specific situations. The need to develop a jurisprudence came from the brevity and potential ambiguity of the revelations in the Quran. For more than two centuries, there was uncertainty about the way in which Muslims might arrive at normative decisions on matters the Quran did not specifically address. Among the Sunnis, there is now a universal acceptance that there are four basic roots of Islamic law, which stand in a definite order of precedence. The first and foremost authority is the Quran—no other authority may supersede a clear Quranic commandment. The second source of norms is the Sunnah, the customary usage of the Prophet, which is known to the Muslims through a series of oral reports called hadiths. To assign appropriate weight to the multitude of hadiths, they are classified as sound, good, or weak, depending on proof of their authenticity. The third source is the ijmaa, or consensus of jurists. This principle is expressed in a saying attributed to the Prophet: "My community will never agree in error." The fourth root of guidance, resorted to when the previous three cannot provide the answer, is qiyass (analogy), which must proceed from a previously established rule and can never overturn or

---

Zulie Sachedina was a human rights intern with the University of Toronto Law School and the World Health Organization (WHO) at the time this article was written. The article is part of a broader study done under the auspices of the WHO to explore the perspectives of the principal religions regarding procreative matters, in order to help policymakers and providers deliver reproductive health services in a sensitive and compassionate manner. The author would like to thank Jose Barzelatto, Mahmoud Fathalla, Sev Fluss, Maher Mahran, G. R. Dunstan, Sheila A. M. Mclean and Rebecca Cook for their support and suggestions.

supersede judgments based on one of the other roots.[9]

While all Sunni sects accept these basic roots of law, the Shi'is accept only the Quran and the Sunnah, rejecting the doctrines of ijmaa and qiyass. The Shi'is believe that their Imams (leaders) have the sole authority to interpret the Quran and the Sunnah and to determine what the believer shall do. In practice, however, the consensus of the Sunni jurists is treated by the Shi'is as opinion worth considering.[10]

The emphasis on tradition and on the apparent rigidity of the Shari'ah has been a source of criticism in contemporary Muslim society. However, some authors have suggested that the concept of naskh (abrogation, repeal) can give Islamic Shari'ah a dynamic element. All the major schools acknowledge that the Quran contains verses that repeal earlier verses,[11] and that the Sunnah could, and in some cases does, abrogate previous Sunnah. For example, the Prophet is reported to have said: "I have previously forbidden you to visit graveyards, but Muhammad has now been permitted to visit his mother's tomb, so do visit graveyards for they remind you of the hereafter."[12] The ijmaa cannot abrogate a text, but if the consensus is based on public interest, it may be repealed if the public interest so requires.[13] Hence naskh shows that reinterpretation may not be anathema in Islamic law: "If verses of the Quran repealed other verses of the Quran," one author said, "is it really that unthinkable for jurists to contradict earlier jurists?"[14]

Sexuality and Contraception

Nonetheless, current Islamic practice emphasizes tradition and interpretations already established, and it is therefore necessary to look at Islamic attitudes towards sexuality and reproduction from a historical perspective. Within the confines of marriage, sexuality is treated as one of the good things in life that a Muslim should enjoy. Marriage is commendable and is recommended for whoever can afford it. Its purpose is seen as twofold. First, it unites the two elements of humanity; this is reflected in the following verse of the Quran:

> Amongst His signs is that He created consorts (in marriage) for you from amongst yourselves, so that you may find tranquility with them, and (He) set love and compassion between you. Verily, in this are signs for those who reflect. (Quran S. 30:21)[15]

The second purpose, also stated in the Quran, is the procreative function:

> And God has created for you consorts (in marriage) from amongst yourselves, and through your consorts He created children and grandchildren for you, and provided you of His bounty. Will they then believe in vain things and be ungrateful to God's favours?! (Quran S. 16:72)[16]

The Quran does not specifically indicate the relative weight of either the procreative or the unitive aspects of intercourse and does not specifically address the permissibility of contraceptive practice. For that, the Muslim jurists relied on the second source of law, the hadith. Several hadiths of the following companions of the prophet are most often cited in addressing this issue.

According to Jabir, for example, "We used to practice coitus interruptus during the Prophet's lifetime. News of this reached him and he did not forbid us."[17] Also according to Jabir, "A man came to the Prophet and said, 'I have a slave girl, and we need her as a servant and around the palm groves. I have had sex with her, but I am afraid of her becoming pregnant.' The Prophet said, 'Practice coitus interruptus with her if you so wish, for she will receive what has been predestined for her.'"[18]

According to Abu Sa'id, "We rode out with the Prophet to raid Banu al-Mustaliqu and captured some female prisoners . . . We desired women, and abstinence became hard. (But) we wanted to practice coitus interruptus; and we asked the Prophet about it. He said, 'You do not have to hesitate, for God has predestined what is to be created until Judgement day.'"[19] Abu Sa'id also said, "The Jews say that coitus interruptus is minor infanticide, and the Prophet answered, 'The Jews lie, for if God wanted to create something, no one can avert it (or, divert Him).'"[20]

Stated Judhama bint Wahb, "They asked him about coitus interruptus, and the Prophet answered, 'It is hidden infanticide . . .'"[21] Said Umar Ibn al-Khattab, "The Prophet forbade the practice of coitus interruptus with a free woman except with her permission."[22] According to Anas, "A man asked the Prophet about coitus interruptus, and the Prophet said, 'Even if you spill seed from which a child was meant to be born on a rock, God will bring forth from that rock a child.'"[23]

These hadiths were important but not decisive, since they did not give consistent guidance. In the absence of explicitly religious provision, Muslim jurists had to resort to the doctrines of ijmaa and qiyass.

The Shafi'i jurist Ghazali (1058-1111) argued that there was no basis for prohibiting coitus interruptus. He reasoned that pregnancy had four related causes: marriage, intercourse, emission of semen, and allowing semen to reach and settle in the womb. As far as procreation was concerned, abstention from the fourth was like abstention from the third, which was like abstention from the second, which in turn was like abstention from the first. Since the first action was not obligatory, none of the ensuing acts could be obligatory.[24]

The jurist Ibn Hazm (994-1063) argued that coitus interruptus was prohibited because the Prophet had abrogated earlier permissive hadiths when he equated coitus interruptus to infanticide, which is condemned in the strongest terms by the Quran. Another jurist later explained that "the Prophet called coitus interruptus hidden infanticide because it shared with true infanticide the same motive: escape from additional dependents. But true infanticide was not prohibited because of this motive, which in itself was proper, but because it involved murder."[25]

Using the sources of quiyass, Muslim jurists of the major schools were able to reach ijmaa. They agreed that contraceptive practice was proper and classified it as permitted or disapproved but not forbidden. For the jurist Ghazali, health and even economic indicators, as well as a man's desire to ensure the physical appeal of the woman, were considered acceptable reasons for the practice of contraception. However, he disapproved of the use of a contraceptive method to avoid having female children or because the woman wanted to maintain her beauty. Ghazali's position makes it evident that Islam calls into question the motives for contraception, rather than the practice itself.[26]

Initially, the practice of coitus interruptus was only permitted with the consent of the woman. Later, medieval jurists used the reason of "bad times" as unconditional permission for contraceptive practice: "Coitus interruptus is permitted without a free woman's consent because the times are bad."[27] The presence of a nursing child was an acceptable reason for almost all jurists.[28]

So it could be said that contraceptive use has been sanctioned since the hadiths of the Prophet, but, at that time, the focus was on the all-powerful Allah.[29] The economic, personal, social and medical reasons appeared in later reasoning and illustrate the dynamism of the Shari'ah.

In the absence of an explicit religious position, it is not surprising that there were, and continue to be, different viewpoints on issues of contraceptive practice. Some scholars argue that the procreative element is the major aspect of marriage, and contraceptive practice is unacceptable. The Quran supports such a position in this verse: "Your wives are a tilth for you, so go into your tilth as you like and do good beforehand for yourselves."(Quran S. 2:223)[30]

"By describing women as a tilth, an important biological fact has been pointed out," writes the scholar Maududi. "Biologically, a man is a tiller and women is tilth and the foremost purpose of the interrelationship between the two is the procreation of the human race. This is an objective which is common to all—human beings, animals and the world of vegetation. The tiller of the soil cultivates the land, not in vain, but for produce. Take away this purpose and the entire pursuit becomes meaningless."[31]

Other scholars argue that the use of a contraceptive method serves to frustrate Allah's will and reflects a lack of faith in the power and benevolence of the Creator; these conservative attitudes continue to exist in some schools of thought. However, the following fatwas (learned opinions) illustrate that temporary contraceptive methods are considered acceptable to most:

> Islam, as the religion of pristine nature, has never been opposed to what is good to man. Indeed, it has always been ahead in the effort towards the achievement of this good so long as it is not in conflict with the purposes of God's Law.
>
> I see no objection from the Shari'ah point of view to the consideration of family planning as a measure, if there is a need for it, and if the consideration is occasioned by the people's own choice and conviction, without constraint or compulsion, in the light of their circumstances, and on the condition that the means for effecting this planning is legitimate. (Fatwa of Shaikh Hasan Ma'mun, Rector of Al-Azhar, 1964)[32]
>
> There is agreement among the exponents of jurisprudence that coitus interruptus, as one of the methods for the prevention of childbearing, is allowed. Doctors of religion inferred from this that it is permissible to take a drug to prevent childbearing, or even to induce abortion. We confidently rule in this *fatwa* that it is permitted to take measures to limit childbearing. (Fatwa of Shaik Abdullah Al-Qalqili, Grand Mufti of Jordan, 1964)[33]

Table 1. Status of abortion and sterilization in six Islamic countries, 1990

Country	Sterilization	Abortion
Bangladesh	Legal; widely promoted method of family planning; requires informed consent	Legal to save woman's life
Egypt	Not prohibited; woman must be age 35 and have 3 children, at least 1male	Legal for genetic and maternal health indications
Iran	Illegal except for medical and eugenic reasons	Legal to save woman's life
Indonesia	Status unclear	Legal to save woman's life
Saudi Arabia	Illegal except for medical and eugenic reasons	Legal to save woman's life
Tunisia	Legal; woman must be age 30 and have 4 children, at least 1of each sex	Legal for all reasons up to 3 months

Sources: **Sterilization**—J. A.Ross, S. Hong and D. H. Huber, *Voluntary Sterilization: An International Fact Book*, Association for Voluntary Sterilization, New York, 1985; United Nations Fund for Population Activities, *Survey of Laws on Fertility Control*, New York, 1979; and World Health Organization (WHO), *International Digest of Health Legislation*, Geneva, 1985–1988. **Abortion**—C. Tietze and S. K. Henshaw, *Induced Abortion: A World Review 1986*, The Alan Guttmacher Institute, New York, 1986; and WHO, *International Digest of Health Legislation*, Geneva, 1986–1988.

The Quran and the hadiths make no reference to sterilization. The issue of permanent sterilization as a method of contraception remains an issue of controversy among Muslim jurists. As one jurist argued, "permanent sterilization was allowed because there was no explicit and definitive text to prohibit it and because the preservation of reproductive power was not one of the obligations under the Islamic law."[34] Some scholars reason that since Islam does not place any time limits [illegible]ontraceptive practice, and a couple [illegible]he right to use a temporary method permanently, they should have the right to adopt a permanent contraceptive method.[35]

Other jurists cite an earlier judgment (viewed as binding), which stated that "it is forbidden to use what stops childbearing altogether; but what slows down or delays childbearing without stopping it altogether is not forbidden, and if it is for a reason such as the bringing up of a child in a proper manner, it is not even disapproved of."[36] Consequently, permanent sterilization is acceptable only if "one of the spouses is suffering from a psychological, sexual or mental disease, proven medically to be inevitably transmissible by heredity, and not capable of being cured by any treatment at all."[37]

The opinion that sterilization is unacceptable as a contraceptive method is held by many jurists from all four major schools within the Sunni sect and by a number of Shi'i sects as well.[38] In the absence of a specific religious prohibition against sterilization, this reluctance to allow sterilization stems from the deep belief that when man frustrates Allah's will, he oversteps his boundaries. However, of the six Islamic countries in Table 1, only two have made sterilization explicitly illegal—Iran and Saudi Arabia. It is allowed in most of the other countries, albeit with restrictions on the woman's age and family size, but it is widely promoted as a method of family planning only in Bangladesh.

Islam and Abortion

The Quran makes clear reference to the progressive development of the fetus:

> O mankind! If you are in doubt as to the Resurrection, [consider] that We have created you of earth; then of semen; then of a blood-like clot; then a lump of flesh, [which is] formed or unformed; so that We may demonstrate to you [our power]; and We establish in the wombs what We will, till a stated term; then We bring you out as infants . . . (Quran S. 22:4)[39]

Fetal development has been viewed by Muslims as occurring in three stages, each lasting 40 days: the semen, the blood-like clot and the lump of flesh. At the end of these stages, Muslims consider the fetus ensouled.[40] All schools within the Muslim community make a distinction between the stages before and after ensoulment. Every school agrees that abortion after the first 120 days is forbidden except to save the mother's life; there is, however, no consensus on abortion before the period of ensoulment. The Zadis (a small Shiite sect), maintain that an unensouled fetus is the same as semen, and abortion is possible unconditionally. Most other schools clearly distinguish between abortion and contraceptive practice, and most Muslims consider abortion at any stage to be an offense, albeit of different degrees.[41] Ghazali presented this view:

> Contraception is not like abortion. Abortion is a crime against an existing being. Now, existence has stages. The first stages of existence are the setting of the semen in the womb and its mixing with the secretions of the woman. When it develops further and becomes as a lump, aborting it is a greater crime. When it acquires a soul and its creation is completed, the crime becomes more grievous. The crime reaches a maximum seriousness, when it is committed after it is separated alive (from the mother). (al-Qaradawi, 1981, p. 202)[42]

Some contemporary scholars argue that modern science presents different information regarding the "beginning of life" and suggest that the formation of the zygote rather than the "quickening" stage be considered the beginning of life.[43] The concept of ensoulment has perplexed scientists and philosophers throughout the ages. A medieval scholar wrote that the fetus was ensouled after 120 days and adds "this can be known only through revelation, for there is no reason in nature as such which requires it."[44] Another wrote, "Ensoulment belongs to a different realm of meaning, outside science but at the center of religion."[45]

At the International Islamic Conference held in Morocco in 1971, views of the various jurists on abortion before ensoulment were summarized.[46] Permission, without dependence on a reason, was granted by the Zadis, some Hanafis, some Shafi'is, some Malikis and some Hanbalis. Permission depending upon a reason, and disfavor when there was none, was the rule for some Hanafis and some Shafi'is. Abortion before ensoulment was looked upon with disfavor by some Malikis and prohibited by others, and disapproved of by many of the Shi'i sects. Thus, it is virtually impossible to state one Islamic viewpoint on the issue of abortion. Nonetheless, Tunisia is the only Muslim country shown in Table 1 to allow unrestricted first-trimester abortions. Most Muslim countries permit first-trimester abortion only to save the woman's life.

Religion and the State

As one modern scholar explains, "Muslims frequently contrast their religion with Christianity, where a distinction is made between God's realm and Caesar's, by citing the traditional adage, 'al-Islam din wa dawla,' or, Islam is religion and state."[47] Until the late 1960s, many Muslim countries appeared to have embarked on a course of secularization along Western lines. However, this change was not accepted by large segments of the Muslim population, and there has since been a dramatic upsurge in the call for the repudiation of Westernization and a return to Islam. These movements demand, at least, the reinstatement of the Shari'ah as the law of all Islamic lands, and many call for the establishment of an Islamic state.[48]

The church-state relationship in Islamic history has varied enormously according to local circumstances. Rulers acknowledged the great diversity of legal tradition within Islam and rarely tried to impose one version of the Shari'ah. Therefore, Islamic history gives little guidance concerning what the relationship between the state and Islam should be in the modern world. It is impossible to predict, simply by consulting the Shari'ah, what an Islamic state would entail; one must examine the political aspirations of the group calling for its establishment.[49]

Many Muslim countries have constitutional provisions indicating that the Shari'ah is either "a source" or "the source" of legislation. The rules of Shari'ah in areas of personal status have been interpreted particularly strictly because they are set forth in far greater detail in the Quran than the rules in other areas of the Shari'ah, and an assumption is made that these matters are paramount and cannot be tampered with.[50]

"The special attachment to personal status law may also be connected to deeply ingrained traditions of patriarchal family organization," a scholar suggests. "Thus in terms of exercising control over women, the Shari'ah rules of personal status may have assumed more importance now than in the past, when informal social control over women's lives rendered legal sanctions largely superfluous."[51] The issue of the status of women is increasingly pursued on the religious, rather than secular, level. Those opposed to expanding the rights of women cite the Shari'ah as justification, and those sympathetic to women's rights cite Islamic authorities who have spoken of gender equality.[52]

In almost all countries of the world, control over fertility has tended to be the watershed issue as far as the status of women is concerned. Questions about women and their role in contemporary society are invariably at the heart of the debate surrounding procreation, a debate that will continue within the religious context in many Islamic countries. There is no one monolithic view that would summarize the response of Islam to the myriad of issues raised by procreation in the late 20th century. But it is evident that the position of Islam itself is much less rigid than it would appear at first. It should be clear to policymakers that the Shari'ah has always had the flexibility to address contemporary problems. The canons of interpretation of Shari'ah and the concept of naskh (abrogation) illustrate that reinterpretation and change is not untenable in Islam. The Shari'ah provides invaluable guidance but does not shackle policymakers forever.

As the scholar Iqbal said, "The teaching of the Quran that life is a process of progressive creation necessitates that each generation, guided but unhampered by the work of its predecessors, should be permitted to solve its own problems."[53]

References

1. C. J. Adams, "The Islamic Tradition," in J. O'Dea, T. O'Dea and C. J. Adams, eds., *Religion and Man: Judaism, Christianity and Islam*, Harper & Row, New York, 1972, p. 160.

2. Ibid., p. 173.

3. H. Hathout, "Ethics, Policies and Human Values in Family Planning: Perspectives of the Middle East," in Z. Bankowski, J. Barzelatto, A. M. Capron et al., eds., *Ethics and Human Values in Family Planning*, Council for International Organizations of Medical Sciences (CIOMS), Geneva, 1989, p. 222.

4. C. J. Adams, 1972, op.cit. (see reference 1), p. 183.

5. M. Bassiouni, "Sources of Islamic Law and the Protection of Human Rights in the Islamic Criminal Justice System," in M. Bassiouni, ed., *The Islamic Criminal Justice System*, Oceana Publications, London, 1982.

6. C. J. Adams, 1972, op. cit. (see reference 1).

7. Ibid., p. 209.

8. al Saleh, "The Rights of the Individual to Personal Security in Islam," in M. Bassiouni, ed., 1985, op. cit. (see reference 5), p. 87.

9. I. Ghanem, *Islamic Medical Jurisprudence*, Arthur Probsthain, London, 1982, p. 3.

10. Ibid., p. 4.

11. Ibid., p. 6

12. Ibid., p. 9.

13. Ibid., p. 19.

14. Ibid., p. 20.

15. H. Hathout, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 3), p. 223.

16. Ibid.

17. T. Mahmood, *Family Planning: The Muslim Viewpoint*, Vikas Publication House, New Delhi, 1977, p. 27.

18. B. F. Musallam, *Sex and Society in Islam*, Cambridge University Press, New York, 1983, p. 15.

19. T. Mahmood, 1977, op. cit. (see reference 17), p. 28.

20. B. F. Musallam, 1983, op. cit. (see reference 18), p. 15.

21. Ibid.

22. Ibid.

23. Ibid.

24. Ibid., p. 17.

25. Ibid., p. 19.

26. T. Mahmood, 1977, op. cit. (see reference 17), p. 43.

27. B. F. Musallam, 1983, op. cit. (see reference 18), p. 118.

28. Ibid., p. 25

29. Ibid., p. 118.

30. F. Muslim, "Islamic Law and the Regulation of Fertility Levels in Kenya," in U. U. Uche, ed., *Law and Population Change in Africa,* East African Literature Bureau, Nairobi, 1976, p. 145.

31. A. Maududi, *Birth Control,* Islamic Publications, Ltd., Lahore, 1968, p. 80.

32. "Islam and Family Planning," pamphlet issued by International Planned Parenthood Federation, 1964.

33. Ibid.

34. "Islam and Family Planning," summary of proceeding of the International Islamic Conference, Rabat, Morocco, Dec. 1971.

35. M. Mahran, "Ethics and Human Values in Family Planning," background paper, CIOMS Conference, Bangkok, 1988, p. 62.

36. "Islam and Family Planning," 1971, op. cit. (see reference 34).

37. Ibid., p. 73.

38. Ibid., p. 70.

39. B. F. Musallam, 1983, op. cit. (see reference 18), pp. 53–54.

40. Ibid., p. 54.

41. J. W. Bowker, "Religions and the Status of the Embryo," *Human Embryo Research: Yes or No?* The Ciba Foundation, Tavistock Publications, London, 1986.

42. Ibid., p. 175.

43. H. Hathout, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 3), p. 232.

44. B. F. Musallam, 1983, op. cit. (see reference 18), p. 57.

45. Ibid.

46. "Islam and Family Planning," 1971, op. cit. (see reference 34).

47. A. E. Mayer, "Law and Religion in the Muslim Middle East," *American Journal of Comparative Law,* 35:130, 1987.

48. Ibid., p. 129.

49. Ibid., p. 161.

50. Ibid., p. 140.

51. Ibid.

52. Ibid., p. 178.

53. M. Iqbal, *The Reconstruction of Religious Thought in Islam,* Javid Iqbal, Lahore, 1960, p. 168.

"Fertility and Method Use in Zimbabwe"

(Continued from page 106)

cia del uso aumentó a 43 por ciento. Sin embargo, las tasas esperadas asociadas a dichas TGFs fueran de 12 por ciento para 1984 y 23 por ciento para 1988. Se verificó que la amenorrea postparto coincidía de manera importante con la temprana iniciación del uso de anticonceptivos: en 1988, el 29 por ciento del uso total de anticonceptivos después del último parto coincidía con la amenorrea postparto. En consecuencia, se calculó la prevalencia de uso que no coincidía en 31 por ciento. Así, la amenorrea postparto coincidente con el uso anticonceptivo explica casi la mitad de la diferencia entre las tasas de prevalencia esperadas y observadas en Zimbabwe.

Résumé

En 1984, l'indice synthétique de fécondité au Zimbabwe était de 6,5 naissances et le taux de prévalence contraceptive, de 38 pour cent parmi les femmes mariées âgées de 15 à 49 ans; en 1988, l'indice synthétique de fécondité était tombé à 5,7 tandis que la prévalence contraceptive passait à 43 pour cent. Cependant, les taux de prévalence contraceptive approximatifs attendus en présence de tels indices sont, respectivement, 12 pour cent pour 1984 et 23 pour cent pour 1988. Un chevauchement entre aménorrhée post-partum et adoption précoce de pratiques contraceptives s'est démontré: En 1988 29 pour cent de l'usage contraceptif total après la naissance d'un dernier enfant coïncident avec l'aménorrhée post-partum. Par conséquent, le taux de prévalence contraceptive sans chevauchement pour cette même année était de 31 pour cent. Ainsi, le chevauchement de l'aménorrhée postpartum explique presque la moitié de la différence entre le taux de prévalence contraceptive attendu et observé au Zimbabwe.

"The Puzzle of Sri Lanka"

(Continued from page 102)

importante falta de declaración del uso de métodos tradicionales en la EFSL y declaraciones más completas en encuestas posteriores. Las declaraciones de uso de métodos fueron incompletas debido al hecho de que las usuarias de métodos tradicionales no los ven como métodos de control de la fecundidad. Gran parte del aumento observado en el uso anticonceptivo entre las encuestas se debe al hecho de que las anteriores usuarias de métodos tradicionales que habían sido esterilizadas se demostraron menos reacias a declararlo.

Résumé

Le taux de prévalence contraceptive dont fait état l'Enquête de fécondité de Sri Lanka de 1975 (EFSL) est inférieur à celui auquel on aurait pu s'attendre lorsque l'on considère le faible niveau de fécondité du pays. Des études ultérieures, telles l'Enquête sur la prévalence contraceptive de 1982 et L'Enquête démographique et de santé de 1987, révèlent un taux de prévalence croissant sans que s'en trouve véritablement affecté le niveau de fécondité. Dans ces trois études, les niveaux de fécondité auxquels on aurait pu s'attendre en fonction des prévalences contraceptives signalées se sont avérés plus élevés que les taux effectifs, la divergence la plus marquée ayant toutefois été observée pour 1975.

Cette divergence apparente entre fécondité et contraception s'explique par l'importante sous-estimation dans l'EFSL du recours aux méthodes traditionnelles et par son évaluation plus précise dans les études ultérieures. Cette sous-estimation est principalement due au fait que les méthodes traditionnelles n'étaient pas perçues par leurs utilisateurs en tant que méthodes de contrôle de la fécondité. La reconnaissance du recours à ces méthodes par d'anciens utilisateurs s'étant plus tard fait stériliser et donc plus disposés à admettre ce recours explique en grande partie l'augmentation de la prévalence contraceptive observée d'une étude à l'autre.

DIGEST

Few Women in Burkina Faso Use Contraceptives, But Many Know of and Would Consider Using Them

About two-thirds of sexually active women of reproductive age in Burkina Faso's capital city have heard of a modern method of contraception, although only five percent are currently using one.[1] A survey of women in Ouagadougou revealed that 41 percent of respondents were practicing postpartum abstinence at the time of the survey, but that many did not associate the practice with family planning. The vast majority of women not using a modern method say that they might consider doing so in the future, and 70 percent of the respondents say they hope to delay their next birth or want no more children.

Survey data were collected in Ouagadougou in April and May of 1986 by 10 trained female interviewers. A total of 1,007 women aged 15–49 were selected from a random sample of households in 10 of the 30 sectors of Ouagadougou. Data were analyzed for 759 women who were 15–44 years of age and who were currently married or had a current sexual partner. Fifty-seven percent were in a monogamous marriage, 31 percent were in a polygamous marriage and 12 percent were single. The respondents' mean age was 27.7 years, 65 percent had no education and 61 percent were Muslim; they had had an average of 3.6 children, but only 2.7 were still living. Women 40–44 years of age had borne two more children, on average, than were still living at the time of the survey (7.8 and 5.8 children, respectively).

Sixty-four percent of the respondents said they had heard of one or more modern methods of contraception, although only 34 percent could name such a method without prompting. The best-known modern method was the pill, mentioned without prompting by 31 percent of the women and recognized overall by 60 percent; such methods as injectables and the IUD were rarely mentioned spontaneously (by 12 percent and 10 percent, respectively), although at least two in five Burkinabè women recognized them as methods of family planning (47 percent and 41 percent, respectively). Although 63 percent of the respondents recognized postpartum abstinence as a family planning method and 39 percent recognized periodic abstinence, only tiny proportions (one percent and four percent, respectively) volunteered these methods. According to the investigators, family planning knowledge among these women is primarily "passive recognition."

Single women were significantly more likely than married women to know of a modern method (87 percent, compared with 64 percent of women in monogamous unions and 54 percent of those in polygamous unions). In addition, respondents with a secondary education or more were far more likely to know of a modern method (96 percent) than were those with no formal education (52 percent); Christian women were significantly more likely than Muslim women to know of a method (75 percent vs. 57 percent); and women who grew up in an urban area were more likely than those raised in a rural region to know of one (71 percent vs. 52 percent).

Levels of current contraceptive use in Ouagadougou are well below knowledge levels: Only five percent of the respondents were using a modern method of contraception, with about half of these women using the pill. Christian women were almost twice as likely as Muslim women to be using a modern method (seven percent vs. four percent), and those with a secondary education or more were far more likely than other women to be doing so (21 percent vs. 2–3 percent).

Forty-one percent of the respondents, on the other hand, reported that they were practicing postpartum abstinence, and nearly 10 percent were relying on periodic abstinence. The survey data indicate that women practice postpartum abstinence for an average of 14 months. The investigators observe, though, that some respondents do not view postpartum abstinence as a method of family planning: Two out of five women who said they were practicing postpartum abstinence denied elsewhere in the interview that they had ever abstained from intercourse for several months or longer in order to avoid pregnancy. The researchers hypothesize instead that at least some respondents consider postpartum abstinence to be simply a matter of custom.

Furthermore, focus group research conducted after the survey revealed that some Burkinabè women object to postpartum abstinence. They point out that while they practice abstinence, their husbands seek sex outside of marriage. Therefore, abstinence can be both costly (because a man is expected to buy presents for his girlfriend) and dangerous (because the husband may contract a sexually transmitted disease from his extramarital partners). The women also dislike being expected to raise the children produced by their husband's extramarital liaisons.

Most of the women said they might use a contraceptive method at some time in the future: Eighty-seven percent of former users of both modern and traditional methods and 89 percent of those who had never used a method of contraception said that they might do so.

Twenty-three percent of the 659 respondents who had had at least one child reported that they did not want to have any more. These women were aged 35, on average, and had had a mean of 6.5 children. Ten percent of them were using a modern method of contraception, while 65 percent were using a traditional method. The proportion wanting no more children rose from 10 percent of those with two living children to 30 percent of those with four, 53–56 percent of those with five or six and 77 percent of those with seven or more.

Another 47 percent of the women said

they wanted more children, but at some later time. These women were 26 years old, on average, and had had a mean of 3.3 children. Six percent of them were using a modern method, while 79 percent were using a traditional method. Overall, therefore, 70 percent of the married Burkinabè women surveyed wanted either to cease or to delay childbearing. Additionally, 19 percent were uncertain whether they wanted to have a child soon, or at all.

Data on the number of additional children the respondents wanted indicated that women with four or fewer living children generally wanted families of 4–5 children, a smaller number than is usually assumed to be desired in Africa: Those with no living children, for example, desired an average of 3.9 children; those with two living children wanted 2.3 more; and those with four living children wanted 0.8 additional children, on average.

The investigators observe that family planning information and services only became available in Ouagadougou in 1985, and that the program's newness may help to explain the finding that most survey respondents lacked detailed knowledge of modern contraceptives. Also, factors related to service delivery may have been at least partly responsible for low levels of current use. For example, the government maternal and child health centers that dispensed contraceptives were often short of trained staff and had to provide a range of health services besides family planning. Furthermore, until 1988, prospective users of hormonal methods had to obtain complex and expensive blood tests, which probably discouraged women from using these methods.

The researchers conclude that Burkinabè women have a "fairly widespread but vague knowledge of family planning, . . . a strong desire to space and limit births and positive attitudes toward future family planning use. Future contraceptive prevalence will depend on both the degree to which the observed motivation is transferred into action and the degree to which services become truly available and accessible to all those who want them."—*M. Klitsch*

Reference

1. T. McGinn et al., "Family Planning in Burkina Faso: Results of a Survey," *Studies in Family Planning*, **20:**325, 1989.

Tunisian Fertility Fell in the 1980s, Age at Marriage Increased and Infant and Child Mortality Declined

Forty percent of currently married women in Tunisia are using a modern method of contraception; this appears to be the highest level for any Arab or African country, according to the 1988 Tunisian Demographic Health Survey (DHS).[1] The total fertility rate in Tunisia decreased during the 1980s, from 4.9 to 4.3 lifetime births per woman for the periods 1982–1984 and 1985–1988, respectively. During the last three decades, the average age at first marriage has steadily risen among Tunisian women, from 19.4 years in 1956 to a current average of nearly 24. Largely because of improvements in sanitation and public health programs, the infant mortality rate has decreased from 200 deaths per 1,000 births in the 1950s to 50 per 1,000 at the time of the survey.

Marriage and Fertility

The Tunisian DHS is based on the results of interviews with 4,184 ever-married women aged 15–49. Almost all of the women interviewed were currently married at the time of the survey; only four percent were widowed, divorced or separated. Age at first marriage has been steadily rising in Tunisia, from an average of 19.4 in 1956 to 20.7 in 1966, 22.5 in 1975 and almost 24 in the late 1980s. The median age at first marriage has increased from 19.9 among women aged 45–49 to 22.8 among women aged 25–29. Among women aged 25–34, those in urban areas tend to marry about two years later than their rural counterparts, and women with at least some secondary education marry about three years later than do women with no education. (The legal age for marriage was raised from 15 years for women and 18 years for men in 1956 to 17 and 20 years, respectively, in 1964.)

Besides age at marriage, the DHS measured other factors that influence fertility, including breastfeeding, postpartum amenorrhea and abstinence, among mothers of 2,649 infants younger than 35 months. Nearly all Tunisian mothers breastfeed during the first two months after birth. The average duration is 15.5 months; 92 percent of women are still breastfeeding after three months and 76 percent after seven months postpartum. Women in urban areas breastfeed for shorter intervals than do rural women (12.7 vs. 18.2 months, on average), and those with secondary education breastfeed about half as long as do mothers with no education (9.8 vs. 18.2 months). For most women, menses return within one year of giving birth (7.2 months, on average). Forty-nine percent are amenorrheic for at least five months and 20 percent for 13 months, while postpartum abstinence is practiced for an average of 1.8 months. Based on these data, the DHS estimates that 34 percent of the women interviewed were still protected from pregnancy by amenorrhea or abstinence eight months after delivery.

Between 1982–1984 and 1985–1988, Tunisia's total fertility rate (TFR) dropped from 4.9 to 4.3. The TFR is lower among urban women than among rural women (3.4 vs. 5.7), and the decline in fertility since 1982 has been more pronounced among urban women than among rural women (17 percent vs. six percent). By region, the mainly rural, central-west part of the country has the highest fertility rate (6.0); in contrast, Tunis and the northeast area have the lowest rates (3.1 and 3.9, respectively). The mean number of children ever born to women aged 40–49 declined from 6.9 in 1980 to 5.8 in 1988.

Women's level of education is strongly linked to fertility rates and to the decline in fertility since 1982. Women with no education have a TFR of 5.1, compared with 3.9 among those with primary schooling and 2.5 among those with secondary or higher education. The decline in fertility between 1982 and 1988 among women in these three groups was six percent, 12 percent and 25 percent, respectively.

Contraceptive Knowledge and Practice

During the mid-1960s, Tunisia developed a strong family planning program to complement government efforts to improve maternal and child health. According to the DHS, there are 1,137 public centers offering contraceptive services, 75 percent of which use mobile units to reach more remote areas. The government's information program appears to be reaching most of the people: Sixty-four percent of all ever-married women said they had heard about family planning on the radio, on television or in meetings.

Knowledge of contraceptive methods is widespread among Tunisian women: Ninety-nine percent of ever-married women know of at least one modern method, 96 percent know about the pill and female sterilization, 95 percent know about the IUD and 87 percent know of abortion. Lesser known modern methods include condoms (66 percent), vaginal methods (61 percent), injectables (59 percent), male sterilization (17 percent) and implants (16 percent). Ninety-one percent of women know of at least one traditional method; about half know of periodic abstinence and half know about withdrawal.

Knowledge of these methods is about the same for currently married women as it is for ever-married women, and the high levels of knowledge persist even when women are categorized by age, region and level of education. Knowledge of sources of the methods is only slightly lower than knowledge of the methods themselves.

When asked about potential problems of all methods, women were most likely to mention health risks associated with the pill (52 percent), the IUD (38 percent), female sterilization (19 percent) and injectables (15 percent). However, women considered modern methods (except vaginal methods) to be very reliable; the pill and implants were the reversible methods rated effective by the most women. Periodic abstinence was the method most frequently cited as ineffective and difficult to use (by 18 percent and six percent, respectively), and condoms and withdrawal were considered the least agreeable methods (by 29 percent and 26 percent, respectively). In Tunisia, which is a Muslim country, fewer than one percent of women cited religious reasons as a problem in using any method except female sterilization (seven percent) and male sterilization (five percent).

Ever-use of contraception among ever-married women shows an increase of 12 percent from the 1983 Contraceptive Prevalence Survey until the 1988 DHS. In 1988, 67 percent of ever-married women had used a method at some time and 61 percent had ever used a modern method, compared with 60 and 56 percent, respectively, in 1983. The greatest increase in use is shown for the IUD and the pill (25 percent and 21 percent, respectively), and these are the two most common methods (ever used by 36 percent and 34 percent of women, respectively), followed by periodic abstinence (16 percent), withdrawal (15 percent), vaginal methods or female sterilization (11 percent) and the condom (nine percent). Injectables and implants have been used by only 2.5 percent and 0.2 percent, respectively.

The Tunisian DHS also assessed knowledge and use of abortion, which has been legal (during the first trimester) since 1973. Knowledge of abortion was widespread: Eighty seven percent of ever-married women knew about it and 80 percent knew where abortions were provided. Although very few women thought that an abortion would be difficult to obtain (0.1 percent), 31 percent mentioned health risks associated with the procedure and 20 percent thought religion would be an obstacle to having an abortion. Thirteen percent of ever-married women had had an abortion at some time.

Most Tunisian women want at least three children, and very few (less than four percent) use a method of contraception before the birth of their first child. However, the proportion of women who use a method when they have no children or just one child has increased, from six percent among those aged 45–49 to 38 percent among those aged 20–24.

Fifty percent of currently married women aged 15–49 are using a method of birth control, and 40 percent are using a modern method. The three most common methods are the IUD, female sterilization and the pill (used by 17 percent, 12 percent and nine percent, respectively). The proportion of women using these three methods—37 percent—is higher than for any other Arab or African country for which data are available (from the DHS, World Fertility Surveys or Contraceptive Prevalence Surveys). The median age at sterilization is 33 years in Tunisia; 58 percent of the women have the operation before they reach 35. The most common traditional method is periodic abstinence, practiced by six percent of women.

When use of only modern methods is examined, contraceptive practice is found to increase with age and number of children; it is higher among women living in urban areas and among those with more education. Women aged 40–44 are five times more likely to use a method than are those aged 15–19 (50 percent vs. 10 percent). Women with four or more children are nearly twice as likely to use these methods as are those with one or no children (48 percent vs. 27 percent). A similar variation is seen between use among women living in Tunis compared with those living in the rural, central-west region (52 percent vs. 27 percent). Finally, among women with no schooling, 37 percent were using a method, compared with 45 percent of those with secondary or higher education.

Even though the prevalence of contraceptive use is high among currently married Tunisian women (50 percent), there are indications of unmet need for family planning. Among currently married women not using a method, 45 percent (20 percent of all married women) say they intend to use contraceptives in the future; 45 percent do not intend to use a method and 10 percent are uncertain. However, 39 percent of all married women are considered potential users of contraceptives, since they were not using a method and either said they wanted to space their next birth (17 percent) or did not want any more children (21 percent). Among all married women, nearly 60 percent say they do not want any more children and more than one in five would like to delay their next birth for at least two years. The number of children desired by Tunisian women has dropped from 4.1 in 1978 to 3.5 in 1988.

Maternal and Child Health

The Tunisian DHS found that of the 4,435 births occurring during the five years before the survey, mothers received prenatal care in 58 percent of cases, and more than half of this care was provided by midwives. In addition, mothers of just 33 percent of infants born during that time had received a tetanus vaccine. Sixty-nine percent of births were assisted by a medically trained person; midwives were the most-common birth attendant, assisting 53 percent of all births.

Infant mortality in Tunisia has decreased steadily, from 200 deaths per 1,000 births in the 1950s to 90 per 1,000 in 1980, 64 per 1,000 during the period 1978–1982 and 50 per 1,000 during 1983–1988. The decline is largely attributed to improvements in sanitation and to other public health efforts. Of the 4,211 children under five included in the survey, 70 percent had vaccination cards. Among those aged 2–5 who had cards, vaccine coverage was above 90 percent for tuberculosis, diphtheria-tetanus, polio and measles; 87 percent had received all recommended doses of every vaccine. Diarrhea remains the most common pediatric illness in Tunisia; 23 percent of infants aged 6–11 months had had an episode of diarrhea within 24 hours of the survey. Fifty-seven percent of mothers questioned knew about oral rehydration therapy; these women were more likely to be educated, urban and from the central-eastern part of the country.—*M. Witwer*

Reference

1. T. Aloui, M. Ayad and H. Fourati, *Enquête Démographique et de Santé en Tunisie 1988*, Office National de la Famille et de la Population, Tunis, Tunisia, and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., Columbia, Md., 1989.

Children Under Age Five Account for Half of All Deaths in Bolivia, with Diarrhea the Main Cause

In Bolivia, nearly one-half of all deaths occur among children under age five, a proportion more closely resembling that of Africa than that of Latin America. In 1986, the infant mortality rate in Bolivia was estimated to be 102 deaths per 1,000 infants under one year of age; the child mortality rate was 147 per 1,000 children under five. Furthermore, child mortality levels are a full two-thirds higher in rural areas than in urban areas. Diarrhea, usually associated with malnutrition, is the leading cause of child morbidity and mortality in Bolivia. These are some of the main points of a report examining the determinants of child survival in Bolivia that was published by the Bolivian National Population Council (Consejo Nacional de Población, or CONAPO) and the Research Triangle Institute.[1]

Mortality among children younger than five years old accounted for 49 percent of Bolivia's total mortality in 1986. This proportion approaches that of Africa in 1985 (53 percent) and is considerably higher than that of Latin America as a whole (34 percent). The corresponding proportion among the developed countries is three percent.

In 1986, the infant mortality rate in Bolivia was 102 per 1,000, while the child mortality rate was 147 per 1,000. These overall rates mask pronounced urban-rural differentials. For example, in 1986 the infant mortality rate was 83 per 1,000 in urban areas and 120 per 1,000 in rural areas; rates of child mortality in urban and rural areas were 110 per 1,000 and 184 per 1,000, respectively.

Infant and child mortality closely reflect conditions of nutrition, hygiene, maternal reproductive health and access to health care. Data from the Encuesta Nacional de Demografía y Salud (ENDSA), conducted in 1989 as part of the Demographic and Health Surveys project, indicate that morbidity and mortality levels peak around the time of weaning, when toddlers are deprived of the immunological benefits of breast milk just as they come into contact with unsanitary environments. For example, the proportion of infants who had diarrhea in the two weeks before the survey peaked at roughly 40 percent among babies aged 6–11 months and those 12–23 months, a proportion much higher than among either those aged 0–5 months (24 percent) or those aged 24–35 months (29 percent). Diarrheal infections are the most common cause of child morbidity and mortality in Bolivia; on an annual basis, the average Bolivian child spends one month suffering from diarrhea and another two recovering from it. Oral rehydration therapy reduces diarrheal mortality substantially, but among children who had diarrhea in the last two weeks before the survey, only one-fifth of babies aged 6–11 months and slightly over one-third of those aged 12–23 months had received treatment.

Toddlers who have been recently weaned are also at increased risk for respiratory diseases, the second most common childhood illness in Bolivia. Environmental and nutritional vulnerability to these ailments is aggravated by the lack of adequate medical care: According to the 1989 ENDSA, less than one-third of all children under five who were suffering from coughs had access to medical care.

According to the authors of the report, the 15 national immunization campaigns conducted to date have succeeded in lowering the incidence of polio, measles and whooping cough in Bolivia, but very large urban-rural differentials in coverage persist. As of 1987, roughly three-quarters of Bolivian two-year-olds had been vaccinated against measles and two-thirds had been immunized against tuberculosis, but only about one-half had received the complete series of polio and diphtheria-pertussis-tetanus shots (DPT), which are given in three doses. The authors note several likely explanations for the reduced coverage of polio and DPT immunization: Parents often do not understand that three doses are needed; the child may die before receiving all three shots; vaccination posts may be inaccessible; and the program tends to be inefficient, as demonstrated in a lack of supplies and follow-up.

Because of high levels of omission and distortion, national mortality data based on vital registration are extremely unreliable. Bolivia's National Statistics Institute has estimated that the proportion of deaths that went unrecorded ranged from 61 percent to 77 percent for the period 1976–1982. In an attempt to gain a more accurate picture, from 1982 to 1984 the health ministry's Maternal and Child Health Division conducted a household-based survey in urban areas (divided into three groups according to size of the population), with support from physicians and hospitals. Households were visited biweekly over one year and all births, illnesses and deaths were followed and recorded.

Fully 87 percent of the deaths detected in the survey were preventable and technically treatable. The authors of the report stress the all-important contribution of malnutrition to child mortality: Even though malnutrition was rarely cited as the actual cause of death, the pathologies reported in the survey revealed a strong correlation between the fatality of the diseases (intestinal and respiratory) and the degree of malnutrition of the child. Sixty percent of the children included in the household survey were normally nourished; 30 percent showed signs of malnutrition; and 14 percent were severely malnourished. The rate of severe malnutrition was highest—17 percent—among those aged one year, the age at which many children have been recently weaned. Further, nearly one-quarter of the one-year-olds who lived in the smallest cities (6,000–19,000 inhabitants) were severely malnourished.

Malnutrition often begins to affect a child's health even before birth. Babies born to undernourished mothers are at increased risk of prematurity and low birth weight; the mothers are at increased risk of complications in pregnancy, delivery and the puerperium. In this context, the chances for child survival are improved by prolonged breastfeeding, since both the period of immunologic protection and the contraceptive effects of lactation are extended, resulting in better protection against disease and longer intervals between births. However, data from the 1989 ENDSA indicate that one-quarter of infants aged 10–11 months and over one-half of those aged 16–17 months are currently not being breastfed, leading the authors to warn that a further decline in breastfeeding duration could have damaging effects.

Short birth intervals, high parity and high-risk pregnancies (those among women at either extreme of the reproductive period) all significantly increase the infant mortality risk. According to the 1989 ENDSA, only 12 percent of Bolivian women of reproductive age who are in union are using a modern method of contraception. The authors argue that improved birth spacing—achieved through effective contraceptive practice—will be essential if the current high rates of infant mortality are to decline.

The authors conclude that the possibilities of survival among Bolivian children are determined to a large extent by "access

DIGEST

to basic sanitation, to adequate nutrition and to education for the parents." Bolivia's high mortality rates are closely related to poverty and to the sharp inequalities in the distribution of resources and access to health services. Despite the relative success of massive vaccination campaigns, their impact has been unevenly felt in rural areas, which are still vastly underserved. The authors affirm that the prevalence of breastfeeding is closely linked to an infant's risk of illness and mortality. They also assert that malnutrition, with its roots in poverty and links to intestinal and respiratory illnesses, is the underlying cause of infant and child mortality in Bolivia.—*L. Remez*

Reference

1. S. Rance, O. Wolowyna and G. Pinto Aguirre, *Salud y Población: Supervivencia Infantil*, Consejo Nacional de Población and Research Triangle Institute, La Paz, 1989.

Many Births in Egypt Are Unwanted, Despite Wide Use of Modern Methods

Contraceptive knowledge among currently married Egyptian women is almost universal, and the contraceptive use rate is 38 percent, with almost complete reliance on modern methods, according to the 1988 Egypt Demographic and Health Survey (EDHS) for which 8,911 ever-married women 15–49 were interviewed.[1] The survey also found that couples tend to initiate childbearing soon after marriage, and women have an average of 4–5 lifetime births. However, 22 percent of the births in the five years before the survey were unwanted, and Egyptian women's level of current fertility is substantially greater than their ideal family size. Fertility rates are much higher in rural areas than in urban areas, as are rates of infant mortality.

According to the 1986 census, Egypt's total population is 48 million; this represents an increase of 10 million since the 1976 census. Twenty-one million people live in Lower Egypt (the area of the Nile delta), 17 million in Upper Egypt (the Nile Valley), and nine million in the urban governorates. Seventy-two percent of those living in Lower Egypt and 68 percent of those in Upper Egypt—most of the population—live in rural areas. Illiteracy is almost twice as high among females (62 percent) as it is among males (38 percent). Muslims make up 94 percent of the population; the remaining six percent is Christian.

Marriage and Fertility

Two-thirds of all Egyptian women aged 15–49 interviewed for the EDHS were currently married; 30 percent had never been married and the remaining five percent were widowed or divorced. Two percent or less of women 35 and older were never married. The number of divorced women peaked at under three percent in the 30–34 age-group. Sixty-six percent of all urban women 15–49 had been married, compared with 75 percent of all rural women.

One-fifth of Egyptian women were wed for the first time before the legal age of 16, but very early marriage is becoming less common: Thirty-five percent of women aged 45–49, but only 15 percent of those aged 20–24, married before age 16. Still, nearly half of all Egyptian women married before age 20, and two-thirds before age 25. Rural women marry considerably earlier than urban women: The median age at first marriage is 17 in rural areas and 20 in urban areas. Education has a strong effect on age at first marriage: The median age is 25 for women who have completed secondary school or higher, but only 17 for women with no education.

The total fertility rate (TFR) for the five-year period preceding the survey is 4.7 lifetime births per woman. For the 1986–1988 period the TFR is 4.4 births per woman, nearly 10 percent lower than the TFR for the 1983–1985 period (4.8 births per woman). Urban fertility is lower than rural fertility: Urban women can expect to have two fewer children than rural women (3.7 vs. 5.7), based on fertility over the five-year period prior to the survey. Likewise, the TFR is substantially lower (3.3 lifetime births per woman) in the urban governorates than in Lower Egypt (4.8 births per woman) or Upper Egypt (5.6 births per woman). The highest TFR in any region is found in rural Upper Egypt (6.4 births per woman). However, the rural TFR for the 1986–1988 period (5.4 births per woman) is 12 percent lower than that for the 1983–1985 period (6.1 births per woman), while the urban TFR declined by only seven percent between the same periods (from 3.8 to 3.5 births per woman); hence, fertility may be declining more rapidly in rural areas than in urban areas. Education has a strong influence on fertility levels: For the five-year period before the survey, the highest fertility (5.7 births) is found among women with no education; among women who have completed primary school, however, the TFR is 3.8 lifetime births per woman, and it is 3.2 among women with a secondary school education.

Roughly half of all current births are to women aged 20–29; the median age at first birth for women 25–49 is about two years higher (21) than the median age at first marriage for this group (19). About one in eight women aged 45–49 had their first birth before age 16, compared to one in 10 women 25–34 and one in 20 women aged 20–24. There is a difference of about three years between the median age at first birth for urban women (22 years) and rural women (19 years). Education has a strong effect on age at first birth: The median increases from age 19 for women with no education to age 25 for women who have had at least a secondary education.

Egyptian infants are breastfed an average of 17 months. More than two-thirds of those born one year before the survey were still being breastfed, as were 30 percent of those approaching age two but fewer than one in 10 of those older than 24 months. However, breastfeeding does not provide reliable contraconception for Egyptian women. For example, at 6–7 months postpartum, the proportion of women who were amenorrheic was only half the proportion who were breastfeeding, and at 14–15 months the proportion who were amenorrheic was only one-quarter the size of the proportion who were breasfeeding.

Contraceptive Knowledge and Use

Almost all ever-married Egyptian women (98 percent) know of at least one contraceptive method; modern methods are more widely known than traditional ones (98 percent vs. 67 percent). The pill is the most recognized modern method (97 percent), followed by the IUD (93 percent), injectables (61 percent) and female sterilization (54 percent). Prolonged breastfeeding is the most widely known traditional method, with the proportion recognizing this as a method of fertility control (65 percent) greater than for any modern method other than the pill and IUD. There are no significant differences in contraceptive knowledge according to age, residence, education or work status, with 95 percent of women in nearly all subgroups able to name both a modern method and a source of contraceptive methods.

Mass media and public information campaigns, particularly on television and radio, are conducted widely in Egypt as part of its family planning program; the EDHS assessed the impact of these messages. Television reached more women than did radio; only 55 percent of currently married Egyptian women listen to the radio daily, compared with about 75 percent who watch television daily. Thirty-two percent of currently married women had heard a family planning message on the radio; 69 percent had seen one on television. Still, only 54 percent of rural women had seen a television broadcast about family planning in the month before the survey, compared with 84 percent of urban women; this may be partly because television is watched less in rural areas.

Fifty-seven percent of ever-married women have ever used a contraceptive method; while 56 percent have used a modern method, only 11 percent have used a traditional method. The highest level of ever-use is found among women 35–39 (70 percent) and the lowest among women 15–19 (12 percent). One-third of ever-users (20 percent of all ever-married women) initiate family planning use when they have one child, and one-quarter (13 percent of ever-married women) begin when they have two children; in contrast, only a very small number of Egyptian women begin using family planning before their first birth (one percent). However, among ever-users, the proportion who begin to practice family planning when they have one child increases from less than 14 percent among 45–49-year-olds to 44 percent among 25–29-year-olds.

Of currently married women, 38 percent are using a family planning method; almost all of these methods are modern. Fifteen percent use the pill and 16 percent use the IUD, while less than five percent use other modern methods and fewer than three percent use traditional methods. In urban areas, the contraceptive prevalence rate (52 percent) is more than double the prevalence rate in rural areas (25 percent). The IUD is the most commonly used method in urban areas (by 23 percent of currently married women); the pill is most often used in rural areas (by 12 percent). Method use peaks among the 35–39-year-olds, with 53 percent of currently married women in this age-group using a method. Data from the Egypt Fertility Survey (conducted in 1980) and the Egypt Contraceptive Prevalence Survey (conducted in 1984) show that contraceptive use has increased steadily since 1980 at a rate of about 25 percent every four years.

There is no strong preference for the pill or the IUD in any age-group. IUD use slightly exceeds pill use among 25–29-year-olds (18 percent vs. 15 percent), and there is some tendency for reliance on condoms and female sterilization to increase with age (although sterilization is not widely available or practiced in Egypt). The rate of current use increases sharply with parity: less than one percent among women with no children, compared with 23 percent among those with one child, 48 percent among women with three children and 44 percent among those with four or more children. Three out of every four current users obtain their contraceptive method from a private doctor or a pharmacy. Eighty-seven percent of pill users obtained oral contraceptives at a pharmacy; in contrast, 37 percent of IUD users obtained their method at a government facility, 43 percent from a private doctor and 17 percent at a pharmacy (for later insertion, most likely by a doctor).

Sixty percent of currently married women say they want no more children, 12 percent want more children later and 12 percent want more children soon. Ninety-five percent of currently married women without children say they definitely want a child, whereas just 15 percent of women with three children and five percent of women with five children definitely want another. Forty-nine percent of women from upper Egypt want no more children, compared with 65 percent or more from other areas and regions. Ten percent of women want no more children but say their husband wants more. In addition, five percent of the women surveyed want more children but report that their husbands do not. Forty-nine percent of currently married nonusers plan to practice contraception in the future, and around half of these women say they will begin to do so in the next year. Forty-two percent do not intend to use a method, and 10 percent are not sure if they will or not.

Even though the survey data indicate that at current rates, Egyptian women can expect to bear 4–5 children in their reproductive years, their ideal family size is smaller (2.9 children). Over one-third (36 percent) of ever-married women state a preference for a two-child family, and another one-quarter (26 percent) prefer a three-child family. Less than six percent of ever-married women express a desire for five or more children. The more children a woman has, the more children she is likely to prefer, and the more her current parity is likely to exceed her ideal family size: Ideal family size increases from 2.6 among women with one child to 3.4 among those with six or more children. More than one-third of ever-married Egyptian women state a preference for fewer children than they actually have. The largest mean ideal family size is found among women from rural Upper Egypt, who express a desire for 3.6 children; considering that their total fertility rate is 6.4 births per women, women in rural Upper Egypt are, on average, having nearly three children more than they would consider ideal.

Of women who had a birth in the 12 months before the EDHS, almost one-quarter report that the birth was not wanted; 16 percent say that it was wanted but at a later time. Ninety-seven percent of first and second births were wanted, although 14 percent of these births were considered mistimed. Of third or subsequent births, 37 percent were unwanted, and about 16 percent were mistimed. Using data from the five years before the survey, the authors of the survey report note that 22 percent of births in that time period were unwanted; they calculate a total "wanted" fertility rate of 3.6 births per women (compared with Egypt's actual average of 4.7 births per woman) and suggest that Egyptian women are currently having one child more than they actually want.

Forty-seven percent of currently married Egyptian women (58 percent of rural women and 36 percent of urban women) want to limit childbearing or space their next birth, but are not practicing contraception. Among currently married rural woman, 36 percent want no more children and are not using a method and 22 percent want to delay their next birth for two or more years but are not practicing contraception. Among women who want to limit or space births but are not using a contraceptive method, only about 40 percent plan to use one in the future.

Maternal and Infant Health

Egypt's infant and childhood mortality rates have decreased substantially since the 1970s. In the period 1974–1978, the infant mortality rate was 124 infant deaths per 1,000 births; by the 1984–1988 period, that rate was 73 deaths per 1,000. In 1974–1978, 203 of every 1,000 children died before reaching their fifth birthday, but by 1984–1988, this rate had dropped to 102 per 1,000. However, there are still substantial differences in infant and child mortality according to residence: In rural areas, the rate of under-five mortality is 164 deaths per 1,000 births, compared to 89 per 1,000 in urban areas. In addition, under-five mortality rates are highest among children born to mothers with no education (161 deaths per 1,000 births) and lowest among children of mothers with a secondary or higher education (49 deaths per 1,000 births).

Fifty-three percent of women aged

15–49 who gave birth in the five years before the survey received prenatal care, almost all of them from a doctor. However, only 42 percent of rural women received any prenatal care, compared with 69 percent of urban women. Of women with no education, 42 percent received prenatal care, compared with 81 percent of women with a secondary education or higher. Seventy-seven percent of all births took place in the mother's home or another home, while only 23 percent occurred in a hospital or clinic. Traditional birth attendants assisted at 58 percent of deliveries; doctors presided at only 28 percent.

Ninety percent of children under five were reported by their mothers to have had received at least some immunizations, but birth records for 60 percent of the children 12–23 months of age show the proportion fully immunized to be 54 percent among urban children and 20 percent among rural children. Diarrhea, one of the leading causes of infant and child death in Egypt, had affected 41 percent of Egyptian children in the 5–7 months before the survey, and 16 percent in the week before the survey. However, 97 percent of mothers knew about oral rehydration therapy, and 29 percent had treated the most recent episode with oral rehydration salts. Thirty-one percent of Egyptian children aged 3–36 months (35 percent of rural children and 26 percent of urban children) can be considered moderately to severely stunted, suffering a slowing of skeletal growth resulting from chronic malnourishment.—*R. Turner*

Reference

1. Egypt National Population Council and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., *Egypt Demographic and Health Survey, 1988*, Cairo, Egypt, and Columbia, Md., October 1989.

Women in Singapore Find New Hormonal Implants Preferable to Injectables

Women who use the contraceptive implant rate their method higher than do women using injectable hormonal contraceptives, according to a study conducted in Singapore, and are substantially more likely than users of injectables to say they would use their method again.[1] In addition, women relying on implants are far less interested in switching to injectables than those using injectables are in switching to implants, and 41 percent of the women using the implant can think of no drawbacks to their method, compared with 16 percent of the women using injectables.

Between January and December 1988, researchers interviewed a group of 200 women 20–45 years of age who had visited the family planning clinic at Singapore's National University Hospital—75 current users and 25 former users of the NORPLANT® hormonal implant and 75 current users and 25 former users of injectables. All were married, had had at least one child and had used their method for at least one year. All were asked open-ended questions on implants and injectables.

Overall, the users of injectables and implants were of comparable age (31–32, on average) and parity (about two lifetime births). However, users of injectables were more likely to be under 30 years old (51 percent) than were users of implants (29 percent), and to have had only one child (31 percent vs. 15 percent). In addition, users of injectables were twice as likely as implant users to report wanting more children (38 percent vs. 18 percent). There were no significant differences in the two groups' ethnic composition.

Forty-one percent of the implant users said the most important reason for their using the implant was that it lasts for several years, while 35 percent mentioned this as the second most important reason. Twenty-nine percent cited the method's effectiveness as their most important reason for use, and 28 percent gave this reason as second most important. Furthermore, 27 percent cited as the implant's most important advantage their not having to remember to use it. In comparison, 92 percent of those relying on injectables thought the method's most important advantage was their not having to remember to use it, while 53 percent said its effectiveness was the method's second most important advantage.

Forty-eight percent of the implant users said that increased menstrual bleeding and spotting was the most important drawback of the method; 11 percent complained of other drawbacks, such as the absence of menses, the need for a surgical procedure for insertion and removal, a weight increase or headaches, but 41 percent mentioned no important drawbacks. Sixty-two percent of women who were using injectables said that increased menstrual bleeding or spotting was the most important disadvantage of the method, while another 14 percent mentioned the need to have another injection every three months; only 16 percent said there were no drawbacks to injectable use. Nearly all of the implant users said they had told friends and relatives about their experience with the implant.

Of the 75 current users of the implant, 69 percent said they planned to continue using the method after their current implants needed replacing, while only eight percent definitely did not expect to continue and 23 percent were uncertain. Among the women who were not planning to continue using the implants, more than 60 percent said they wanted to have another child, and most of the others gave as their reason that they were old and would reach menopause soon. No current implant users reported that they intended to use injectables soon; the vast majority attributed their decision to the fact that a new injection is required every three months.

On the other hand, only 31 percent of the 75 current users of injectables planned to continue using this method. Of those who expected to discontinue injectable use, 42 percent said they wanted to have a child, 35 percent said they were considering switching to implants and 23 percent were dissatisfied with the menstrual irregularities they experienced while using injectables. Overall, 60 percent of current users of injectables expected to use implants in the future, nearly all of them citing the convenience of implants' relatively longer duration.

Among the 50 former users of implants and injectables, nine in each group said they had discontinued use because of menstrual bleeding or spotting, and 14 former implant users and eight former users of injectables had stopped because they wanted to become pregnant. Eight women who had relied on injectables discontinued because their menses had ceased, whereas two former implant users attributed discontinuation to side effects such as breast nodules or dizziness. Nonetheless, former implant users were significantly more likely than former users of injectables to say they would return to using their method in the future (56 percent vs. 20 percent). In addition, 56 percent of the former users of injectables said they would consider using implants in the future, while no former implant users were interested in switching to injectables.— *M. Klitsch*

Reference

1. K. Singh, O. A. C. Viegas and S. S. Ratnam, "Attitudes Towards Contraceptive Implants and Injectables Among Present and Former Users in Singapore," *Journal of Biosocial Science*, **22**:1, 1990.

Letters from Readers

Freedom of Choice

[James] Trussell and [Laurence] Grummer-Strawn, the authors of "Contraceptive Failure of the Ovulation Method of Periodic Abstinence" in the March issue of *International Family Planning Perspectives* [16:5, 1990], deduce correctly that failure to observe the ovulation method rules for pregnancy avoidance leads to unplanned pregnancy, a probability that is high with serious infraction of the rules. However, their conclusion that natural family planning is a way of life implies that "ordinary" people either can't or won't want to use it. This perception is heightened when the authors add that couples must be counseled about the serious risk of imperfect use.

Trussell and Grummer-Strawn confined their analysis to the World Health Organization (WHO) clinical trial of the ovulation method because the training factors are well documented. However, other natural family planning acceptor studies have analyzed ordinary users from many populations. Two of our papers showed effectiveness rates competitive with those of other family planning methods.* The discontinuation rates were one-third of discontinuations for reversible contraceptive methods in the index country. Neither education nor religion was a significant predictor of acceptance, but slightly older age (29) and previous contraceptive use (oral contraceptives) militated toward more consistent use of natural family planning. Perhaps it requires a certain amount of time and (sometimes, negative) experience with other contraceptive methods to establish a solid commitment to natural family planning.

It would be a mistake to deprive people of freedom of choice in family planning by emphasizing risk factors and thereby persuading providers not to offer natural family planning. The low number of imperfect use cycles and the high continuation rates associated with the ovulation method suggest that an emphasis on the benefits of natural family planning might be more appropriate.

Hanna Klaus, Executive Director
Natural Family Planning Center
of Washington, D.C., Inc.

On Computing Failure Rates

The article by Trussell and Grummer-Strawn appears to support the claims of ovulation method proponents that the method does a good job of ascertaining the fertile and infertile times of the menstrual cycle. Among participants in the WHO trial, abstinence during the fertile time resulted in a very low pregnancy rate; relations during the fertile time resulted in the expected pregnancy rate for any given cycle. According to the Couple to Couple League's chief medical adviser, Konald A. Prem, of the University of Minnesota, the probability that relations during the fertile time in any given cycle will result in pregnancy is about 30 percent; Trussell and Grummer-Strawn report a probability of 28 percent.

The authors emphasize that there is a high risk of unplanned pregnancy when couples have relations during stress cycles and hypothesize that "stress delays ovulation but not the estimated peak fecund day. . . ." In the field of natural family planning, this is commonly known as the double-peak syndrome. After an initial "peak day," the mucus appears to dry up for several days and then reappears. However, in the charted cycles in which I have observed this phenomenon, the second mucus patch is very short, generally lasting about three days. Thus, even if the woman detects the beginning of the second patch, sperm deposited the day before still would have a good chance of causing pregnancy. This possibility is one of the reasons why many couples prefer the cross-checking sympto-thermal method of natural family planning. In cycles in which ovulation may be delayed by stress, a couple can guard against misinterpretation of the mucus data by observing the woman's temperature pattern, which will not show a rise until after ovulation occurs.

The authors admit that their data show no relationship between coital frequency and unplanned pregnancy and yet stubbornly hold to their hypothesis that there must be such a correlation. A simpler explanation of the existing data is the very common postovulation "honeymoon" phenomenon of resuming relations after a period of abstinence.

Two things are particularly troubling about this article. First, it appears that natural methods of family planning are being singled out for a unique way of determining user-effectiveness rates, which is simply unfair. If the focus of attention is going to be on not following the rules during the fertile time, then the same standard must be applied in the same way to users of other methods. The results will be identical if users of barrier methods fail to use them during the fertile time. However, the authors' method of computing failure rates makes the pill and the IUD look better by comparison [with natural methods of family planning], and one has to wonder if that is not the overall intention.

Second, the authors, although they had access to primary data, failed to ask and to answer one of the big questions in the field of natural family planning: What is the unplanned pregnancy rate when

---

*H. Klaus, M. H. Labbok and D. Barker, "Characteristics of Ovulation Method Acceptors: A Cross-Cultural Assessment," *Studies in Family Planning*, **19**:299, 1988; and M. H. Labbok, H. Klaus and D. Barker, "Factors Related to Ovulation Method Efficacy in Three Programs: Bangladesh, Kenya and Korea," *Contraception*, **37**:577, 1988.

couples follow the rules for the period before ovulation, but push them to the limit? That is, when couples consistently have relations on the last dry day, what is the probability of conception? A second and refined question: Does the unplanned pregnancy rate among those who have mucus patches of at least five days differ from the rate among those whose mucus patches are shorter?

John F. Kippley, President
Couple to Couple League

The Authors Reply:

We agree with Klaus's conclusion that "it would be a mistake to deprive people of freedom of choice." Unlike Klaus, we believe that for freedom to be authentic, it must be well informed. Informed choice requires that family planning practitioners provide accurate information on safety and efficacy about all methods, including the fact that the ovulation method has high efficacy when used perfectly but that imperfect use incurs a high risk of becoming pregnant.

Most people choose not to rely on periodic abstinence[*] because—contrary to Klaus's assertion—the failure rate among typical users is high compared with failure rates for other methods[†] and because it requires continual monitoring of physiological symptoms and lengthy abstinence from coitus (in the WHO trial, for about half of each menstrual cycle).[‡] For these reasons, we agree with Josef Roetzer that "natural contraception regulation" is a way of life. This conclusion in no way implies that "ordinary" people cannot or will not use periodic abstinence.

We used data from the WHO clinical trial not because the "training factors are well documented," but because this trial is the only one that collected information on perfect or imperfect use during each cycle. Finally, we emphasize that a relatively small fraction of cycles of imperfect use does not indicate overall efficacy of periodic abstinence; in the WHO trial, imperfect use in only 11 percent of cycles resulted in one-fifth of all women becoming pregnant within one year of use.

In response to Kippley's letter, we maintain our hypothesis that coital frequency is a determinant of contraceptive failure. First, unless the risk per exposure of an event occurring is zero, it logically follows that the more times one is exposed, the greater is the probability that the event will occur. Kippley's honeymoon hypothesis could explain the observed lack of association between coital frequency and pregnancy if, and only if, the number of acts of intercourse that could result in pregnancy is constant across cycles, regardless of the total number of acts. While this possibility cannot be evaluated with the available data, we find it far less plausible than the hypothesis that acts of intercourse were underreported in the WHO trial. Second, the evidence for underreporting seems overwhelming. Conception rates per cycle day are much higher in the WHO trial than in other studies, and the WHO investigators themselves concluded that intercourse during the fertile phase was underreported.[§]

Contrary to Kippley's assertion, periodic abstinence is not being "singled out for a unique way of determining user-effectiveness rates." As we explicitly stated in our article, couples need information on efficacy during perfect and imperfect use in order to make truly informed choices about contraception. We presented the first correctly calculated probabilities of failure during perfect use (method failure) and failure during imperfect use (user failure) for any method of contraception. We chose to examine the ovulation method because the data from the WHO trial are the only available data on any method that can be used to make separate calculations of method and user failure. We would welcome analogous information for other methods.[†] Contrary to Kippley's assertion, rules for various methods do differ, and imperfect use of any given method can occur only when the specific rules governing its use are broken. For example, although the rules for the pill state that it must be taken every day, the rules for the condom state that it must be used at every act of intercourse. Thus, it would make no sense to claim that the condom is used imperfectly if it is not used every day. Likewise, it makes no sense to apply the ovulation method rules to other methods (for instance, by defining imperfect use of the condom as such only when it occurs during the fecund period). Barrier methods such as the condom will have lower failure rates during imperfect use precisely because imperfect use can occur at times other than during the fecund period. Indeed, it is very unlikely that most users of barrier contraceptives could even identify their fecund period with any degree of precision.

Finally, Kippley's statement that we had access to primary data is misleading. Not all of the detailed information from the subjects' menstrual charts was transferred to the machine-readable analysis file constructed by WHO. The charts themselves still reside in the basement of WHO headquarters and presumably would be made available to Kippley or any other, capable analyst. However, we doubt that detailed analysis of the menstrual charts would provide a clear answer to the question he raises, given the underreporting of intercourse already mentioned.

---

[*] The 1988 round of the National Survey of Family Growth revealed that only 2.1 percent of women aged 15-44 who were at risk of an unintended pregnancy relied on periodic abstinence; of these, three-quarters used the calendar variant alone. Source: Unpublished tabulations by Barbara Vaughan from the public-use tape.

[†] J. Trussell et al., "Contraceptive Failure in the United States: An Update," *Studies in Family Planning*, **21**:51, 1990, Table 1.

[‡] C. Djerassi, "Fertility Awareness: Jet-Age Rhythm Method?" *Science*, **248**:1061, 1990; and World Health Organization (WHO), "A Prospective Multicentre Trial of Natural Family Planning. III. Characteristics of the Menstrual Cycle and of the Fertile Phase," *Fertility and Sterility*, **40**:773, 1983.

[§] WHO, "A Prospective Multicentre Trial of Natural Family Planning. III. Characteristics of the Menstrual Cycle and of the Fertile Phase," *Fertility and Sterility*, **40**:773, 1983.

Note to Authors

International Family Planning Perspectives is a peer-reviewed quarterly journal publishing research articles about the developing world that are intended to be of assistance to professionals in the fields of fertility and family planning, maternal and child health and population policy. The editors invite researchers, policymakers and program operators from around the world to submit articles on such topics as contraceptive practice and research; population growth; fertility levels, trends and determinants; childspacing; public policies and legal issues affecting family planning and childbearing; family planning program operation, development and evaluation; information, education and communication activities; sexually transmitted diseases; and reproductive, maternal and child health. Manuscripts should be sent to the address below, and should include the complete affiliation, address, telephone number and Fax number of the author with whom we are to correspond.

Manuscripts may be submitted in English, French or Spanish, and are read with the understanding that they neither are under consideration elsewhere nor have been published previously. All submissions are reviewed by the editorial staff and, if deemed of interest, undergo anonymous peer review. Manuscripts not accepted for publication will not be returned. Upon acceptance, all manuscripts are edited to the extent necessary to conform to the style of the journal. Authors will have two opportunities to review their article after editing. Authors must assign copyright to the journal.

Selected articles appear on an annual basis in the Spanish edition of the journal, *Perspectivas Internacionales en Planificación Familiar*, and in the French edition, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial*.

Manuscripts should be typed double-spaced, with all pages numbered and with a title page that includes the names and affiliations (at the time of the work reported) of all authors. Submissions should run no more than 30–35 pages, with no more than 7–8 tables; only one copy need be sent. Manuscripts should include a summary of up to one page in length.

Each table and chart should be on a separate page. Authors should check previous issues of *International Family Planning Perspectives* to gain an idea of how tables are to be styled. Authors must supply data points for all line graphs and charts; final art work will be done by the journal's staff.

International Family Planning Perspectives es una revista trimestral que publica monografías sobre el mundo en desarrollo destinadas a asistir a profesionales en las áreas de fecundidad y planificación familiar, salud materno-infantil y políticas de población. Invitamos a investigadores y responsables de políticas y programas de todo el mundo a que presenten artículos sobre temas tales como práctica e investigación en materia de anticonceptivos; crecimiento demográfico; niveles, tendencias y determinantes de la fecundidad; espaciamento de los hijos, políticas oficiales y cuestiones jurídicas que afecten la planificación familiar y la fecundidad; aplicación, elaboración y evaluación de programas de planificación familiar; actividades de información, instrucción y comunicación; enfermedades transmitidas sexualmente y salud reproductiva y materno-infantil. Los originales deberán enviarse a la dirección que figura abajo, debiendo constar en ellos la filiación completa, domicilio postal, teléfono y, de ser posible, número de Fax del remitente.

Los originales pueden ser escritos en español, francés o inglés. Serán aceptados en la inteligencia de que son inéditos y no están siendo considerados por ninguna otra publicación. El personal de edición examinará todos los trabajos presentados y, de hallarlos interesantes, los hará evaluar por otros especialistas sin divulgar el nombre del autor. No se devolverán los originales rechazados. Los que se acepten serán revisados en la medida necesaria para conformarlos al estilo de la revista. Los autores tendrán dos oportunidades de examinar sus monografías revisadas y deberán ceder los derechos de autor a la revista.

Algunos artículos se seleccionarán para la edición anual en español, *Perspectivas Internacionales de Planificación Familiar*, o para la edición francés, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial*.

Los originales deberán presentarse mecanografiados a doble espacio. Las páginas deberán estar numeradas, debiendo figurar en la primera, nombre y filiación (al momento de escribirse el trabajo) de todos los autores. Los artículos no podrán exceder de 30–35 páginas ni incluir más de ocho cuadros. No hace falta enviar sino un ejemplar. Los originales deberán ir acompañados de un resumen de hasta una página.

Cada cuadro o gráfico deberá ir en hoja por separado. Conviene que los autores consulten números anteriores de *International Family Planning Perspectives* para formarse una idea del respectivo formato. Deberán suministrar también todas las cifras y datos necesarios para cada gráfico o cuadro. La revista se encargará del diseño gráfico.

La revue trimestrielle *International Family Planning Perspectives* publie des articles présentant des résultats de recherche sur les pays en développement et destinés à éclairer les spécialistes en matière de fécondité, planification familiale, protection maternelle et infantile et politiques démographiques. La rédaction invite tout chercheur, dirigeant ou administrateur de programme à soumettre des articles sur les sujets suivants: pratique contraceptive et recherche dans le domaine de la contraception; croissance démographique; niveaux, tendances et facteurs déterminants de la fécondité; espacement des naissances; questions juridiques et d'ordre public influant sur la planification familiale et la procréation; administration, élaboration et évaluation de programmes de planification familiale; activités relatives à l'information, l'éducation et la communication; maladies sexuellement transmissibles; hygiène sexuelle et comportement reproducteur; et protection maternelle et infantile.

Les auteurs devraient adresser les manuscrits à l'adresse ci-dessous et mentionner l'affiliation complète, adresse, numéro de téléphone et numéro de télécopieur (si possible) de la personne avec qui nous devons communiquer.

Les manuscrits peuvent être rédigés en français, en anglais ou en espagnol et ne seront acceptés qu'à la condition qu'ils n'aient été soumis à aucune autre publication, ni déjà publiés. Tous les articles sont évalués par la rédaction et s'ils sont jugés intéressants, présentés, à titre anonyme, à l'appréciation de spécialistes. Les manuscrits non publiés ne seront pas renvoyés à leur(s) auteur(s). Une fois acceptés, les manuscrits seront éventuellement révisés afin de les adapter au style et présentation propres à la revue. Les auteurs auront ensuite, à deux reprises, l'occasion de revoir leur article. Ils devront céder les droits d'auteur à la revue.

Certains articles retenus sont également publiés dans la version annuelle de la revue, en espagnol, *Perspectivas Internacionales en Planificación Familiar*, ou en français, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial*.

Tous les manuscrits devraient être préparés de la manière suivante: dactylographiés en double interligne, avec un maximum de 30–35 pages; chaque feuillet doit être soigneusement paginé. La première page doit fournir les noms de tous les auteurs ainsi que leur affiliation (au moment où travaux ou recherches ont été effectués). Les manuscrits ne doivent pas comporter plus de 7–8 tableaux et doivent inclure un résumé ne dépassant pas une page. L'auteur ne doit soumettre qu'un seul exemplaire.

Tableaux et graphiques devront figurer chacun sur un feuillet séparé. Les auteurs sont priés de consulter les numéros précédents de la revue afin de voir comment les tableaux doivent être présentés. Ils devront également fournir les points de données pour tous diagrammes et graphiques. La rédaction se chargera du dessin graphique.

Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg
Editor-in-Chief
International Family Planning Perspectives
The Alan Guttmacher Institute
111 Fifth Avenue
New York, NY 10003
USA

International Family Planning Perspectives
Published quarterly by The Alan Guttmacher Institute

Editorial Office: 111 Fifth Avenue,
New York, N.Y. 10003, United States of America

Editorial Advisory Committee

Barbara M. Boland, Trinidad and Tobago

John C. Caldwell, National Centre for Epidemiology and Population Health, The Australian National University, Canberra

John Cleland, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, England

Mercedes B. Concepcion, The Population Institute, University of the Philippines, Manila

Ronald Freedman, The Population Studies Center of the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor

Noreen Goldman, Office of Population Research, Princeton University, Princeton, New Jersey

Roushdi A. Henin, Department of Sociology, University of Zimbabwe, Harare

Maria Helena Henriques-Mueller, Istanbul, Turkey

Shireen J. Jejeebhoy, Bombay, India

Gavin W. Jones, The Research School of Social Sciences, The Australian National University, Canberra

Lin Lean Lim, International Labor Office, United Nations, Bangkok, Thailand

Wolfgang Lutz, International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis, Lazenburg, Austria

Allan G. Rosenfield, School of Public Health, Columbia University, New York

Nafis Sadik, United Nations Population Fund, New York

Mpembele Daniel Sala-Diakanda, Institut de Formation et de Recherche Démographiques, Yaoundé, Cameroon

Zeba Sathar, Pakistan Institute of Development Economics, Islamabad

Claudio Stern, El Colegio de México, The Population Council, Mexico City

Léon Tabah, Comité International de Coopération dans les Recherches Nationales, Paris, France

Martin Vessey, Department of Public Health and Primary Care, University of Oxford, England

Subscriptions are $22 a year for individuals and $32 a year for institutions.

This publication is partly supported by the U.S. Agency for International Development (AID) through a cooperative agreement (no. DPE–0955–A–00–3005–11) with the Planned Parenthood Federation of America/Family Planning International Assistance. The contents of this publication do not necessarily reflect the views or policies of the AID.

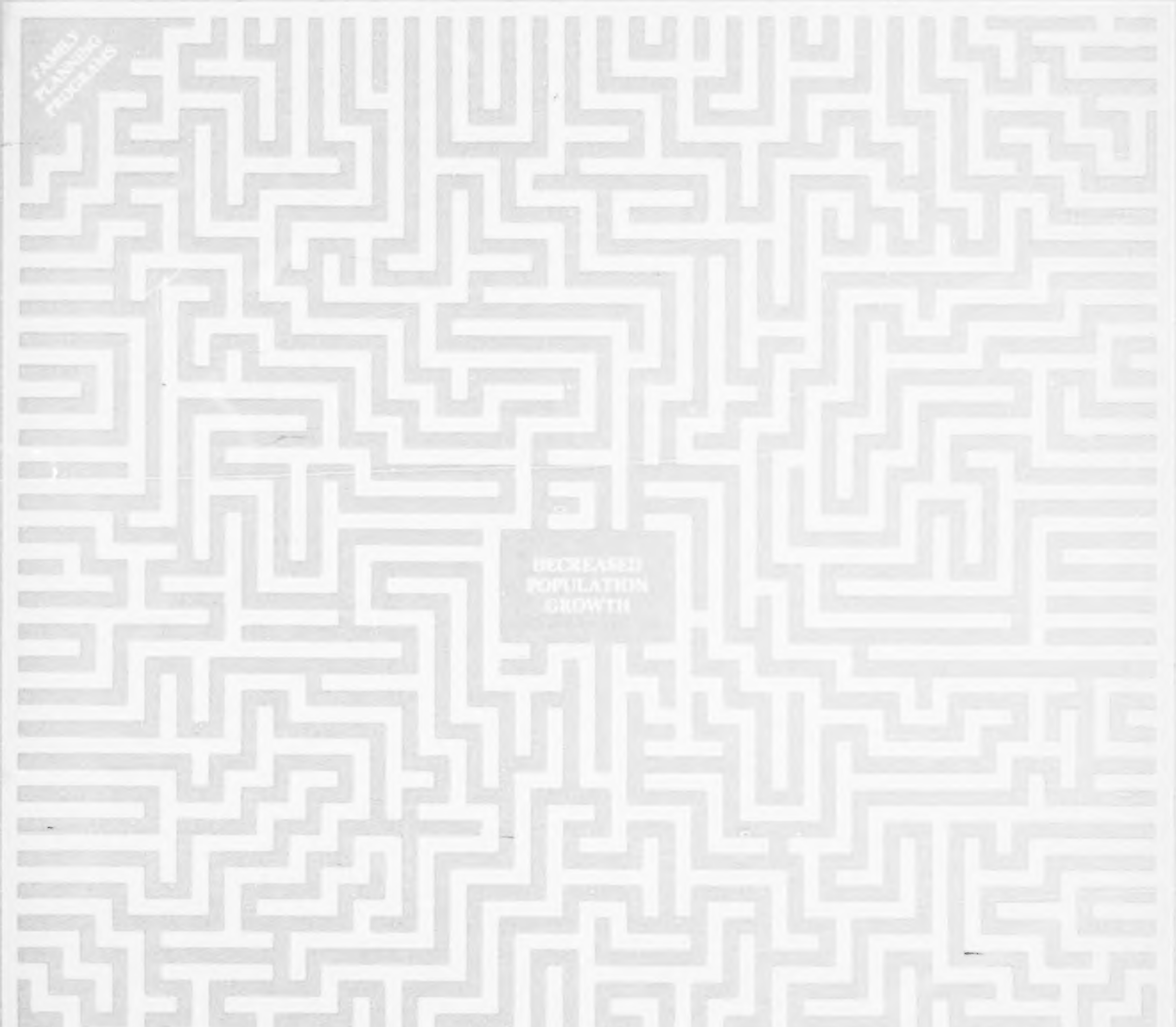
Credits

Cover design: Sheldon Cotler + Associates

Volume 16, Number 4, December 1990

International Family Planning Perspectives

The Great Debate on Population Policy Revisited


FAMILY
PLANNING
PROGRAMS
DECREASED
POPULATION
GROWTH
SOCIOECONOMIC
DEVELOPMENT

A Publication of
The Alan Guttmacher Institute

In This Issue

The Great Debate on Population Policy Revisited

Fifteen years ago, in 1975, Bernard Berelson, then president emeritus of The Population Council, published "The Great Debate on Population Policy: An Instructive Entertainment" as a working paper of The Population Council. In 1988, the paper was included in *Berelson on Population*, a collection of 14 Berelson essays that was edited by John A. Ross and W. Parker Mauldin and published by Springer-Verlag.

The "debaters" (FamPlan, DevDev and AcCrit) were prototypes of three views of public policy on population, representing supporters of family planning programs, proponents of development and academic critics.

To reread "The Great Debate" in 1990 makes one marvel anew at Berelson's ability, as he put it, "to distill the argumentation to essentials." It also makes one wonder at how constant and intractable the same old problems seem to be, even in a very different world.

On invitation, three brave researchers agreed to assume the roles of the three prototypes and update them. Using their own words and referring to the considerable scholarship between 1975 and 1990, they have taken on the original questions: Are family planning programs the answer to the population problems of the world? Is economic and social development? What does academic research have to contribute to these issues? How do they relate to each other?

Shireen J. Jejeebhoy, former head of research and evaluation of the Indian Family Planning Association and now a population and social sciences consultant in Bombay, reflects on FamPlan. Allen C. Kelley, James B. Duke Professor of Economics at Duke University, updates DevDev. Geoffrey McNicoll, professorial fellow at The Australian National University, represents AcCrit.

To set the stage, we reprint the original Berelson piece in its entirety, with the kind permission of The Population Council and in warm memory of a bold and insightful scholar-pragmatist.

It is up to the reader, after partaking of this instructive entertainment, to decide who wins the debate.

— *Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg*

A5160-6

International Family Planning Perspectives

ISSN 0162–2749
Volume 16, Number 4, December 1990

Published quarterly by
The Alan Guttmacher Institute

President: Jeannie I. Rosoff
Director of Publications and Editor-in-Chief:
Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg

Executive Editor: Jeanette H. Johnson
Editor: Michael Klitsch
Associate Editors: Frances A. Althaus,
Martha B. Witwer
Assistant Editors: Lisa Remez, Rebecca M. Turner
Production Editor: Patricia Rind
Copy Editor: Donna Cohen
Senior Production Assistant:
Georges Louis-Jacques
Production Assistant: Elizabeth LaPorta
Administrative Assistant: Ruth A. Zlotnick

Contributing Editor, Law and
Public Policy: Susan Cohen

Consulting Editor:
Charles Westoff

Editorial Office:
111 Fifth Avenue
New York, N.Y. 10003
United States of America

© 1990 by The Alan Guttmacher Institute, An Independent, Nonprofit Corporation for Research, Policy Analysis and Public Education; all rights, including translation into other languages, reserved under the Universal Copyright Convention, the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works and the International and Pan American Copyright Convention.
Second-class postage paid at New York, N.Y. Postmaster: Send address changes to International Family Planning Perspectives, 111 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10003.

Table of Contents

Update 124

Articles

The Great Debate on Population Policy: An Instructive Entertainment — Bernard Berelson 126
FamPlan: The Great Debate Abates — Shireen J. Jejeebhoy 139
DevDev: A Balanced, Moderate And Eclectic Perspective — Allen C. Kelley 143
AcCrit: An Argument Yet to Have Its Day — Geoffrey McNicoll 146

Books in Review

Cultural Aspects of Africa's High Fertility Rates — Donald F. Heisel 149

Digest

Younger Jordanian Husbands More Often Favor Family Planning 152
More Thorough Training Needed for Grass-Roots Family Planning Workers 153
Steady Rise in Abortion Deaths in Rio de Janeiro Hospital over 10 Years 154
Support by Governments for Birth Control Rose over the Past 15 Years 155
Sterilization Decision Is Not Unduly Influenced by Cash Compensation 156
Togo's Birthrate Declines Slightly; Modern Method Use Remains Very Low 157

Note to Authors 151

Index to Volume 16 160

Acknowledgment to Reviewers 162

UPDATE

Female Children Not Wanted

At hospitals in one area of India, male infants are being born at rates far higher than normal—an indication, according to investigators, that prenatal sex determination and subsequent induced abortion are being used to prevent the birth of females.[1] According to an analysis of secondary sex ratios at hospitals in Ludhiana (a major industrial city in Punjab state) between 1981 and 1988, the male-female ratio of births in 1981 and 1982 was about 105 per 100, virtually the same as throughout the world. However, the secondary sex ratio jumped to 113 per 100 in 1983, and by 1988 it had risen to almost 122 per 100. According to the investigators, an Indian study recently found that 7,999 of 8,000 abortions performed in Bombay after prenatal sex determination were of female fetuses. They observe that the rise in secondary sex ratios that began in 1983 coincided with the opening of the first prenatal sex-testing centers in Punjab.

1. R. K. Sachar et al., "Sex Selective Fertility Control—An Outrage," *Journal of Family Welfare*, Vol. 36, No. 2, 1990, p. 30.

Birth Control from Hairdressers

Dominican women who want contraceptives can now avoid crowded clinics and get the methods they need from their local hairdresser.[1] Through the efforts of a family planning network formed in 1988 in Santo Domingo, local clinics now provide operators of selected beauty shops with contraceptives (such as oral contraceptive cycles and vaginal spermicides) for one peso each; the hairdressers may then sell the methods to their clients for two pesos each. By the start of 1990, almost 200 hairdressers were taking part in the project, and during 1989 they had recruited more than 5,[illegible]00 new family planning users in Santo Domingo. The beauticians all received special training in family planning, human sexuality and reproduction, and were instructed to refer women to a local community clinic for pill follow-up or IUD insertions. Officials believe that local women appreciate the program because the beauty shops are more accessible and discreet than family planning clinics, while the hairdressers report that the additional income is significant and that their business is better because they are attracting more customers.

1. "Enterprise in the Dominican Republic: Hairdressers Dispense Contraceptives and Information on Family Planning," *Family Planning Enterprise*, John Snow, Inc., Arlington, Va., August 1990, p. 1.

Inert IUDs Linked to PID

Women using an inert, nonmedicated IUD (i.e., one that releases neither copper nor progestin) were three times as likely as nonusers of contraceptives to be referred to a hospital for treatment of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) and are more than seven times as likely to be referred for acute PID, according to data from a long-term British study of contraceptive use among more than 17,000 women.[1] Users of copper and progestin devices showed a relatively smaller increased risk of PID, but it was not statistically significant. Women relying on the pill, the diaphragm or female sterilization had a reduced risk of PID compared with women who used no method, although only in the case of the pill was the reduction (by 50 percent) statistically significant. The investigators conclude that their study offers strong evidence "that hospital referral for pelvic inflammatory disease is about twice as high in users of the older nonmedicated [IUDs] as in users of the modern medicated devices."

1. H. Buchan et al., "Epidemiology of Pelvic Inflammatory Disease in Parous Women with Special Reference to Intrauterine Device Use," *British Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, 97:780, 1990.

One Size IUD Fits All

The Mahua ring, the most widely used IUD in China, comes in seven different sizes, but recent research indicates that one size works just as well as seven.[1] Among a group of 800 women, 400 had their uterus measured and were fitted for the "correct" size of IUD, while the other 400 simply had the 21-mm. ring inserted. After two years of follow-up, rates of pregnancy, expulsion, removal because of bleeding, and continuation were no different among those who were fitted than among those who used the 21-mm. IUD. The investigators observe that if just one size of Mahua ring were offered, insertion of the device would be simplified, the expense of providing it reduced and the responsibilities of the doctors and nurses who fit IUDs lessened. "It is suggested," they conclude, "that the No. 21 Mahua ring may be inserted instead of [the other sizes]."

1. Q. L. Juan et al., "A Randomized Comparative Study of the Performance of Seven Different Sizes of the Mahua Ring Inserted Following Measurement of the Uterine Cavity and One Size of the Same Ring," *Contraception*, 42:391, 1990.

The Low-Dose IUD

A five-year evaluation of a low-dose levonorgestrel-releasing IUD (the LNg 20) shows the device to be as effective as the most advanced Copper-T IUD (the TCu 380-Ag), although the hormonal device has a lower continuation rate.[1] The LNg 20 releases approximately 20 mcg of levonorgestrel each day (about one-third the amount released by the only current hormonal IUD). It was tested along with the TCu 380-Ag in a randomized, multicenter clinical trial involving more than 2,200 women. Life-table analysis revealed that over the first five years of use, failure rates for the LNg 20 and the TCu 380Ag were 1.1 and 1.4 pregnancies per 100 users; expulsion rates were significantly greater among users of the LNg 20 (11.8 per 100) than among users of the TCu 380Ag (7.4 per 100). The greatest difference between the devices, though, was in the women's experience of amenorrhea—rates of 19.7 per 100 and 0.4 per 100, respectively. However, users of the LNg 20 were significantly less likely than TCu 380Ag users to discontinue method use because of bleeding or pain (15.4 per 100 vs. 23.3 per 100). The continuation rate after five years was significantly lower among LNg 20 users (33.0 per 100) than among TCu 380Ag users (40.6 per 100). The investigators observe that the five-year cumulative pregnancy rates for both devices are lower "than have been reported in long-term randomized comparative trials for any reversible method of contraception."

[1] I. Sivin et al., "Long-Term Contraception with the Levonorgestrel 20 Mcg/Day (LNg 20) and the Copper T 380Ag Intrauterine Devices: A Five-Year Randomized Study," *Contraception*, **42**:361, 1990.

African Fertility Decline Still Elusive

Fertility remains high in Africa, according to a World Bank analysis of recent data from the region, and while fertility decline may have begun recently in Botswana, Kenya and Zimbabwe and (perhaps) among urban women in Senegal, there has been little sign of change elsewhere on the continent.[1] Desired fertility varies little by subgroup except among the most highly educated urban residents, and even their fertility expectations are far higher than those of comparable elites in other regions of the developing world. Furthermore, according to the World Bank report, low levels of contraceptive use generally reflect low demand for family planning, not a shortfall in supply: "Significant unmet demand may be found among young unmarried women," the report's authors contend, "but there is little evidence of a desire for increased fertility control among older married women." The authors observe that despite the amount of research conducted in Sub-Saharan Africa in the 1980s, "very little is known with certainty about the determinants of fertility" there. The report concludes that further research in Africa should provide "substantial insight" into potential policy options, especially research using recently collected data on social and economic variables. Indeed, they argue that new research approaches are imperative: "Inappropriate policy choices based on untested assumptions about the determinants of African fertility could well have an adverse effect on economic growth well into the next century."

[1] E. van de Walle and A. D. Foster, *Fertility Decline in Africa: Assessment and Prospects*, World Bank Technical Paper No. 125, Washington, D.C., 1990.

Pill Policy Changed in Senegal

Requiring potential users of oral contraceptives to first obtain a number of laboratory tests, including Pap smears, blood tests and urine analyses, is unnecessary and does not help to identify women with contraindications to pill use, according to a recent research project in Senegal.[1] The project analyzed the impact of such tests among 410 women; the laboratory results indicated that 20 women had potential health problems, but among the nine women who could be retested, a problem (a high blood-glucose level) could be confirmed in only one. Meanwhile, normal clinical examinations conducted among the same women revealed that just five women had health problems that would preclude pill use, and only one of these women was among the 20 singled out by the laboratory tests. As a result of a conference evaluating these and other findings, the government of Senegal has dropped its policy requiring the laboratory tests, which had limited access to the pill because the tests were available only in the capital, Dakar, and were expensive.

[1] "Senegal Changes OC Testing Policy," *Network*, Vol. 11, No. 3, Family Health International, Research Triangle Park, N.C., 1990, p. 19.

Limited Gains in Reproductive Rights

Many of the articles in the United Nations (UN) Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women deal explicitly with reproductive rights, including the availability of contraception and abortion, the accessibility of divorce, and equality of legal marriage age. In the 10 years since the convention was introduced, 103 of 159 UN members have ratified it, yet according to the International Planned Parenthood Federation (IPPF), many women who live in countries that ratified the convention have not yet benefited from it.[1] Only six countries—Cuba, Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway and Sweden—are judged to have an excellent reproductive rights record. Bangladesh, Brazil, Egypt, France, Iraq, Ireland, Libya, South Korea, Thailand, Tunisia, Turkey and the United Kingdom have ratified the convention but have entered some reservation about its articles relating to family planning or family law. Further, many developing countries have ratified the convention but still have laws or regulations that contravene the convention, such as limitations on the availability of sterilization (as in Angola, Argentina, Bolivia, the Congo, Libya, Rwanda and Uruguay) or the requirement of either spousal consent or the consent of a committee for a woman to be sterilized (as in Bangladesh, Brazil, Burkina Faso, Chile, Colombia, Costa Rica, Cyprus, Egypt, El Salvador, Ghana, Guatemala, Guinea Conakry, Honduras, Indonesia, Iraq, Kenya, Korea, Laos, Liberia, Mali, Mauritius, Mexico, Panama, Peru, the Philippines, Senegal, Sri Lanka, Tanzania, Thailand, Togo, Trinidad and Tobago, Tunisia, Turkey, Uganda and Zambia). The IPPF notes that "everywhere, social, structural and economic realities limit women's choices and their economic rights. But the establishment of reproductive rights by law is a crucial starting point from which women may begin to exercise those rights."

[1] International Planned Parenthood Federation, "Reproductive Rights: How Signatories to the United Nations Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women Are Measuring Up," wallchart, London, 1990.

HIV and the Spread of Tuberculosis

Among 346 patients visiting a hospital clinic in Lusaka, Zambia, for treatment of tuberculosis, 60 percent (56 percent of the men and 64 percent of the women) proved to be infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).[1] Among men, HIV infection levels were highest for 25–34-year-olds (68 percent), but among women the infection rate was highest for 14–24-year-olds (74 percent). Patients who were better educated and better housed, were widowed or divorced and had been treated for sexually transmitted diseases were significantly more likely to be infected with HIV. Those with pleural or pericardial tuberculosis were far more likely to be HIV-infected than were those with pulmonary tuberculosis (81 percent and 84 percent vs. 49 percent). Thirty-seven percent of those with pulmonary tuberculosis who were HIV-infected had a negative sputum smear for tuberculosis, compared with just 18 percent of those not infected with HIV. Examination of sputum smears "has long been a cornerstone in the diagnosis of [pulmonary] tuberculosis," the investigators observe, but in the presence of HIV infection, the sputum smear may be unreliable.

[1] P. A. M. Elliott et al., "Impact of HIV on Tuberculosis in Zambia: A Cross-Sectional Study," *British Medical Journal*, **301**:412, 1990.

The Great Debate on Population Policy: An Instructive Entertainment

"The debate seems to be . . . most needed on what the proper policy issues really are. And complicating the resolution is the normal sight-line of the planner and intellectual as against the operator—the long-term versus the short-term."

By Bernard Berelson

Preface

This paper is a debate among three positions intended as prototypic. On any matter as complicated as population policy, there are probably as many positions as there are participants. Hence no one is likely to feel fully represented in this (or any other) typology: "That's not the way I see it." Several other prototypic participants could have been included, but I have made a conscious effort to incorporate various subpositions intended to reflect the breadth if not the richness of the debate. If some qualification is lost, that is after all the essence of prototypes—and, it must be added, public policy as well, where the decision-maker takes what he can from the contending parties.

In order to maximize faithful representation, the debate utilizes actual statements from the literature that has built up in recent years. That literature is quite large, so the selections are illustrative only, and in a double sense: There is much more where they came from and there are many more participants. In any case, no individual's view should be confused with that of the debater here who borrows his argument: Individuals speak for themselves. Nor is there any reason to identify organizations with these prototypes: The major population organizations are all characterized by internal debate on these same issues, indeed accommodate the three debaters within.

I believe the main themes are here, given expression by their own advocates, and I trust that the content truly and fairly illustrates the present state of the discourse. The discussion does tend to concentrate on the dominant current strategies, and hence the debate is a little lopsided since the major actor tends to defend his efforts against the criticisms of the others. But that too is the way it is, perhaps inevitably in such situations.

I have taken the liberty of eliminating what would have been a jarring profusion of quotation marks, so frequent are the attributions. In virtually all cases, the passage preceding a numbered reference is verbatim from the indicated source; the beginning of the quotation is marked by the symbol ~. In the few cases where no symbol appears, the referenced passage is a paraphrase. Nowhere, to the best of my knowledge, is any selection misquoted or misrepresented. Naturally, I have provided the transition, summary, organization, and textual flow required by this form of exposition—in short, the orchestration.

It remains for me to acknowledge explicitly what in any case should be obvious—namely, that this is only one man's view of the matter, in selection and emphasis, in juxtaposition and conclusion. At least, this is how it all sounds to one participant. If what follows is not the debate as it really is, at least it is a perception of the debate that probably prevails in a major sector of the field. And in a major geographic sector too: This formulation of the debate is heavily, unduly, Western in origin—but then so is the debate itself.

In any case, here is an effort to hold the mirror up to nature, with a compressing mechanism: to distill the issues by having the major protagonists have at each other in frank exchange, and thus come closer to saying, in compacted form, what they really think. I trust it has the ring of verisimilitude to informed others, plus utility. For something may be gained by this device, if as intended it captures the essential elements for candid cross-appraisal. That something, in the end, is to clarify and advance the debate.

Finally, I trust that I may be forgiven for borrowing the form of this essay from myself, in "The Great Debate on Cultural Democracy,"*Values in America,* Donald N. Barrett, editor (Notre Dame, Indiana: University of Notre Dame Press, 1961), pages 147–168; and that it is understood that to the extent I speak in these pages, I do so for myself, and not for the sponsoring organization.

Introduction

The past decade has been marked by debate on "population policy," within countries and among countries. Like most other debates dealing with public policy on complex social issues, it has been conducted on shifting grounds, under changing rules, by differing participants. Nevertheless, the double core of the debate has always been visible: *whether,* for human welfare now and later, the current rapid rates of population growth need to be slowed down; and if so, *how* that is to be done through deliberate action, mainly by governments.

In 1974, for the first time in man's history, a worldwide conference of governments was held on population policy under United Nations auspices. Far from being settled, the debate was if anything heightened thereby and now continues on a post-Bucharest basis.

This is a contribution to that debate. It is intended to distill the argumentation to essentials, to confront the contending positions directly with one another, to join the issues in a manner not customary in traditional modes. From such a review may come a re-view of where matters really stand.

The growth issue is not the only issue of population policy, but it is the central issue under debate in recent years and the central focus of national and international remedial action. A recent paper exploring the possibility of consensus[1] listed no fewer than 16 policy positions, and even that does not exhaust the distinctions insisted upon by various protagonists.

The debaters are spokesmen for three

Reprinted with permission of The Population Council from an Occasional Paper, 1975. Bernard Berelson (1912–1979) was president of The Population Council from 1968–1974.

prominent viewpoints, clearly identifiable amid the rhetorical mosaic:

FAMPLAN—persuaded of the validity of "the population problem," defined as the need to reduce growth rates and hence fertility rates throughout the world but primarily in the developing countries where they are now particularly high; further persuaded that a useful action to that end is public provision of information and services directed at the voluntary control of fertility among interested couples; typically of a public health or sociological orientation. (It might be fair to add that FamPlan can be seen as representing the Population Establishment in the elementary sense that most of the available resources for population activities are now allocated under this direction, at least in the applied field; thus he could have been called PopEst, but since family programs are near the heart of the policy controversy it seemed better to utilize the more proximate title.)

DEVDEV—primarily interested in "development not population"; varies in his concern over the effect of demographic variables upon development but firmly convinced that the best way to attack population growth, perhaps the only way, is via economic development, social change, social/political revolution, "the new international economic order" . . . ; typically of an economic or political orientation.

ACCRIT—primarily comes to the debate with deep specialized knowledge, theoretical identification, methodological sophistication, and perhaps the ingrained intellectual tendency toward commentary ranging across disciplinary interests but centering on professional demography; plus at some points the voice of another academic commentator, the voice of demographic doom, eco-catastrophe, population bomb, the lifeboat ethic, triage—typically biological and ecological in origin.*

These three seem to represent major foci of views for a productive interchange, and there are three broad topics before the house: population in the context of development, the merit of family planning programs, and the strategies of intervention.

Population in the Context Of Development

DEVDEV—I begin at the foundation: For the poor of the world, development is the thing, not population; population control is no panacea for development; more than that, development and only development will cure the ills of population. ~Lowering the birth rate will not in itself free developing countries from the need to search vigorously for means to achieve agrarian reform, to modernize industry and agricultural production, and to raise the level of education and culture.[2] As the nations of the world in congress assembled said, ~population policies are constituent elements of socioeconomic development policies, never substitutes for them.[3] ~Population policy objectives cannot properly be set in isolation of other social and economic objectives.[4] ~As a matter of fact, Bucharest put population where it belonged—on the back seat of the development bus, and you fellows should feel lucky that you got on the bus at all.[5] ~It has truly been said that the best contraceptive is development.[6] ~Take Care of the People and the Population Will Take Care of Itself.[7]

FAMPLAN—You are making several points at once, and they need separation. First is the point that lowering population growth is no panacea for development. I'm glad you began with that for I couldn't agree with you more. If population growth rates were halved tomorrow in the developing countries, that in itself would not solve the problems of poverty, education and illiteracy, sanitation and disease, food and nutrition, and all the rest. At the same time, it *would* provide a better opportunity for their solution. I have always believed that ~no population policy can be a substitute for economic development. Poverty can only be cured by enhanced production.[8] I thought we had agreed about ending the ~almost meaningless debate in recent years among the advocates of economic development, social change, and family planning. . . . The debate is unnecessary because, if one thing is more obvious than another, it is that all three are required and that no one is a substitute for the other.[9] ~While neither I nor most of my professional colleagues in the population establishment can be considered revolutionaries, it is always a surprise to us to learn that we are proposing population control *instead of* some other ingredients of modernization. We talk more about population than about the balance of trade, income equalization or revamping primary school education, not because we consider these to be of less importance, but because we prefer to talk about those things we know something about. At the very least, this should be judged as merciful.[10] Somehow the attention given population matters in recent years has boomeranged on this point, but those of us working in the field—except perhaps for a few zealots—haven't claimed that we have the magic key to the future, only one important element. It would be good to put that caricature to rest.

ACCRIT—Not so fast, and speak for yourself. ~The explosive growth of the human population is the most significant terrestrial event of the past million millennia. . . . No geological event in a billion years . . . has posed a threat to terrestrial life comparable to that of human overpopulation.[11] ~It is now too late to "solve" the world's population problem. Much that has been destroyed or wasted can never be restored.[12] ~No technical solution can rescue us from the misery of overpopulation. Freedom to breed will bring ruin to all.[13]

FAMPLAN—There speaks the California School of Population Crisis. But that is more an argument between you fellows, between those who think population is Nothing and those who think it is Everything. I am content to think it is a significant Something—as the U.S. Commission said, a serious intensifier and multiplier of a whole range of social problems.

DEVDEV—I'm grateful for FamPlan's discovered moderation, but what I want to stress is that ~decision-making in population must be integrated in the decision-making process of development.[14] ~The message of Bucharest is not that development policy is a substitute for population policy but that the latter is a component of the former,[15] and must be carried on, as the Plan of Action says, within the context of development.

FAMPLAN—I've heard that so often, without specification, that I'm beginning to think it's a slogan. We had thought that population or family planning "going it alone" represents simply a division of labor, an elementary recognition of specialized interests and talents. Yet somehow we are always criticized for not being located ~solidly within the context of general economic and social development. . . .[16] Is the point organizational, programmatic, political, propagandistic, or simply semantic? What exactly does it mean?

DEVDEV—To begin with, it means that population activities should be organized within national and international developmental efforts. Beyond that. . .

FAMPLAN—Excuse me, but they already

---

*The title does not imply, of course, that there are no critical academics in the other camps, for surely there are. And I appreciate that this title, unlike the others, does not represent a position in the population debate per se. However, in this as in other debates on public policy, the academic critic receives restitutional expression—the commentator on society's actions from outside the pit, the evaluator, the defender of intellectual and moral standards, and so on.

are and always have been. ~Family planning programs are, without exception, part of broader economic development plans.[17] Moreover, the United Nations Fund for Population Activities is the only specialized agency that operates *within* the United Nations Development Programme—not outside as with health or education or industry or employment or environment or food and agriculture. As it happens, population is the only one to be organizationally integrated.

DEVDEV—As I was about to say, beyond that, you should do three things. First, as a tactical improvement over the present situation, you should integrate your family planning efforts into ongoing programs of broader character, as, for example, health, maternal and child care, rural development, community development, agricultural modernization, small industry, and so on.

FAMPLAN—That must really be a question of efficiency. It's not at all clear that putting family planning into other efforts won't raise more problems than it solves, or work worse than the traditional models, especially when you take into account the administrative difficulties of implementing anything as well as the limitations in funding. We may be in for it, post-Bucharest, but if so, that's for political reasons not professional ones.

DEVDEV—As I said, that was only tactical. Second, and the major strategic issue, is to appreciate that development itself will bring about a fertility decline. And Bucharest agreed that basic ~development goals generally have an effect on the socioeconomic context of reproductive decisions that tends to moderate fertility levels,[18] to quote the Plan. Anyway, isn't that what history shows us?—not only in the great fertility gulf between developed and developing countries, as rationalized in the theory of the demographic transition, but before our very eyes in what's happening around the world today when, for example, you compare Taiwan with India. ~There is no need to take steps to affect fertility directly; all our resources should be directed to accelerating development, not preventing births.[19]

ACCRIT—~To take this position is to ignore the fact that the explosively rapid population growth which will occur during the waiting period may well prevent the development of its cure.[20]

FAMPLAN—Anyway, ~to call the promotion of economic and social change a population policy seems like letting the tail wag the dog.[21] ~Perhaps [we] have paid little attention to economic development as a specific population policy on the simple grounds that if development is not undertaken for itself, it will not be undertaken because it should help to reduce birth rates.[22] It is absurd to advocate development as a cure for a high birth rate: Who cares about the birth rate if development is achieved? Then the rationale for fertility intervention diminishes—cart before the horse, defining away the problem. It's a Rube Goldberg solution par excellence.

ACCRIT—Here I must agree. ~That population policy considerations somehow could speed up the overall level of such developmental efforts of governments seems to me an extremely farfetched idea.[23] ~We are likely to be left with the platitudinous proposition that economic and social development will be helpful in solving the population problem—the more development, the better—but the structure of development measures, the real policy issue, remains determined without reference to demographic considerations.[24] ~Must we simply credit development in toto and not seek to analyze and encourage those aspects of the developmental process which are important?[25]

> ***"It is absurd to advocate development as a cure for a high birth rate: Who cares about the birth rate if development is achieved?"***
>
> —FamPlan

DEVDEV—But of course that is what I have in mind. The trouble is, FamPlan, that you fellows work on supply without sufficiently considering demand. For that, you must single out those factors in development that are most likely to have an impact on fertility and stress them—what some people call the threshold factors. ~What this actually says is that population policy should attempt to emphasize those aspects of development that have the maximum desirable effect on the achievement of its objectives,[26] those ~development programmes and educational and health strategies which . . . have a decisive impact upon demographic trends, including fertility.[27]

ACCRIT—Before you get very far over the threshold, I have to warn that the more we learn about the historical causes of fertility decline, the less we seem to know. The European transition now appears to be much more complicated, with the so-called threshold factors very blurred if indeed they exist at all. After close examination of such factors as industrialization, urbanization, infant mortality, and literacy, we find ~that there appears to be little in the statistical record for Europe which confirms the existence of an association between the beginning of the fertility decline and any specific level, or threshold, of economic and social development.[28] ~Examples can be found illustrating the presumed influence of [several] factors, but counter-examples or exceptions are nearly as prevalent [29]—the Austrio-Hungarians, the French peasants, the Hutterites, the Soviet republics in Asia. In short, ~research into particular threshold values of social and economic variables which might yield satisfactory predictions of when fertility falls could be expected to occur does not appear to have produced such predictions; rather the reverse—it has suggested such a diverse pattern of demographic transition as to cast significant doubt as to whether it will ever be possible to use historical experience to make such predictions.[30] Not to mention the dangers in equating the twentieth century Third World with the nineteenth century West.

DEVDEV—Academic caution, if not one-upmanship! There are surely a number of aspects of development that can reasonably be expected to have the effect of reducing fertility. We talk about them all the time: popular education,[31] equality for women,[32] income equalization,[33] improvements in employment especially for women,[34] extension of social security and old-age benefits,[35] reduction of infant mortality,[36] encouragement of social mobility,[37] rural modernization and increased agricultural productivity,[38] extension of children's rights and the elimination of child labor,[39] increased incomes and living standards,[40] improved health services,[41] industrialization with special reference to employment of women,[42] reform of land-tenure system,[43] better housing,[44] urbanization,[45] new roads,[46] reform of inheritance laws,[47] and elimination of polygamy[48]—and I may have overlooked a few. In short, those overall social policies that do most to promote social justice.*[49]

FAMPLAN—Well, if AcCrit doesn't know what they are, you certainly do! But what am I supposed to do about that impressive list—which, when you add it up, takes us back to development in toto, or very close to it. If you, DevDev, haven't been able to do "enough" on such factors with all your resources, where does that leave us in the population field? ~To think that manipulation of such variables adds significant new weaponry to population policies is almost certainly an exaggeration, and frequently amounts to, or fosters, wishful thinking.[50] Can nothing be done until these thresholds are reached?—which are pathetically out of reach where needed most. What are the programmatic specifics, not just the theoretical positions? Do you advocate simply incorporating the present allocation of population resources into that broad search?—putting the two percent now supporting population efforts in with the 98 percent devoted to general development, and forgetting about population?

---

*These references should not be considered as exhausting the possible listing.

DEVDEV—No, it would probably get lost there and population shouldn't be forgotten. The point is that selected efforts should get greater emphasis, and from far greater resources. Anyway, I don't mean to suggest that everything on this list is of equal importance. Start at the root, with income equalization and poverty reduction. ~In the absence of rural modernization, sustained overall fertility decline in rural areas cannot be anticipated.[51] ~Equality in the distribution of the development process and its benefits[52] is the thing. ~In most poor countries, large-scale fertility declines cannot be expected until the living conditions of the majority of the population improve enough so that they no longer consider large families necessary for *economic* reasons....[53] Stress reduction of poverty rather than reduction of fertility. The former will lead to the latter, as it always has. Thus large social changes appear to be required before FamPlan's effort can be more than trivially effective. And to the extent that population growth holds back those very changes, then we have a chicken-egg problem of great magnitude on which only the edges can be attacked.

ACCRIT—The trouble is that ~the spread of modernization is painfully slow,[54] although at the same time I must acknowledge that, ~in actual fact, many developing countries have undergone enormous, if piecemeal, changes in recent years.[55] But still, a direct demographic attack is needed because—modernization alone ... has nowhere in the world to date had an abiding and drastically downward effect on family-size desires.[56] ~In any case, there is no ineluctable process at work here, as though a kind of mechanistic determinism will prevail—some peoples are more amenable to change than others, good operators get results where poor ones don't.[57]

FAMPLAN—I agree that things are changing slowly, but they are changing. And that provides my rationale. ~To assert categorically that India or Indonesia or any other country "is not ready" for family planning or a fertility decline seems to assume that these countries are no different than they were 25 or 50 or 100 years ago.... But ... they have changed in many ways.[58] ~It is still plausible to argue that the transformations that have already occurred may be sufficient to support a reasonably successful family planning program, at least in the advanced sectors of most populations.[59] And the only way to find out is to try. As Justice Holmes said, '"The way in which the inevitable comes to pass is through effort." In any case, we do seem to agree ~on two propositions: alleviate the plight of the poor (read: promote social and economic development) and at the same time make available modern means of fertility control ... (read: provide family planning).[60]

> ***". . . I don't mean to suggest that everything on this list is of equal importance. Start at the root, with income equalization and poverty reduction."***
>
> —DevDev

DEVDEV—What we're trying to tell you is that development ~planning should focus on the diffusion of the material conditions of socioeconomic change which accompany the demographic transition.[61] Despite this array, ~this is not the same as to say that development is a substitute for population policy.[62]

ACCRIT—~These policies are socially beneficial as an integral part of modernization and can be so evaluated quite apart from any effects they may have on fertility. On the other hand, although they are statistically correlated with relatively low or declining fertility, the causal relations are not entirely clear. The quantitative magnitude of the impact on fertility and the time required for this impact are uncertain.[63] In any case, ~precisely because of [their] appeal ..., it can be taken for granted that countries do their best to pursue policies aimed at achieving them regardless of fertility effects.... [Moreover,] the existing state of knowledge concerning the determinants of fertility behavior in general seems to dictate strong reservations as to the adequacy of a spontaneous adjustment of fertility in response to the process of economic and social development.[64]

DEVDEV—This seems to me precisely the opposite of the truth. Most of the things that might help fertility require doing things about poverty, and this is just what governments do *not* do. Family planning can only have a modest impact on poor, illiterate rural populations subject to high mortality, so improve socioeconomic circumstances and, since it doesn't cost much, do whatever you can with family planning at the same time. But surely the point is to avoid pretense that there is any substitute for making poor people richer. When you get right down to it, more governments are pursuing family planning than income re-distribution.[65]

FAMPLAN—So where does that leave us? The fact is, DevDev, that you and your colleagues don't think population pressures are sufficiently serious to warrant any shift in your own development plans. ~It is, in fact, doubtful whether arguments based on fertility effects of development policies are ever strong enough appreciably to modify the mix of development measures that planners would otherwise propose.[66] And despite what you think, AcCrit isn't sure which buttons should be pushed—except that family planning isn't one of them.

ACCRIT—All I can say is that ~the conceptualization of the determinants of fertility requires acceptance of the involvement of a multitude of factors that vary greatly in the intensity and direction of force they exert on fertility.[67] In other words, ~virtually all models of fertility decline involve assertions of multiple causation, that is, the view that several different factors make at least a nontrivial contribution to the process.[68] In short, ~existing theories of fertility decline leave the policymaker vast room for choice. Narrow policy prescriptions do not flow from [the] theory. If we wish to be doctrinaire, there must be some other basis for it.[69]

The Merit of Family Planning Programs

The debaters turn to the major effort now being made to directly affect demographic considerations, namely, family planning programs.

ACCRIT—~Will current programs succeed?[70] The answer is No. ~The world has yet to witness a family planning program which initiated a decline in fertility in a "traditional society" characterized by mass illiteracy and poverty. The examples of "successful" family planning programs to date . . . are in areas in which fertility declines had already set in before the advent of national family planning policies and programs. . . .[71]

FAMPLAN—To initiate any broad social trend is quite a trick, but we do think we have expedited decline, and consider that a worthwhile accomplishment at the cost. In most settings it has proved impossible to actually carry out the intended program, except on a pilot basis. We probably overestimated the capacity of the administrative system to provide the indicated services, but that would be true of most field efforts, as DevDev surely knows from his own experience. Most programs are still quite weak,[72] so we may not really know—is it lack of interest or lack of program?

DEVDEV—You still won't acknowledge failure, ~that the lowering of population growth rates is [really] dependent on such things as higher living standards, more equal income distribution, higher levels of employment, education, health care—and not by pills and loops alone. . . . ~The results [of your family planning programs] were a dismal and expensive failure.[73]

FAMPLAN—In all fairness to both of us, what you meant to say was ~that population control, measured by the hopes and expectations of the neomalthusians in the mid-sixties . . . is unquestionably a considerable—and costly—failure.[74] I must say, "considerable" is not quite as painful as "dismal," but it still hurts. Maybe in hindsight we were too euphoric a decade ago—perhaps regrettable now but perhaps understandable for the first years of a social movement—and maybe we claimed or expected or simply talked too much.

DEVDEV—There is an important point buried there—namely, that you pushed family planning before the ground was prepared. You would have done better to send economists to planning boards in the 1960s than public health doctors to run programs.

FAMPLAN—You may well be right. And we had that other mistaken perception in the 1960s—an exaggerated idea of the administrative capacities of developing countries. As things turned out, that was a serious error, and one that affected various programs, not just population. All the same, it's always enlightening in such discussions to ask the alternative questions. What if we had not tried hard to spread family planning in the 1960s—when we had new policies, supporting surveys of interest, an improved contraceptive technology, and increasing funds? Could we really have known then that "it wouldn't work"? What would you have said then: that we had missed the boat?

ACCRIT—You've continually been insensitive to any policy alternative to family planning. And you've pushed that unduly, to the point of antagonistic boomerang, as Bucharest documented so well. Worst irony of all—it doesn't work; so you're guilty not only of promising something under false pretenses but diverting attention from other efforts. ~The family planning movement is failing to insure itself against the failure of its present rationale and methods.[75]

FAMPLAN—When you say that current programs cannot succeed, what is your definition of success? What is the goal, or at least the standard of judgment?

ACCRIT—~Zero population growth,[76] of course. ~To achieve fertility and population control adequate to the need, the objective must be that of inducing couples to restrict their childbearing to the replacement level. That is, it is necessary to produce the desired number of children in order to achieve a zero-rate of growth.[77] Current measures do ~not provide population control for any collective purpose, least of all for population stability. . . . About all they could accomplish would be to help countries approaching a modern condition reach *an industrial level* of fertility, a level they would soon reach anyway.[78]

> ***"It's always enlightening in such discussions to ask the alternative questions. What if we had not tried hard to spread family planning in the 1960s . . . ?"***
>
> —FamPlan

FAMPLAN—If that is the goal—replacement fertility, or roughly the two-child family by, say, the year 2000—then I agree that "family planning" will probably fail. But that's your goal assigned to me, not mine. ~If the goal is to take one to one-and-a-half points off the growth rate in the developing world in the next 20 years, or, say 15 to 18 points off the birth rate, then . . . we have a differential chance at that. . . . If the goal is to bring about the ultimate fertility decline faster than it would otherwise occur. . . .[79]

ACCRIT—~The important question, however, is not whether the present campaign is somewhat hastening the downward trend in the birthrate but whether, even if it is, it will provide population control for the nation. Actually, the campaign is not designed to provide such control and shows no sign of doing so.[80] And where does that leave you?—you end up offering family planning as a panacea for population growth.

FAMPLAN—That's like the other panacea that DevDev attributed to me, and I don't accept this one either. I know as well as you that a policy of family planning isn't necessarily equivalent to a population policy. You speak of "population control." Well, that depends upon the definition of "control." Can we have a marginal effect, nontrivial?—that's my question. Just as I agree that lowering fertility will make a marginal but important contribution to development, so I think that family planning, if done well, could make a marginal but important contribution to lowering fertility. Is the controversy balanced on an adverb: *only* versus *fully?* A recent study found that in the famous Ceylon case, about 25 percent of the mortality decline could be ascribed to the program of malaria control and the remainder to "development"—nutrition, health services, economic factors.[81] Only 25 percent or fully 25 percent? You don't attack health programs that have made only a marginal contribution, or educational efforts or agricultural modernization. What you usually argue, DevDev, is that since they are only marginal they need more support not less, improvement and expansion of program not contraction. Why does population or family planning turn out to be the special case? ~Would an anti-TB campaign be regarded as a failure if "only" one-third of the decline in TB could be attributed to the campaign efforts? I would judge it a smashing success.[82]

ACCRIT—Just as I thought: ~One can of course defend the programs by saying that the present goals and measures are merely interim ones.[83] ~If it is only a first step, it should be so labeled, and its connection with the next step (and the nature of that next step) should be carefully examined.[84]

FAMPLAN—But, don't you see, I think of family planning as already a next step, after general development and the "threshold" factors, in line with the division of labor we discussed earlier. But I must add that if family planning could bring down the growth rate in the interested developing countries to 1 percent in 20 years or so—which is even more demanding than, for example, the goals recommended by the National Academy of Sciences committee[85]—I would settle, consider it a great historical achievement, call it "success," and leave the next steps to that next generation—since neither I nor the two of you know what the world's situation would then be, nor could or should we set policy now for then. ~In order to act rationally, you don't need to know the ultimate goal, only the direction in which it is likely to be found.[86] ~Don't forget that in order to get from a growth rate of two-and-one-half percent to zero, you have to go through one.[87]

ACCRIT—Then you admit that you don't have a full solution to the problem of population growth, that you offer a remedy not a cure.[88]

FAMPLAN—I prefer "acknowledge" to "admit," but of course. Do you have one?—not on paper but for the real world?

DEVDEV—At least, then, we can agree on this: that ~family planning programs alone do not appear to be the answer to the population problem in developing societies,[89] ~that family planning alone is not adequate ... when compared to the magnitude of the problems.[90]

FAMPLAN—That's called the mortal blow of Bucharest, I know. But ~it is a canard that any serious leader in the population or family planning fields has held the view that family planning "alone" will solve the population problem.... They have been remarkably candid in acknowledging the limitations of their proposals.[91]

ACCRIT—Not all of them. Listen to this:

> ~Provision of improved means and information for control of fertility to people in developing countries ordinarily exerts a powerful effect upon fertility.... There appears to be a substantial basis for optimism that the major part of this work will be accomplished by the end of the current decade.... With continued vigorous action by the world community it should be possible to reduce the world crude birthrate to less than 20 and the world population growth rate to less than one percent per annum by the year 1980.[92]

Culminating in this flourish:

> ~As the spring sun erodes and finally breaks the icy grip of winter upon the Northland, so the increasing availability of knowledge and means for control of fertility is removing the mantle of ignorance which has combined with primaeval sexual passion to hold human reproduction at traditionally high levels....[93]

And the claim is still made post-Bucharest: ~Availability of Family Planning Services [is] the Key to Rapid Fertility Reduction.[94] But I know those little "fertility silhouettes," and I've already warned that ~these countries were selected because in general their data are reasonably reliable, which means that on the whole they are more advanced ... [with] the fastest declines in fertility.... This suggests that the declines are being caused by changing social and economic conditions rather than by family planning policy.[95] So you can't expect me to take that kind of thing very seriously.

> *"What you must guard against is misleading the world by offering a purely technological solution to a basically structural problem."*
>
> —DevDev

FAMPLAN—Actually, we may never know how well the purely family planning efforts did, for technical reasons, just as we do not know why the fertility decline in the West occurred when and as it did. You can always say that it would be happening anyway, and neither of us can prove his case beyond legitimate scientific doubt. ~Historians consider change to have been rapid when there was a perceptible difference in the behaviour of successive generations; some of our colleagues are impatient when change from year to year cannot plainly be discerned in the statistics.... Some draw the conclusion that little success means that there is little point in continuing to make efforts. The proper conclusion is almost certainly that the effort should increase; especially as success in the field is probably wedge-shaped—in fact ultimate rapid change may depend on a lot of effort now with little or no apparent result at this time.[96]

ACCRIT—But even there you are not faithful to your own creed. In turning away from abortion you have turned away from your own best method. ~Induced abortion ... has been proved capable of reducing birth rates rapidly ... yet this method is rejected in nearly all national and international population-control programs.[97]

FAMPLAN—Well, I'm delighted to learn that you believe that family planning can work, if only it would include another method of fertility control. Actually, perhaps the two sharpest fertility changes in recent years were technological in character: the famous decline of fertility in Japan rested on the legalization of abortion[98] and the increase of fertility in Romania on the delegalization of abortion.[99] In any case, I haven't turned away, governments and cultures have—and you can't assign responsibility to me for all their policies. I'm under enough attack from you and DevDev now for 'imposing' my views on them!

DEVDEV—What you must guard against is misleading the world by offering a purely technological solution to a basically structural problem. ~The population problem cannot be solved in a technical way....[100]

FAMPLAN—As the fellow says, all the intellectuals like to put down technology these days, but no one wants to give up his refrigerator—or birth control device, for that matter. Surely abortion as well as contraception is a technological matter, and surely the present methods of fertility control are hardly ideal for illiterate rural populations. And suppose we come up with an immunization against pregnancy—not inconceivable, if you'll pardon the expression—and ask yourself, what realizable social policy would affect fertility as much within a decade? ~The availability of such an inoculation would have more impact on population policy than anything else I have heard discussed. Political leaders are more likely to back programs that can succeed than programs that they believe will fail.[101]

ACCRIT—But there you go again—obsessed with the technology of fertility control. By your own admission, all you could possibly do, if indeed that, is to eliminate unwanted fertility. That strategy is surely based on an article of faith that there really is such a thing, that you have measured it correctly, and that it will disappear if services are offered. ~The assumption ... is that the population problem is a function of unwanted births and therefore, if women have the means to limit births, the population problem will be solved.[102] The evidence is all to the contrary.

FAMPLAN—It is true that much of the rationale rests on "unwantedness." Those surveys have been and still are social scientific currency in good standing; why are they distinctively misleading here? Moreover, in all fairness, the question is still open as to how much the disparity between response and behavior is because ~we are measuring the demand incorrectly or not meeting it properly or some mixture. We can't just write off the fact that, in one study after another, sample strata representing millions of people say they are having more children than they want. It isn't enough to assert without proof that these responses are invalid,[103] not to mention the actual demonstration of unwantedness made by the prevalence of illegal and life-risking abortions in much of the world.

DEVDEV—And I must say, AcCrit, that ~as long as the problem of unwanted births remains as large as it is . . ., it seems to constitute the biggest and most incontrovertible population problem.[104]

FAMPLAN—As for cutting into *wanted* fertility, I confess that I don't realistically know how to do that, short of changing life conditions. But I must add that here as elsewhere satisfying the existing market may not be a bad way to extend the market. Anyway, both of you tend to end up your criticisms by saying, "But don't get me wrong, I'm all for family planning."

ACCRIT—But I am. ~There is no reason to abandon family planning programs; contraception is a valuable technological instrument.[105] ~Family planning movements should not be condemned. . . . It makes sense to proceed with programs that appear to be the most direct.[106]

DEVDEV—Me too. ~Family planning is a means to an end and its availability is desirable on many humanitarian, ethical, and utilitarian grounds. These programs provide a necessary service. . . .[107] ~This standpoint does not imply that we are opposed to family planning. On the contrary, we are of the opinion that free access to efficient contraceptives and other means of birth control should be a human right and available to all. . . .[108] ~Family planning . . . can be an effective means of the liberation of the female half of mankind in all societies. . . .[109] Family planning should be recognized ~as an essential means to achieve national goals of the countries wishing to reduce population growth.[110] Family planning can be an effective means to fight against sterility, enhance the quality of health and the socioeconomic conditions of mothers and children, and liberate women. . . . Obviously, family planning can be a useful instrument of modernization.[111] ~This is not at all to deny the importance of continuing to step up both the provision of family planning services in most if not all countries, and research to improve birth control techniques. Nothing . . . should be construed as advocating reduced support for family planning assistance.[112] Finally, ~this is not to cast doubt on the virtue of family planning programmes, which can and do produce worthwhile results. It is only to caution against expecting too much from them.[113]

FAMPLAN—Your last point, DevDev, is a key one: what is to be expected. Population efforts may indeed have failed by your standards, but what does not, in any field involving the behavior of masses of people? You, AcCrit, have been advising all over the place on how to control inflation and eliminate racial discrimination and relieve urban congestion and educate the young and reduce poverty and sustain prosperity and eliminate crime and control drug addiction and bring peace, and how successful have you been? Not to mention, DevDev, the shortfalls in your own Development Decade. And incidentally, if development is supposed to bring down fertility, then it must have failed from this standpoint as well as in its own right; indeed, you can turn the point around—~the relative failure of economic development programs has hampered the attainment of family planning goals.[114] Yet you do not turn away from the renewed effort. On such large matters there are limits to what can be done by direct intervention.

> ***"What's basically needed is the removal of pronatalist pressures, legal and cultural, that have been so imbedded in the human consciousness . . . "***
>
> —AcCrit

DEVDEV—The picture is not quite so dark as AcCrit sometimes makes out. ~Careful attempts to disentangle the impact of these programs from that of changes in socioeconomic conditions in several countries suggest that family planning programs have made a sizable contribution to the observed decline in fertility.[115] ~Much of the disappointment with the achievement of population programs can be traced not to their failure but to the fact that too much has been expected from them. . . . Programs which have succeeded in protecting 15 percent of eligible women . . . are adjudged to have failed. In any other aspect of the struggle to achieve economic and social development, such a percentage would be hailed as an outstanding success.[116] But you do tend to claim too much; you take up too much of the population stage; and your promise has outrun your performance.

FAMPLAN—From the experience to date, about all I would claim is that in the more favored of the developing countries modern family planning, *if done*, can contribute to a decline in the birthrate of about ten points in a decade; and in the less favored, *if done*, to about half that.

DEVDEV—The irony is that ~it is likely that the answers will only come retrospectively when they will be too late to influence either policy or programs.[117]

Strategies of Intervention

The debaters now turn to the strategies beyond family planning and beyond development. What should be done now to hasten a fertility decline?

FAMPLAN—The record will show that we have been searching for additional ways to reduce fertility, beyond family planning,[118] but without much success. We've scrutinized the inventory but have not come up with many actionable ideas. ~The measures which are generally discussed by advocates of "beyond family planning" policies are almost uniformly vague, or are politically or ethically unacceptable, or technically or administratively infeasible.[119]

ACCRIT—The first thing to do is the obvious one. ~Support and encouragement of research on population policy other than family planning is negligible.[120] ~Such programs must be supplemented with equal or greater investments in research and experimentation to determine the required socioeconomic measures.[121] ~The specific measures required for developing [attractive] substitutes [for family interests] are not easy to determine in the absence of research on the question.[122] ~The most immediate barriers to effective programs today are the ignorance of the social sciences . . . and . . . of the biomedical sciences. . . .[123] In short, ~an incremental, piecemeal, or band-aid approach to global problems is no substitute for judicious investigation and systematic analysis.[124]

FAMPLAN—"More research" is of course the last, and first, refuge of the academic, on anything. But you cannot assure us of settled and practicable answers; you do not spell out how the research will feed into the determination of policy; you are reluctant to work on issues defined by the policymaker; and your results, quite properly, are always limited in application and often qualified away, judged from a practical standpoint. I'd be more sympathetic if the studies were tied more closely to the decisions presented to those who have to act. If I may say so, AcCrit, ~just as a university professor may learn a subject rapidly and efficiently (although at the cost of occasional embarrassment) through being suddenly thrust into teaching a course in it, the need for giving policy advice *now* will reveal the most obvious weaknesses and gaps in knowledge. . . .[125] But I do support AcCrit's call for more research—like family planning, it can't hurt and it might, probably will, help.

ACCRIT—The demographer ~is constantly told, "Tell us what can be done about population," with the implication that if he cannot come up with a satisfactory answer, he is a failure. . . . The demand is for "a solution that will work."[126] ~In calling for approval in advance, the family planning movement confuses the issues. The question of whether a policy, *if adopted*, would succeed is different from the question of whether, *if proposed*, it would be accepted.[127] Anyway I repeat: what the field really needs is more research. Hardly any resources are going into that compared with what FamPlan is getting for programs that are clearly inadequate to the task.

FAMPLAN—I confess that I do tend to consider what is workable, since it's easy to think of policies that would be effective but are impractical. In many situations it is less a question of knowing than of doing; it's the implementation that is lacking, not the knowledge. For example, if India could educate all the children through eight years of school, employ 35–40 percent of the women for money outside the home, lower infant mortality to below 25, raise the per capita income to $800, increase nonagricultural employment by four-fold, and so on—if India could do all that, its birth rate would fall to the low 20s or so.[128] We know what to do, more or less; we just can't do it.

DEVDEV—Another channel is incentives, and not just "bribing" people to practice family planning. ~It is important for every government to carefully examine the total structure of incentives regarding family size which its laws and institutions present to the individual. The object must be to design a broad framework of positive inducements to limit family size, and negative incentives to discourage large families.[129] For example, ~among the devices to be considered . . . are: (1) incentives for deferment of marriage; (2) incentive payments for childless periods . . . ; (3) incentive payments for sterilization; (4) old age pension plans. . . .[130] And one might also mention raising the legal age of marriage, easy divorce, establishment of a youth corps,[131] military and national service, village financing of services,[132] putting ~people back into closed ecological systems . . . where there is little opportunity to escape the ecological consequences of one's own actions,[133] and other community-level programs.[134]

ACCRIT—All of that is fine as far as it goes. What's basically needed is the removal of pronatalist pressures, legal and cultural, that have been so imbedded in the human consciousness across the centuries that we do not even notice they are there. That's where the real compulsion now is—*pro*natalist not anti-. And beyond that is an historical novelty that is now "unacceptable," to some people "unthinkable"—namely, that the state may have to impose involuntary controls on fertility[135] in the public welfare, as it now does on so many other things. ~Coercion is a dirty word to most liberals now, but it need not forever be so. . . . The only kind of coercion I recommend is mutual coercion, mutually agreed upon by the majority of the people affected.[136] The state now says that you can have only one spouse at a time; why can't it tell you that you can have only two children? ~Why not simply limit each couple to two births, with sufficient penalties to discourage three?[137] Alternatively, ~I have suggested, a little tongue in cheek, my "green stamp plan" of marketable licenses for having babies,[138] with transferable coupons which add up to replacement fertility. China, by report, uses community pressure backed by the political apparatus to allocate the children within quotas, and Bangladesh speaks of ~formulat[ing] a set of bold and, if necessary, drastic policies for vigorous action[139] and of ~consider[ing] the imposition of progressively increasing punitive measures against additional children after the second child. . . .[140] There are no two ways about it: population control does not come easy. Even ~in countries where contraception is used, a realistic proposal for a government policy of lowering the birthrate reads like a catalogue of horrors. . . .[141] ~In the famous words of Chairman Mao, adapted rather liberally to this context, a demographic revolution is no picnic.[142]

> ***". . . the sensitive issues involved in population get tangled up in international politics, as though the substance itself were not problem enough."***
>
> —FamPlan

DEVDEV—In that case, we may not want it. I prefer the disease to the cure, particularly since you haven't proved beyond a reasonable doubt that the blessings of slower growth will be so very large. ~The social consequences of population growth do not seem either so clear-cut or so terrifying to me as to warrant emergency measures.[143] ~Quite apart from the fact that it does not have a shred of political acceptability in the present world, is there a strong enough case to press for a coercive regime of fertility?[144] Why should people let themselves in for your catalogue of horrors and deprive themselves of one of the few values that life holds out for them, all for an uncertain benefit? Would you?

FAMPLAN—I agree. Most of that isn't acceptable, to either the people or the governments.

ACCRIT—Then down with the governments. You mean the likelihood of proposed programs ~to gain acceptance by *existing* governments. . . .[145] "Acceptability" is a trap. ~Virtually all proposed social changes are initially unacceptable, or else they would not need to be proposed. . . . Measures to stop population growth cannot be found which can be guaranteed in advance to be acceptable. They have to win acceptance. . . .[146]

FAMPLAN—~A question of moral (though not intellectual) legitimacy is raised when research leads to the recommendation of actions, the cost of which are [sic] borne entirely by other people. There is something, if not illegitimate, at any rate distasteful in people from safe and comfortable positions recommending revolutions or painful reforms or, for that matter, the maintenance of the *status quo*, to others.[147] You sit in your affluent academic armchairs and admonish others to accept the unacceptable. I seem to recall that a few years ago, when the students were prescribing university reforms and telling you to accept the unacceptable, you climbed the barricades. Now you turn the tables, and when your advice isn't taken, you sit back and say, "Well, I told them; don't blame me if they don't do as I say."

DEVDEV—All of that raises the issue of motives in providing policy prescriptions and/or policy assistance in this field. ~Many of the peoples in many countries see the expression of concern of the rich, white, northern half of the world with population increase as directed towards the not-so-rich, not-so-white, southern half of the world.... And this can certainly have undertones of racism. The word genocide occasionally is bandied about.[148] To be specific, ~political elites as well as intellectuals in most African countries question the motivations of the highly industrialized nations for actively pushing and financially supporting family planning programs in Africa.[149] ~At present, there is already political reaction against population programs in many countries because they think the advanced nations are trying to sell population control as a cheap means of achieving progress.[150] At the World Population Conference at Bucharest, ~the opponents of the Western approach were clearly in the majority [and intended] without question a repudiation of attempts to make population the culprit for poverty and underdevelopment and a backlash against the way in which imperialist countries have sought to promote birth control in the rest of the world.[151] ~That is why the "demographic approach" to the present problems of the world is so sterile: it points only to a non-solution while, at the same time, with its overdramatization about approaching disaster due to the "population explosion," it distracts the attention of the public from where real solutions may be found.[152]

FAMPLAN—Inevitably, the sensitive issues involved in population get tangled up in international politics, as though the substance itself were not problem enough. Bucharest is the key example. As you have yourself said, DevDev, ~"The deep tensions in the international politico-economic system are aggravated by the world population pressure and at the same time prevent its cure."[153]

DEVDEV—Moreover, your motives are perceived as impure in another way. In our opinion, the primary way of solving the population problem lies in combatting the aggression and plunder of the imperialists, colonialists and neo-colonialists, and particularly the superpowers....[154] ~The most relevant and revealing fact is that a tiny minority in affluent countries is using up food, petrol and other essential commodities out of all proportion to their needs.... The threat to their life styles has led some persons to blame the growth of population in countries like India. But it is the rich who deplete resources and pollute the environment, not the poor.[155] ~It is inadmissible that those who have control of the wealth and resources of mankind should try to resolve the problem of hunger by forbidding the poor to be born.... Is it not a new form of warfare to impose a restrictive demographic policy on nations to ensure that they will not claim their just share of the earth's goods?[156]

FAMPLAN—Inadmissible? Forbid? Impose? Restrict? Such terms fit your vocabulary much better than mine. To the contrary, I'm freeing couples, chiefly women, to make a choice that history has never realistically provided them, partly thanks to you. As for the threat of resource depletion, population growth in developed countries cannot be much of a villain since there's not much of it these days—21 of 31 highly developed countries now have birthrates below replacement[157]—and don't overlook that they are the creator of resources too.

> ***"... in today's world, on an issue that so sharply divides the rich countries from the poor ones, what's really lacking is the political will."***
>
> —AcCrit

DEVDEV—Motives aside, we are dealing with a truly historic affair. ~The solution of the problems addressed ... is in my judgment a social revolution.[158] The thrust of the conservative ideology that permeates population thinking is counterrevolutionary.[159] And on the level of politics, ~insisting on population increase as a major cause of underdevelopment can ... serve ... to distract attention from the real political-economic issues facing the Third World.[160] ~In fact, I've got a feeling that to change the system we're going to have to get a little closer to chaos, by even a greater explosion of population in these countries....[161] ~This is why population policies are opposed by revolutionaries....[162] In any case, population and family planning is seen as a safety valve, a band-aid, a cop-out, that only buttresses the existing system. ~The response of the Population Establishment to this new challenge was to concede the importance of economic and social factors but to carry on as before, arguing that each question should be dealt with separately, with separate strategies and plans for each sector.[163]

FAMPLAN—If the population establishment or what you call its masters wanted to retard the development of the poor countries, wouldn't encouraging their population growth be a cheap way to do so? If we had gone the other way and withheld the modern technology of fertility control, what would we then be accused of? As for the demographic revolution, I am of course enlisted: the question remains, how? With regard to social revolution, that's just another term for development—women's liberation, income equalization, popular education, decent health, and so on. But make no mistake, enabling women to control their own fertility may well count as a revolutionary contribution to their liberation. As for political revolution, that isn't made for demographic reasons, but the demography can help in that it can help to produce light at the end of the tunnel, and that's when revolutionary change occurs.

ACCRIT—But that poses the issue too narrowly. You always try to push the issue back to the provision of contraceptives, FamPlan, as though that has ever been really important. The two of you focus on your own interests, yet even the two together—development and family planning—aren't enough. To date efforts at curtailing population growth in developing countries have been bipolarized into the "economic development" approach on the one hand, and the family planning approach on the other.... Neither approach seems to be practical taken alone, nor do they even appear to be adequate in combination.[164] ~Modernization and birth control alone will clearly not bring family size into line with modern levels of mortality unless this reproductive institution is itself modified....[165]

DEVDEV—And how is that to be done, if not through economic development?

ACCRIT—Through ~a significant lessening of involvement in familial roles ..., direct manipulation of family structure itself—planned efforts at deflecting the family's socializing function, reducing the noneconomic utilities of offspring, or introducing nonfamilial distractions and opportunity costs into people's lives.[166] For example, ~offer [Egyptian] women employment as an alternative to childbearing.... [as in] small sewing factories.[167] Or encourage female participation in the Indian labor force[168] or institute ~rigidly compulsory education of children which would remove them as potential economic utilities ..., all the while effectively putting intellectual barriers between them and the past generation.[169] ~Many of these policies for influencing the family do not depend on prior economic development, they can be implemented concomitantly with modernization strategies.[170]

DEVDEV—They *are* modernization strategies, to be sure, but let's not fuss over the semantics. Do you think they can be done outside the development package, any more than fertility control can?

FAMPLAN—To wonder . . . why the intensification of employment opportunities for women as a means of lowering fertility had not been attempted in India is to wonder as Marie Antoinette did, why the people did not eat cake![171] Nor is it accidental that the sewing factories are not yet running. As for popular education, if all the funds used to support the family planning effort were shifted to education, it would add only a few days to the school year or increase the enrollment by a tiny fraction.[172] The proposals having to do with tax reforms, marriage licenses, maternity leaves, child assistance, public housing, and university fellowships[173] are simply irrelevant in most of the developing world. Such suggestions ~depend on a level of social organization in which the great majority are tax-payers and in employment. If you cannot get blood from a stone, you cannot operate schemes of this kind in the vast populous rural areas of the developing world.[174]

DEVDEV—AcCrit and I are not saying that your effort or your budget can do much to reduce poverty or educate children or employ women but only that such things must happen before you can be even moderately successful.

FAMPLAN—Not so fast—*plus* community pressure plus minimizing insecurity[175] *plus* raised age of marriage *plus* heavy antinatalist propaganda in the name of the revered leader (hardly an unmixed blessing) *plus* a vigorous family planning effort including induced abortion. Anyway, we really don't know yet.

ACCRIT—When you get right down to it, you have to face the fact that in today's world, on an issue that so sharply divides the rich countries from the poor ones, what's really lacking is the political will. And that has to be based on a stronger appreciation of what is involved. ~The effort should be directed toward generating demand for population policies through advancing the analysis of the consequences of population processes.[176] Potentially effective measures ~cannot be proposed seriously until or unless a high level of felt social need for such policies emerges.[177] When natural pressures and contraceptives fail, ~society will have to find other means to solve its demographic problems, relying on disincentives, moral suasion, or command. Such solutions must be national solutions par excellence.[178]

FAMPLAN—Yes, but let the record show that they are still unspecified.

Last Words

The debate seems to keep circling back upon itself. The time has come for summaries and conclusions.

DEVDEV—The basic problem is not population growth but the reduction of poverty, with all that entails both as cause and as consequence. Attacking that basic problem is the best way, in efficiency as well as in morality and politics, to attack the problems of population growth. And the international community must understand this fundamental point and allocate its resources for assistance accordingly. As for "severe" measures to control population, as I said, the cure sounds worse to me than the disease. In any case, don't try to push people around with the threat of "population explosion." Family planning programs are all right, but don't expect them to do very much; anyway they are good for other than demographic reasons and can't do any harm. My last word?—Develop, and in the process, Distribute income more equitably.

> *"If nothing else, eliminating the straw men from the debate—a sophomore's game—would be a major step forward . . . "*
>
> —Berelson

ACCRIT—We simply do not know how to proceed in order to reduce birthrates in traditional societies, which is why I keep calling for more research in order to find out how. Where we do know, we are unwilling to pay the price: People ~do not want runaway population growth . . . but they want to avoid it painlessly.[179] ~In short, they want a miracle.[180] Neither DevDev nor FamPlan has a viable answer: Development takes too long and is itself retarded by the very growth it is meant to relieve; family planning doesn't work, except trivially where it isn't really needed. Some direct demographic measures are required; they aren't altogether clear except that they won't be easy. But the alternatives will be worse. In the longer view, one can only be pessimistic: After all, mankind has never been very good at controlling individual behavior for the common welfare. My last word is double: Research. Restructure.

FAMPLAN—I'm for both development and research, but both will take a long time: that's what makes basic causes and fundamental solutions so basic and fundamental. But that's not the issue, at least for me. The issue is: What if anything should the population effort now do with its small resources, in personnel and funding, that can make the most difference. I'm not sure that I have the proper answer, but I'm convinced that's the proper question. To assign to me poverty reduction or population education or liberation of women or any other alleged threshold of similar magnitude is ludicrous on its face. To call for more study is on the other hand too easy: One tends to remain in a Talmudic tradition where everything is very complicated and nothing can be done. At least I am doing something, however incremental, and if it could be done well it should make a nontrivial difference in softening the growth curve; anyway, it is a useful means to accompany the engine of motivation. Both DevDev and AcCrit are willing that it go on and have not yet told me what else to do that I can do. My last word, then, is: Persevere.

A worthy yet unsatisfying debate, the needle stuck beyond science and within politics: no final guidance from the former, numerous constraints from the latter, and in between lots of room for the play of judgment.

Still, the participants seem to agree on a good deal that they still keep arguing about: the demographic facts, the absence of any panaceas, population as only a means, the need for both direct and indirect efforts, the empirical results of family planning efforts, the useful in both development and family planning, perhaps even the existence of a problem. Why then the continuing acrimony?—semantics, emphasis, point-scoring, putting down the more vulnerable extremes within the opposing camp, ideology. If nothing else, eliminating the straw men from the debate—a sophomore's game—would be a major step forward, though the dynamics of the situation make that unlikely. Given the interests imbedded in the debate, this is understandable, perhaps necessary, probably inevitable—yet at the same time it exacerbates an already difficult situation.

Perhaps the most consequential differences in the debate are not over facts or values but over the formulation of issues. DevDev and AcCrit tend to talk about theoretical analysis and basic causes and fundamental solutions, FamPlan about practical next steps and allocation of resources and incremental advances. That is where the debate seems to be least joined but most needed, on what the proper policy issues really are. And complicating the resolution is the normal sight-line of the planner and intellectual as against the operator—the long-term versus the short-term.

In reviewing another intellectual debate, the economist Marshall once observed that one was most likely to be right when promoting his own method of inquiry and most likely to be wrong when attacking the other fellow's. In this debate, the reverse seems to be the case: Each debater seems most persuasive when pointing out what's wrong with the others and least persuasive when putting forward his own positive program. Taken together, that adds up to an overwhelming impression of negativism: What can be done is not "enough," what is "enough" cannot be done. As all three of the debaters made clear, proposed actions are often unadoptable for one reason or another, and if adoptable, incapable of being adequately implemented. So as a whole the debate does not lead to an optimistic conclusion, especially when put against the recalcitrance of the problem itself. It is wry comfort, as often observed, ~that the powers of the state to influence fertility or growth, at least to the extent that it has been regarded as practicable to apply them so far, are limited and marginal. . . .[181]

But the modern world does not let great problems rest. ~In earlier times, problems of this character were not so readily identified and, when they were, not so readily addressed. These days the very recognition of a public problem means that something must be done about it.[182] Once recognized, they must be addressed, and readdressed.

The elementary truth is that no path into the future is likely to be painless, not least the path of demographic laissez-faire. ~It is indeed hard not to be philosophical in contemplating the most likely course of demographic-economic development in the coming decades. It holds out the promise of a sustained sense of déjà vu, continuing a developmental line that rapidly increases the gap between what man could be were he able to control his affairs and what he, in fact, is.[183]

Somehow, the debate is not as it ought to be—too often repetitive, circular, untidy, pedestrian, oblique, evasive. ~It is too schematic, it assumes clear-cut and clearly formulated alternatives that do not exist. The point is that nothing works very well, and that goes for development as well as for family planning. Nor is there any substitute for local commitment, resolve, effort—including the subtleties of an international intellectual debate.[184]

Still responsibility rests on these debaters and what they represent. The exchange has a valued life of its own, to generate ideas and/or the consensus to inform and improve action. The population strategy of the 1960s and early 1970s is, though still very much alive, under growing scrutiny; the population strategy from now to 1984 is struggling to be born.

References

1. M. S. Teitelbaum, "Population and Development: Is a Consensus Possible?" *Foreign Affairs,* 52:742, 1974.

2. Y. Guzevaty cited by J. F. Patiño, "Population / Family Planning Programs in Latin America—Problems and Prospects," *Third Bellagio Conference on Population,* Rockefeller Foundation, New York, 1974, p. 22.

3. World Population Conference, *World Population Plan of Action,* United Nations Economic and Social Council, New York, 1974, para. 14d.

4. R. B. Tabbarah, "Population Policy Issues in International Instruments: With Special Reference to the *World Population Plan of Action,"* unedited draft of paper for publication in *Journal of International Law and Economics,* Dec. 1974, p. 32.

5. Senior officer of the World Population Conference, United Nations, personal communication, Aug. 26, 1974.

6. K. Singh, mimeographed statement made at the World Population Conference, Bucharest, Aug. 1974, p. 2.

7. World Population Year Secretariat, *Action Pack,* United Nations Fund for Population Activities, 1974.

8. F. W. Notestein, "The Quest for Optimal Patterns of Demographic, Economic and Social Development: Costs and Benefits of Population Programs," paper prepared for the Symposium on Population and Development, Cairo, June 4–14, 1973, and the World Population Conference, Bucharest, Aug. 1974, p. 2.

9. Ibid., p. 7.

10. J. M. Stycos, "Demographic Chic at the UN," *Family Planning Perspectives,* 6:160, 1974, p. 162.

11. P. R. Ehrlich and A. H. Ehrlich, *Population, Resources, Environment: Issues in Human Ecology,* W. H. Freeman and Co., San Francisco, 1970, p. 1.

12. K. Davis, "Zero Population Growth: The Goal and the Means," in M. Olson and H. H. Landsberg, eds., *The No-Growth Society,* W. W. Norton & Co., New York, 1973, p. 26.

13. G. Hardin, "The Tragedy of the Commons, " *Science,* 162:1248, 1968; and W. Greene, "Triage: Who Shall Be Fed? Who Shall Starve?" *New York Times Magazine,* Jan. 5, 1975, p. 9ff.

14. R. B. Tabbarah, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 4), p. 35.

15. Ibid., p. 16

16. J. D. Rockefeller, 3d, "Population Growth: The Role of the Developed World," paper presented at the Tribune, World Population Conference, Bucharest, Aug. 1974, p. 4.

17. W. P. Mauldin, "Assessment of National Family Planning Programs," paper presented at the Tribune, World Population Conference, Bucharest, Aug. 1974, p. 2.

18. World Population Conference, 1974, op.cit. (see reference 3), para. 32.

19. National Academy of Sciences et al., *In Search of Population Policy: Views from the Developing World,* Washington, D.C., 1974, p. 95.

20. V. Oppenheimer, "Population," *Headline Series,* No. 206, Foreign Policy Association, New York, 1971, p. 75.

21. G. Ohlin, "The New Breed of Malthusians," *Family Planning Perspectives,* 8:158, 1974.

22. F. W. Notestein, 1973, op.cit. (see reference 8), p. 8.

23. P. Demeny, "On the Economic Theory of Fertility," paper presented at the Conference on the Economic Aspects of Population Growth, Valescure, France, Sept. 3, 1973.

24. Ibid., p. 4.

25. V. Oppenheimer, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 20), p. 75.

26. R. B. Tabbarah, 1974, op.cit. (see reference 4), pp. 34–35.

27. World Population Conference, 1974, op.cit. (see reference 3), para. 31.

28. E. van de Walle and J. Knodel, "Demographic Transition and Fertility Decline: The European Case," paper presented at the 1967 conference of the International Union for the Scientific Study of Population, Sydney, Australia, as cited in A. Coale, "The Decline of Fertility in Europe from the French Revolution to World War II," in S. J. Behrman, L. Corsa, Jr., and R. Freedman, eds., *Fertility and Family Planning: A World View,* The University of Michigan Press, Ann Arbor, 1969, p. 18.

29. A. Coale, 1969, op. cit. (see reference 28), p. 18, citing A. Coale, "Factors Associated with the Development of Low Fertility: An Historic Summary," *World Population Conference, 1965, Vol. 2,* United Nations, pp 205–209.

30. T. King, "Economic Research Priorities for Population Policy," paper prepared for the Conference on Social Science Research: Population and Development, New York, October 29–30, 1974, p. 7.

31. R. B. Tabbarah, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 4), p. 34; P. Hauser, "Family Planning and Population Programs: A Book Review Article," *Demography,* 4:412, 1967; National Academy of Sciences et al., 1974, op. cit. (see reference 19), p. 96; W. Rich, *Smaller Families Through Social and Economic Progress,* Monograph No. 7, Overseas Development Council, Washington, D.C., 1973, pp. 10 & 45; R. Casey, ed., *A Frustrated Consensus,* report on the Consultation on Population Policy, Canadian Inter-Church Project on Population and Center of Concern, Montreal, Oct. 12–13, 1973; R. H. Cassen, "Economic–Demographic Interrelationships in Developing Countries, in H. B. Parry, ed., *Population and Its Problems,* Clarendon Press, Oxford, England, 1974, p. 238; and National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, *Rapid Population Growth: Consequences and Policy Implications,* The Johns Hopkins Press, Baltimore, 1971, p. 85; World Population Conference, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 3), para. 32d.

32. W. Rich, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 44; R. Casey, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 24; National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 86; National Academy of Sciences et al., 1974, op. cit. (see reference 19), p. 96; R. Black and R. Hankinson, *Population: A Progress Report,* Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development, Paris, 1974, p. 23; and World Population Conference, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 3), para. 32b.

33. R. Casey, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 24; R. Black and R. Hankinson, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 32); R. H. Cassen, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 31); W. Rich, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 17; J. E. Kocher, *Rural Development, Income Distribution and Fertility Decline,* The Population Council, New York, 1973, p. 89; World Population Conference, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 3), para. 32c.

34. R. B. Tabbarah, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 4), p. 34; W. Rich, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), pp. 16 & 32; R. H. Cassen, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 31); R. Casey, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31); National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 86; and World Population Conference, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 3), para. 32b.

35. J. E. Kocher, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 33), p. x; R. B. Tabbarah, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 4), p. 34; W. Rich, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 42; National Academy of Sciences et al., 1974, op. cit. (see reference 19), p. 86; and World Population Conference, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 3), para. 32e.

36. R. B. Tabbarah, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 4), p. 34; National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 86; R. H. Cassen, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 31); and World Population Conference, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 3), para. 32a.

37. R. B. Tabbarah, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 4), p. 34; W. Rich, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 15; and National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 85.

38. W. Rich, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 29; J. E. Kocher, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 33), p. 89; and P. Hauser, 1967, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 412.

39. National Academy of Sciences et al., 1974, op. cit. (see reference 19), p. 96; W. Rich, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 45; National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 85; and World Population Conference, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 3), para. 32e.

40. R. H. Cassen, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 31); National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 85; and W. Rich, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 15.

41. R. Casey, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 24; W. Rich, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 13; and National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 86.

42. P. Hauser, 1967, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 412; and A. Bindary, "Egypt Studies a New Plan of Actions," *Studies in Family Planning,* **3**:193, 1972.

43. National Academy of Sciences et al., 1974, op. cit. (see reference 19), p. 96; and National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 85.

44. Ibid., p. 87; and R. Casey, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 24.

45. National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 85; and W. Rich, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 14.

46. P. Hauser, 1967, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 412.

47. National Academy of Sciences et al., 1974, op. cit. (see reference 19), p. 96.

48. Ibid.

49. R. Casey, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 24; and World Population Conference, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 3), para. 32c.

50. P. Demeny, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 23), p. 4.

51. J. E. Kocher, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 33), p. x.

52. J. E. Kocher, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 33), p. 57.

53. W. Rich, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 2.

54. K. Davis, "The Changing Balance of Births and Deaths," in H. Brown and E. Hutchings, Jr., eds., *Are Our Descendants Doomed?* Viking Press, New York, 1972, p. 18.

55. J. Blake, "Demographic Science and the Redirection of Population Policy," in M.C. Sheps and J. C. Ridley, eds., *Public Health and Population Change: Current Research Issues,* University of Pittsburgh Press, Pittsburgh, 1965, p. 42.

56. Ibid., p. 59.

57. D. Heaps, personal communication, Mar. 1975.

58. R. Freedman and J. Y. Takeshita, *Family Planning in Taiwan: An Experiment in Social Change,* Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J., 1969, p. 359.

59. Ibid., p. 360.

60. B. Berelson, "Positions on Population Growth," *Annual Report,* The Population Council, New York, p. 27.

61. R. H. Cassen, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 238.

62. R. B. Tabbarah, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 4), p. 34.

63. National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 85.

64. P. Demeny, "Population Policy: The Role of National Governments," paper presented at the First Regional Population Conference, Beirut, Feb. 18–March 1, 1974, p. 8.

65. R. H. Cassen, personal communication, March 1974.

66. P. Demeny, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 64), p. 9.

67. Interdisciplinary Communications Program, *The Policy Relevance of Recent Social Research on Fertility,* Occasional Monograph Series, No. 2, Smithsonian Institution, Washington, D.C., 1974, p. iii.

68. T. K. Burch, "Theories of Fertility Decline as Guides to Policy," draft of paper presented at the annual meeting of the Population Association of America, New York City, Apr. 18–20, 1974 (to be published in *Social Forces,* Sept. 1973).

69. Ibid, p. 19.

70. K. Davis, "Population Policy: Will Current Programs Succeed?" *Science,* **158**:730, 1967.

71. P. Hauser, "Population: More Than Family Planning," *Journal of Medical Education,* Vol. 44, No. 11, Part 2, 1969, p. 21.

72. W. P. Mauldin, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 17).

73. P. Pradervand, "The Malthusian Man," *New Internationalist,* No. 15, 1974, p. 13.

74. P. Pradervand, personal communication, Sept. 9, 1974.

75. P. Hauser, 1967, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 412.

76. K. Davis, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 12), p. 15.

77. P. Hauser, 1969, op. cit. (see reference 71), p. 26.

78. K. Davis, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 12), pp. 15–16.

79. B. Berelson, "The Present State of Family Planning Programs," *Studies in Family Planning,* No. 57, 1970, p. 7.

80. K. Davis, 1967, op. cit. (see reference 70), p. 735.

81. R. H. Gray, "The Decline of Mortality in Ceylon and the Demographic Effects of Malaria Control," *Population Studies,* **28**:205, 1974.

82. J. M. Stycos, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 10), p. 162.

83. K. Davis, 1967, op. cit. (see reference 70), p. 731.

84. Ibid., p. 736.

85. National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 95.

86. A. Wallis, observation, circa 1955.

87. R. Freedman, observation in a population meeting, circa 1964.

88. K. Davis, 1967, op. cit. (see reference 70), p. 737 (for the remedy/cure apposition).

89. V. Oppenheimer, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 20), p. 54.

90. J. D. Rockefeller, 3d, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 16), p. 3.

91. F. Jaffe, "Family Planning and the Population Challenge?" draft of paper presented at Georgetown University, Washington, D.C., Oct. 1974.

92. R. T. Ravenholt, J. Chao and J. W. Brackett, "Epidemiology of World Fertility," *Clinical Proceedings of the International Planned Parenthood Federation Oceania Regional Medical and Scientifc Congress,* Sydney, Aug. 14–18, 1972, pp. 10, 26 & 28.

93. Ibid., p. 1.

94. R. T. Ravenholt and J. Chao, "Availability of Family Planning Services—The Key to Rapid Fertility Reduction," *Family Planning Perspectives,* **6**:217, 1974.

95. K. Davis, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 12), p. 25.

96. J. C. Caldwell, "The Containment of World Population Growth," paper presented at the Tribune, World Population Conference, Bucharest, Aug. 1974.

97. K. Davis, 1967, op. cit. (see reference 70), p. 732.

98. K. Davis, "The Theory of Change and Response in Modern Demographic History," *Population Index,* **20**:345, 1963.

99. M. S. Teitelbaum, "Fertility Effects of the Abolition of Legal Abortion in Romania," *Population Studies,* **26**:405, 1972.

100. G. Hardin, 1968, op. cit. (see reference 13), p. 1243.

101. S. J. Segal, memorandum, Nov. 1974.

102. K. Davis, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 12), p. 21.

103. R. Freedman, personal communication, Oct. 1974.

104. G. Ohlin, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 21), p. 158.

105. K. Davis, 1967, op. cit. (see reference 70), p. 739.

106. P. Hauser, 1969, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 413.

107. R. Casey, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 24.

108. M. Nikolinakos et al., "Population Growth and Social Development," statement at the occasion of World Population Year, 1974.

109. S. Amin, "Development Strategies and Population Policies: Under-Populated Africa," *Population-Education-Development in Africa South of the Sahara,* UNESCO Regional Office for Education in Africa, Dakar, 1971.

110. United Nations, "Report of the Second Asian Population Conference, 1972," cited in R. B. Tabbarah, "Population Policy Issues in International Instruments: With Special Reference to the World Population Plan of Action," unedited draft of paper for publication in *Journal of International Law and Economics,* Dec. 1974.

111. A. Bahri et al., "A New Approach to Population Research in Africa: Ideologies, Facts and Policies," paper issued at the African Population Conference, Accra, Dec. 9–18, 1971.

112. W. Rich, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 2.

113. R. H. Cassen, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 221.

114. O. D. Finnegan, III, "Integrating Population and Development Planning," as reported in "Implementing a Total National Program for Fertility Reduction," a SEADAG report on a population panel seminar, Bali, Indonesia, Aug. 12–14, 1974.

115. World Bank, *Population Policies and Economic Development,* The Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, 1974.

116. R. Black and R. Hankinson, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 32), p. 29.

117. Ibid., p. 22.

118. B. Berelson, "Beyond Family Planning," *Studies in Family Planning,* No. 38, 1969, p. 1.

119. F. Jaffe, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 91), p. 5.

120. K. Davis, 1967, op. cit. (see reference 70), p. 737.

121. Ibid., p. 739.

122. Ibid.

123. P. Hauser, 1969, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 410.

124. N. Choucri, "Population Dynamics and Social Inquiry: Some Methodological Imperatives," in R. L. Clinton, ed., *Population and Politics,* Lexington Books, D.C. Heath and Co., Lexington, Mass., 1973, p. 96.

125. P. Demeny, "Population and Development: An Agenda for Policy-Oriented Research," paper prepared for the Conference on Social Science Research: Population and Development, New York, Oct. 29–30, 1974.

126. K. Davis, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 12), p. 27.

127. Ibid., p. 22.

128. B. Berelson, "An Evaluation of the Effects of Population Control Programs," in H. B. Parry, ed., 1974, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 144.

129. L. Brown, *In the Human Interest,* W. W. Norton & Co., New York, 1974.

130. P. Hauser, 1969, op. cit. (see reference 71), p. 27.

131. National Academy of Sciences et al., 1974, op. cit. (see reference 19) p. 96.

132. National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 87.

133. O. D. Finnegan, III, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 114), p. 11.

134. G. McNicoll, "Community-Level Population Policy: An Exploration," to be published in *Population and Development Review,* Sept. 1975.

135. B. Berelson, 1969, op. cit. (see reference 118), p. 2.

136. G. Hardin, 1968, op. cit. (see reference 13), p. 1247.

137. K Davis, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 12), p. 21 & 28.

138. K. E. Boulding, "The Shadow of the Stationary States," in M. Olson and H. H. Landsberg, eds., 1973, op. cit. (see reference 12), p. 93.

139. Bangladesh Planning Commission, *The First Five-Year Plan 1973–78,* Government of the People's Republic of Bangladesh, Dacca, Nov. 1973, p. 537.

140. Ibid., p. 539.

141. K. Davis, 1967, op. cit. (see reference 70), p. 739.

142. J. Blake, "Reproductive Motivation and Population Policy," *BioScience,* **21**:220, 1971.

143. G. Ohlin, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 21), p. 158.

144. Ibid. p. 159.

145. P. Bachrach and E. Bergman, "Participation and Conflict in Making American Population Policy: A Critical Analysis," in R. Parke, Jr., and C. F. Westoff, eds., *The Commission on Population Growth and the American Future, Aspects of Population Growth Policy, 6,* U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C., 1972.

146. K. Davis, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 12), p. 22.

147. P. B. Streeten, "Social Science Research on Development: Some Problems in the Use and Transfer of Intellectual Technology," *Journal of Economic Literature,* **12**:1292, 1974.

148. R. Townley, cited in R. Casey, ed., 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 5.

149. F. O. Okediji, "Sociopolitical Implications of Family Planning Programs as an Aspect of Population Policies and Development Planning in Africa," *Third Bellagio Conference on Population,* The Rockefeller Foundation, New York, 1974, p. 17.

150. M. B. Concepción, "Emerging Issues on Population Policy and Population Program Assistance," *Third Bellagio Conference on Population,* The Rockefeller Foundation, New York, 1974, p. 28.

151. M. Carder and R. Park, "Bombast in Bucharest: Report on the World Population Conference," *Science for the People,* Jan. 1975, p. 19.

152. P. Singer, "Population Growth: The Role of the Developing World," paper presented at the World Population Conference, Bucharest, Aug. 1974.

153. D. Seers, "Development and Population Growth in Poor Countries," in H. B. Parry, ed., 1974, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 108.

154. Head of the delegation, People's Republic of China, speech delivered at the World Population Conference, Bucharest, Aug. 1974.

155. I. Gandhi, speech to a national conference on population, Dec. 1974.

156. Pope Paul VI, address to the participants of the World Food Conference, Rome, Nov. 9, 1974.

157. A. Coale, "Too Many People?" *Challenge,* Vol. 17, No. 4, 1974, p. 30.

158. N. B. Ryder, "Realistic Pathways to Fertility Reduction in Developing Countries," paper presented at the annual meeting of the Population Association of America, New York City, Apr. 18–20, 1974, p. 8.

159. Ibid.

160. M. Nikolinakos et al., 1974, op. cit. (see reference 108), p. 2.

161. R. Maione, as cited in R. Casey, ed., 1973, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 19.

162. D. Seers, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 153), p. 106.

163. M. Carder and R. Park, 1975, op. cit. (see reference 151), p. 18.

164. J. Blake, 1965, op. cit. (see reference 55), p. 67.

165. Ibid., p. 69.

166. Ibid., pp. 61–62.

167. A. Bindary, 1972, op. cit. (see reference 42).

168. J. Blake, 1965, op. cit. (see reference 55), pp. 66–67.

169. Ibid. pp. 68–69.

170. Ibid., p. 68.

171. D. Wolfers, "Non-Medical Factors in Population Change," paper presented at the International Conference on the Physician and Population Change, Stockholm, Sept. 1974.

172. G. Jones, "Effect of Population Change on the Attainment of Educational Goals in Developing Countries," in National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, 1971, op. cit. (see reference 31), pp. 356–357.

173. K. Davis, 1967, op. cit. (see reference 70), p. 738.

174. D. Wolfers, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 171), p. 16.

175. P.-C. Chen, "The 'Planned Birth' Program of the People's Republic of China, with a Brief Analysis of Its Transferability," as reported in "Implementing a Total National Program for Fertility Reduction," a SEDAG report on a population panel seminar, Bali, Indonesia, Aug. 12–14, 1974.

176. P. Demeny, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 125), p. 11.

177. Ibid., pp. 12–13.

178. Ibid., p. 11.

179. K. Davis, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 12), p. 28.

180. Ibid, p. 29.

181. W. Brass, "Population Size and Complex Communities with a Consideration of World Population," in H. B. Parry, ed., 1974, op. cit. (see reference 31), p. 65.

182. B. Berelson, 1974, op. cit. (see reference 128), p. 133.

183. P. Demeny, 1973, op. cit. (see reference 23), p. 8.

184. D. Heaps, 1975, op. cit. (see reference 57).

FamPlan: The Great Debate Abates

"The key is recognizing that it will undoubtedly be development *and* family planning programs that will bring about fertility decline and that a uniform formula will not work across different cultural milieus. . . ."

By Shireen J. Jejeebhoy

The Great Debate on Population Policy has abated considerably since the 1970s. Each extreme has been modified and tempered over the years. Each camp agrees that there are no easy solutions and that population change is only a means, while development or poverty reduction is the end. Each of the three positions treats population growth as an aggravating force contributing to underdevelopment rather than as the major cause of it.[1] Each accepts that population policies form an essential element of social and economic development policies, and that objectives, therefore, cannot be set in isolation and must be implemented within the context of development. All three accept the utility of family planning programs as desirable, and this consensus signals a change in the DevDev position. Finally, strategies for implementation have evolved to reflect the integration of development with family planning programs, as DevDev advocated in the 1970s.

Shift in Emphasis

The single most dramatic change in the decade between the first United Nations Conference on Population, in Bucharest in 1974, and the second, in Mexico in 1984, has been the shift in emphasis from the "Development is the best contraceptive" approach to the acceptance of the importance of family planning programs and related development efforts. While governments were silent or were even opposed to family planning interventions at the first conference, efforts were made to strengthen the commitment to family planning at the second. (The U.S. position, which held population to be neutral, was the one exception.) The 1984 international conference reaffirmed the original World Population Plan of Action and underscored the interrelationship between population and development. But what had changed over the decade was the intensity with which family planning was advocated, especially by the developing world: "What emerges from the Mexico Conference is a clear call to strengthen global efforts in population policies and programs. The high degree of consensus, the recognition of major unanswered needs, and the powerful emphasis on family planning and related health and social programs is both extraordinary and encouraging."[2]

Today, evidence of this commitment to family planning can be seen in the fact that over 90 percent of the developing world lives in countries where family planning is provided either because of demographic or health reasons or as a fundamental human right.[3] As many as 99 out of 131 developing countries provide direct assistance to family planning and 14 provide indirect assistance. And the commitment of the less developed countries to increased program effort between 1972 and 1982 is corroborated by evidence from some 91 countries with comparable data: Forty countries strengthened program effort over the period, another 44 maintained 1972 program effort levels and only seven recorded a weakening in effort.[4]

Development and Population

A less dramatic but nevertheless important change in the 15 years since the Great Population Debate is the increase in empirical research on the questions it raised. In response to AcCrit's plea for additional research, an impressive body of empirical evidence has emerged on such issues as the development versus family planning program argument, estimated levels of contraceptive prevalence and unwanted fertility, identification of socioeconomic factors that are particularly conducive to fertility decline, local-level studies of the determinants of fertility decline and the impact of selected interventions. By and large, these have added substance to the great debate and have forced both DevDev and FamPlan to modify their positions and strategies.

It has been increasingly recognized that expectations raised by traditional demographic transition theory in the West, and its experiences of fertility decline, have little relevance in the context of today's developing countries. DevDev cannot continue to simply say that one must "appreciate that development itself will bring about a fertility decline." In fact, the 1984 World Development Report stressed that population growth has stymied development and that population policies have succeeded in reducing fertility to levels below those normally associated with income levels in many developing countries.[5]

Even "economic modelling strongly suggests that economic gains in developing countries will be associated with development paths characterized by declines in fertility. Lower fertility is advantageous for developing a modernized economy, for providing resources for education, for absorbing labor pressures and for managing urbanization."[6] In other words, FamPlan's argument for the shorter term wisdom of direct steps to reduce population growth has, by and large, been accepted by DevDev.

FamPlan argues that although socioeconomic conditions account for much of the variance in contraceptive prevalence, organized family planning efforts strengthen the association considerably.[7] This contention is supported by systematic research at the macro level on the relative influence of socioeconomic setting and program effort in accounting for fertility declines in developing countries between 1965 and the

---

Shireen J. Jejeebhoy is a consultant in population and social sciences, Bombay. The author would like to acknowledge Nandita Kapadia-Kondu, Sumati Kulkarni, W. Parker Mauldin, Jyoti Moodbidri and K. Srinivasan for their valuable comments and suggestions.

1980s.[8] The essential underlying argument is that "on balance, family planning programs have a significant, independent effect over and above the effect of socioeconomic factors. . . . The key finding is that the two—social setting and program effort—go together most effectively. The policy implications are that, if a country wants to reduce its fertility, it should seek a high degree of modernization . . . and it should adopt a substantial family planning program. . . . In short, . . . one could conclude that the Bucharest judgment that family planning effort is of little consequence is itself of little consequence."[9]

Accelerating the Pace

Further evidence from 1965 through the 1980s suggests that program effort can and does lead to more rapid fertility decline than would be expected based on socioeconomic indicators alone.[10] Contraceptive prevalence rises in a regular manner as program effort moves from weak to strong. For example, among middle socioeconomic status countries in 1972–1982, prevalence ranged from 11 percent in countries with little program effort to 63 percent among those with strong effort; the corresponding declines in the crude birthrate ranged from three percent to 43 percent. A similar if weaker relationship is observed at other socioeconomic levels. A regression analysis gives relative weights to these effects: The combined direct and indirect (through program effort) effect of socioeconomic setting is certainly strong (0.90) but the direct effect of one aspect of program effort, namely the availability and accessibility of contraceptives, is considerable (0.44)—no mean achievement. The key conclusion obtained in analyses of data from the 1960s, 1970s and 1980s is that *both* socioeconomic status and program effort affect changes in contraceptive prevalence and fertility. And while socioeconomic status is important and explains a substantial part of prevalence, program effort does in fact have an independent, nontrivial effect and essentially serves to strengthen this relationship.

DevDev has argued that in countries where considerable socioeconomic development has occurred, birth control would have become widespread and fertility would have been reduced even in the absence of a program. But we now have studies at both macro and local levels suggesting that even in these situations, the role of family planning programs in accelerating the pace of fertility decline cannot be discounted. The shift to increased contraceptive prevalence has, in fact, occurred more rapidly than anticipated, based on the levels of development in some countries with strong programs, such as Indonesia, Taiwan and Thailand, and in an impoverished area of Bangladesh.[11] In Taiwan, in fact, it has been reported that the program's considerable contribution to the decline in fertility was strongest in the least developed areas of the country.[12]

In any case, the argument in favor of development has been qualified over the years. It is not any development but, rather, development with equality (in which gains are shared by large segments of the population) that contributes to demographic change. This recognition certainly puts some constraints on the forcefulness of the DevDev point of view.

In addition, both positions have had to concede that "cultural differences in social, economic, political and familial organization, as well as in value systems, play an important role in reproductive behavior and change. It is unlikely that simple theories about the role of family planning programs in fertility change will offer explanations valid across broad cultural differences."[13] In other words, different formulas work in different cultural areas, and FamPlan has recognized the need for flexibility and sensitivity to the cultural milieu in the implementation of both development and population measures.

In short, FamPlan's argument can be simply stated as follows: "At the very least, . . . program effort can make a difference in places where conditions are reasonably favorable and sometimes when they are not."[14]

Program Merits and Strategies

Given these findings, whatever the position on the development versus family planning effort argument, no one is about to argue for a zero program effort. But FamPlan has learned over the past 15 years that simply promoting family planning in isolation is not good enough. It is true that changes in contraceptive prevalence and fertility have not been as spectacular as originally anticipated by family planning professionals. Nevertheless, contraceptive prevalence in the less developed world has increased, on average, from less than 10 percent in the 1960s to 45 percent by the 1980s (or 33 percent if China is excluded).[15] Today there are about 400 million couples practicing contraception, and three-fourths of these are in developing countries.[16] Well over 80 percent of these couples are served by their respective national family planning programs.[17]

There is also evidence of a close association between contraceptive prevalence and fertility: Among less developed countries, a 10 percent increase in contraceptive prevalence is associated with a decline in the total fertility rate of 0.7 lifetime births per woman. Further, past program efforts are estimated to have already resulted in 412 million fewer people in the developing world in 1990 than there otherwise might have been, and this impact is expected to increase rapidly in the future.[18]

In 1975, AcCrit argued that family planning programs could at best have an impact on reducing unwanted fertility, but that the overall effect on fertility decline would be negligible. We now have evidence that unwanted births do, in fact, constitute a significant proportion of all births in the less developed world. For example, countries for which expectations of fertility decline are limited, such as Bangladesh and Kenya, have been shown to have unexpectedly high levels of *unwanted* fertility. Furthermore, significant proportions of women in less developed countries now express a desire to delay their next birth.[19]

Even at current family size desires, the impact of longer birth intervals is considerable. There is no doubt that even in the Third World, the demand for children has declined as modern ideas have become increasingly absorbed and alternatives to childbearing have become more apparent. Where desired family size remains unchanged, declines in infant and child mortality and breastfeeding, and the erosion of postpartum abstinence taboos, have inadvertently led to an increase in unwanted fertility, a condition that will clearly respond to family planning programs. Thus, programs can serve "to crystallize and legitimize the latent demand, . . . to hasten the fertility decline and to alleviate the suffering and costs of transition from a traditional to a modern fertility regime, especially among the poor, the uneducated and other disadvantaged strata."[20]

Nonusers of contraceptives who want no more children, and pregnant and amenorrheic women whose current or most recent pregnancy was unintended, can be defined as having an unmet contraceptive need. Demographic and Health Survey data from 11 countries at varying stages of fertility transition indicate that there are relatively high levels of unmet need at each of the transition stages: The proportions of currently married women aged 15–40 who have an unmet need for contraception are 15–20 percent in the low fertility countries, 25–35 percent in the moderate fertility countries and an unexpected 22–33 percent in the high fertility countries.[21] Similarly, it has been estimated that as much as 21 percent of current fertility in the Third World is unwanted.

Estimates of the potential demographic impact of satisfying unmet need suggest that reductions in marital fertility of 3–30 percent can be expected, with no further reduction in wanted fertility.[22] And if from 1990 onwards all unwanted births were to vanish, the size of the developing world population would reach 7.3 billion by 2050—that is, about 1.5 billion less than the standard projections predict.[23]

Obstacles to Contraceptive Use

On the household level, too, once the potential number of children a couple can have exceeds the desire for children, there is a latent demand for family planning. Whether or not contraception is practiced depends on the costs associated with it—in time, money, quality of services and other attitudinal obstacles.[24] From the above discussion on unwanted fertility, we can infer that for a large number of couples in the developing world today, the potential number of surviving children exceeds the desired number, and so the role of family planning effort becomes critical. Therefore, FamPlan has stressed the reduction of obstacles to contraceptive practice through better accessibility and quality of care, the development and use of new technologies, and so on. There is evidence that new and improved birth control technologies have contributed to the spread of contraceptive prevalence.[25] Data from 72 developing countries suggest that the availability and choice of contraceptive methods is critical in the pace at which prevalence increases.[26] After the effect of socioeconomic development is controlled for, the addition of one more method is associated with an increase of about six percent in contraceptive use, which translates into a reduction in the crude birthrate of 2.6 live births per 1,000 population.[27]

There is evidence to support FamPlan's contention that efficient and well-managed family planning programs can result in major fertility declines in underdeveloped societies with poor and illiterate populations. For example, Indonesia's fertility decline occurred under unfavorable socioeconomic conditions and is attributed to its distinctive program strategy and aggressive implementation.[28] The Family Planning–Health Services Project in Matlab, Bangladesh has had even more impressive results: In less than a decade, contraceptive prevalence rose from seven percent to over 40 percent, and fertility rates fell by 22–25 percent. The project combines an integrated approach with culturally acceptable and high quality measures, including a well-trained staff, a cafeteria of methods and a stress on quality of care and follow-up. In the Matlab experiment, demand "represented a necessary but not sufficient condition for fertility decline, since rigorous contraceptive service delivery was the critical catalyst of the Matlab fertility transition."[29] This approach, suitably modified, is being applied on a wider scale in Bangladesh.

FamPlan has accepted the wisdom of DevDev's criticism that population activities cannot simply supply services without paying some attention to generating demand for those services, and that population activities cannot be advanced in isolation of other major related development efforts. Family planning intervention strategies have undergone a significant change regarding their integration with other development programs and the increased emphasis on generating direct demand.

Family planning programs have become widely linked with maternal and child health care activities. The consensus regarding birth spacing as desirable for the health and welfare of mothers and children has provided an important rationale for linking family planning programs to health initiatives.[30] International conferences on safe motherhood and on better health for women and children through family planning have highlighted the linkages with family planning policies and programs, appealing for stronger measures to integrate the two and to reorient priorities so that family planning is a key element in the design and implementation of primary health programs.[31]

More generally, it has been recognized that family planning efforts should be integrated with broader development programs such as, to name a few, improvement of women's status, skill and income opportunities; agricultural development; education; community participation; and so on.[32] Unfortunately, there are few studies of the extent to which this integration has actually taken place and even fewer on the impact of those coordinated efforts that are already in place.

At the same time, more attention has been paid to direct efforts to generate demand through more innovative and intensive programs in information, education and motivation. While family planning programs are increasingly engaged in spreading the idea of small family size, the extent to which these efforts have been successful needs further investigation.

Finally, speaking of linkages, there is a need for some between DevDev, AcCrit and FamPlan. Research findings have to be disseminated beyond the academic community and among FamPlan and DevDev specialists alike. These findings and program implications must be expressed clearly and succinctly. There is certainly a need for research, but it must respond both to the needs of the family planning programs and to related development programs. Findings must then be incorporated back into these programs.

Last Words

There is strong evidence, except in countries with the lowest levels of socioeconomic development, that developing countries are likely to achieve both significant increases in contraceptive prevalence and declines in fertility through substantial family planning programs, which are undeniably a necessary element of development programs today. The socioeconomic development *versus* family planning debate is dated from today's perspective. The key is recognizing that it will undoubtedly be development *and* family planning programs that will bring about fertility declines and that a uniform formula will not work across different cultural milieus—innovation and modification across countries and regions must be pursued on a continuing basis.

The years since The Great Population Debate have tempered each extreme position, and the current more moderate "wisdom" can be summarized as follows:

- It is accepted that slower population growth would be beneficial to the economic development of most developing countries.
- The role of DevDev in creating the demand for family planning is undisputed. Both on the macro and household levels, FamPlan concedes that development sets the ball rolling in terms of motivation or setting. But it is also accepted that program effort accelerates the pace of increase in contraceptive prevalence, both in settings where conditions are reasonably favorable and, sometimes, where they are not.
- At the field level, FamPlan has accepted a broader perspective. Family planning is no longer offered in a vacuum but is integrated with other developmental activities, such as child survival in particular, and with women's concerns and development in general.
- The suspicion that the effect of organ-

ized family planning programs has been marginal has been countered by empirical evidence that has clearly demonstrated the impact of family planning programs on contraceptive prevalence, fertility and population size in developing countries, as well as FamPlan's key role in fulfilling the substantial unmet need in the Third World today.

- **Finally, each position acknowledges that different formulas work in different cultural contexts and that the relative importance of development and family planning programs vary correspondingly.**

When the next UN conference is held, the population of the world will be a staggering 5.7 billion. And while the population growth rate will have begun to slow down, disparities in the quality of life of these 5.7 billion people will show little trend toward narrowing. Hence, a concern for "quality" will become as important an issue in 1994 as numbers and the growth rate have been thus far. And notable among these concerns will be the issue of investing in women's health, education and access to services. A second area that has been receiving considerable interest, and that will definitely be grappled with, is the quality of the environment and its population implications. Finally, the focus will be on the quality of the programs themselves—of health and family welfare services, of overall care, of outreach services—and on satisfying the substantial and growing unmet need for family planning services.

References

1. T. King and A. C. Kelley, "The New Population Debate: Two Views on Population Growth and Economic Development," *Population Trends and Public Policy*, No. 7, Population Reference Bureau, Feb. 1985.

2. G. F. Brown, "Conference Report: United Nations International Conference on Population, Mexico City, August 6–13, 1984," *Studies in Family Planning*, **15**:296, Part I, 1984.

3. N. Sadik, "Old Challenges and New Areas for International Cooperation in Population," *United Nations Population Bulletin*, No. 27, 1989.

4. R. J. Lapham and W. P. Mauldin, "The Effects of Family Planning on Fertility: Research Findings," in R. J. Lapham and G. B. Simmons, eds., *Organizing for Effective Family Planning Programs*, National Academy Press, Washington, D.C., 1987.

5. World Bank, *World Development Report 1984*, Oxford University Press, New York, 1984; and N. Birdsall, "Population Growth: Its Magnitude and Implications for Development," *Finance and Development*, **21**:10, 1984.

6. P. Demeny, "The Economic Rationale of Family Planning Programs," Center for Policy Studies Working Paper, No. 133, The Population Council, New York, 1987.

7. R. J. Lapham and W. P. Mauldin, "Contraceptive Prevalence: The Influence of Organized Family Planning Programs," *Studies in Family Planning*, **16**:117, 1985.

8. R. Freedman and B. Berelson, "The Record of Family Planning Programs," *Studies in Family Planning*, 7:1, 1976; W. P. Mauldin and B. Berelson, "Conditions of Fertility Decline in Developing Countries, 1965–1975," *Studies in Family Planning*, **9**:90, 1978; and W. P. Mauldin and R. J. Lapham, "The Measurement of Family Planning Inputs," in R. J. Lapham and G. B. Simmons, eds., 1987, op. cit. (see reference 4).

9. W. P. Mauldin and B. Berelson, 1978, op. cit. (see reference 8).

10. W. P. Mauldin, "The Effectiveness of Family Planning Programs," *United Nations Population Bulletin*, No. 27, 1989; R. J. Lapham and W. P. Mauldin, 1985, op. cit. (see reference 7); and R. J. Lapham and W. P. Mauldin, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 4).

11. B. Entwisle, W. M. Mason and A. I. Hermalin, "The Multi-level Dependence of Contraceptive Use on Socioeconomic Development and Family Planning Program Strength," *Demography*, **23**:199, 1986.

12. R. J. Lapham and W. P. Mauldin, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 4).

13. R. Freedman and D. Freedman, "The Role of Family Planning Programs as a Fertility Determinant," paper presented at the Seminar on the Role of Family Planning Programs as a Fertility Determinant, International Union for the Scientific Study of Population (IUSSP), Tunis, June 26–30, 1989.

14. Ibid.

15. Ibid; and M. B. Weinberger, "Trends in Contraceptive Prevalence: Are Prevalence Rates Stagnating?" *International Population Conference 1989, New Delhi, Proceedings*, Volume 1, IUSSP, Liège, Belgium, 1989.

16. W. P. Mauldin and S. Segal, "Prevalence of Contraceptive Use: Trends and Issues," *Studies in Family Planning*, **19**:335, Part I, 1988.

17. W. P. Mauldin, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 10).

18. J. Bongaarts, W. P. Mauldin and J. Phillips, "The Demographic Impact of Family Planning Programs," paper prepared for the Meeting on Population and Development, Development Assistance Committee of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development, Paris, April, 1990.

19. R. E. Lightbourne, "Individual Preferences and Fertility Behavior," in J. Cleland and J. Hobcraft, eds., *Reproductive Change in Developing Countries: Insights from the World Fertility Survey*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, England, 1985.

20. R. Freedman and D. Freedman, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 13).

21. C. Westoff and L. Moreno, "The Demand for Family Planning: Estimates for Developing Countries," paper presented at the Seminar on the Role of Family Planning Programs as a Fertility Determinant, IUSSP, Tunis, June 26–30, 1989.

22. J. Bongaarts, W. P. Mauldin and J. Phillips, 1990, op. cit. (see reference 18).

23. Ibid.

24. R. A. Easterlin and E. Crimmins, *The Fertility Revolution*, University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1984.

25. W. P. Mauldin, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 10).

26. A. K. Jain, "Fertility Reduction and the Quality of Family Planning Services," *Studies in Family Planning*, **20**:1, 1989.

27. A. K. Jain, J. Bruce and S. Kumar, "Quality of Services, Program Efforts and Fertility Reduction," paper presented at the Seminar on the Role of Family Planning Programs as a Fertility Determinant, IUSSP, Tunis, June 26–30, 1989.

28. D. P. Warwick, "The Indonesian Family Planning Program: Government Influence and Client Choice," *Population and Development Review*, **12**:453, 1986.

29. J. F. Phillips et al., "Determinants of Reproductive Change in a Traditional Society: Evidence from Matlab, Bangladesh," *Studies in Family Planning*, **19**:313, Part 1, 1988.

30. R. Freedman and D. Freedman, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 13); and N. Sadik, "Women and Family Planning," *Populi*, **12**:40, 1985.

31. S. L. Isaacs and M. Fincancioglu, "The Policy and Program Implications of Promoting Family Planning for Better Health," in M. Black, ed., *Better Health for Women and Children Through Family Planning, 5–9 October, 1987, Nairobi, Kenya: Basic Documents*, The Population Council, N.Y., 1987; and A. R. Measham and R. W. Rochat, "Slowing the Stork: Better Health for Women Through Family Planning," paper presented at the International Conference on Better Health for Women and Children Through Family Planning, Nairobi, Kenya, Oct. 5–9, 1987.

32. S. L. Isaacs et al., "Laws and Policies Affecting Fertility: A Decade of Change," *Population Reports*, Series E, No. 7, 1984; and I. Askew, "Organizing Community Participation in Family Planning Projects in South Asia," *Studies in Family Planning*, **20**:102, 1989.

DevDev: A Balanced, Moderate And Eclectic Perspective

"Compared to the great debate of the 1970s, the later accumulation of empirical studies was sufficient to defuse the fervor of the debate by painting a much less alarmist picture of the consequences of population growth."

by Allen C. Kelley

Often in great debates the central issues are not resolved, but their intensity fades as extremism gives way to broadened analytical perspectives, and accumulated empirical evidence gives argumentation a stronger foothold. Bernard Berelson's classic 1975 rendering of the debate on the determinants and consequences of rapid population change is illustrative of this phenomenon. Over time, while the underlying issues have remained the same, the "acrimony, semantics, emphasis, point-scoring, putting down of the more vulnerable extremes within the opposing camp"[1] have given way to accommodation between the more reasonable participants in the debate, the DevDevs and the FamPlans. (Lamentably, the AcCrits, a diverse group of a somewhat dogmatic persuasion, remain remarkably resilient to advances in analysis and the gathering of evidence. As a result, their influence has waned.)

What has caused this moderation of opinion concerning the "great debate" on population policy? Two factors are primarily responsible. First, the perceived urgency of the so-called population problem has diminished as most Third World nations (except those in Africa) have made the breakthrough to declining fertility rates. The specters of below-replacement fertility and aging populations in the developed world are beginning to rival concerns about high population growth in the Third World.

Second, a vast literature amassed over the last 15 years has provided a substantially revised assessment of both the empirical consequences and the analytical determinants of population growth. This literature now supports a balanced, moderate, and somewhat eclectic perspective, one that is in stark contrast to the alarmist view of the consequences of population growth at the time of Berelson's writing. (For example, Robert S. McNamara likened the impacts of population growth to the perils of nuclear war.[2]) DevDev's forceful argument that many problems attributed to population growth are in fact caused by other factors (although exacerbated by population numbers) has been sustained by a large empirical literature.

Moreover, the analytical literature now favors a synthesis of factors explaining fertility decline using a framework that comfortably encompasses both DevDev and FamPlan. As a result, most participants in the debate now perceive population growth's adverse effects as considerably less threatening than they did in the 1970s. Indeed, a revisionist view of the impacts of population growth is now widely embraced.[3] Berelson had remarked that "eliminating the straw men from the debate—a sophomore's game—would be a major step forward."[4] This has largely come to pass.

Reassessing Empirical Consequences

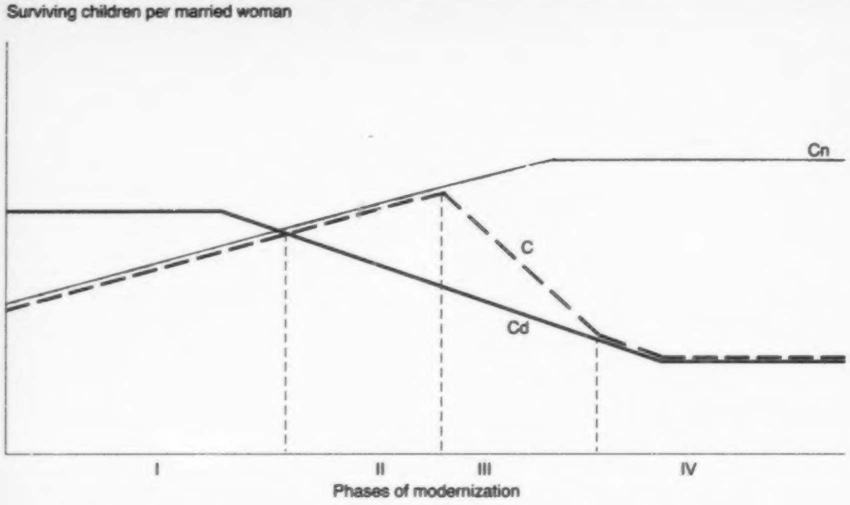
During the 1970s, the debate on the consequences of population growth was widely considered to be closed. Rapid growth rates were considered by most to be a strong deterrent to economic development in the Third World. Rather suddenly, this debate was reopened in the 1980s, culminating in a near reversal of U.S. population policy at the UN's International Conference on Population in Mexico City in 1984. According to Timothy King, senior economist at the World Bank, there were two reasons for this reversal.[5] First, there was a tendency to exaggerate population's significance. The antinatalist case was overstated and a backlash was inevitable. Second, some of the most important arguments and evidence that formed the basis of the antinatalist positions required qualification by further research.

Much of the necessary research was summarized in a National Academy of Sciences report issued in 1986.[6] Written by some of the most prominent economic demographers in the world, including a past president and the president-elect of the Population Association of America, this report provided a relatively moderate, nonalarmist picture of the links between population and development in the Third World. It espoused what can be called a revisionist interpretation, arguing that the negative impacts of population growth are not nearly as great as the alarmists claimed; that population growth is not the primary cause of major constraints on Third World development; that some of the previous antinatalist arguments were not empirically sound; and that analyses of the economic impacts of rapid population growth should not ignore indirect impacts such as the adoption of new technologies.

The report qualified several previously-held concerns about the consequences of population growth. For example, it concluded that worries about population growth causing resource exhaustion are probably misplaced: The relationship between population and global resource use is not all that strong. The report also concluded that pollution problems are solved largely by government policies correcting market weakness and are not specifically caused by population growth, although slower growth gives governments more time to react. Another finding was that the traditional concern about a substantial reduction of saving due to rapid population growth did not appear to be sustained in the data. In addition, the report suggested that problems associated with city growth are to be solved primarily by modifying government policies that encourage people to live in or move to cities; reduction of population growth is not necessarily a primary means of solving locational imbalances.

Allen C. Kelley is James B. Duke professor of economics and associate director of the Center for Demographic Studies at Duke University.

Figure 1. Easterlin's synthesis model of fertility determination



Source: See reference 10.

Some antinatalist concerns were sustained in the report, which noted, for example, that the impact of population growth on the degradation of renewable resources is a serious problem where property rights are difficult to assign or maintain, such as in rain forests and fishing areas. The report also stated that large families result in households spending less on the health, nutrition and education of individual children. (It was referring mainly to the qualitative impact on children, as the quantitative impact of expenditure allocation is difficult to assess.)

The overall tone of the report was centrist-to-mildly pessimistic, and certainly nonalarmist—a major turnabout in the literature, as well as the debate: "*On balance*, we reach the *qualitative* conclusion that *slower* population growth would be beneficial to the economic development of *most* developing countries."[7] (Emphases added.) The report writers clearly agonized over this statement; its moderate, eclectic orientation is illustrated by the highlighted words. "On balance" refers to the conclusion that there are several positive effects of population growth on development. "Slower" instead of "slow" indicates that the report writers were unwilling to make quantitative statements—only that slower is better than faster. They do not allude to zero population growth, and their conclusion is consistent with an optimum population growth rate of two percent, one percent, zero percent or minus two percent. "Most" recognizes that population growth may actually enhance development in some countries.

This revisionist position is broadly supported by other literature reviews of the 1980s[8] and contrasts sharply with the National Academy Study of 1971,[9] which found virtually no good in increased population numbers and identified about 16 reasons why smaller populations would benefit mankind. Compared to the great debate of the 1970s, the later accumulation of empirical studies was sufficient to defuse the fervor of the debate by painting a much less alarmist picture of the consequences of population growth.

Reassessing Analytical Determinants

The debate of the 1970s centered primarily on the various determinants of population growth. FamPlans emphasized the importance of providing family planning information and introducing new technologies; DevDevs believed that the demand for such family planning was determined, in large part, by factors related to economic development. Within the FamPlan camp, there was division over whether family planning should be combined operationally with, or apart from, the provision of services relating to child and maternal health. Again, as with the consequences-of-population debate, a more flexible outlook has emerged over time, and the gathering of empirical evidence has yielded moderate positions.

The broadened perspective is best characterized by Richard Easterlin's "synthesis" model[10] of fertility determination—a framework that presently dominates the literature, and one that comfortably embraces the positions of both DevDev and FamPlan. The model directly addresses a central issue in the debate: whether the emphasis of population policy should be on the supplying of family planning services or on the creation of the demand for such services through socioeconomic programming and efforts such as information, education, and communication. It also incorporates both biological and behavioral determinants of fertility and mortality.

As depicted in Figure 1, three major factors determine the number of surviving children per married woman. The first is natural fertility less child deaths (Cn)—the number of surviving children the woman would bear in the absence of any conscious use of modern or traditional means of controlling family size. Natural fertility rises over time as a result of improved health and economic conditions as well as changes in breastfeeding practices.

The second factor is parents' desire for children (Cd). This depends primarily on the psychological, social and monetary benefits and costs of having children. As the relative benefits versus costs decline, so too does the desired number of children. The action needed to attain ideal family size is the third factor. It involves deliberate decision-making and the adoption of family planning behavior, which has psychological, social and monetary costs. Until these costs are low, parents will not achieve their ideal family size (in Figure 1, the desired fertility line to the right of the intersection with the natural fertility line); rather, they will have families exceeding this norm (the broken line). In this model, a major effect of family planning is to reduce the costs of fertility control and to close the gap between the number of children desired and the regime of natural fertility.

There are several phases toward modernization in the model. In phase I, the desired number of children (Cd) exceeds the optimum number of children under a natural fertility regime (Cn). Population growth is constrained by natural fertility and infant and child mortality, and the number of surviving children (C) equals Cn. In phase II, the supply constraint is released (Cn exceeds Cd), but contraceptive practice is too costly (it may be unavailable, monetarily too expensive, psychologically or physiologically undesired, or religiously or culturally taboo); C therefore remains at Cn. In phase III, contraceptive practice becomes increasingly pervasive as the gap between Cn and Cd widens and contraceptive costs decline.

Several features of this model that bear on the "great debate" merit highlighting.

First, the decline in the demand for children represents the fundamentally determining force in the demand for family planning. Population programs focusing on the provision of low-cost methods of contraception are effectively constrained by family-size norms. Second, a major determinant of the demand for family planning is child mortality; family planning programs combined with maternal and child health programs are therefore appropriate in some instances. Third, in some countries or regions (those in phase I), family planning programs lowering the costs of contraceptive practice will be ineffective. Fourth, the nature of family planning programs can and should vary according to the phase of development and the various "costs" of family planning in the area served. Finally, family planning is best seen not as a motivational—and therefore fundamental—determinant of fertility, but as an important facilitating factor for closing the gap between actual and desired family size.

In this framework, the either-or perspective of family planning versus development as the best contraceptive is clearly inappropriate. Instead, the policy choice should be one of relative emphasis, and this will vary from setting to setting. With these broadened analytical perspectives in mind, some of the confrontational dimensions of the great debate of the 1970s have largely vanished. Indeed, most analysts of alternative population policy strategies now agree that socioeconomic development and family planning should supplement rather than supplant each other.

Moreover, many countries and regions have modernized since the 1970s (shown in the horizontal axis in Figure 1). This has resulted, predictably, in a substantial increase in the demand for family planning. It is no longer necessary to wait for development to create a demand for family planning—certainly a bone of contention in the great debate—as the demand now exists without question. The previous energy family planning activists devoted to merely advancing their cause is now being replaced by the challenge of developing effective programs to meet the demand, a formidable task in many Third World countries.

Who Won the Debate?

Having argued that the intensity and extremist nature of the great population debate has now subsided, it may be interesting to ask: Who won? There are several different ways of viewing the outcome. On intellectual grounds, the nod clearly goes to DevDev. Development—not family planning activities—has largely resulted in the increased demand for contraceptive methods; without development the impact of family planning programs would have been limited.[11] Moreover, much of fertility reduction has been the result of the knowledge and use of traditional methods, with or without family planning programs. On operational grounds, the FamPlans have come into their own—in part because many have embraced (with some qualification, of course) the broadened perspectives of the revisionist philosophy and the synthesis model, and in part because the fundamental nature of population dynamics makes family planning programs particularly cost-effective.

Population policy in the Third World is most likely to work best where the DevDevs and FamPlans both adopt the revisionist and the synthesis perspectives, since this helps avoid unproductive issues of contention (the debating "strawmen," in Berelson's assessment) and creates an increasingly recognized and accepted common ground for collaboration. Among the enlightened participants on both sides of the old population debate there is now "constructive tension"—a useful synthesis and accommodation of what were once confrontational views, resulting in a productive, symbiotic working relationship. This outcome is particularly satisfying because it is based on a better scientific understanding of the determinants and consequences of population change.

References

1. B. Berelson, "The Great Debate on Population Policy: An Instructive Entertainment," The Population Council, Occasional Paper Series, New York. 1975.

2. R. S. McNamara, *One Hundred Countries, Two Billion People: The Dimensions of Development,* Pall Mall Press, London, 1973

3. A. C. Kelley, "Population Growth and Economic Development: A Revisionist Interpretation," *Population and Development Review,* 12:563, 1986.

4. B. Berelson, 1975, op cit. (see reference 1).

5. T. King and A. C. Kelley, "The New Population Debate: Two Views on Population Growth and Economic Development," *Population Trends and Public Policy*, 7:1, 1985.

6. National Research Council, *Population Growth and Economic Development: Policy Questions,* Working Group on Population Growth and Economic Development, Committee on Population, Commission on Behavioral and Social Sciences and Education, National Academy Press, Washington, D. C., 1986.

7. Ibid, p. 90.

8. A. C. Kelley, "Economic Consequences of Population Change in the Third World," *Journal of Economic Literature,* 26:1685, 1988; G. McNicoll, "Consequences of Rapid Population Growth: Overview and Assessment." *Population and Development Review,* 10:177, 1983; and World Bank, *World Development Report, 1984,* Oxford University Press, New York, 1984.

9. National Academy of Sciences Study Committee, "Rapid Population Growth: Consequences and Policy Implications," The Johns Hopkins Press, Baltimore, 1971.

10. R. A. Easterlin, "The Economics and Sociology of Fertility: A Synthesis," in C. Tilly, ed., *Historical Studies of Changing Fertility,* Princeton University Press, Princeton, 1978.

11. W. P. Mauldin and R. J. Lapham, "Family Planning Program Effort in the Context of Population Growth and Economic Development," paper presented at the American Association for the Advancement of Science, Los Angeles, 1985; and C. F. Westoff, "The Demographic Impact of Changes in Contraceptive Practice," *Population and Development Review,* 15:91, 1989.

AcCrit: An Argument Yet to Have Its Day

"How then might an updated AcCrit view the present state of affairs? He or she would . . . [argue that] as providers of family planning services, programs have been fairly marginal to the world's demographic course over the past four decades."

By Geoffrey McNicoll

In the generally turgid social science literature, Bernard Berelson's writings stood out for their plain speaking—here, the reader felt, was manifest common sense. The subject of population policy was merely the latest of a number of fields that experienced his treatment. The skills of the communicator, however, are at the service of his message, and the Socratic format of Berelson's "The Great Debate on Population Policy" does not just put a variety of arguments on the table: It communicates, albeit as subtext, Berelson's message.

The message, to my reading, goes something like this: There are all sorts of things wrong with family planning programs, but they are the best means we have to cope with too-rapid population growth; they are transparent and direct; if they don't work as well as they are made out to, they are at least moderately effective in most settings and cheap in comparison to the kinds of changes that bring fertility down in the natural course of economic development (changes that would go ahead anyway); and the alternative policies implied in more general criticisms of such programs (if any alternatives can be found) tend to be politically unfeasible, if not socially obnoxious.

There is much to be said in favor of such a stance; many informed and thoughtful people adopt it. But it would be surprising if its acceptance left room for a balanced treatment of other positions. Berelson, true to Socrates, has stacked the deck.

FamPlan is thus the lead character in "The Great Debate." The principal supporting role is that of DevDev, and the dialogue between these two protagonists is the main engagement. The brief I hold in these comments, however, is for the third protagonist, AcCrit, Berelson's embodiment of academic criticism. Compared with the others, AcCrit is given short shrift. The character is cobbled together from several positions that are juxtaposed somewhat arbitrarily. Before considering the course of events and policy thinking over the period since the piece was published, I shall remark briefly on these constituent strands.

The chief component of AcCrit's views is the position set out in Kingsley Davis's well-known *Science* article of 1967:[1] To the social scientist steeped in Max Weber, Emile Durkheim, Talcott Parsons and other theorists of social organization and change, major behavioral shifts such as couples' deciding to have two or three children rather than five or six (or as many as come) are not to be attained by billboards and mobile clinics. Fertility is altogether more serious: It is, in a nontrivial sense, what society is all about. Radical fertility decline, where it occurs voluntarily, can be traced to the economic and cultural transformation wrought, in varying degrees, by education, modern technology and exposure to the industrial world—its patterns of living and, in particular, of consumption.

If policy is to compete in this league, it must concern itself with deep issues of economic and social organization (cost structures, family forms and gender roles, social stratification and mobility) and—an even taller order—with cultural systems. Family planning programs are the merest tinkering at the edges, medicalizing an intrinsically nonmedical issue and imputing a behavioral helplessness (if not obtuseness) to developing world populations that apparently had never marked those of Europe, North America or Japan at the time of their fertility transitions.

A second component in Berelson's AcCrit represents in some respects a parallel critique cast in terms of rational choice, bringing the conceptual apparatus of institutional economics and public choice theory to bear on demographic change and population policy. At the national level, the population problem is a divergence between aggregated individual fertility interests and the social interest (suitably defined) in the country's population size and growth rate. Solutions involve harmonizing the two—for example, by measures directed at raising the costs of and lessening the economic returns from children to their parents, or by institutional changes that expose individuals more directly to the social costs of their demographic behavior. Individual self-interest is assumed to be the primary human motivation, but it operates in complex ways through inherited institutional and cultural forms. Tracing these structures of interest helps in understanding existing fertility regimes and their possibilities for being modified through public policy. Family planning programs, rarely informed by any such understanding, are implausible candidates for initiating demographic change. Where programs have apparently been most successful, it is likely that they have been catering to a demand for services that was expanding mostly for other reasons. Paul Demeny has been a prominent exponent of many of these arguments: They were the subject of numerous internal exchanges with Berelson at The Population Council. But "The Great Debate" does not, on the whole, do them justice.

A third, essentially unrelated, component of AcCrit is the viewpoint of the modern Malthusian, obsessed with the finitude of the world and the limits to growth. Human population increase in recent decades (and as it is projected to continue) is a global disaster in the making: Natural resources will run out, ecological systems will be irreversibly degraded, and, in the Club of Rome's vision, populations will collapse.[2] Garrett Hardin has been a seminal figure here, willing to

---

Geoffrey McNicoll is professorial fellow at the Research School of Social Sciences, Australian National University, Canberra.

countenance (and even advocate) coercive measures, though consensually arrived at, to restrain the increase in human numbers—in humanity's own interests as well as for the stability of the global ecosystem.[3] There is perhaps an echo of Hardin-style triage in Berelson's well-known categorization of countries into groups that will, maybe will, probably won't and can't possibly achieve low fertility by a given time.[4]

AcCrit thus has multiple personalities that, combined with a tendency to Olympian reprimand ("[commenting] on society's actions from outside the pit") and an alleged inability to specify remedial action in politically feasible terms and budgetable packages, have left him (or her) on the sidelines of Berelson's debate, carping from the bleachers or fulminating in the wilderness while those who *do* claim to have ready solutions get on with the real argument.

Leaving aside all that could be said about this characterization, what has changed to alter the terms of the debate in the 15 years since Berelson's essay was first published? Demographically, much has happened, although mostly along the lines anticipated. Over one billion people have been added to the planet, bringing the world's population to 5.3 billion by 1990. The next few billions are expected at less than 12-year intervals, with the world reaching eight billion by 2020. These massive figures notwithstanding, fertility in the developing world has turned downward decisively. The total fertility rate, which was six children per woman around 1960, had fallen to about five per woman when Berelson wrote "The Great Debate" and to about four per woman in the mid-1980s. According to the 1988 United Nations medium-variant projection, it is heading to 2.3 children per woman by 2025. Only some observers caution that there is nothing automatic about that projection line: Demographers have had a mixed record in forecasting and not a few spectacular failures (hence their clinging to the term "projection" until events bear them out).

Under these circumstances, the debate on population policy, in the terms under which Berelson conducted it, has lost much of its heat. Yet little seems to have been resolved.

In practical terms, family planning programs are decidedly victorious, enjoying the lion's share of resources—even of research funds, spent largely on refining the details of program operation[5]—and dominating the population policy niche in both national governments and international agencies. Berelson was writing at the time of the 1974 Bucharest conference, the occasion of John D. Rockefeller 3rd's notable recantation of faith in family planning programs and espousal of development as population policy.[6] As it turned out, the Bucharest rhetoric remained just that. India and China proceeded on their respective policy paths, ignoring their statements at the conference. U.S. support for international family planning activities also continued unabated until it was caught up in domestic abortion politics in the 1980s; at that point, the United States government cut funding for the United Nations Fund for Population Activities and the International Planned Parenthood Federation, but not its bilateral support of developing-world family planning programs.

Yet this dominance on the ground has not followed from an intellectual victory. The empirical situation remains messy. The World Fertility Survey produced a mass of data on fertility and contraceptive use but disappointingly little on fertility determinants in the sense in which most social scientists would understand them. (Important theorizing on the demographic implications of what Norman Ryder calls "implicit contractual relationships between the generations and genders" has been based on entirely separate fieldwork.[7]) Studies that purport to show the antinatalist effect of family planning programs have been legion—a 1985 bibliography listed 360 items[8]—but have not convinced the skeptical reader that those effects are very great. Some of these studies simply reestablish by regression analysis the undeniable relationship between the practice of contraception and fertility outcome and assume that something is thereby being said about *program* effects.* In many other studies, the model specification rules out in advance the likelihood that measured "program effort" is in considerable part a reflection of demand conditions, thus fundamentally begging the question that is being asked.[9] Actual social experiments of the sort exemplified by those undertaken in Matlab (Bangladesh) or earlier in Taichung (Taiwan), and intensive, grass-roots fieldwork like that undertaken by the Caldwells in South India,[10] have been conspicuously rare.

The dominance in population policy of the family planning program has been aided by academic economists' virtual disengagement from an interest in this policy domain, particularly in the United States. Taking seriously the adjustment and substitutability assumptions of their theory, economists in the discipline's mainstream neoclassical tradition belatedly disputed the view that population ever *did* pose a serious problem: Renewable resources needed watching, but by and large a laissez-faire stance on fertility was the best.[11] Talk of policy measures "beyond family planning" (in Berelson's time, the economists' bailiwick in population policy) was largely abandoned.

Surprisingly, moreover, there was no resulting pressure to dismantle or privatize family planning programs in line with the burgeoning general criticism of government roles and the "nanny state." Perhaps the budget-makers in governments and in the international agencies found the revisionist case unpersuasive, or perhaps family planning programs were protected by their remaining, uncontested rationale—the health and welfare benefits they offer, especially to women. In any event, program budgets have flourished thus far, and the public sector has preserved a major and intrusive role in this quintessentially private domain of behavior.

With economists in retreat, other scholars moved in to reassess the process of fertility transition. Some now see it as governed primarily by "ideational" rather than "structural" factors, an interpretation that, it is argued, is supported by World Fertility Survey results.[12] Again, there is a benefit to family planners: Aspirations and attitudes relevant to birth control and family formation might be deemed to lie appreciably within the province of family planning programs, while socioeconomic conditions and opportunities would be largely beyond program reach. Yet the dichotomy is dubious. The ideas that "proximately" govern fertility behavior are not free-floating; in part they reflect general cultural orientations (for instance, the degree of secularism or of individuals' sense of their autonomy and scope of action) and in part they express the hopes, fears and expectations elicited by those conditions and opportunities. The leverage of programs is not apparent in either case. Giving more weight to cultural transformation in bringing about fertility transition can usefully correct overly materialistic interpretations; allowing selective cultural change at will implausibly trivializes the transition.

For the media, and for many demographers, the fertility downturn in the developing world has meant that the drama of population growth has passed. It is assumed that population policy has done what it could in most high-fertility regions and that fertility transition is in progress. Even in Africa, the laggard region, United Nations and World Bank projections anticipate a decline starting in the 1990s. A complaisant approach to policy seems justified, and is encouraged by the revisionist economic thinking already noted.

---

*Program interests have greatly benefited from the sloppy English usage that conflates "family planning programs"—the organizational entities that deliver promotional messages and contraceptive supplies and services—with family planning—what couples do to govern fertility.

For ecologists, in contrast, the population drama has just begun. Whatever effects sheer numbers of people have had on the global ecosystem over the past millennia will be dwarfed by the effects brought about by the next—final?—doubling of population size that is in store. As with a supertanker nearing a reef, the course of population growth may have been changed but the response is agonizingly slow—and it is the pace and direction of movement, not the position of the rudder, that determines whether the ship founders.

As consciousness of the human impact on the environment and knowledge about the dynamics of the ecosystem grow, efforts to counter the ill effects garner more support. The emergence of politically powerful green movements in the industrialized world and their beginnings in many developing countries[13] over the last 15 years are vital changes. Early pamphlets from Zero Population Growth and studies by the Club of Rome that predicted imminent resource exhaustion could be dismissed by ridicule, often deservedly.[14] The current depictions—not of population collapse but of environmental degradation and welfare losses, both material and aesthetic—cannot be. Influential institutions such as the World Bank and *The Economist* now take the matter seriously.

Of course, interactions between population and the environment are not givens, but are mediated by technological and institutional factors within human control. Rapid population growth, however, makes exercise of that control exceedingly difficult.[15] Changes forecast in climatic patterns and sea levels over the next few decades would pose serious adjustment problems, even if they were not going to coincide with the problems of making room for and equipping an additional several billion people.

How then might an updated AcCrit view the present state of affairs? He or she would heavily discount most claims of family planning program accomplishment. Indeed, AcCrit would suspect that in their capacity as providers of family planning services, programs have been fairly marginal to the world's demographic course over the past four decades: With the simple removal of prohibitions and the provision of information, contraceptive demand would have emerged at much the same pace as that needed for most of the fertility changes actually observed, but governments needlessly preempted supply responses through the market. (China, of course, has been a case of induced fertility decline of spectacular proportions, but claiming success for family planning *qua program* in China, as is sometimes done, is absurd. The manipulation of the political and economic costs of children to parents that underlay the halving of China's fertility during the 1970s[16] was clearly, in Berelsonian terms, "beyond family planning.")

AcCrit might also draw attention to one putative opportunity cost of imported family planning program models: the preemption of home-grown analysis of demographic problems in the local institutional and cultural setting and of policy development informed by such analysis. China's antinatalist policies of the 1970s and 1980s are the preeminent modern case of a home-grown approach. (The matter obviously entails complex value judgments: The policies were not out of line with the general style of China's polity and administration, although they disregarded many of the liberal values that the "standard" program model would have insisted on.) On a much smaller scale, Bangladesh's apparent identification through the Matlab experiments of a means of undermining patriarchal opposition to birth control[17] is another, potentially significant, instance of an essentially home-grown design, even though the project itself was the work of an international agency.

These issues are in contention on the remaining regional battlefield of population policy, Sub-Saharan Africa. In a period of severe economic and health crisis and with continuing intractable problems of governance, public policy in Africa has little attention or political capital to spare for dealing with high fertility. But off-the-shelf family planning models, together with much of the requisite program funding, are available from the international community. Both the content and the packaging of these "lessons of experience"—even those emerging from such stellar sources as Matlab—warrant close and skeptical scrutiny. For example, AcCrit would surely seek to skewer those who, after 20 years of program effort in Kenya with no discernible result, now attribute an apparent downward movement in Kenyan fertility in the late 1980s to program effort.

AcCrit would probably also decry the continuing obsession with finding new methods of contraception, as if a technological solution to high fertility in the developing world were around the corner. He or she would be skeptical about whether a case resting on health and welfare benefits could long sustain the political base of family planning programs in the absence of an economic-demographic rationale, even though such skepticism probably underestimates the staying power of the family planning movement at its present size. (Family planners can perhaps be grateful for the historical accident that made fertility policy subservient to a Stopes/Sanger-type welfare activism.)

On the other hand, AcCrit would anticipate that before long, the now-ascendant revisionist case on the neutrality of population growth will itself be found wanting, for reasons such as its neglect of scale and its too-pat treatment of poorly understood environmental systems,[18] or for its reliance on methodology ill-suited to investigating what Paul Demeny calls the "demographic constitution" of society.[19] Emerging new theoretical paradigms in economics undermine the casual determinism implied in the not-to-bother scenario and call for greater provision against uncertainty.[20] Environmentalist attitudes in the rich countries may even develop to the stage of serious cognizance of the "deep" ecologists' critique of unthinking anthropocentrism, raising the ultimate constitutional issue of what proportion of the biosphere's energy flux should be preserved for the rest of the sentient or animate world.[21]

Berelson ends his 1975 essay by lamenting the repetitiveness and circularity of the debate. Although convinced that what was being done in practical population policy was the best under the circumstances, Berelson always remained open to new ideas and approaches that might offer better outcomes. However, his character AcCrit (who is, among other things, a political realist), upon observing the interests enlisted in the existing policy enterprise, would likely not have expected any change of direction; rather, he or she would have anticipated the continuation of "a developmental line that rapidly increases the gap between what man could be were he able to control his affairs and what he, in fact, is" [p. 136]. That would have been a correct call.

(Continued on page 150)

Books in Review

Cultural Aspects of Africa's High Fertility Rates

Reproduction and Social Organization in Sub-Saharan Africa
ed. by Ron J. Lesthaeghe, University of California Press, Berkeley, 1989, $50.00, 556 pp.

Reviewed by Donald F. Heisel

The persistence of high fertility in Sub-Saharan Africa is a major preoccupation of the international population community and of most people concerned with social and economic development in that region. Unlike most of the countries of Asia and Latin America, where fertility declines are well underway, only a few Sub-Saharan countries show even fragmentary evidence of declining fertility rates. Instead, population growth rates are reaching unprecedented highs. Policies intended to reduce fertility and slow the rate of population growth have been increasingly adopted by countries of the region, and highest priority is given to support for those policies by many of the concerned international, bilateral and nongovernmental agencies. But results so far have given scant grounds for optimism, and it is not clear how to effectively use the resources available to achieve the policy goals.

This book, edited by Ron Lesthaeghe, makes an invaluable contribution toward improved understanding of this persistence of high fertility. Lesthaeghe draws together the results of demographic analyses of fertility with the leading findings from the ethnographic literature on population-related aspects of social organization. After developing the theoretical framework, Lesthaeghe and his coauthors test it empirically, making extensive use of a data bank of ethnographic information (the Human Relations Area Files) to obtain social organization variables and the results of the World Fertility Surveys (WFS) that have been done in the region.

In an extensive review of theories of social organization in Sub-Saharan Africa relevant to reproductive behavior, Lesthaeghe draws extensively on work done by Ester Boserup, John Caldwell and especially by Jack Goody. He suggests in his first chapter that among the most salient of the unique social organization characteristics are the preeminence of the lineage as opposed to the nuclear family; exogamous marriage; the importance of women's labor in the low technology and low productivity setting of bush-fallow agriculture; and the widespread system of circulation of capital within the lineage on a relatively egalitarian basis according to need. These characteristics are strongly conducive to early marriage for women, followed by continual childbearing. Moreover, these social organization characteristics remain strongly effective in the face of the impacts of modernization and of Islam and Christianity.

In the following two chapters, Lesthaeghe and his coauthors test the theory against empirical data, examining the effects of both societal and individual-level variables on fertility behavior. In general, they demonstrate strong support of the theory by the data. They observe that socioeconomic development is consistently related to duration of breastfeeding, contraceptive practice and female age at marriage, quite independently of the ethnic group to which women belong. On the other hand, length of postpartum abstinence is markedly linked to group membership, with Islamic societies, those of Eastern Africa and the matrilineal societies of Ghana maintaining much shorter periods of postpartum abstinence than the other societies that were studied. Female education has an especially strong, but not direct, impact on childspacing. In general, the higher a woman's educational attainment, the shorter the period of postpartum nonsusceptibility. But the extent to which the shrinking duration of nonsusceptibility is compensated for by improved contraceptive practice is in turn positively related to the level of socioeconomic development of the society.

Turning to the analysis of the leading specific issues in Sub-Saharan fertility, Ulla Larsen analyzes the levels and differentials of sterility. Comparatively high levels of sterility are endemic in a number of countries of Central Africa and in some regions of East Africa. Basing her analysis on WFS data for Cameroon, Kenya and the Sudan, Larsen unexpectedly found that sterility has remained constant across cohorts during recent decades in Cameroon and the Sudan, and has risen in Kenya—at a time when average fertility has also increased. She observes that sterility levels are higher in urban areas, but that this does not appear to be due to migration of infertile women to the cities. Her estimate is that if sterility were reduced in Cameroon and the Sudan to the somewhat lower levels found in Kenya, total fertility in these two countries would increase by about 30 percent.

Three chapters are devoted to patterns of marriage; in one, Noreen Goldman and Anne Pebley provide an excellent methodological and formal demographic analysis of Sub-Saharan polygyny, showing that the very high levels of polygyny are sustained by the substantial age difference at marriage between men and women and the extent of widow remarriage. In the following chapter, Lesthaeghe, Georgia Kaufman and Dominique Meekers report on a detailed empirical investigation of the prospects for a nuptiality transition to later marriage for women or a decline in polygyny. They conclude that the traditional system shows every evidence of being quite robust. Pebley and Wariara Mbugua then examine the relationship

---

Donald F. Heisel is associate director, Department of International Economic and Social Affairs, Population Division of the United Nations.

between polygyny and fertility, and find little evidence to support the common impression that there is an inverse relationship, and in fact find no clear simple relationship at all.

Ian Timaeus and Wendy Graham then review the relationship between labor migration, marriage and fertility, drawing on the experience of Botswana and Lesotho. The large-scale (in Lesotho, nearly universal) migration of men to the Republic of South Africa for contract labor has impinged upon the stability of marriage but the traditional structure remains: Women continue to be responsible for childrearing, have restricted access to land, are excluded from inheritance and, in general, remain dependent on men. In net effect, male migration reduces the level of marital fertility by at least 10 percent, and possibly by as much as 25 percent.

The final major topic of investigation, child fostering—the rearing of children by persons other than their biological parents—is taken up in two chapters. Hilary Page presents a preliminary analysis of fostering, based on data taken from the WFS household questionnaires. The practice is widespread: Especially in West Africa, it is quite common to find a third or more of the 10–14-year-old children not residing with their mothers. The extent of fostering demonstrates the comparatively limited role of the nuclear family in the socialization of children. Caroline Bledsoe and Uche Isiugo-Abanihe report on an ethnographic analysis of how the practice works in one ethnic community. They provide a clear understanding of the perceptions and motivations of both biological parents and the foster mothers, or "grannies," to whom children (usually aged six and younger) are sent. They also show how fostering is an important mechanism of social and economic exchange between generations and between rural and urban areas.

In the analysis of empirical data, the authors draw upon the full range of multivariate analytic techniques. They are particularly effective in their handling of the relationship between societal and individual-level variables, but do not indulge in a display of analytic virtuosity for its own sake. The authors are careful to make clear the substantive implications of their methodologies throughout.

In a concluding chapter, Lesthaeghe thoughtfully appraises current prospects for a transition to lower fertility in Sub-Saharan Africa, with particular reference to whether the current economic crisis afflicting the region is likely to precipitate a decline. His conclusion is not very optimistic: He predicts only a modest decline in desired family size, limited to the more developed parts of the region, and a recurrence of Malthusian checks, including, but not limited to, the impact of the spread of AIDS. As a result, Sub-Saharan Africa will probably remain by far the most rapidly growing region of the world—with a rate not much below three percent per year well into the early part of the next century.

The book has some limitations. Perhaps the most important is that, as the authors recognize, much of the analysis is based on the experience of 10 or fewer countries, which are not representative of the approximately 45 states and territories of the region. But this, of course, is a problem that hinders all demographic research in Africa. Nevertheless, this book is certainly one of the most significant contributions to African demography in a number of years. It is essential reading for anyone concerned with population in Africa; it is recommended for anyone who wants to better understand the demographic trends and prospects of the modern world.

AcCrit: An Argument Yet . . .

(Continued from page 148)

References

1. K. Davis, "Population Policy: Will Current Programs Succeed?" *Science,* **158**:730, 1967.

2. D. Meadows et al., *The Limits to Growth,* Universe Books, New York, 1972.

3. G. Hardin, *The Limits of Altruism: An Ecologist's View of Survival,* Indiana University Press, Bloomington, 1977.

4. B. Berelson, "Prospects for Fertility Reduction: What? Where?" *Population and Development Review,* **4**:579, 1978.

5. P. Demeny, "Social Science and Population Policy," *Population and Development Review,* **14**:451, 1988.

6. J. D. Rockefeller 3rd, "Population Growth: The Role of the Developed World," *Population and Development Review,* **4**:509, 1978.

7. N. B. Ryder, "Fertility and Family Structure," *Population Bulletin,* No. 15, 1983, p. 15; and N. B. Ryder, review of J. Cleland and J. Hobcraft, eds., *Reproductive Change in Developing Countries: Insights from the World Fertility Survey,* in *Population and Development Review,* **12**:341, 1986.

8. J. Sherris et al., "The Impact of Family Planning Programs on Fertility," *Population Reports,* Series J, No. 29, 1985.

9. P. Demeny, "On the End of the Population Explosion," *Population and Development Review,* **5**:141, 1979; and D. J. Hernandez, *Success or Failure? Family Planning Programs in the Third World,* Greenwood Press, Westport, Conn., 1984.

10. J. C. Caldwell, P. H. Reddy and P. Caldwell, *The Causes of Demographic Change: Experimental Research in South India,* University of Wisconsin Press, Madison, 1988.

11. National Research Council, Working Group on Population Growth and Economic Development, *Population Growth and Economic Development: Policy Questions,* National Academy Press, Washington, D.C., 1986; and A. C. Kelley, "Economic Consequences of Population Change in the Third World," *Journal of Economic Literature,* **26**:1685, 1988.

12. J. Cleland and C. Wilson, "Demand Theories of the Fertility Transition: An Iconoclastic View," *Population Studies,* **41**:5, 1987.

13. Centre for Science and Environment, *The State of India's Environment: The Citizens' Reports,* New Delhi, 1982 and 1985.

14. W. Beckerman, *Two Cheers for the Affluent Society: A Spirited Defense of Economic Growth,* St. Martins Press, New York, 1975; and J. L. Simon and H. Kahn, eds., *The Resourceful Earth: A Response to Global 2000,* Basil Blackwell, New York, 1984.

15. G. McNicoll, "Social Organization and Ecological Stability under Demographic Stress," in G. McNicoll and M. Cain, eds., "Rural Development and Population: Institutions and Policies," *Population and Development Review,* Vol. 15, Supplement, 1990, p. 147.

16. S. Greenhalgh, "Fertility as Mobility: Sinic Transitions," *Population and Development Review,* **14**:629, 1988.

17. R. Simmons et al., "Beyond Supply: The Importance of Female Family Planning Workers in Rural Bangladesh," *Studies in Family Planning,* **19**:29, 1988.

18. H. E. Daly, review of National Research Council, Working Group on Population Growth and Economic Development, *Population Growth and Economic Development: Policy Questions,* in *Population and Development Review,* **12**:582, 1986.

19. P. Demeny, "Population and the Invisible Hand," *Demography,* **23**:473, 1986.

20. W. B. Arthur, "Positive Feedbacks in the Economy," *Scientific American,* Vol. 262, February 1990, p. 92.

21. C. D. Stone, *Earth and Other Ethics: The Case for Moral Pluralisms,* Harper and Row, New York, 1987.

Note to Authors

International Family Planning Perspectives is a peer-reviewed quarterly journal publishing research articles about the developing world that are intended to be of assistance to professionals in the fields of fertility and family planning, maternal and child health and population policy. The editors invite researchers, policymakers and program operators from around the world to submit articles on such topics as contraceptive practice and research; population growth; fertility levels, trends and determinants; childspacing; public policies and legal issues affecting family planning and childbearing; family planning program operation, development and evaluation; information, education and communication activities; sexually transmitted diseases; and reproductive, maternal and child health. Manuscripts should be sent to the address below, and should include the complete affiliation, address, telephone number and Fax number of the author with whom we are to correspond.

Manuscripts may be submitted in English, French or Spanish, and are read with the understanding that they neither are under consideration elsewhere nor have been published previously. All submissions are reviewed by the editorial staff and, if deemed of interest, undergo anonymous peer review. Manuscripts not accepted for publication will not be returned. Upon acceptance, all manuscripts are edited to the extent necessary to conform to the style of the journal. Authors will have two opportunities to review their article after editing. Authors must assign copyright to the journal.

Selected articles appear on an annual basis in the Spanish edition of the journal, *Perspectivas Internacionales en Planificación Familiar*, and in the French edition, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial*.

Manuscripts should be typed double-spaced, with all pages numbered and with a title page that includes the names and affiliations (at the time of the work reported) of all authors. Submissions should run no more than 30–35 pages, with no more than 7–8 tables; only one copy need be sent. Manuscripts should include a summary of up to one page in length.

Each table and chart should be on a separate page. Authors should check previous issues of *International Family Planning Perspectives* to gain an idea of how tables are to be styled. Authors must supply data points for all line graphs and charts; final art work will be done by the journal's staff.

International Family Planning Perspectives es una revista trimestral que publica monografías sobre el mundo en desarrollo destinadas a asistir a profesionales en las áreas de fecundidad y planificación familiar, salud materno-infantil y políticas de población. Invitamos a investigadores y responsables de políticas y programas de todo el mundo a que presenten artículos sobre temas tales como práctica e investigación en materia de anticonceptivos; crecimiento demográfico; niveles, tendencias y determinantes de la fecundidad; espaciamento de los hijos; políticas oficiales y cuestiones jurídicas que afecten la planificación familiar y la fecundidad; aplicación, elaboración y evaluación de programas de planificación familiar; actividades de información, instrucción y comunicación; enfermedades transmitidas sexualmente y salud reproductiva y materno-infantil. Los originales deberán enviarse a la dirección que figura abajo, debiendo constar en ellos la filiación completa, domicilio postal, teléfono y, de ser posible, número de Fax del remitente.

Los originales pueden ser escritos en español, francés o inglés. Serán aceptados en la inteligencia de que son inéditos y no están siendo considerados por ninguna otra publicación. El personal de edición examinará todos los trabajos presentados y, de hallarlos interesantes, los hará evaluar por otros especialistas sin divulgar el nombre del autor. No se devolverán los originales rechazados. Los que se acepten serán revisados en la medida necesaria para conformarlos al estilo de la revista. Los autores tendrán dos oportunidades de examinar sus monografías revisadas y deberán ceder los derechos de autor a la revista.

Algunos artículos se seleccionarán para la edición anual en español, *Perspectivas Internacionales de Planificación Familiar*, o para la edición francés, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial*.

Los originales deberán presentarse mecanografiados a doble espacio. Las páginas deberán estar numeradas, debiendo figurar en la primera, nombre y filiación (al momento de escribirse el trabajo) de todos los autores. Los artículos no podrán exceder de 30–35 páginas ni incluir más de ocho cuadros. No hace falta enviar sino un ejemplar. Los originales deberán ir acompañados de un resumen de hasta una página.

Cada cuadro o gráfico deberá ir en hoja por separado. Conviene que los autores consulten números anteriores de *International Family Planning Perspectives* para formarse una idea del respectivo formato. Deberán suministrar también todas las cifras y datos necesarios para cada gráfico o cuadro. La revista se encargará del diseño gráfico.

La revue trimestrielle *International Family Planning Perspectives* publie des articles présentant des résultats de recherche sur les pays en développement et destinés à éclairer les spécialistes en matière de fécondité, planification familiale, protection maternelle et infantile et politiques démographiques. La rédaction invite tout chercheur, dirigeant ou administrateur de programme à soumettre des articles sur les sujets suivants: pratique contraceptive et recherche dans le domaine de la contraception; croissance démographique; niveaux, tendances et facteurs déterminants de la fécondité; espacement des naissances; questions juridiques et d'ordre public influant sur la planification familiale et la procréation; administration, élaboration et évaluation de programmes de planification familiale; activités relatives à l'information, l'éducation et la communication; maladies sexuellement transmissibles; hygiène sexuelle et comportement reproducteur; et protection maternelle et infantile.

Les auteurs devraient adresser les manuscrits à l'adresse ci-dessous et mentionner l'affiliation complète, adresse, numéro de téléphone et numéro de télécopieur (si possible) de la personne avec qui nous devons communiquer.

Les manuscrits peuvent être rédigés en français, en anglais ou en espagnol et ne seront acceptés qu'à la condition qu'ils n'aient été soumis à aucune autre publication, ni déjà publiés. Tous les articles sont évalués par la rédaction et s'ils sont jugés intéressants, présentés, à titre anonyme, à l'appréciation de spécialistes. Les manuscrits non publiés ne seront pas renvoyés à leur(s) auteur(s). Une fois acceptés, les manuscrits seront éventuellement révisés afin de les adapter au style et présentation propres à la revue. Les auteurs auront ensuite, à deux reprises, l'occasion de revoir leur article. Ils devront céder les droits d'auteur à la revue.

Certains articles retenus sont également publiés dans la version annuelle de la revue, en espagnol, *Perspectivas Internacionales en Planificación Familiar*, ou en français, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial*.

Tous les manuscrits devraient être préparés de la manière suivante: dactylographiés en double interligne, avec un maximum de 30–35 pages; chaque feuillet doit être soigneusement paginé. La première page doit fournir les noms de tous les auteurs ainsi que leur affiliation (au moment où travaux ou recherches ont été effectués). Les manuscrits ne doivent pas comporter plus de 7–8 tableaux et doivent inclure un résumé ne dépassant pas une page. L'auteur ne doit soumettre qu'un seul exemplaire.

Tableaux et graphiques devront figurer chacun sur un feuillet séparé. Les auteurs sont priés de consulter les numéros précédents de la revue afin de voir comment les tableaux doivent être présentés. Ils devront également fournir les points de données pour tous diagrammes et graphiques. La rédaction se chargera du dessin graphique.

Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg
Editor-in-Chief
International Family Planning Perspectives
The Alan Guttmacher Institute
111 Fifth Avenue
New York, NY 10003
USA

DIGEST

Younger Jordanian Husbands More Often Favor Family Planning, Joint Spousal Decision-Making

Nearly 40 percent of married men in Jordan do not believe in practicing contraception, and more than half believe that family size should be left up to God, according to the 1985 Jordan Husbands' Fertility Survey (JHFS).[1] Most couples in Jordan do not discuss family-size issues, but among men who support the idea of family planning, the vast majority believe such decisions should be made jointly by husbands and their wives. Positive attitudes toward family planning are more common among younger, urban and more educated men.

The JHFS was conducted as a follow-up to the 1983 Jordan Fertility and Family Health Survey (JFFHS), which measured fertility and family planning knowledge and attitudes of currently married women. The 1983 survey had found that the high total fertility rate in Jordan (6.6 lifetime births per woman) resulted from very short birth intervals (27 months), modest duration of breastfeeding (11 months) and moderate levels of contraceptive use (27 percent) among Jordanian women. Husbands of approximately 70 percent of the women interviewed in 1983 were located and, of these, 88 percent (2,433) participated in the JHFS.

The JHFS suggests that husbands' attitudes may be strongly linked to high fertility in Jordan. For example, 53 percent of the husbands surveyed believed that God should decide how many children they have. Thirty-six percent thought that both the husband and wife should make decisions about family size, 10 percent that the husband should decide and one percent that the wife should decide. The proportion who said that family size should be decided by God dropped from 75 percent among those who were illiterate to 28 percent among those with at least secondary schooling, and the proportion who said that both the husband and wife should decide increased from 12 percent to 57 percent, respectively.

In addition, the JHFS revealed that little discussion takes place between spouses concerning the number of children they want to have. Among husbands who believed that family size should be a joint decision, 41 percent said they had not discussed the issue with their wives. This proportion rose to about half of those who thought family size should be their decision alone and to 71 percent of the few who believed it should be the wife's decision.

Fifty-five percent of husbands responded to the question "If you could determine the total number of children you want in your life, how many would you have?" by saying that "God will decide" how many children they should have. Rural men were more likely to respond this way than were urban men (66 percent vs. 51 percent); this response was most common among illiterate men, decreasing to its lowest level among those with secondary education (79 percent vs. 31 percent). Men who said they left the decision up to God waited an average of 7.6 children, while those who wanted to decide for themselves desired 6.4 children.

The researchers also compared data from the 1983 JFFHS and the 1985 JHFS to determine whether women's childbearing intentions expressed in 1983 corresponded with their fertility during those two years. Two-thirds of the wives who said in 1983 that they wanted another child had had a live birth by the time of the 1985 survey, as had 30 percent of those who said they did not want any more children. Rural wives in both groups were more likely than their urban counterparts to have had an additional child.

World Fertility Survey data have shown that Jordan has the shortest average birth interval of any of the countries studied, the researchers observe. The 1983 JFFHS found that the average birth interval in Jordan was 27 months. In the 1985 JHFS, husbands were asked, "How old do you think it is best for a child to be before another child is born?" More than 60 percent of the husbands indicated that an interval of 25 months was ideal, and the average desired birth interval was 29 months. In contrast, husbands favored relatively long durations of breastfeeding: On average, they thought that breastfeeding should continue for 21 months, which is about twice the actual duration reported by wives in 1983.

In general, husbands surveyed in 1985 were less knowledgeable about contraceptive methods than their wives were in 1983, although more than 90 percent of both groups knew of the pill and the IUD. Wives were more likely to know of female sterilization (93 percent vs. 73 percent), and were (especially in urban areas) approximately 10 percent more likely than men to know of injections, male sterilization, withdrawal and the rhythm method.

Twenty-seven percent of both husbands and wives said they were practicing contraception at the time of the surveys. The IUD was the most popular method (used by 11 percent of couples in 1985 and eight percent in 1983), followed by the pill, sterilization and rhythm. Forty-three percent of all husbands said the decision to use contraceptives should be made jointly by the husband and wife (as did more than 50 percent of those under 40), 10 percent said the husband should decide and three percent thought the wife should decide. Nearly 75 percent of those who thought the decision should be made jointly had, in fact, discussed the use of family planning with their wives, as had more than half of those who thought the husband or wife should decide individually.

Nearly 40 percent of all husbands surveyed in 1985 said they did not believe in contraception, and this opinion was expressed by more than half of those who were over 50, poorly educated or living in rural areas. However, only about one-third of urban men or men under 40 shared this view, as did only 15 percent of those with at least a secondary education.

Because such a high proportion of men are opposed to the idea of contraception, the researchers suggest that family planning programs in Jordan should increase the availability of male methods, include men in educational programs about population, health and contraception, and perhaps target younger men, who already have more positive attitudes toward family planning.—*M. Witwer*

Reference

1. C. W. Warren et al., "Fertility and Family Planning in Jordan: Results from the 1985 Jordan Husbands' Fertility Survey," *Studies in Family Planning*, 21:33, 1990.

More Thorough Training Needed for Grass-Roots Family Planning Workers

Community-level family planning workers in five countries do not always have a thorough knowledge of the methods they dispense, nor do they consistently offer the widest possible range of methods, according to a survey of such workers in China, India, the Philippines, Sri Lanka and Viet Nam.[1] Basic questions on how methods work were often answered incorrectly; workers indicated that they often fail to point out the salient features of methods to clients, recommend all the appropriate methods or heed clients' own preferences. In addition, respondents appeared to emphasize the contraindications and side effects of methods more often than their benefits.

The study, which was conducted by the Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific (ESCAP), focused on family planning workers in China, India, the Philippines, Sri Lanka and Viet Nam, mainly because analyses showed that method mixes in these countries were limited. In each country, all levels of workers were interviewed (individual country reports were published in 1989[2]), but only the lowest echelon of paramedical workers prescribing and distributing contraceptive methods were used in the comparative analysis. In China, these were 440 family planning workers at the village and township level; in India, 133 health visitors and 556 nurse-midwives; in the Philippines, 227 midwives and 199 nurses; in Sri Lanka, 1,291 midwives; and in Viet Nam, 812 midwives.

The first part of the study, a test of general knowledge about various methods, included at least one question on each major method. For example, the main question testing pill knowledge was: "This method works by preventing the woman's egg from being released from her ovary." Sixty-six percent of grass-roots workers in China, 25 percent in India, 45 percent in Sri Lanka, 83 percent in Viet Nam and 37 percent in the Philippines replied correctly that this method was the pill. (Another 20 percent in the Philippines chose injectable hormonal contraceptives as the answer, which was also correct.) In most countries, the incorrect answer given was sterilization, which is a serious error, as that method does not interfere with ovulation. In India, the most common incorrect answer was the IUD.

A major question on the IUD tested whether workers knew it might cause menstruation to begin earlier, last longer and flow heavier; this was answered correctly by 84 percent of respondents in China, 83 percent in India, 76 percent in the Philippines, 78 percent in Sri Lanka and 93 percent in Viet Nam. Although a large proportion of family planning workers in the five countries answered this question correctly, the authors of the summary report comment that this is "fairly elementary knowledge, which anyone with a minimal acquaintance with the IUD should have had. The fact that so many of the respondents answered the question . . . incorrectly suggests that more training should be given on this method, especially in the Philippines and Sri Lanka."

The key question testing knowledge of the rhythm method concerned the timing of ovulation. Seventy-eight percent of workers in China knew that women were most vulnerable to pregnancy in the middle of their menstrual cycle, compared with 47 percent in India, 85 percent in Sri Lanka and 90 percent in Viet Nam, respectively. The authors of the summary report noted that "if family planning workers cannot answer the simplest direct question about the rhythm method correctly, it is unrealistic to assume that they can explain its complexities to ordinary clients, unless they receive a great deal more training."

A major question on sterilization asked if, after a woman has been sterilized, her menstrual periods will continue as before; remain unaffected, but with menopause coming earlier; or cease after a few months. This question was answered correctly (periods continue as before) by 87 percent of respondents in China, 53 percent in India, 92 percent in the Philippines, 92 percent in Sri Lanka, and 80 percent in Viet Nam. The authors stress the need for more thorough training on sterilization, especially in India, not only because this is the most widely used method there, but because one-third of Indian family planning workers thought that the procedure causes premature menopause.

A question on injectables—asked only in three of the countries—concerned delayed return to fertility after discontinuation. Only 34 percent of respondents in China, 41 percent in Sri Lanka and 21 percent in the Philippines answered correctly that injectables can delay return to fertility. This method is not widely used in China and the Philippines, but use is rising rapidly in Sri Lanka. Knowledge of condoms was tested by asking respondents to name the method that "works by preventing the man's sperm from entering the woman's vagina." The lowest percentages naming the condom were in India (79 percent) and the Philippines (80 percent). In a final question on effectiveness that listed a number of methods and asked which was the least effective, only 67 percent of the respondents in the Philippines chose the correct answer (the rhythm method); the most common incorrect answer was the condom.

A second section asked respondents what contraceptives they would recommend to hypothetical couples. Many workers deemed the IUD appropriate for a newly married woman delaying her first pregnancy (28 percent in India, 25 percent in China, 44 percent in Viet Nam), although it is not usually considered to be an appropriate choice by most family planning programs. Very few respondents would recommend traditional methods (rhythm or withdrawal) to this or any other hypothetical couple, although these methods are used widely in Sri Lanka and the Philippines and can be effective if used properly.

One hypothetical situation involved the following couple: The man dislikes condoms, and the woman does not want an IUD; they have one eight-week-old child; and they want to delay their next pregnancy. Despite the preferences clearly stated by the couple, 89 percent of family planning workers in India and 72 percent of family planning workers in Sri Lanka suggested the condom; 75 percent in India suggested the IUD. In each country, many family planning workers (58 percent in Sri Lanka) recommended the pill for this couple, even though most pill formulations would be inappropriate if the woman is breastfeeding.

For a couple with two children who do not want any more children and are willing to accept a permanent method, there were wide country-to-country variations in methods suggested. For example, female sterilization was suggested by 84 percent of workers in India, 91 percent of workers in China and 71 percent of workers in the Philippines, while in Sri Lanka the method most suggested was the IUD (84 percent) and in Viet Nam it was the condom (74 percent). The authors of the summary report note that these differences between countries are disturbing, as "couples at the same stages of their lives are essentially similar as far as contraception is concerned, no matter which country they live in."

The final section of the interview asked respondents to give all the important points about each method, as if they were describing it to a new client. (Data were available only for India, Sri Lanka and Viet Nam.) When discussing the pill, more family planning workers mentioned its side effects rather than its benefits: Seventy-two percent of family planning workers in India mentioned that the client might get headaches, but just 35 percent mentioned that it is one of the most effective methods. Similarly, just 17 percent and 13 percent of Sri Lankan family planning workers mentioned that only some women experience side effects with the pill or the IUD. The most complete information about the IUD was given by family planning workers in Viet Nam, where this is the most widely used method, but only 30 percent of Indian and 10 percent of Sri Lankan family planning workers mentioned that once it is in place, the IUD needs little further attention.

In all three countries, most of the workers failed to mention the most important points about the condom—that it is has no side effects, that for some men it dulls sensitivity and that it must be used correctly at every act of intercourse. Sri Lankan family planning workers only mentioned these points 27 percent, four percent and 16 percent of the time, respectively. Only 45 percent of Sri Lankan family planning workers mentioned that vasectomy is irreversible, only 67 percent of Vietnamese family planning workers said that female sterilization is irreversible and only 13 percent of Sri Lankan family planning workers mentioned that female sterilization does not affect the menstrual cycle.

In addition to showing a lack of knowledge among grass-roots family planning workers, the survey revealed a tendency to offer a limited choice of methods. Possible explanations for workers' biases are incentives, such as those offered for sterilizations in India and Sri Lanka; a lack of access to certain methods, such as in the Philippines (where some clinics do not offer a full range of contraceptives); and reluctance to deviate from past practice, such as Viet Nam's longtime reliance on the IUD. According to the investigators, family planning programs should place greater emphasis on training because "many paramedics . . . know too little about the basic properties of contraceptives and do not fully understand that couples should be left, as far as possible, to choose their own contraceptives."—*R. Turner*

Reference

1. Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific, *Knowledge and Attitudes of Grassroots Family Planning Workers about Contraceptive Methods,* Asian Population Studies Series, No. 86-G, Bangkok, 1990.

2. Z. Xuan, and Q. Xinjian, *China: Knowledge and Attitudes of Grassroots Family Planning Workers about Contraceptive Methods,* Asian Population Studies Series, No. 86A, ESCAP, Bangkok, 1989; K. Wickramasuriya, *Sri Lanka: Knowledge and Attitudes . . . ,* Asian Population Studies Series, No. 86C, ESCAP, Bangkok, 1989; V. Q. Nhan, *Viet Nam: Knowledge and Attitudes . . . ,* Asian Population Studies Series, No. 86D, ESCAP, Bangkok, 1989, S. K. Alok, *India: Knowledge and Attitudes . . . ,* Asian Population Studies Series, No. 86E, ESCAP, Bangkok, 1989; and Z. Zablan, *Philippines: Knowledge and Attitudes . . . ,* Asian Population Studies Series, No. 86F, ESCAP, Bangkok, 1989.

Steady Rise in Abortion Deaths in Rio de Janeiro Hospital over 10 Years

Abortion-related deaths accounted for nearly one-half of all maternal deaths in a municipal hospital in Rio de Janeiro over a 10-year period, according to a review of maternal mortality from 1978–1987.[1] The next most common causes were toxemia and hemorrhage, which were responsible for 19 percent and 13 percent of maternal deaths, respectively. Over the study period, abortion-related deaths increased by 172 percent, which suggests that the use of illegal abortion may have risen in this poor, urban population. Toxemia-related deaths also rose during the study period.

The researchers examined records of maternal deaths from January 1, 1978, to December 31, 1987, at the Municipal Hospital Miguel Couto. This emergency hospital is near one of the largest slum areas in South America, the *favela* Rocinha, and serves a universally poor patient population. As in other hospitals throughout Latin America, women presenting with abortion complications are admitted to the maternity ward, which designates 25 percent of its beds for such cases. Although exact information is lacking, the researchers estimate that less than 20 percent of all maternity patients receive any prenatal care.

Thirty-two maternal deaths occurred at the study hospital over the 10 years, for a maternal mortality rate of 177 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births for the period. Deaths directly related to pregnancy made up 82 percent of the total; these included abortion complications (47 percent), toxemia (19 percent), hemorrhage (13 percent) and infection (three percent). The remaining 18 percent of maternal mortality was the result of indirect causes, including cardiac arrest (six percent), respiratory illness (six percent), diabetes (three percent) and anesthesia accident (three percent).

The hospital's maternal mortality rate in 1987 was 462 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births, an increase of 268 percent from the 1978 rate (128 per 100,000 live births). Over the same period, the rate of abortion-related deaths rose by 172 percent, going from 85 deaths per 100,000 live births in 1978 to 231 per 100,000 in 1987. Removing the 15 abortion-related deaths from the total maternal mortality lowers the rate for the review period by almost 50 percent—from 177 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births to 94 per 100,000. Two-thirds of the abortion-related deaths were the result of illegal abortions performed during the second trimester of pregnancy, with sepsis diagnosed as the main cause of death. Uterine perforation with resulting sepsis and hemorrhage occurred in one-half of the second-trimester abortions that led to death. Deaths caused by toxemia also increased over the study period, although not as dramatically as those caused by abortion complications.

A total of 7,633 women were admitted to the Municipal Hospital Miguel Couto for treatment of abortion complications over the study period, representing 40 percent of all admissions to the maternity ward during that time. For the 10-year period, the abortion mortality ratio was 197 deaths per 100,000 abortion complications. The average length of stay among women who died from abortion complications was two days; one-third of these patients were in irreversible shock when they arrived at the hospital.

The experience of one municipal hospital in one urban center cannot be used to estimate maternal mortality trends throughout Brazil, but the researchers surmise that the increase in abortion-related mortality suggests an increase in reliance on abortion over the past 10 years in this poor, urban population. Toxemia-related deaths also increased steadily over the review period and contributed nearly one-fifth of total maternal mortality. The investigators point out that toxemia can usually be prevented if it is recognized early and treated appropriately. But they admit that such adequate management is unlikely, at least at the study hospital, given their estimate that only 20 percent of women received any prenatal care. They conclude that "although the causes of death and solutions for prevention may vary from region to region, the common denominator for all involves improving access to health care for women."—*L. Remez*

Reference

1. K. D. LaGuardia, M. Volf Rotholz and P. Belfort, "A 10-Year Review of Maternal Mortality in a Municipal Hospital in Rio de Janeiro: A Cause for Concern," *Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 75:27, 1990.

Support by Governments For Birth Control Rose Over the Past 15 Years

The nations of the world are more likely now than they were 15 years ago to state that their population growth rate is too high, that they are trying to decrease it and that they directly support the provision of family planning services, according to a United Nations report.[1] On the other hand, some nations (primarily developed countries) consider their population growth rate too low and their immigration levels too high, and the proportion who have undertaken some sort of effort to reverse these trends has increased over the past 15 years.

The United Nations Population Division has monitored the population policies of member nations on a regular basis since the mid-1970s. This information is collected from documents, speeches and other publications of the governments; official documents produced by various intergovernmental organizations; unofficial materials (from press clippings to journal articles); and official governmental responses to United Nations inquiries. Information on population policies has been available since 1974 for 156 member nations; however, in the intervening 15 years, 14 additional countries* have come under observation.

Of the 170 countries for which 1989 data were available, the proportion that regarded their population growth rate as too high was 40 percent, up substantially from the 28 percent that believed so in 1974. The increase was smaller when it was examined by population weight, however: Governments that considered their growth rate to be too high represented 59 percent of the world's population in 1974 and 64 percent in 1989.

Among the 156 countries monitored for the entire 15-year period, 63 percent had the same perception of their rate of population growth in both years. However, the shifts in governments' perceptions are more complex than this finding would appear to indicate. For example, 79 percent of the 43 countries that considered their growth rate too high in 1974 still held that belief in 1989, 19 percent considered their growth rate satisfactory and two percent considered it too low. Likewise, 62 percent of the 74 countries that thought their 1974 growth rate was satisfactory still thought so in 1989, but 31 percent of these had decided by 1989 that their growth rate was too high and seven percent that it was too low. Just 49 percent of the 39 nations that in 1974 had believed their growth rate too low still considered it too low, while 44 percent considered it satisfactory and eight percent perceived it as too high.

Over the 15-year period, the proportion of governments that were intervening to lower their growth rate increased from 25 percent to 35 percent. However, they represented 63 percent of the world's population in 1989, up slightly from 59 percent in 1974. The proportion of governments that said they were trying to raise their growth rate fell from 20 percent to 12 percent, and the proportion of people living in a country that was trying to raise its growth rate fell from 11 percent in 1974 to four percent in 1989.

Between 1976 and 1989, governments became more likely to have a policy designed to alter the growth rate by either lowering, maintaining or raising the nation's fertility level: The proportion with such a policy increased from 49 percent to 60 percent. The largest change was in the proportion of nations that had a policy of trying to reduce fertility (from 26 percent to 38 percent of all nations); the proportion that sought to increase fertility rose from nine percent to 12 percent, while the proportion that intended to maintain fertility levels fell from 14 percent to 11 percent.

There was also a great deal of change in policy toward support of contraceptive services over the 15-year period: By 1989, only 57 percent of the countries had the same policy that they had in 1974. In 1974, 55 percent of the world's governments provided direct support (either financial or material) for the distribution of contraceptives; another 15 percent indirectly supported access to family planning services (such as by subsidizing nongovernmental organizations that disseminate information or provide services); 22 percent offered no support but did not hinder citizens' access to contraceptive services; and seven percent limited citizens' access to services. By 1989, 72 percent of governments were directly supporting contraceptive availability, and another 12 percent were providing indirect support; the remainder either offered no support but did not block access (12 percent) or hindered citizens' access to contraceptives (four percent). Support for contraceptive services is even greater when these proportions are weighted by population size: In 1989, 91 percent of the world's population lived in countries directly supporting contraceptive services, up from 83 percent in 1974.

Between 1976 and the present, 63–67 percent of the world's governments have considered their nation's mortality level "unacceptable," but no overall trend is discernable. However, the proportion of the world's population living in such countries fell during that period, from 79 percent to 62 percent.

Governments increasingly perceived immigration levels to be significant: The proportion indicating this rose from 24 percent to 39 percent over the past 15 years. In 1989, this view was held by 46 percent of developed countries and 37 percent of developing countries. Over the same period, the proportion of governments regarding current levels of immigration to be acceptable decreased from 87 percent to 76 percent. In contrast, the proportion of governments that perceived immigration levels to be too high rose from six percent to 21 percent. Furthermore, 32 percent of governments indicated in 1989 that they had adopted a policy of lowering the level of immigration, up from just six percent in 1976.

Perhaps because so many of the countries with significant levels of immigration were developed nations, the proportion of the world's population who in 1989 lived in a nation that considered immigration to be significant was just 25 percent, although it had risen from 14 percent in 1976. Likewise, 84 percent of the world's population in 1989, down from 93 percent in 1976, lived in countries that considered immigration levels to be acceptable.

---

*Angola, Antigua and Barbuda, Belize, Brunei Darussalam, Djibouti, Dominica, Kiribati, Saint Kitts and Nevis, Saint Lucia, Saint Vincent and the Grenadines, the Solomon Islands, Tuvalu, Vanuatu and Zimbabwe.

In contrast, there was little change in the proportion of governments that considered the level of emigration significant (33 percent in 1976 and 35 percent in 1989). However, the proportion of governments that thought current levels of emigration satisfactory fell from 83 percent to 74 percent over the same period, while the proportion specifically reporting emigration to be too common rose from 13 percent to 21 percent.—*M. Klitsch*

Reference

1. Department of International Economic and Social Affairs, *Trends in Population Policy*, Population Studies No 114, E. 89. XIII. 13, United Nations, New York, 1989.

Sterilization Decision Is Not Unduly Influenced By Cash Compensation

Cash compensation payments to men and women who elect to be sterilized appear to play a contributing role in their decision, but they rarely represent an overwhelming motivation, according to an in-depth analysis of the Bangladeshi compensation program.[1] Most men and women who became sterilized chose to do so largely because they wanted no more children, not because they needed the money. However, the payment of cash bonuses to people who referred others for sterilization created free-lance referral agents who did not always give people accurate information about sterilization. As a result of this analysis, the Bangladeshi government halted the use of referral payments for sterilization.

Compensation Payments

In 1976, Bangladesh initiated a system of compensation payments to help defray some of the costs for travel, food or lost wages that a man or woman would incur by choosing to be sterilized. (Cash payments to sterilization acceptors are common in the family planning programs of Bangladesh, India, the Republic of Korea, Nepal, Pakistan and Sri Lanka.) The payment consisted of 100 taka until 1983, when it was raised to 175 taka; the latter sum (equivalent to U.S. $5.50) represents a week's earnings for the average rural laborer in Bangladesh. Each acceptor is also given a new garment, to reduce the risk of postoperative infection. Beginning in 1976, a traditional midwife received a referral payment of 45 taka for each sterilization client she recruited, while other types of referral agents received a smaller payment. After 1983, anyone who referred a sterilization client was eligible to receive 45 taka.

Because of controversy over whether such payments serve as inducement to have an operation that a man or woman otherwise would not have, the World Bank and the government of Bangladesh commissioned a study of the issue in 1987. In the first phase of the study, investigators surveyed clients at a representative sample of sterilization providers; a two-person team visited providers unannounced and interviewed all clients during the following four days. Men were interviewed a few hours after their vasectomy, and women (who always stayed overnight after their operation) were interviewed on the morning following the operation. Over a three-month period in 1987, 638 men and 674 women were interviewed. In the second phase, a group of 587 married rural women who had had a tubal sterilization and had participated in a national contraceptive prevalence survey in 1985–1986 were reinterviewed, along with a group of nonsterilized controls who were matched by village, number of living children and desire to have no more children. In addition, focus-group discussions were held with current contraceptive users and nonusers and with family planning workers; the latter were also surveyed about their views on the system of compensation payments.

Ninety-four percent of sterilized respondents knew of at least one reversible contraceptive method; all knew before having the operation that it was permanent, and nearly all understood that it involved surgery. Respondents generally had discussed sterilization with a wide range of people, and only one respondent in 20 reported that his or her decision had been made primarily because of the persuasion of another person. Nine out of 10 vasectomy patients said they had discussed the operation with their wives, and four in five had waited at least one day before putting their final decision into practice, which indicates, the investigators comment, that "unilateral and sudden decisions to be vasectomized are not the norm."

Questions on sterilization patients' costs revealed that immediate out-of-pocket expenses averaged about 56 taka for the women and 22 taka for the men. A retrospective accounting of earnings over the two weeks preceding the operation revealed that women lost an average of 15 taka from 10 days of recuperation and men an average of 76 taka from four days of recuperation. However, women rarely work for wages in Bangladesh. When the researchers valued women's home labor at half that of men's daily wages, they calculated the economic loss from a 10-day recuperation period to be about 100 taka. The overall cost of vasectomy to the individual, then, was about 97 taka, while the cost of tubal sterilization ranged from 71 taka to 156 taka, depending on the value placed on women's labor.

"The average sterilization client," the researchers conclude, "has a small positive balance from the cash compensation of taka 175." They observe that such compensation "may be insufficient for some but handsome for others."

In response to a question about what factors influenced their decision to be sterilized, just three percent of female sterilization patients reported that money was a factor, compared with 12 percent of male patients. When asked whether their decision had been made primarily because they wanted no more children, because they needed the money, or for both reasons, 63 percent of the women and 47 percent of the men said it was because they wanted no more children, while smaller proportions (31 percent and 46 percent, respectively) said it had been for both reasons and relatively few (six percent and seven percent, respectively) said it was mainly for the money. The researchers conclude that "money may be a contributing factor to the decision to be sterilized in a large minority of cases (disproportionately men) but a dominant motive for a very small minority."

Results from the second phase indicated that sterilized women come from generally poorer families than do comparable nonsterilized women. Although higher income families might feel less of a need than poorer families to restrict family size, data do not support this possibility: Indeed, the better-off nonsterilized respondents were just as likely as poorer families to report that their most recent birth was unwanted or that they had too many children.

One could hypothesize that poor couples turn to sterilization because they have more trouble using reversible methods, but three-quarters of the sterilized women in the case-control study had never tried a reversible method. Furthermore, there were no sizable differences in social or religious attitudes between sterilized and nonsterilized women, which undercuts a hypothesis that poor people are less restricted by social taboos on sterilization. Finally, poor women were no more likely to have been visited by family planning workers, although poor men were somewhat more likely to have been contacted by referral agents for vasectomy.

Because none of the hypothesized explanations for the higher levels of sterilization among the poor were supported, the researchers conclude that it is "highly probable that a major reason, though perhaps not the sole one, for the link between poverty and sterilization is the attraction of the compensation payment." However, more than nine in 10 participants in the case-control study said they would have been sterilized eventually even if there had been no cash payments. The investigators comment that rather than override reproductive motivation, compensation payments may act "as an additional spur to action."

Overall, the investigators conclude, "the evidence strongly suggests that [the payment system] exceeds its official purpose of compensation for costs associated with the procedure and that it acts as an inducement, particularly for men and the very poor. But this element of inducement only operates when there is an underlying strong desire to limit family size.... There is little evidence that the prospect of money entices poor couples into hasty, ill-considered actions they later regret." They recommend that the client-payment system be maintained because its removal would discriminate against the poor, who would find it difficult to meet even the relatively small out-of-pocket costs and wage losses arising from sterilization. However, they also suggest reducing the element of inducement by allowing inflation to gradually erode the value of the payment.

Referral Payments

The investigators also examined the effect of the referral payment of 45 taka. The survey data reveal that 40 percent of women, but only 15 percent of men, were referred for sterilization by a government fieldworker; 25 percent and 26 percent, respectively, were referred by someone from a nongovernmental organization, while 24 percent and 43 percent, respectively, were referred by a self-employed agent. Sixty-nine percent of the women and 55 percent of the men said that the referral agent accompanied them to the clinic.

The investigators observe that the small fees probably do not affect the advice of government workers: Such fees would rarely total more than 10 percent of their total income, and focus-group interviews with such workers indicate that they considered the fees minor. However, there was evidence that free-lance agents targeted lower income men and women who otherwise might not have elected to be sterilized at that time. For example, vasectomy patients recruited by self-employed agents were poorer and were more likely to give a monetary reason for being sterilized than those who were not. "The real significance of referral fees," the researchers conclude, "lies in the fact that they have fostered a large and often ignored army of unofficial, self-employed agents—particularly men who recruit vasectomy cases.... They represent a constant threat to the principles of even-handed access to all major methods and of fully informed consent."

Although the investigators observed that referral payments can play a positive role in some cases, they concluded that the payment of referral fees for sterilization should be eliminated. As a result, the government of Bangladesh discontinued such payments in 1988. At the same time, the U.S. Agency for International Development stopped reimbursing Bangladesh for the cost of all compensation payments.—*M. Klitsch*

Reference

1. J. Cleland and W. P. Mauldin, *The Promotion of Family Planning by Financial Payments: The Case of Bangladesh,* Research Division Working Paper No. 13, The Population Council, New York, 1990.

Togo's Birthrate Declines Slightly; Modern Method Use Remains Very Low

The total fertility rate in Togo is 6.6 lifetime births per woman, but recent data from the 1988 Togo Demographic and Health Survey[1] suggest a slight decline in both desired family size and fertility. The mean number of children considered ideal by women aged 15–49 is 5.3; those who have completed their childbearing have, on average, 7.1 children. Although 70 percent of married women in Togo say they approve of family planning, only one-third currently use a method of contraception and only three percent use a modern method. Most children in Togo have been vaccinated against at least one major childhood disease, but rates of infant and early childhood morbidity and mortality remain high: The infant mortality rate is 81 deaths per 1,000 births, and 85 per 1,000 children surviving their first year of life die before reaching the age of five.

Togo's population was estimated to be 3.3 million in 1988, with an annual growth rate of 2.9 percent. The urban population represents one-quarter of the total, with an annual growth rate of 4.4 percent (and 6.1 percent in Lomé, the capital), compared with 2.4 percent in rural areas; more than half of all urban dwellers live in Lomé. There are 40 different ethnic groups in Togo; the three largest are the Adja-Ewé (44 percent), Kabye-Tem (27 percent) and Para-Gourma (16 percent). The three major religions practiced are the traditional religion, animism (59 percent), Christianity (28 percent) and Islam (12 percent). Sixty-four percent of Togolese are nonliterate.

The Togo survey, or L'Enquête Démographique et de Santé au Togo (EDST), was based on interviews with a representative sample of 3,360 women aged 15–49. Thirty-five percent of the women were from urban households and 65 percent from rural areas; 45 percent were from the southern, coastal region of the country, which includes Lomé. Fifty-eight percent of the women in the sample had had no schooling, 29 percent had attended primary school and 13 percent had some secondary education. Only 33 percent were able to read.

Marriage and Fertility

At the time of the EDST, 73 percent of the women were in a marital union (defined as a generally stable relationship with cohabitation), 22 percent were single, slightly more than three percent were divorced or separated and fewer than two percent were widowed. Fifty-two percent of married women were in polygynous unions at the time of the survey. Polygyny is slightly less common in cities than in rural areas, and more common in regions with a large Muslim population. In the central region, where 47 percent of the population is Muslim, 61 percent of married women are in polygynous unions, compared with 47 percent in the plateau region, where 44 percent of the population is Christian. Rates of polygyny also are higher among older women and among those with little or no education. Seventy-two percent of women aged 45–49 are in polygynous unions, compared with about 40 percent of women aged 15–24; and the proportions of women in polygynous unions with no education, primary education and secondary education are 57 percent, 46 percent and 36 percent, respectively.

DIGEST

The median age at first marriage among Togolese women is 18.4 years; it is slightly higher in urban areas (19.7) than in rural areas (17.9) and increases with level of education, from 17.8 among those with no schooling to 18.8 among those with primary education and to 22.5 among those with secondary education. By the age of 40, 99 percent of all women have been in at least one union, and more than one-third of married women have been in two or more unions.

First birth occurs at a median age of 19.3 years. Six percent of women have their first birth by age 15, 30 percent by age 18 and 50 percent by the time they reach 20. The median age at first birth is higher among urban women, especially those living in Lomé (20.5 and 21.5, respectively), and is also higher among women with either primary or secondary education (19.4 and 22.5, respectively) than among rural women and those with no education (18.9 each).

The total fertility rate (TFR) among Togolese women during the four years preceding the 1988 EDST was 6.6 lifetime births per woman, which may reflect a slight decline from previous years: The TFR for the period 1985–1987 was 6.5 births per woman, down from 6.9 in 1982–1984. In addition, the number of children ever born among women aged 40–49 is 7.1. The decline in fertility is more pronounced in urban centers. In rural areas, the current TFR and the mean number of children born to women aged 40–49 are 7.0 and 7.5, respectively; among urban women, the current TFR is substantially lower than the mean number of children ever born (4.7 vs. 5.8). The mean number of living children is 3.2 among all women, and 4.1 among those currently in union. Among all women, the mean number of living children rises from 0.3 among those aged 15–19 to 7.3 among those aged 45–49; these levels are slightly higher among married women. By the age of 45–49, 22 percent of all Togolese women have 10 or more children and more than 85 percent have at least five.

Traditional means of limiting fertility are still in place: Breastfeeding and postpartum abstinence are practiced for an average of 23 months and 18 months, respectively, and postpartum amenorrhea lasts for a mean of 14 months. However, shorter intervals for all three of these variables are found among urban and more educated women.

Contraceptive Knowledge and Practice

Knowledge of contraceptives appears high among women in Togo, although only a minority are able to spontaneously mention a family planning method. Ninety-one percent recognize a specific method of contraception after prompting, but only 38 percent are able to name one without prompting. Similarly, 79 percent recognize at least one modern method after a description is given, compared with just 26 percent who can name one spontaneously. The pill and injectables are the methods most often mentioned without prompting, while female sterilization is most often recognized after description. Eighty-four percent of women recognize a traditional contraceptive method after prompting, whereas 19 percent are able to name one spontaneously. Periodic abstinence and abstinence are the best-known traditional methods.

Hospitals are the most common source of modern contraceptives: Sixty-six percent of Togolese women say they would go to a hospital to obtain an IUD, 75 percent would go to one for injectables and 98 percent and 92 percent, respectively, would go to one for female or male sterilization. Pharmacies are most often named as a source for the pill (38 percent), spermicidal creams and jellies (43 percent) and condoms (47 percent).

When asked about perceived problems in using various contraceptive methods, women are most likely to report "no problems" associated with periodic abstinence (61 percent), female or male sterilization (55 percent and 51 percent, respectively), injectables (45 percent), condoms (42 percent), spermicides (38 percent) and the IUD (31 percent). Side effects are of primary concern in using traditional herbs (37 percent) and the pill (32 percent), and are often mentioned in association with spermicides (31 percent), the IUD (29 percent) and injectables (21 percent). One-quarter to one-third of all women say they do not know of problems associated with modern methods and 20–30 percent are not aware of any problems in using traditional methods (charms and herbs).

Sixty-seven percent of Togolese women say they have used a contraceptive method at some time; 11 percent say they have used a modern method and 64 percent a traditional method. The pill, the condom and spermicides have been used by about four percent each, one percent have used either the IUD or injectables and fewer than one percent have been sterilized. Abstinence is by far the most common traditional method (ever used by 49 percent of women), followed by periodic abstinence (23 percent) and withdrawal (12 percent).

Ever-use is higher among women currently in union (74 percent) than among all women, but this is a result of the larger proportion of married women who report abstinence as a method (59 percent). Although the proportion of women reporting ever-use tends to increase with age, the highest proportion (80 percent) is found among those aged 30–34. Women aged 15–19 are least likely to have used a method of contraception; in this age-group, only 36 percent overall and 47 percent of those currently in union report ever-use.

Thirty-three percent of all women in Togo are currently practicing contraception; 30 percent are using traditional methods and three percent are using modern methods. The proportions for current use among all women are similar to those for women currently in union, and women aged 30–34 report the highest levels of contraceptive use in both groups (about 40 percent). However, married women aged 15–19 are less likely to be currently using a method compared with all women in that age-group (17 percent vs. 22 percent). Women in union are somewhat more likely than women in general to rely on abstinence (22 percent vs. 18 percent) or the IUD (0.8 percent vs. 0.6 percent) and they are slightly less likely to practice periodic abstinence (six percent vs. 10 percent) or to use the pill, or the condom (0.4 percent vs. 0.6 percent for each method) or spermicide (0.6 percent vs. 0.8 percent).

Among women currently in union, rural women have a slightly higher level of contraceptive use than urban women (35 percent vs. 32 percent) because a higher proportion of rural women rely on abstinence (25 percent vs. 14 percent). However, urban women are almost twice as likely as rural women to use periodic abstinence (nine percent vs. five percent). Seven percent of urban women use modern methods, compared with only two percent of rural women. Contraceptive use increases with education and with parity, rising from 34 percent among women with no education to 42 percent among those with a secondary education, and from six percent among those with no children to 41 percent among those with four or more. Use of modern methods depends much more on education than on parity; two percent of uneducated women use modern methods, compared with 12 percent of those with secondary education, but modern method use only rises from two percent among those with no children to four percent among those with four or more.

The mean ideal number of children desired by Togolese women is 5.3. Nearly half of all women with five living children say they do not want to have any more, as do 65 percent of those with six or more children. (Among urban women and those with secondary education, two-thirds of women with four or more children say they want to limit their family size.) Overall, one-quarter of Togolese women do not want any more children, and nearly half say they would like to delay their next birth by at least two years.

Because of their desire to either limit family size or delay their next birth, 52 percent of Togolese women are considered potential users of contraceptives; however, only 22 percent of these women say they intend to use contraceptives in the future. One-third (35 percent) of all women at risk of pregnancy who are not using contraceptives say they do not do so because they want another child, while 22 percent attribute their nonuse to a lack of information about family planning and nine percent to a belief that contraceptive use would be bad for their health. However, 40 percent of all nonusers say they intend to use contraceptives in the future, and 72 percent of these women say they want to use a modern method. Most of these women are interested in using injectables (38 percent) or the pill (21 percent).

Although about 70 percent of married women say they approve of family planning and 37 percent say they believe that their spouses do as well, 63 percent of married women had not discussed family planning with their husbands during the year preceding the survey. Eighty percent of Togolese women approve of information about family spacing being broadcast on radio and television, as do even higher proportions of urban women, more educated women and those in their years of peak fertility, ages 20–34.

Maternal and Child Health

Rates of infant and child mortality remain high in Togo, but both have declined in recent years. The infant mortality rate decreased from 127 deaths per 1,000 births in 1961 to 107 per 1,000 births in 1973–1977 and 81 per 1,000 births in 1983–1988. The death rate among children aged 1–5 also decreased over the latter two periods, from 110 per 1,000 to 85 per 1,000. On average, women in Togo lose one child before age five per every five live births; the proportion of child deaths per woman increases from 11 percent among mothers aged 15–19 to 23 percent among those aged 45–49. Rates of infant mortality and, especially early childhood mortality, are highest in rural, poorly developed areas and among infants born to teenagers and to those with little or no education.

During the five years preceding the survey, only 17 percent of mothers received no prenatal care; more than 80 percent of all prenatal care consultations were provided by midwives or other female birth attendants. About 44 percent of births took place with no trained attendant present, including 10 percent of urban births and 56 percent of births in rural areas. Seventy percent of all pregnant women were vaccinated against tetanus—88 percent in urban areas and 64 percent in rural areas.

Mothers of children under five were asked whether their children had been vaccinated against tuberculosis, polio, tetanus, diphtheria, pertussis and measles; 88 percent of the children had received at least one of these vaccines, and about half had vaccination cards. Ninety-four percent of children aged 18–23 months had been vaccinated, as had 73 percent of those younger than six months.

Childhood diarrhea is a major problem in Togo: Fourteen percent of children under five had had diarrhea in the 24 hours before the survey, and 29 percent had had an episode of diarrhea during the preceding two weeks. Children in rural areas and those whose mothers had no education were more likely to be affected than children in Lomé and children of mothers with secondary education. Overall, only one-quarter of children suffering from diarrhea received medical attention, and only one in five were given oral rehydration therapy, even though 45 percent of all mothers claimed to know about it. Women with a secondary education were nearly three times more likely to provide oral rehydration therapy than were those with no education (43 percent vs. 15 percent). In contrast, 62 percent of children received some other treatment, such as rice porridge, and this proportion did not vary substantially among various subgroups of mothers.—*M. Witwer*

Reference

1. A. Agounké, M. Assogba and K. Anipah, *Enquête Démographique et de Santé au Togo, 1988*, Unité de Recherche Démographique, Direction de la Statistique, Direction Générale de la Santé, Lomé, Togo, and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., Columbia, Md., 1989.

International Family Planning Perspectives

Index to Volume 16, 1990

Subject Index

Abortion

Induced Abortion: A World Review, 1990, S. K. Henshaw, p. 59.

Steady Rise in Abortion Deaths in Rio de Janeiro Hospital over 10 Years, Digest, p. 154.

Africa

African Fertility Decline Still Elusive, Update, p. 125.

AIDS Is Leading Killer in Abidjan, Update, p. 83.

Cultural Aspects of Africa's High Fertility Rates, Book Review of: *Reproduction and Social Organization in Sub-Saharan Africa*, R. J. Lesthaeghe, ed. Rev. by D. F. Heisel, p. 149.

Egypt's Success Against Diarrhea, see **Maternal and Child Health**.

Few in Burkina Faso Use Contraceptives, but Many Would Consider Doing So, Digest, p. 112.

HIV and the Spread of Tuberculosis, see **Sexually Transmitted Diseases**.

In Ghana, Most Women Know a Modern Method but Very Few Use One, Digest, p. 73.

Initial Acceptability of Contraceptive Implants in Four Developing Countries, see **Hormonal Implants and Injections**.

Islam, Procreation and the Law, see **Status of Women**.

Kenya: Tubal Ligation Seems to Be Gaining Acceptance Among Women and Men, Digest, p. 29.

Many Births in Egypt Are Unwanted, Despite Use of Modern Methods, Digest, p. 116.

Pill Policy Changed in Senegal, Update, p. 125.

Poor Cancer Outcomes in Nigeria, Update, p. 42.

Relationship Between Fertility and Contraceptive Practice in Zimbabwe, The, D. J. Adamchak and M. T. Mbizvo, p. 103.

Results of a Contraceptive Prevalence Survey on Niamey, Niger, M. J. Wawer, L. Gaffikin, V. Ravao, H. Maidouka and K. Traore, p. 90.

Togo's Birthrate Declines Slightly; Modern Method Use Remains Very Low, Digest, p. 157.

Tunisian Fertility Fell, Age at Marriage Increased in the 1980s, Digest, p. 113.

Uganda's AIDS Problem, Update, p. 82.

Unique Response to Population Growth, A, Book Review of: *Community Development and Family Planning: An Egyptian Experiment*, J. M. Stycos, H. A. A. Sayed, R. Avery and S. Fridman. Rev. by S. H. Cochrane, p. 39.

Women in Botswana Use the Pill to Space Births, but Want Larger Families, Digest, p. 30.

Asia

China Is Vast but Not Yet Uniform, Update, p. 83.

Complex Analyses, Personal Decisions, Book Review of: *Choosing a Contraceptive: Method Choice in Asia and the United States*, R. A. Bulatao, J. A. Palmore and S. E. Ward, eds. Rev. by B. Entwistle, p. 79.

Fertility and Its Control: The Puzzle of Sri Lanka, I. Gajanayake and J. Caldwell, p. 97.

Implant Successful in China Trials, see **Hormonal Implants and Injections**.

In Sri Lanka, a Majority of Couples Have Talked About Family Planning, Digest, p. 71.

Islam, Procreation and the Law, see **Status of Women**.

IUD Use Is Common, but Use of Hormonal, Barrier Methods Rare in Vietnam, Digest, p. 36.

More Thai Women Now Using Contraceptives to Delay First Birth, Digest, p. 70.

More Thorough Training Needed for Grass-Roots Family Planning Workers, see **Contraceptive Practice**.

Nonsurgical Sterilization in China, Update, p. 43.

Postpartum Sterilization by Nurse-Midwives in Thailand, see **Sterilization**.

Pregnancy and Death in Bangladesh, see **Maternal and Child Health**.

Reducing Mortality in Bangladesh, see **Maternal and Child Health**.

Rising AIDS Tide in Thailand, see **Sexually Transmitted Diseases.**

Scholastic and Personality Characteristics of Only Children and Children with Siblings in China, D. L. Poston, Jr., and T. Falbo, p. 45.

Small Thai Families Are Better Off, Update, p. 82.

Sterilization Decision Is Not Unduly Influenced by Cash Compensation, see **Sterilization**.

Who Forgets to Take the Pill? The Thai Experience, see **Oral Contraceptives**.

Women in Singapore Find New Hormonal Implants Preferable to Injectables, see **Hormonal Implants and Injections**.

Women, Work and Reproduction in Karachi, Z. A. Sathar and S. Kazi, see **Status of Women.**

Barrier Methods

IUD Use Is Common, but Use of Hormonal, Barrier Methods Rare in Vietnam, see **Asia**.

Breastfeeding

Economic Benefits of Breastfeeding, Update, p. 2.

Pill Use and Breastfeeding, Update, p. 2.

Tips on Promoting Breastfeeding, Update, p. 42.

Contraceptive Practice

Birth Control from Hairdressers, Update, p. 124.

Complex Analyses, Personal Decisions, Book Review of: *Choosing a Contraceptive: Method Choice in Asia and the United States*, R. A. Bulatao, J. A. Palmore and S. E. Ward, eds. Rev. by B. Entwistle, p. 79.

Contraceptive Failure of the Ovulation Method of Periodic Abstinence, J. Trussell and L. Grummer-Strawn, p. 5.

Copper T's Lifespan Grows, Update, p. 83.

Few in Burkina Faso Use Contraceptives, but Many Would Consider Doing So, see **Africa**.

Haitian Fertility May Have Risen in the 1980s; Contraceptive Use Remains Low, see **Fertility: Planning and Effects**.

Handbook for Family Planning Providers, A, Book Review of: *Contraceptive Technology: International Edition*, R. A. Hatcher, D. Kowal, F. J. Guest, G. K. Stewart, S. C. Bowen and W. Cates, Jr. Rev. by A. Faundes, p. 77.

In Ghana, Most Women Know a Modern Method but Very Few Use One, see **Africa**.

Inert IUDs Linked to PID, Update, p. 124.

IUD Insertion and Uterine Position, Update, p. 43.

IUD Use Is Common, but Use of Hormonal, Barrier Methods Rare in Vietnam, Digest, p. 36.

Low-Dose IUD, The, Update, p. 124.

More Thai Women Now Using Contraceptives to Delay First Birth, see **Asia**.

More Thorough Training Needed for Grass-Roots Family Planning Workers, Digest, p. 153.

Nova-T Effective for Up to Five Years, Update, p. 2.

One Size IUD Fits All, Update, p. 124.

Pill Policy Changed in Senegal, Update, p. 125.

Rates of Expulsion No Higher When IUD Is Inserted During Lactation, Digest, p. 35.

Relationship Between Fertility and Contraceptive Practice in Zimbabwe, The, see **Africa**.

Results of a Contraceptive Prevalence Survey on Niamey, Niger, see **Africa**.

Tarnish No Problem for IUDs, Update, p. 3.

Training Is Vital for FP Providers, Update, p. 83.

Unique Response to Population Growth, A, Book Review of: *Community Development and Family Planning: An Egyptian Experiment*, see **Africa**.

Vaginal Ring Is Effective for at Least One Year, Worldwide Trials Show, Digest, p. 75.

Younger Jordanian Husbands More Often Favor Family Planning, Joint Decision-Making By Spouses, Digest, p. 152.

Fertility: Planning and Effects

African Fertility Decline Still Elusive, see **Africa**.

Age No Bar to Male Fertility, Update, p. 42.

Cultural Aspects of Africa's High Fertility Rates, Book Review of: *Reproduction and Social Organization in Sub-Saharan Africa*, see **Africa**.

Female Children Not Wanted, Update, p. 124.

Fertility and Its Control: The Puzzle of Sri Lanka, see **Asia**.

Haitian Fertility May Have Risen in the 1980s; Contraceptive Use Remains Low, Digest, p. 33.

Relationship Between Fertility and Contraceptive Practice in Zimbabwe, The, see **Africa**.

Reproductive Intentions and Fertility Rates, C. F. Westoff, p. 84.

Togo's Birthrate Declines Slightly; Modern Method Use Remains Very Low, see **Africa**.

Tunisian Fertility Fell, Age at Marriage Increased in the 1980s, see **Africa**.

Unique Response to Population Growth, A, Book Review of: *Community Development and Family Planning: An Egyptian Experiment*, see **Africa**.

Hormonal Implants and Injections

Implant Insertion-Site Problems Rare, Update, p. 3.

Implant Successful in China Trials, Update, p. 43.

Initial Acceptability of Contraceptive Implants in Four Developing Countries, T. T. Kane, G. Farr and B. Janowitz, p. 49.

IUD Use Is Common, but Use of Hormonal, Barrier Methods Rare in Vietnam, see **Asia**.

Women in Singapore Find New Hormonal Implants Preferable to Injectables, Digest, p. 118.

Latin America and the Caribbean

Birth Control from Hairdressers, see **Contraceptive Practice**.

Children Under Five Account for Almost Half of All Mortality in Bolivia, see **Maternal and Child Health**.

Family Planning Among Low-Income Women in Rio de Janeiro: 1984–1985, S. H. Costa, I. R. Martin, S. R. da Silva Freitas and C. Schuch Pinto, p. 16.

Haitian Fertility May Have Risen in the 1980s; Contraceptive Use Remains Low, see **Fertility: Planning and Effects**.

Mexican Fertility Falls as Female Sterilization Becomes More Popular, Digest, p. 36.

Steady Rise in Abortion Deaths in Rio de Janeiro Hospital over 10 Years, see **Abortion**.

Maternal and Child Health

Children Under Five Account for Almost Half of All Mortality in Bolivia, Digest, p. 115.

Egypt's Success Against Diarrhea, Update, p. 3.

Maternal HIV Transmission: A Clue? Update, see **Sexually Transmitted Diseases**.

Pregnancy and Death in Bangladesh, Update, p. 3.

Reducing Mortality in Bangladesh, Update, p. 83.

Smoking Promotes Pelvic Infection, Update, p. 42.

Test of the Kangaroo Method, A, Update, p. 42.

What Birth Attendants Don't Know, Update, p. 3.

Oral Contraceptives

Developing Country Pill Users Experience Small Rise in Blood Pressure, Digest, p. 32.

Pill and the Risk of Cancer, The, Update, p. 2.

Pill Use and Breastfeeding, see **Breastfeeding**.

Pill Use Appears to Increase Risk of Liver Cancer in Women Under 50, Digest, p. 72.

Who Forgets to Take the Pill? The Thai Experience, S. Siriboon, C. Saengtienchai and J. Knodel, p. 23.

Women in Botswana Use the Pill to Space Births, but Want Larger Families, see **Africa**.

Population Policy and Research

AcCrit: An Argument Yet to Have Its Day, G. McNicoll, p. 146.

DevDev: A Balanced, Moderate and Eclectic Perspective, A. C. Kelley, p. 143.

FamPlan: The Great Debate Abates, S. J. Jejeebhoy, p. 139.

Great Debate on Population Policy, The: An Instructive Entertainment, B. Berelson, p. 126.

Handbook for Family Planning Providers, A, Book Review of: *Contraceptive Technology: International Edition*, see **Contraceptive Practice.**

Support by Governments for Birth Control Rose over the Past 15 Years, Digest, p. 155.

Unique Response to Population Growth, A. Book Review of: *Community Development and Family Planning: An Egyptian Experiment*, see **Africa**.

Sexually Transmitted Diseases

AIDS Is Leading Killer in Abidjan, see **Africa**.

HIV and the Spread of Tuberculosis, Update, p. 125.

Maternal HIV Transmission: A Clue? Update, p. 3.

Rising AIDS Tide in Thailand, Update, p. 42.

Tuberculosis and HIV, Update, p. 2.

Uganda's AIDS Problem, see **Africa**.

Status of Women

Female Children Not Wanted, see **Fertility: Planning and Effects**.

Islam, Procreation and the Law, Z. Sachedina, p. 107.

Limited Gains in Reproductive Rights, Update, p. 125.

Women, Work and Reproduction in Karachi, Z. A. Sathar and S. Kazi, p. 66.

Sterilization

Kenya: Tubal Ligation Seems to Be Gaining Acceptance Among Women and Men, see **Africa**.

Mexican Fertility Falls as Female Sterilization Becomes More Popular, Digest, p. 36.

Nonsurgical Sterilization in China, Update, p. 43.

Postpartum Sterilization by Nurse-Midwives in Thailand, K. Kanchanasinith, P. Piyapinyo, P. Pitaktepsombati, S. Vibulsresth, D. S. Gates, B. Janowitz and M. Robbins, p. 55.

Sterilization Decision Is Not Unduly Influenced by Cash Compensation, Digest, p. 156.

Vasectomy Without a Scalpel, Update, p. 82.

Author Index

Adamchak, D. J., and Mbizvo, M. T., The Relationship Between Fertility and Contraceptive Prevalence in Zimbabwe, p. 103.

Berelson, B., The Great Debate on Population Policy: An Instructive Entertainment, p. 126.

Caldwell, J., see Gajanayake, I.

Cochrane, S., Unique Response to Population Growth, A, Book Review, p. 39.

Costa, S. H., Martin, I. R., da Silva Freitas, S. R., and Schuch Pinto, C., Family Planning Among Low-Income Women in Rio de Janeiro: 1984–1985, p. 16.

da Silva Freitas, S. R., see Costa, S. H.

Entwistle, B., Complex Analyses, Personal Decisions, Book Review, p. 79.

Falbo, T., see Poston, D. L., Jr.

Faundes, A., Handbook for Family Planning Providers, A, Book Review, p. 77.

Farr, G., see Kane, T. T.

Gaffikin, L., see Wawer, M.

Gajanayake, I., and Caldwell, J., Fertility and Its Control: The Puzzle of Sri Lanka, p. 97.

Gates, D. S., see Kanchanasinith, K.

Grummer-Strawn, L., see Trussell, J.

Heisel, D. F., Cultural Aspects of Africa's High Fertility Rates, Book Review, p. 149.

Henshaw, S. K., Induced Abortion: A World Review, 1990, p. 59.

Janowitz, B., see Kanchanasinith, K., and Kane, T. T.

Jejeebhoy, S. J., FamPlan: The Great Debate Abates, p. 139.

Kanchanasinith, K., Piyapinyo, P., Pitatepsombati, P., Vibulsresth, S., Gates, D. S., Janowitz, B., and Robbins, M., Postpartum Sterilization by Nurse-Midwives in Thailand, p. 55.

Kane, T. T., Farr, G., and Janowitz, B., Initial Acceptability of Contraceptive Implants in Four Developing Countries, p. 49.

Kazi, S., see Sathar, Z. A.

Kelley, A. C., DevDev: A Balanced, Moderate and Eclectic Perspective, p. 143.

Knodel, J., see Siriboon, S.

Maidouka, H., see Wawer, M.

Martin, I. R., see Costa, S. H.

Mbizvo, M. T., see Adamchak, D. J.

McNicoll, G., AcCrit: An Argument Yet to Have Its Day, p. 146.

Pitatepsombati, P., see Kanchanasinith, K.

Piyapinyo, P., see Kanchanasinith, K.

Poston, D. L., Jr., and Falbo, T., Scholastic and Personality Characteristics of Only Children and Children with Siblings in China, p. 45.

Ravao, V., see Wawer, M.

Robbins, M., see Kanchanasinith, K.

Sachedina, Z., Islam, Procreation and the Law, Comment, p. 107.

Saengtienchai, C., see Siriboon, S.

Sathar, Z. A., and Kazi, S., Women, Work and Reproduction in Karachi, p. 66.

Schuch Pinto, C., see Costa, S. H.

Siriboon, S., Saengtienchai, C., and Knodel, J., Who Forgets to Take the Pill? The Thai Experience, p. 23.

Traore, K., see Wawer, M. J.

Trussell, J., and Grummer-Strawn, L., Contraceptive Failure of the Ovulation Method of Periodic Abstinence, p. 5.

Vibulsresth, S., see Kanchanasinith, K.

Wawer, M. J., Gaffikin, L., Ravao, V., Maidouka, H., and Traore, K., Results of a Contraceptive Prevalence Survey in Niamey, Niger, p. 90.

Westoff, C., Reproductive Intentions and Fertility Rates, p. 84.

Acknowledgment to Reviewers

The editors wish to express their appreciation to the following reviewers for their assistance during 1990 in evaluating material for *International Family Planning Perspectives:*

Donald J. Adamchak
Mohamed Ayad
Lee L. Bean
John B. Casterline
Anouch Chahnazarian
John G. Cleland
Ansley J. Coale
Francine M. Coeytaux
K. T. de Graft-Johnson
Jose Donayre
Thomas E. Dow, Jr.
M.A. El-Badry
James T. Fawcett
Ronald Freedman
William R. Grady
James N. Gribble
Donald F. Heisel
Roushdi Henin
John Hobcraft
Dennis P. Hogan
Stephen L. Isaacs
Terence Jezowski
Gavin W. Jones
Fatima Juarez
D. Krauskopf
Ulla M. Larsen
Cynthia B. Lloyd
W. Parker Mauldin
James F. McCarthy
Jane A. Menken
S. H. Nasr
James A. Palmore, Jr.
John M. Paxman
James F. Phillips
John A. Ross
Nafis Sadik
Jane Silverman
George B. Simmons
Susheela Singh
Herbert L. Smith
James Trussell
Amy Ong Tsui
Etienne van de Walle
Ann A. Way
Charles F. Westoff

International Family Planning Perspectives
Published quarterly by The Alan Guttmacher Institute

Editorial Office: 111 Fifth Avenue,
New York, N.Y. 10003, United States of America

Editorial Advisory Committee

Barbara M. Boland, Trinidad and Tobago

John C. Caldwell, National Centre for Epidemiology and Population Health, The Australian National University, Canberra

John Cleland, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, England

Mercedes B. Concepcion, The Population Institute, University of the Philippines, Manila

Ronald Freedman, The Population Studies Center of the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor

Noreen Goldman, Office of Population Research, Princeton University, Princeton, New Jersey

Roushdi A. Henin, Department of Sociology, University of Zimbabwe, Harare

Maria Helena Henriques-Mueller, Istanbul, Turkey

Shireen J. Jejeebhoy, Bombay, India

Gavin W. Jones, The Research School of Social Sciences, The Australian National University, Canberra

Lin Lean Lim, International Labor Office, United Nations, Bangkok, Thailand

Wolfgang Lutz, International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis, Lazenburg, Austria

Edith Alejandra Pantelides, Centro de Estudios de Población, Buenos Aires, Argentina

Allan G. Rosenfield, School of Public Health, Columbia University, New York

Nafis Sadik, United Nations Population Fund, New York

Mpembele Daniel Sala-Diakanda, Institut de Formation et de Recherche Démographiques, Yaoundé, Cameroon

Zeba Sathar, Pakistan Institute of Development Economics, Islamabad

Claudio Stern, El Colegio de México, The Population Council, Mexico City

Léon Tabah, Comité International de Coopération dans les Recherches Nationales, Paris, France

Martin Vessey, Department of Public Health and Primary Care, University of Oxford, England

Subscriptions are $22 a year for individuals and $32 a year for institutions.

This publication is partly supported by the U.S. Agency for International Development (AID) through a cooperative agreement (no. DPE-0955-A-00-3005-11) with the Planned Parenthood Federation of America/Family Planning International Assistance. The contents of this publication do not necessarily reflect the views or policies of the AID.

Credits

Cover design: Sheldon Cotler + Associates

Statement of Ownership, Management and Circulation

Title of publication: *International Family Planning Perspectives.* **Publication no.:** 404170. **Date of filing:** Sept. 25, 1990. **Frequency of issue:** Quarterly. **No. of issues published annually:** Four. **Annual subscription price:** $22.00, individuals; $32.00, institutions. **Complete mailing address of known office of publication:** 111 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10003-1069. **Complete mailing address of the headquarters or general business offices of the publishers:** Same as above. **Publisher:** The Alan Guttmacher Institute, same address as above. **Editor:** Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg, same address as above. **Managing Editor:** Same as above. **Owner:** None. **Known bondholders, mortgagees, and other security holders owning or holding 1 percent or more of total amount of bonds, mortgages or other securities:** None.

The purpose, function and nonprofit status of this organization and the exempt status for Federal income tax purposes have not changed during preceding 12 months.

Extent and nature of circulation	Avg. no. copies each issue during previous 12 mos.	Actual no. copies of single issue published nearest to filing date
Total no. copies	28,475	28,700
Paid and/or requested circulation		
Sales through dealers and carriers, street vendors and counter sales	0	0
Mail subscription (paid and/or requested)	27,282	27,400
Total paid and/or requested circulation	27,282	27 400
Free distribution by mail, carrier or other means; samples, complimentary and other free copies	689	664
Total distribution	27,971	28,064
Copies not distributed		
Office use, left over, unaccounted, spoiled after printing	504	636
Return from news agents	0	0
Total	28,475	28,700

I certify that the statements made by me above are correct and complete.

Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg, Editor

Volume 17, Number 1, March 1991

International Family Planning Perspectives

A Fertility Decline in Kenya

[illegible]
[illegible] Method Use in India
[illegible] in Latin America

A Publication of
The Alan Guttmacher Institute

International Family Planning Perspectives

ISSN 0162–2749
Volume 17, Number 1, March 1991

Published quarterly by
The Alan Guttmacher Institute

President: Jeannie I. Rosoff
Director of Publications and Editor-in-Chief:
Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg

Executive Editor: Jeanette H. Johnson
Editor: Michael Klitsch
Associate Editor: Frances A. Althaus
Assistant Editors: Lisa Remez, Patricia Rind,
Rebecca M. Turner
Copy Editor: Donna Cohen
Production Manager: Valerie Morris
Senior Production Assistant:
Georges Louis-Jacques
Production Assistants: Elizabeth LaPorta,
Jennifer Reed
Administrative Assistant: Ruth A. Zlotnick

Contributing Editor, Law and
Public Policy: Susan Cohen

Consulting Editor:
Charles Westoff

Editorial Office:
111 Fifth Avenue
New York, N.Y. 10003
United States of America

© 1991 by The Alan Guttmacher Institute, An Independent, Nonprofit Corporation for Research, Policy Analysis and Public Education; all rights, including translation into other languages, reserved under the Universal Copyright Convention, the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works and the Inter- and Pan American Copyright Conventions (Mexico City and Buenos Aires).

Second-class postage paid at New York, N.Y. Postmaster: Send address changes to International Family Planning Perspectives, 111 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10003.

Table of Contents **Page**

Update 2

Articles

Evidence of a Transition to Lower Fertility In Kenya — Anne R. Cross, Walter Obungu and Paul Kizito — 4
Estimating Abortion Levels in Brazil, Colombia and Peru, Using Hospital Admissions and Fertility Survey Data — Susheela Singh and Deirdre Wulf — 8
Effect of Family Planning Program Components on Contraceptive Acceptance in Four Indian States — K. Srinivasan, P. C. Saxena, T. K. Roy and R. K. Verma — 14
Premarital Sex in Costa Rica: Incidence, Trends and Determinants — Luis Rosero-Bixby — 25

Digest

Trinidad and Tobago: Users of Reversible Methods Prefer Pill or Condoms 30
Weekly Testosterone Injections May Provide Effective Contraception 31
Three in Four Jamaican Pregnancies Are Either Mistimed or Unwanted 32
Poor Health Care Leads to African Women's High Rates of Uterine Rupture 34
Contraceptive Practice Doubles in Nigerian City Over a Five-Year Period 35
Rhythm Accounts for Half of All Contraceptive Use in Bolivia, DHS Reveals 36

Books in Review

Two Views of Childbearing in India — Leela Visaria — 38
Note to Authors 40

The cover illustration is based on a poster from a family planning center in Kenya. The Swahili means "This mother needs to space her births."

UPDATE

The Fertility Necklace

Women in Cote d'Ivoire are being taught how to keep track of the fertile and infertile days of their menstrual cycle by using a color-coded beaded necklace.[1] Over three years ago, organizers of a primary health program in Abidjan created a 28-bead necklace that would help patients keep track of their menstrual cycles. The first five stones, which are red and smooth, signify the bleeding days of the cycle; these, along with the five neutral-colored, rough-textured beads that follow, represent the typical 10-day period at the beginning of the menstrual cycle during which conception is unlikely. The next four green beads and four blue beads stand for the days just before and after ovulation, when conception is more likely to occur. The remaining 10 beads, also a neutral color, again represent days on which conception is less likely. Use of the necklace by itself is not recommended as a method of contraception, but it has proved helpful in educating women about the concept of the fertility cycle, and can particularly aid women seeking pregnancy who want to know when they are most likely to become pregnant.

[1] "Teaching by Necklace," *People*, Vol. 17, No. 4, p. 28, 1990.

Maternal Deaths in an Indian State

There are approximately eight maternal deaths for every 1,000 live births in a poor district of Andhra Pradesh, according to the results of an intensive investigation of maternal mortality.[1] Such deaths accounted for 36 percent of all mortality among women of reproductive age. Rates were substantially higher in rural parts of the district than in urban sections (8.3 deaths per 1,000 live births vs. 5.4 per 1,000), and were four times higher in poorly developed villages than in more highly developed villages. Sixty-three percent of the 284 maternal deaths for which detailed information could be obtained followed live births (often because of prolonged labor), 14 percent were related to stillbirths, 13 percent were associated with nondelivery factors and 10 percent followed abortions. Two-thirds of all maternal deaths had a direct obstetric cause; the most common causes were sepsis (36 percent), hemorrhage (12 percent), eclampsia (nine percent) and retained placenta (seven percent). More than half of all maternal deaths occurred either at home or on the way to the hospital. The investigators conclude that 80 percent of the deaths could have been prevented by prenatal care, treatment of preexisting health problems and timely medical treatment.

[1] J. C. Bhatia, "Light on Maternal Mortality in India," *World Health Forum*, **11**:188, 1990.

Truth in Family-Size Preferences

Many Chinese women appear to underreport their preferred family size in face-to-face interviews.[1] Data from a 1985 survey in Shanghai that was conducted in the standard manner were compared with those from a 1983–1984 survey in which respondents could complete the questionnaire privately and then mail it back or return it anonymously. Six percent of respondents to the 1985 survey reported wanting three or more children, compared with 24 percent of respondents to the 1983–1984 survey, with these differentials being especially great among less educated women and among women living in rural areas. Much of the misreporting appeared concentrated among women who had already borne three or more children: In the face-to-face survey, 61 percent reported that they preferred a two-child family, but in the 1983–1984 survey, 61 percent said they preferred three children, and most of the remainder wanted four or more. The investigators observe that "it is fair to assume that underreporting on this measure is general throughout China," and that the results of research using family-size preference data collected in face-to-face interviews may be misleading.

[1] A. I. Hermalin and X. Liu, "Gauging the Validity of Responses to Questions on Family Size Preferences in China," *Population and Development Review*, **16**:337, 1990.

Reversing Vasectomy in Nepal

The vast majority of men in Nepal seeking reversal of their vasectomy did so because one of their children had died; the investigators comment that in many of these instances, the need for reversal might have been avoided if providers had properly screened sterilization candidates. About 50 percent of the 157 men who had their vasectomies reversed between 1980 and 1985 did so because a son had died, and another 22 percent did so because a daughter had died. Only 10 percent sought reversal because they had remarried after their sterilization. On average, the men who sought reversal as a result of the death of a child had been about 35 years old when they obtained their vasectomy, around two years younger than the mean age of all sterilized men in Nepal. Likewise, they had an average of 2.3 children, about two children fewer than is typical among vasectomy acceptors in Nepal, and they were much more likely to have had a child two years old or younger at the time of the vasectomy. The authors of the study point out that infant mortality in Nepal is fairly high, and that couples who are sterilized when their last child is very young may still be at high risk of child mortality. "More careful screening of men seeking vasectomy," they conclude, "could reduce the demand for vasectomy reversal considerably."

[1] S. Thapa and T. M. Vaidya, "Vasectomy Reversal in Nepal," *Journal of Biosocial Science*, **22**:423, 1990.

Ugandan AIDS Toll Projected

Computer projections indicate that despite Uganda's very high birthrate, the size of its population may remain almost unchanged over the next 25 years if the nation's AIDS epidemic is not checked.[1] Uganda's total fertility rate over the period 1985–1989 was 7.3 lifetime births per woman,[2] and the computer model showed that in the absence of the AIDS epidemic, the population would be expected to rise from about 16 million in 1990 to around 32 million by 2015. However, an estimated one million Ugandans are currently infected with the human immunodeficiency virus, and if the epidemic continues at its present rate, Uganda's population might total as few as 20 million people in 2015. (The projected loss of 12 million people represents those who would die of AIDS as well as those who would never be born because of the premature deaths of men and women of childbearing age.) The model also indicates that AIDS-related mortality might leave Uganda with as many as 5–6 million orphans by 2010. The Futures Group researchers who developed the model noted that Ugandans seem to be well-informed about AIDS as a result of information and education programs, but have done little to change their behavior. The presentation of these data reportedly convinced Uganda's president, Yoweri K. Musaveni, to reverse his opposition to widespread condom distribution.

[1] J. Perlez, "Spread of AIDS Is Worrying Uganda," *New York Times*, Jan. 30, 1991, p. 4.

[2] E. M. Kaijuka et al., *Uganda Demographic and Health Survey, 1988/1989*, Ministry of Health, Entebbe, and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., Columbia, Md., Oct. 1989.

Immunizing the Developing World

The degree to which very young children are immunized against certain serious diseases varies widely around the developing world. According to data from 21 countries surveyed as part of the Demographic and Health Surveys project,[1] the proportion of children between one and two years of age who are fully immunized (i.e., against tuberculosis, diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus, polio and measles) drops from 78–81 percent in Botswana, Tunisia and Zimbabwe to 14 percent in Liberia, 10 percent in Senegal and four percent in Mali. Most common is tuberculosis immunization, with anywhere from 38 percent (Mali) to 98 percent (Sri Lanka) of 1–2-year-olds immunized. Combined diphtheria, pertussis and tetanus injections, which must be given in three stages (usually between six and 14 weeks after birth), are often begun but not completed: In Bolivia, Guatemala, Liberia, Mali, Mexico and Senegal, less than half of all babies who had received their first such injection received the series of three by their first birthday; in contrast, coverage was virtually complete in Botswana (95 percent), Sri Lanka (93 percent) and Tunisia and Zimbabwe (92 percent each). There appears to have been a steady increase over the past decade in most types of immunization, particularly in Africa. Nevertheless, the authors observe, "the target of 80 percent immunization coverage by 1990 for all children at their first birthday will [have been] reached by only a few of the countries included in this report."

[1] J. T. Boerma et al., *Immunization: Levels, Trends and Differentials*, Demographic and Health Surveys Comparative Studies No. 1, Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., Columbia, Md., Dec. 1990.

A Slimmer Copper T

A modification of the Copper T IUD that is intended to make the device simpler to load into its inserter and easier to insert may actually have no important insertion advantages over the standard Copper T, according to a recent report.[1] About 300 women obtaining an IUD from clinics in Brazil, Chile, the Dominican Republic, Egypt and Sweden received the standard TCu 380, while around 700 received the modified device, called the Slimline. Its major modification is that the copper sleeves on the horizontal arms are flush with the plastic rather than raised, and are at either end of the arms rather than in the middle. Providers reported no difference in the ease of loading the Slimline into the inserter tube or of inserting it, and the women reported no difference in the amount of pain experienced during insertion. There was also no difference between the two IUDs in 12-month pregnancy rates, and although the Slimline was associated with a slightly higher expulsion rate than was the standard IUD, the difference between IUDs was not statistically significant. The investigators observe that while "a handful of cases suggest that the Slimline may be easier to insert than the standard model in women with small cervical canals, . . . this study did not demonstrate any clear differences either in ease of insertion or in pain associated with insertion."

[1] I. Sivin et al., "A Randomized Trial of the Gyne T380 and Gyne T380 Slimline Intrauterine Copper Devices," *Contraception*, **42**:379, 1990.

Will Malay Policy Alter Birthrate?

Nine in 10 Malaysians do not plan to have any more children than they originally desired, despite their government's efforts to encourage larger families.[1] A 1983 policy intended to slow the decline in the nation's birthrate was aimed at convincing Malaysians to have more children, but a 1984–1985 national probability survey showed that just 10 percent of women said the policy had led them to want more children, with only 15–17 percent saying they might do so if the government offered free child care or educational aid. Ethnic Malay women, though, were five times as likely as non-Malays (generally Chinese or Indian) to say that the policy might affect their fertility. The researcher observes that ethnic Malays already have, and want, substantially larger families than do non-Malays, and that their birthrate and family-size desires rose in the early 1980s. Given that ethnic Malays represent about three-fifths of the childbearing population, he suggests that the policy may prove more successful than might be expected based on the seemingly poor public response.

[1] G. L. Khor, "Fertility Preferences Among Malaysian Women: An Analysis of Responses to the New Population Policy," *Journal of Biosocial Sciences*, **22**:465, 1990.

Lactation, Menses and Ovulation

Breastfeeding women who begin to menstruate within six months of delivery are not likely to ovulate for weeks, and thus are not at immediate increased risk of accidental pregnancy, a small Philippine study shows.[1] However, after six months postpartum, they often ovulate either before first menses or shortly after. Postpartum amenorrhea averaged 31 weeks among 40 breastfeeding women, but first ovulation occurred an average of 37 weeks postpartum. Over half of the women first menstruated within six months of delivery, but 67 percent of these did not ovulate until at least one month later, and ovulation followed menses by an average of 16 weeks. Among lactating women who first menstruated after six months postpartum, 78 percent ovulated before their first menses, and the remainder ovulated an average of only seven weeks later. The study shows that in the first six months postpartum, resumption of menses is not necessarily an accurate marker for ovulation in women who are breastfeeding.

[1] S. S. Eslami et al., "The Reliability of Menses to Indicate the Return of Ovulation in Breastfeeding Women in Manila, the Philippines," *Studies in Family Planning*, **21**:243, 1990.

Evidence of a Transition to Lower Fertility in Kenya

> **"There were large differentials in contraceptive use among the 13 districts covered. . . . These findings indicate that there are pockets of contraceptive use in Kenya that reach levels as high as those found in more developed countries."**

By Anne R. Cross, Walter Obungu and Paul Kizito

Summary

Data from the 1989 Kenya Demographic and Health Survey provide evidence that the country's population growth rate, historically among the highest in the world, has begun to slow. The total fertility rate in 1989 was 6.7 live births per woman, down from 8.1 in the mid-1970s; most of the decline appears to have taken place in the past few years. Contraceptive prevalence has increased sharply, with 27 percent of married women using a method, up from 14 percent in 1984 and six percent in 1977–1978. Periodic abstinence remains the most widely used method (7.5 percent), followed by the pill (5.2 percent) and female sterilization (4.7 percent).

The survey results suggest that the fertility decline is likely to continue. The average ideal family size in 1989 was 4.4 children, down from 5.8 in 1984. Half of currently married Kenyan women say they want no more children. In addition, more than half of recent births were either mistimed or unwanted. More than one-third of currently married women aged 15–49 are in need of family planning, 22 percent for spacing and 14 percent for limiting births.

Introduction

For the past decade, Kenya has repeatedly been cited in professional journals and the popular media as having the highest rate of population growth of any country in the world (about four percent per year). This rate, which would lead to a doubling of population every 18 years, resulted from two factors: Over the two previous decades, mortality had fallen to one of the lowest levels in Africa and fertility had risen to an extremely high level (eight lifetime births per woman, or a crude birthrate of 52 births per thousand population).[1]

Kenya's government became concerned about the effects of rapid population growth even before that growth reached its highest level. In 1966, Kenya became the first sub-Saharan African country to adopt an official population policy favoring reduced fertility; it stated that the government would "pursue vigorously policies designed to reduce the rate of population growth through voluntary means."[2] A year later, the government launched a national family planning program that integrated contraceptive services into maternal and child health services.

Although the goal of the 1975–1979 phase of the program was to reduce the annual rate of natural increase from 3.3 percent in 1975 to 3.0 percent in 1979, the 1979 census results showed that the rate of population growth had actually increased to 3.8 percent per year.[3] In response to this increase, the government established the National Council for Population and Development (NCPD) in 1982 to formulate government policies and strategies and to coordinate all population-related activities. The NCPD has also been a channel for donor funds for population-related activities, which have increased considerably over the past decade.

Given an active but somewhat depressed economy, a relatively stable political situation and the increasing education of women, the government expected its policies to result in fertility decline. Nevertheless, although the 1984 Kenya Contraceptive Prevalence Survey (KCPS) showed an increase in the level of contraceptive use, the reported decline in fertility was small (from 8.1 to 7.7 births per woman), and the data showed an increase in the average number of children ever born to women in all age-groups.[4]

In 1989, the NCPD conducted the Kenya Demographic and Health Survey (KDHS). Between December 1988 and May 1989, a total of 7,150 women aged 15–49, and the husbands of 1,116 of those women, were interviewed in their local languages. The sample of women was representative of 95 percent of the country's female population of reproductive age and was designed to produce estimates by province and for the rural areas of 13 of the country's 41 districts.* Female interviewers collected complete birth histories from the women, along with information on the women's knowledge and use of family planning methods and on indicators of maternal and child health. The questionnaire also included other variables that affect fertility levels, such as marital status, breastfeeding and postpartum abstinence.

Descriptive results from the KDHS show that the sample was indicative of the young population that results from high fertility;[5] the majority of the women were under 30 years old. Two of every three respondents were currently in a marital union, defined loosely to include consensual and traditional unions as well as formal marriages. One in four respondents had never been to school, while just over half had had some primary education, and one in five had had some secondary education. Young women were more likely than older women to be educated: Only five percent of women aged 15–19 had not been to school, compared to 65 percent of those aged 45–49.

Anne R. Cross is regional coordinator for Anglophone Africa and Asia, Demographic and Health Surveys, Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., Columbia, Md.; Walter Obungu, economist-statistician in charge of the Research and Evaluation Division, and Paul Kizito, economist-statistician, are both with the National Council for Population and Development, Ministry of Home Affairs and National Heritage, Nairobi, Kenya. The authors would like to thank Wamucii Njogu, Jerry Sullivan and Charles Westoff for their useful comments on an earlier version of this article. The 1989 Kenya Demographic and Health Survey, on which the article is based, was funded by the U.S. Agency for International Development.

*Northeastern Province was excluded from the survey. A more detailed description of the sample and survey design is provided in the complete KDHS report. (See: reference 5.)

Fertility Trends

Because Kenya has had three surveys in the past 12 years, we can study trends in fertility over time (Table 1). A comparison of data from the 1977–1978 Kenya Fertility Survey,[6] the 1984 KCPS and the 1988–1989 KDHS shows that the total fertility rate declined from a high of 8.1 children per woman in 1977–1978 to 7.7 in 1984 and 6.7 in 1989, a total decrease of 17 percent. In fact, because of the different reference periods used in the surveys, the 1984–1989 decline of 13 percent actually took place over a three-year period (late 1983 to late 1986).* This is an extremely rapid, though plausible, decline in fertility. If these figures are accurate, the crude birthrate in Kenya declined from about 52 per thousand in 1979 to about 42 per thousand in 1989.†

Even without comparison to other survey results, KDHS data provide convincing evidence of a decrease in fertility. First, age-specific fertility rates based on birth histories show a decline over the past decade or so, and the decline is somewhat greater between the periods from 5–9 years and 0–4 years before the survey than between the periods from 10–14 and 5–9 years before the survey. Second, in both the KFS and the KCPS, the number of children aged 0–4 was about 15 percent larger than the number aged 5–9, but in the KDHS, it was two percent smaller. Finally, the proportion of women who reported being pregnant at the time of their interview declined by 29 percent, from 13 percent in 1977–1978 to 11 percent in 1984 and nine percent in 1989. All these data indicate that Kenya's fertility has declined.

The fertility decline varied considerably among provinces. A comparison of the 1977–1978 KFS data with the 1989 KDHS data in Table 1 shows declines in all provinces except Western Province, where fertility remained constant. (Current fertility levels in Western Province appear to have been underreported in the 1984 KCPS.) Major fertility declines, ranging from 21 percent to 30 percent, occurred in Central, Nairobi, Coast and Rift Valley provinces. For example, fertility in Central Province fell from an average of 8.6 to 6.0 children per woman over 11 years. KDHS results show that as fertility declined, the differentials among provinces increased. In 1977–1978, women in Rift Valley Province had an average of 2.7 more live births than their counterparts in Nairobi (8.8 vs. 6.1); this difference between the provinces with the highest and the lowest fertility had increased to 3.5 births by 1989 (8.1 in Western Province vs. 4.6 in Nairobi).

Table 1. Total fertility rates among women aged 15–49, by province, according to survey; and percentage decrease, by province, Kenya, 1977–1989

Province	1977–1978 KFS	1984 KCPS	1989 KDHS	% decrease 1977–1989
Total	**8.1**	**7.7**	**6.7**	**17.3**
Western	8.2	6.3	8.1	1.2
Nyanza	8.0	8.2	7.1	11.3
Rift Valley	8.8	8.6	7.0	20.5
Central	8.6	7.8	6.0	30.2
Nairobi	6.1	5.6	4.6	24.6
Eastern	8.2	8.0	7.0	14.6
Coast	7.2	6.7	5.5	23.6

Sources: See references 4–6.

Contraceptive Use

Increased use of family planning methods may be the major reason for the decline in fertility. KDHS data show that in 1989, 27 percent of currently married women aged 15–49 were using a method of family planning, compared with six percent in 1977–1978 and 14 percent in 1984.‡

As Table 2 shows, current use of all methods rose between 1984 and 1989, and use of modern methods (the pill, the IUD, injectables and sterilization) among currently married women almost doubled (from 10 percent to 18 percent). Over the same period, the proportion using traditional methods (periodic abstinence, withdrawal and folk methods) also doubled, from less than five percent to nine percent. Periodic abstinence continues to be the most widely used method (7.5 percent), followed by the pill (5.2 percent) and female sterilization (4.7 percent), which has supplanted the IUD (3.7 percent).

There were large differentials in levels of contraceptive use by province, ranging from 14 percent of married women in Western and Nyanza provinces to 40 percent of women in Central and Eastern provinces (Table 3, page 6). Provinces closest to Nairobi had the highest levels of use and those farthest away had the lowest levels. However, unlike provincial differentials in fertility, differentials in contraceptive use appear to be narrowing over time. The provinces with the lowest prevalence in 1984 showed the greatest relative increase by 1989; contraceptive prevalence doubled in Rift Valley Province, and in Western Province it almost tripled, while in Central Province it increased by only 16 percent. As a result, a sevenfold differential in use was reduced to a threefold differential.

Table 2. Percentage of currently married women aged 15–49 practicing contraception, by method, according to survey, 1984 and 1989

Method	1984 KCPS	1989 KDHS
All methods	**14.3***	**26.9**
Modern methods	**9.7†**	**17.9†**
Pill	3.1	5.2
IUD	3.0	3.7
Injectables	0.5	3.3
Female ster.	2.6	4.7
Other	0.4	0.9
Traditional methods	**4.6**	**9.0**
Periodic abstinence	3.8	7.5
Other	0.8	1.5

*Excludes 2.7 percent using prolonged abstinence, which was not included in KDHS.

†Columns may not add to totals because of rounding.

Sources: **For 1984 KCPS**—see reference 4, Table 7.10. **For 1989 KDHS**—see reference 5.

The provinces differed not only in levels of use, but in the mix of methods used. Traditional methods, including periodic abstinence, accounted for about 25 percent of current use in most provinces, but accounted for more than 50 percent of current use in Eastern Province and nearly 40 percent of current use in Rift Valley (Table 4, page 6). In general, use of modern methods was highest in provinces in which fertility was lowest (Nairobi, Central) and lowest in provinces in which fertility was highest (Western, Nyanza). The provinces that showed the greatest absolute decline in fertility between 1984 and 1989 (Central and Rift Valley) also showed the greatest absolute increase in use of modern methods (from 21 percent to 31 percent and from five percent to 18 percent, respectively). The most commonly used methods, by province, were the pill (Nairobi, Coast and Western), the IUD (Central), female sterilization (Nyanza) and periodic abstinence (Eastern and Rift Valley).

There were also large differentials in contraceptive use among the 13 districts covered (not shown). The data show a ninefold differential in contraceptive use by district, ranging from a high of 52 percent in Kirinyaga District to a low of six

---

*Rates from the 1977–1978 KFS are based on the three-year period before the survey, those from the 1989 KDHS refer to the five-year period before the survey, and both are based on birth histories. Rates for the 1984 KCPS are based on the 12 months preceding the survey and are derived from a question on date of last live birth.

†Calculated by multiplying the age-specific fertility rates by the number of usual female residents listed on the household questionnaire and dividing by the total number of usual household residents.

‡The reported rates of contraceptive use were seven percent in 1977–1978 and 17 percent in 1984; however, these rates included use of prolonged abstinence, which was not asked about in 1989.

Table 3. Percentage of currently married women aged 15–49 practicing contraception, by province, according to survey; and percentage increase, by province, 1984–1989

Province	1984 KCPS	1989 KDHS	% increase
Total	**14.3***	**26.9**	**88.1**
Western	4.6	13.7	197.8
Nyanza	8.6	13.8	60.5
Rift Valley	15.1	29.6	96.0
Central	34.1	39.5	15.8
Nairobi	28.3	33.5	18.4
Eastern	26.3	40.2	52.9
Coast	10.5	18.1	72.4

*Excludes 2.7 percent using prolonged abstinence.

Sources: **For 1984 KCPS**—see reference 4, Table 7.13. **For 1989 KDHS**—see reference 5.

percent in South Nyanza District. Generally, prevalence was highest in districts in the country's central region (Kirinyaga, Nyeri, Machakos, Meru and Murang'a), and lowest in districts in the west (Siaya, Bungoma and South Nyanza) and at the coast (Kilifi). These findings indicate that there are pockets of contraceptive use in Kenya that reach levels as high as those found in more developed countries.

The KDHS data also show variations in contraceptive use according to characteristics of individual women, such as age, education, residence, religion and parity. Contraceptive prevalence was lowest among married women aged 15–19 years (13 percent), and highest among those aged 30–44 years (at least 30 percent were using contraceptives). Educational differentials in contraceptive use were large: Eighteen percent of women with no education, 26 percent of those with some primary education, 30 percent of those with a complete primary education and 40 percent of those with a secondary education were using a method. However, contraceptive use varied little by place of residence: In urban areas, 31 percent of women were using family planning, compared with 26 percent of those in rural areas. The KDHS found some differences by religion in use of family planning, with 29 percent of Protestants, 26 percent of Catholics and 17 percent of Muslims using a method. Protestant women were more likely than Catholic women to use modern methods. Finally, as expected, higher parity women were more likely to use contraceptives than those with one or no child.

Other Factors

Another factor that may have contributed to Kenya's fertility decline is delayed marriage. The proportion of young women who have not married has increased steadily over the past 25 years. In 1962, just over half of women aged 15–19 had not yet married, compared with 80 percent in 1989. Among women aged 20–24, the figures were 13 percent in 1962 and 32 percent in 1989. Data from the KDHS respondents show that age at first marriage has risen over time, from 17.3 among women aged 40–44 to 19.8 among those aged 20–24.

However, the effect of delayed marriage on fertility is unclear. A comparison of KDHS and KFS data show that for most cohorts there has been only a slight increase in median age at first birth; for example, the median age at first birth among women aged 25–29 was 18.3 in 1977–1978, compared with 18.7 in 1989.[7] KDHS data on the median age at first birth show no consistent trend across cohorts. In short, the rather dramatic trend toward delayed marriage has caused only a small delay in the onset of childbearing.

Likewise, the effect of the postpartum variables—breastfeeding, amenorrhea and abstinence—on the fertility decline in Kenya has probably been slight. What little change has occurred in the median duration of these three variables since the 1984 KCPS is downward, which would lead to higher fertility, all other factors being equal. Kenyan women breastfeed their children for an average of 19 months, and therefore experience a relatively long average period of postpartum amenorrhea (11 months). In addition, they report abstaining from sexual relations for an average of six months after birth.

Table 4. Percentage of currently married women practicing contraception, by method, according to province, 1989

Province	Weighted number of women	Total	Traditional methods	Modern methods					
				All	Pill	IUD	Injectables	Female ster.	Other
Total	**4,765**	**26.9**	**9.0**	**17.9**	**5.2**	**3.7**	**3.3**	**4.7**	**0.9**
Western	711	13.7	3.7	10.0	3.8	1.6	1.6	2.6	0.4
Nyanza	872	13.8	3.5	10.2	2.7	0.8	2.5	3.9	0.3
Rift Valley	1,047	29.6	11.5	18.1	3.6	2.3	5.3	5.5	1.5
Central	648	39.5	8.7	30.8	8.1	10.0	3.6	7.7	1.6
Nairobi	335	33.5	5.6	27.9	11.8	7.9	2.3	4.4	1.6
Eastern	804	40.2	20.8	19.5	5.9	4.7	3.5	4.5	0.8
Coast	350	18.1	3.3	14.8	5.5	1.7	3.6	3.6	0.4

Source: See reference 5.

Prospects for the Future

The KDHS results not only show that the transition to lower fertility levels has already begun, but indicate that the decrease may accelerate in the future. Table 5 shows that the mean family size considered ideal by Kenyan women in 1989 was 4.4 children (down from 5.8 in 1984). The mean ideal family size follows the same pattern as fertility levels by province, with high-fertility provinces reporting higher mean ideal family sizes. As Table 5 also shows, half of married women reported that they did not want any more children—a considerably higher proportion than in any other sub-Saharan country in which a DHS has been conducted. Of the other sub-Saharan countries, those with the largest proportion of women wishing to stop childbearing were Botswana and Zimbabwe (33 percent), followed by Togo (25 percent), Burundi (24 percent), Ghana (23 percent), Uganda (19 percent) and Mali and Liberia (17 percent). The proportion of Kenyan women wanting no more children varied widely by province, ranging from 67 percent of women in Central Province to 28 percent in Coast Province. Finally, over half of the births in the 12 months before the survey were reported as being either mistimed or unwanted altogether (42 percent and 11 percent, respectively; not shown).

We constructed estimates of the extent of unmet need for family planning in Kenya from the information on women's desires regarding future childbearing, using a measure that differentiates between need for spacing births and need for limiting the number of children.[8] These estimates, shown in Table 5, suggest that over one-third of married women were in need of family planning, 22 percent for spacing births and 14 percent for limiting births.

Although postponing births has beneficial effects on maternal and child health and mortality, it has only a minor effect on fertility, because the overall number of births may remain the same; however, providing women who want to stop childbearing with the means to do so could have a considerable effect on fertility by averting future births altogether. The

Table 5. Mean ideal number of children among all women aged 15–49; and percentages of currently married women aged 15–49 who want no more children and who have an unmet need for family planning, by province, 1989

Province	Mean ideal number of children	% who want no more children	% with unmet need		
			Total	Spacing need*	Limiting need†
Total	**4.4**	**49.4**	**35.0**	**21.6**	**14.4**
Western	4.9	43.2	46.9	34.0	12.9
Nyanza	4.6	41.7	37.4	23.0	14.4
Rift Valley	4.7	49.7	33.9	20.7	13.2
Central	3.8	67.3	37.4	18.4	19.0
Nairobi	3.6	43.7	31.9	18.9	13.0
Eastern	4.2	59.7	31.9	14.7	17.2
Coast	5.6	28.0	26.3	19.4	6.9

*Calculation of spacing needs is based on nonpregnant, fecund, married nonusers who want to delay their next birth by two or more years, and on pregnant or amenorrheic women whose last birth was mistimed.

†Calculation of limiting needs is based on nonpregnant, fecund, married nonusers who want no more children, and on pregnant or amenorrheic women whose last birth was unwanted.

Source: See reference 5.

KDHS data imply that the already sizable proportion of married women relying on sterilization (4.7 percent) could quadruple if the need for limiting family size were met (14.4 percent). A recent study shows that female sterilization is considered acceptable in many parts of Kenya,[9] so increasing the availability of sterilization services could be important in maintaining the momentum of fertility decline.

The data show that women in Western Province have the greatest need for temporary means of family planning, while those in Central Province are most likely to be receptive to permanent or long-term methods. Coast Province should probably not be targeted for special efforts in family planning, because it has the lowest total unmet need, the highest average ideal family size and one of the lowest levels of fertility; in fact, it is the only province where the average ideal family size is higher than the level of current fertility. These facts suggest that there may be considerable involuntary infertility in Coast Province.

The KDHS provides evidence that the transition to lower fertility has already begun in Kenya. While research is planned to investigate the contribution to this decline of the various determinants of fertility, it seems clear that increased use of family planning methods has been the major reason for the decline. In turn, a recently completed study has shown that a large part of the increase in contraceptive use in Kenya is the result of higher levels of educational attainment among women.[10] Still, despite the increase in contraceptive use, the unmet need for family planning services remains very high. Meeting this need is the challenge that faces program planners and administrators.

References

1. National Council for Population and Development (NCPD), "Population Policy Guidelines," Sessional Paper No. 4, Ministry of Home Affairs and National Heritage, Nairobi, Kenya, 1984, p. 3.

2. Population Council, "Country Profiles: Kenya," New York, 1971, p. 6; and Agency for International Development/Kenya, "USAID Analyses and Strategy for Assistance in Family Planning and Fertility Reduction in Kenya," unpublished manuscript, 1985, p. 21.

3. NCPD, 1984, op. cit. (see reference 1), p. 3.

4. Central Bureau of Statistics (CBS), *First Report, Kenya Contraceptive Prevalence Survey 1984*, Ministry of Planning and National Development, Nairobi, 1984.

5. NCPD and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., *Demographic and Health Survey 1989*, Nairobi, Kenya, and Columbia, Maryland, 1989.

6. CBS, *First Report, Kenya Fertility Survey 1977–1978*, Ministry of Economic Planning and Development, Nairobi, Kenya, 1980.

7. Ibid.; and NCPD and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., 1989, op. cit. (see reference 5).

8. C. F. Westoff, "The Potential Demand for Family Planning: A New Measure of Unmet Need and Estimates for Five Latin American Countries," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **14**:45, 1988.

9. J. T. Bertrand et al., "Attitudes Toward Voluntary Surgical Contraception in Four Districts of Kenya," *Studies in Family Planning*, **20**:281, 1989.

10. W. Njogu, "Trends and Determinants of Contraceptive Use in Kenya," *Demography*, **28**:83, 1991.

Resumen

Los datos de la Encuesta Demográfica y de Salud de Kenya de 1989 demuestran que la tasa de crecimiento demográfico del país, tradicionalmente entre las más altas del mundo, ha comenzado a retardarse. En 1989, la tasa global de fecundidad fue de 6,7 nacidos vivos por mujer, contra 8,1 a mediados de los años 70; gran parte de la baja parece haber ocurrido en los últimos años. La prevalencia de anticonceptivos ha aumentado bruscamente: el 27 por ciento de las casadas utilizan algún método, contra el 14 por ciento en 1984 y el seis por ciento en 1977–1978. La abstinencia periódica sigue siendo el método más utilizado (7,5 por ciento), seguida de la píldora (5,2 por ciento) y la esterilización femenina (4,7 por ciento).

Los resultados de la encuesta indican que la fecundidad probablemente continuará bajando. En 1989 el promedio ideal de hijos era 4,4, contra 5,8 en 1984. La mitad de las kenianas actualmente casadas dicen no querer tener más hijos. Por otra parte, más de la mitad de las mujeres que habían tenido un hijo recientemente no lo habían deseado, o por lo menos no en ese momento. Más de un tercio de las actualmente casadas de entre 15 y 49 años necesitan planificación familiar, el 22 por ciento para espaciar los nacimientos y el 14 por ciento para limitarlos.

Résumé

Les données tirées de l'Enquête Démographique et de Santé effectuée au Kenya en 1989 révèlent que le taux de croissance démographique de ce pays, qui figurait dans le passé parmi les plus élevés au monde, a commencé à ralentir. En 1989, l'indice synthétique de fécondité s'élevait à 6,7 naissances vivantes par femme, soit une baisse par rapport au taux de 8,1 vers le milieu des années 70. Or cette baisse semble s'être produite principalement au cours des quelques dernières années. Le taux d'utilisation de moyens contraceptifs a connu une hausse marquée, 27 pour cent des femmes mariées ayant recours à une méthode au moment de l'enquête par rapport à 14 pour cent en 1984 et six pour cent en 1977–1978. L'abstinence périodique demeure la méthode la plus répandue (7,5 pour cent), suivie de la pilule (5,2 pour cent) et de la stérilisation féminine (4,7 pour cent).

Les résultats de l'enquête suggèrent que le taux de fécondité continuera probablement à baisser. La taille idéale moyenne de la famille était de 4,4 enfants en 1989, une baisse étant ainsi enregistrée par rapport à une moyenne de 5,8 en 1984. La moitié des Kenyennes mariées lors de l'enquête déclarent ne plus vouloir d'enfants. En outre, plus de la moitié des naissances récentes étaient souhaitées pour plus tard ou non désirées. Plus du tiers des femmes âgées de 15 à 49 ans mariées à cette même époque avaient besoin de planning familial, soit pour espacer les naissances (22 pour cent) soit pour arrêter les naissances (14 pour cent).

Estimating Abortion Levels in Brazil, Colombia and Peru, Using Hospital Admissions and Fertility Survey Data

"Our estimates suggest that a high proportion of women in Brazil, Colombia and Peru are seeking induced abortions; and existing statistics show that many thousands of women are suffering adverse health effects from those procedures . . ."

By Susheela Singh and Deirdre Wulf

Summary

Although abortion is illegal in every Latin American country except Cuba, induced abortion is being widely practiced throughout the region. Health planners need reasonable estimates of the prevalence of this practice. A methodology is provided for estimating the numbers of illegal abortions being performed, based primarily on the numbers of abortion complications treated in hospitals. Estimates of the number of induced abortions and the ratio of abortions to births for Peru, Brazil and Colombia indicate that for every 10 women giving birth, 3–4 in Colombia and Brazil and two in Peru terminate their pregnancies.

Introduction

In every Latin American country except Cuba, abortion is illegal, except for the most stringent reasons (rape, incest or fetal abnormality). Despite the legal strictures, induced abortion is widely practiced throughout the region. Estimates of the number of women who illegally terminate unplanned pregnancies every year range into the millions, but the true dimensions of the problem are unknown.

Few sources of data on the subject exist—mainly hospital admission statistics and occasional, small-scale studies of hospitalization and mortality resulting from abortion. These provide only imperfect indicators of abortion prevalence, of the health toll that unsafe induced abortions exact on women, and of the medical and financial burden that the care of these women places on already overstrained hospital systems.[1] Moreover, few national surveys contain questions about this aspect of women's reproductive lives, and even in those that do, underreporting of induced abortion is considered common.

Given the general absence of abortion monitoring at the national level and the flaws in the available data that touch on this phenomenon, researchers must attempt some creative guesswork. In this article, we analyze national hospital statistics from Brazil, Colombia and Peru to estimate levels of induced abortion in these three countries and supplement the Brazilian estimates with data from the Pesquisa Nacional Sobre Saúde Materno Infantil e Planejamento Familiar of 1986, part of the worldwide Demographic and Health Surveys (DHS) project.

The problems associated with the data are myriad. Most hospital statistics do not distinguish between spontaneous and induced abortions, or, because induced abortion is illegal, hospital officials classify all abortions as spontaneous. The completeness of the data and, in the case of hospital samples, the extent to which they are representative of the whole country, may be limited. Moreover, if the distinction between spontaneous and induced abortion is not clear, the researcher must either make an educated guess or treat both types as a single category.

Furthermore, hospital admissions for the treatment of complications are generally thought to be only the tip of the iceberg, because the majority of women who undergo abortions do so safely and never have to be hospitalized. In addition, many women do not answer truthfully when large-scale surveys ask about their abortion experience; they either neglect to tell the interviewer about an abortion or claim that induced abortions were spontaneous miscarriages. (Even in countries where abortion is legal, a large proportion of women fail to report their abortions. In the United States, abortion underreporting in a 1982 national interview survey was calculated as 50 percent, on average, and as high as 80–90 percent among certain groups. Underreporting increased in the 1980s, rising to 65 percent in the 1988 national survey.[2])

Spontaneous Abortion

A reliable estimate of the likely biologic incidence of late spontaneous abortion is necessary to distinguish between patients hospitalized for spontaneous abortions and for induced abortion. Such an estimate is difficult to obtain.

Most spontaneous abortions (defined here as embryonic and fetal miscarriages occurring between the first missed menstrual period and the 27th week of gestation) occur very early in pregnancy, when they would be unlikely to cause complications serious enough to warrant hospitalization. Although spontaneous abortions that occur late in pregnancy (between weeks 17 and 27 of gestation) would probably require hospitalization, the exact proportion that do so is unknown and obviously varies from country to country, depending on the availability and use of modern medical services. In affluent countries like Canada and the United States, the number of spontaneous abortions requiring hospitalization is estimated at about five percent of all live births.[3] The proportion is this high because hospital facilities are generally accessible to most women in these two countries and because some women experiencing spontaneous abortions as early as 8–10 weeks into their pregnancy are also admitted to hospitals, even though they may not stay overnight.

In less developed countries, however, researchers consider it unlikely that many women are hospitalized for the treatment

---

Susheela Singh is assistant director of research at The Alan Guttmacher Institute (AGI) in New York. At the time this article was written, Deirdre Wulf was coordinator of special projects for the AGI.

The authors are grateful for the contributions to the research made by their colleagues in Latin America: Delicia Ferrando in Peru; Maria Helena Henriques-Mueller and Nelson do Valle Silva in Brazil; and Elena Prada in Colombia. They also acknowledge the assistance of Corine Hall with data processing. In addition, thanks go to the John D. and Catherine T. MacArthur Foundation, which funded the statistical research upon which the estimates in this article are based.

of early miscarriage.* They also believe that most hospitalized patients are not receiving treatment for complications of spontaneous abortions, even though women and physicians may report them as such.[4]

One well-documented estimate of the likelihood that a pregnancy will end in a spontaneous abortion has been provided by Susan Harlap and her colleagues.[5] Using life-table analysis, the researchers examined the pregnancy outcomes of 100,000 U.S. women enrolled in the Kaiser Health Plan of Northern California. They calculated that for every 100 pregnancies recognized at four weeks after the last menstrual period, 14.4 ended in spontaneous abortion before 28 weeks. Of these, 9.5 did so between weeks five and 11; 2.8 between weeks 12 and 16; and 2.1 between weeks 17 and 27.

The number of late spontaneous abortions—those occurring between 17 and 27 weeks—can be translated into a percentage of all the remaining pregnancies that ended in a live birth. (Live births are calculated by excluding all recognized spontaneous abortions and the estimated 0.8 percent of pregnancies that result in fetal death after 27 weeks of gestation.) This calculation yields an estimate of late spontaneous abortions equal to 2.48 percent of all live births. In this article, therefore, we distinguish between spontaneous and induced abortions by assuming that the number of hospitalized late spontaneous abortions in a given country would, typically, be the equivalent of 2.48 percent of all births occurring in that country each year.

Some question remains about whether the incidence of late spontaneous abortion is relatively constant among all women or whether it is strongly influenced by general social and health conditions in a given society. The study by Harlap and colleagues was conducted in the United States in the late 1970s, after abortion was legalized. Legalization of abortion certainly reduces the absolute number of late spontaneous abortions, and any increase in the availability of abortion services may cause a small reduction in the incidence of late spontaneous abortion, by allowing some women who would otherwise be at high risk of spontaneous abortion to elect pregnancy termination. An opposing trend to the reduction in incidence is the increasing number of women with high-risk pregnancies who, using the improved medical technology now available, attempt to carry a pregnancy to term; some do not succeed and experience a late spontaneous abortion instead.

However, the availability of legal abortion should not affect the ratio of late spontaneous pregnancy loss to live births, except in the unlikely situation that women who have induced abortions have a significantly different risk of late spontaneous abortion than do women whose pregnancies are carried to term. Moreover, studies carried out in the 1960s, before abortion was legalized in the United States and before recent improvements in obstetric and neonatal technology and the new emphasis on the need for comprehensive prenatal care for all women,[6] arrived at estimates of the ratio of midtrimester and later spontaneous abortions to the number of live births very similar to those found later by Harlap and colleagues. Therefore, we believe that their ratios are sufficiently robust to be applicable to women in the Latin American countries included in this analysis.

Illegal Abortion Estimates

Besides deciding on an acceptable ratio between spontaneous abortions and all live births, the researcher must also hazard an estimate as to what the visible tip of hospitalizations for abortion complications suggests about the size of the submerged iceberg—that is, the volume of all abortion procedures being carried out. Such guesswork requires a good understanding of the illegal abortion system that exists in a given country. Who performs most illegal abortions—trained doctors and midwives or untrained birth attendants? What are the financial costs? What percentage of women are likely to be able to afford those costs? Where are induced abortions performed? What techniques are commonly used? Are services concentrated in urban areas or in particular parts of the country? At what stage of pregnancy are most induced abortions performed? Does the abortion method used change with months of gestation?

The answers to these questions can assist the researcher in assessing the general safety of illegal abortion in a given country, an assessment that is necessary in estimating the numerical relationship between abortion complications leading to hospitalization and all abortions occurring within a given country. The major assumption underlying the use of hospital admission statistics to calculate abortion levels is that in countries or areas where abortion is performed by trained professionals under safe conditions, the complication rate is lower than the rate in countries or localities where women must resort to untrained practitioners using insanitary techniques, or where a high proportion of abortions are self-induced. In countries with safe services, it is assumed that few women will suffer complications, [illegible] hospitalized women will represent only [illegible] small proportion of all women undergoing abortion. On the other hand, in countries where abortions are performed under less favorable conditions, the complication rate will be much higher, and hospitalized women will represent a considerably greater proportion of the total who undergo the procedure.

Thus, an understanding of the way illegal abortions are provided, in combination with data on hospitalization for the treatment of complications, enables us to draw some conclusions about the overall abortion picture in countries where no statistics are maintained and where the true prevalence of the phenomenon is unknown.

Most research carried out in Latin America assumes that between one of every three and one of every five induced abortions being performed results in hospitalization. For example, an estimated 20 percent of all abortions in Brazil require hospitalization for the treatment of complications, according to the former minister of health from the State of São Paulo, although he pointed out that the true proportion is unknown and could vary widely.[7] However, another experienced researcher in the field believes 20 percent is too high for Brazil (and probably Colombia) and that a more reliable estimate would be that one of every seven induced abortions requires hospitalization for the treatment of complications.[8] This lower ratio of hospitalizations is presumably because most large Colombian and Brazilian cities have clinics where safe abortions are performed with modern, aseptic techniques. In contrast, studies carried out in Chile in the mid-1960s indicated that one-

---

*The measure of hospitalized spontaneous abortions as a percentage of all live births is likely to be highly variable from one society to another because it is influenced by such factors as the availability and accessibility of hospital care and women's propensity to resort to hospital care, not only for serious medical problems but as a precaution in less serious cases. In developing countries such as Brazil, Colombia and Peru, not all women in need of obstetrical care are hospitalized. In fact, about one-half of Peruvian women giving birth, one-third of Colombian women and one-fifth of Brazilian women do not deliver in hospitals. There is little reason to believe that women in these countries who experience a spontaneous abortion will be any more likely to attend a hospital than those who give birth. Some cases of complications from induced abortion may be treated on an outpatient basis, or in private doctors' clinics or offices. For all these reasons, the rate imputed from the hospital statistics of one country is not necessarily generalizable to another country.

Table 1. An estimation of the number of induced abortions and the ratio of abortions to births in Peru, Brazil and Colombia, by year and source of data

Country, year and source of data	No. of hospitalizations attributed to abortions (1)	No. of births (2)	No. of hospitalizations attributed to spontaneous abortions (2) x 2.48% (3)	No. of hospitalizations attributed to induced abortions (1) - (3) (4)	No. of induced abortions			Induced abortion ratios*		
					Low (4) x 3 (5)	Moderate (4) x 5 (6)	High (4) x 7 (7)	Low (5)/(2) (8)	Moderate (6)/(2) (9)	High (7)/(2) (10)
Peru, 1977										
Hospital survey	37,148	618,000	15,326	21,822	65,466	109,110	na	106	177	na
Peru, 1981										
National statistics	57,800	660,800	16,388	41,412	124,236	207,060	na	188	313	na
Brazil, 1980										
INAMPS (unadjusted)	201,597	3,800,000	94,240	107,357	322,071	536,785	751,499	85	141	198
INAMPS (adjusted†)	288,000	3,800,000	94,240	193,760	581,280	968,800	1,356,320	153	255	357
Brazil, 1985										
DHS (unadjusted)	285,000	4,007,000	99,374	185,626	556,878	928,130	1,299,385	139	232	324
DHS (adjusted‡)	379,000	4,007,000	99,374	279,626	838,878	1,398,130	1,957,385	209	349	488
DHS (adjusted§)	570,000	4,007,000	99,374	470,626	1,411,878	2,353,130	3,294,385	352	587	822
Colombia, 1985										
National statistics	71,375	855,000	21,204	50,171	150,513	250,855	351,197	176	293	411

na=not applicable. *The number of induced abortions per 1,000 live births. †Assuming that INAMPS receives 70 percent of all cases. ‡Assuming 25 percent underreporting of hospitalized abortion cases. §Assuming 50 percent underreporting of hospitalized abortion cases.

third of induced abortions had complications requiring hospitalization,[9] suggesting that many women undergoing abortions in Chile at that time experienced unsafe procedures.

The 1986 Brazil DHS included a few questions on abortion, but these were designed specifically to measure morbidity and levels of hospitalization, not to yield estimates of abortion levels in that country. The findings provide an estimate of the percentage of all women who were hospitalized for complications in the year before the survey, and this estimate can be used to make an indirect estimate of the total number of abortions occurring in that year. In addition, women were asked if they had had an abortion in the previous year, and whether it had been induced or spontaneous; their responses can be used to calculate a direct estimate of the level of abortion.

A second important contribution of the Brazil DHS is the data's ability to provide a national picture of the characteristics of women having abortions. However, this picture is accurate only if women in all demographic subgroups underreport or misreport their abortion experience to the same degree, and this is not always the case. U.S. data for 1988 show, for example, that married women and white women are more likely to report their experience accurately than are single women and nonwhite women.[10]

Although they require many assumptions, hospital and survey data remain almost the only available means of estimating the prevalence and patterns of abortion in countries where the phenomenon goes largely unreported and unmeasured. We use hospital data from Peru, Brazil and Colombia to estimate overall levels of abortion in these countries and to compare the hospital data estimates from Brazil with ones made on the basis of the 1986 DHS data.

Hospital Admissions in Peru

Little is known about the conditions under which illegal abortions are performed in Peru. Although a few clandestine clinics and private medical services that perform abortions are widely assumed to exist in Lima and other cities, the cost of these services is probably beyond the reach of most women. The majority of women in Lima, and in other parts of the country, must resort to abortion services that may be less expensive but are provided by untrained practitioners and performed in an unsafe environment. Because abortion services are poorly developed, health complications and death probably accompany a larger percentage of illegal abortions in Peru than in Colombia and Brazil, where most major cities have widespread systems of professionally staffed clinics providing relatively low-cost services.

In 1977, Peru's Ministry of Health carried out a detailed study of abortion complications treated at government and private hospitals.[11] The sample of hospitals surveyed was selected to represent one-quarter of the hospital beds in the country (7,000 out of a total of 29,000). The investigators found that 9,287 patients with abortion complications had been treated in these hospitals in a one-year period. If this number is multiplied by four, on the assumption that the unsurveyed hospitals admitted similar levels of patients with abortion complications as the hospitals covered by the study, the result would be 37,148 abortions with complications serious enough to require hospital treatment (see Table 1). Assuming that spontaneous abortions requiring hospitalization totaled 15,326 (2.48 percent of births in 1977), the remaining 21,822 of these 37,148 cases would be for the treatment of induced abortions.

But how many other women in 1977 underwent induced abortions that were performed safely enough not to cause dangerous health complications? If we assume initially that a relatively high proportion of abortions were performed under insanitary conditions and that one in three resulted in complications (that is, for every abortion complication case admitted, two other abortions were performed safely), we arrive at a relatively low estimate of 65,466 induced abortions among the total population in 1977.

Given that 618,000 births occurred in Peru in the same year,* there would be 106 abortions per 1,000 live births. Alternatively, if one assumes that abortions were being performed much more safely and that only one-in-five illegal abortions caused serious complications, an estimated 109,110 abortions were performed in 1977, for a ratio of 177 abortions per 1,000 live births. Because it is not plausible to assume that illegal abortions in Peru were being performed as safely as in the other two countries under analysis, the seven-to-one ratio is not applied in the case of Peru.

A similar analysis can be done for a more recent year. As part of a broad study of health care services in Peru, the investigators found that public sector hospitals treated 32,628 patients for abortion complications in 1981.[12] Their study covered 90 percent of Ministry of Health hospitals (60 percent of all hospital beds in the country) and included only a few of the country's remaining private and social security hospitals, so the sample is not representative of the entire country. The 1977 Peruvian Ministry of Health Study revealed that 37.3 percent of all abortions were performed in these other hospitals, both in the public sector (among them social security and armed forces facilities) and in the private sector).[13] For the year 1981, for example, we can inflate the number 32,628 to allow for the 10 percent of Ministry of Health hospitals that were not surveyed and for the 37.3 percent of other hospitals omitted from the sample, and we arrive at a final estimate of 57,800 patients treated for abortion complications in that year.

Subtracting spontaneous abortion cases calculated in the same way as previously shown gives us an estimated 41,412 patients hospitalized for the treatment of complications from induced abortion. Again, introducing an adjustment factor to allow for abortions not requiring hospitalization, we arrive at a total of either 124,236 (two safe induced abortions for every one unsafe procedure) or 207,060 (four for every one) induced abortions performed in Peru in 1981. If these numbers are compared with the number of live births occurring in Peru (obtained by applying the crude birth rate of 37.22 births per 1,000 population for 1981), ratios of 188 or 313 abortions per 1,000 live births are the result. Comparison of the Peru findings for 1977 and 1981 (a comparison that is plausible because of the similarity of the data sources for both years) suggests that there was an increase in the prevalence of induced abortion during that period.

Hospital Admissions in Brazil

At the national level, there are two sources of information about hospitalizations resulting from abortion in Brazil. A special study carried out in 1982 collated service statistics from the Instituto Nacional da Assistência Médica e Previdência Social (INAMPS) system of hospitals and obtained a count of 201,597 admissions for abortion complications in 1980 (see Table 1).[14] The INAMPS system reportedly covers about 70 percent of Brazil's total population.† The data as reported do not allow admissions for complications resulting from spontaneous abortions and those resulting from induced abortions to be separated. Nevertheless, under the same assumptions as for Peru, we can use these data to make estimates of all induced abortions in Brazil in 1980.

Some Brazilian researchers suggest that most women suffering complications from induced abortion would seek care through the INAMPS system because it is free and because private facilities and physicians are reluctant to assume responsibility for the legal problems that can result from such cases. However, reports obtained from the 1986 DHS about the source of care show that 30 percent of women who were hospitalized for abortion complications sought private care. Assuming that these reports are correct, the total number of hospitalized patients would therefore have to be adjusted to 288,000 (201,597/0.7).

Applying the factor of 2.48 percent to the number of live births in Brazil in 1980 yields an estimate of 94,240 patients hospitalized for spontaneous abortion; this leaves the number of patients hospitalized for induced abortion at 107,357 (unadjusted for the incompleteness of the sample) or 193,760 (adjusted). Assuming that either two, four or six more induced abortions are performed for every one that requires hospitalization, we reach the estimate that 322,071, 536,785 or 751,499 illegal abortions were performed in Brazil in 1980, without correction for the fact that INAMPS does not cover the total population. These numbers yield unadjusted ratios of 85, 141 or 198 abortions per 1,000 live births. After adjustment, the ratios would be 153, 255 or 357 induced abortions per 1,000 live births for Brazil in 1980.

Survey Data for Brazil

A second estimate of the overall number of Brazilian women being hospitalized for the treatment of induced abortion complications can be made using data from the 1986 DHS.[15] Women in the survey were asked whether they had ever had an abortion, whether they had had one in the previous year, whether there had been medical complications and whether they had been hospitalized for the treatment of those complications. Women who had an abortion that resulted in complications or even hospitalization are probably more likely to report it than women who had an uncomplicated procedure, because complications will make the event more memorable and hospitalization is likely to make it more socially acceptable to report the experience. The reporting of complications and hospitalization for their treatment is, therefore, probably more reliable than the overall reporting of abortion but these events are likely to be considerably underreported, too.

About two percent of women reported having had an abortion during the previous year; 1.7 percent of the abortions were reported as spontaneous, and 0.4‡ percent as induced. Less than half of these women (43 percent or 0.9§ percent of all women aged 15–44) said that they had been hospitalized for complications in the previous year. This is the equivalent of 285,000 Brazilian women. Underreporting of abortions is obviously high; for example, only 35 percent of abortions performed in the

---

*For Brazil and Colombia, as well as for Peru, estimates of the annual number of live births for all the relevant years are taken from: Centro Latino Americano de Demografía, "América Latina: Proyecciones de Población, 1950–2025," *Boletín Demográfico*, No. 40, July 1987.

†However, INAMPS is reported in the DHS as the source of payment for only 49 percent of all deliveries. A further 21 percent of births were reportedly delivered "free." If these births in fact occurred within the INAMPS system without the women in question realizing that they did, the total INAMPS coverage would indeed be about 70 percent of the country's population.

‡If this percentage (0.00356) were applied to all women aged 15–44 in Brazil, the number of induced abortions reported in 1985 would be 112,700. Assuming that women in Brazil (where abortion is illegal) are as likely as those in the United States (where it is legal) to report to a survey interviewer that they had had an induced abortion, underreporting would be about 50 percent, so the reported number would have to be doubled—to 225,400 induced abortions—resulting in a ratio of 169 abortions per 1,000 live births.

§Only 0.1 percent of all women in the DHS reported having been hospitalized for the treatment of complications resulting from an induced abortion. A further 0.8 percent said they had been hospitalized for complications from a spontaneous abortion. These percentages seem unlikely, given other international estimates of the incidence of hospitalization for the treatment of spontaneous abortion complications. For this reason, we reject these reports and, instead, assume that the number of hospitalizations for the treatment of spontaneous abortions is equivalent to 2.48 percent of all live births.

United States were reported in the 1988 national fertility survey carried out by personal interviews.[16] If we assume, as Table 1 shows, that 75 percent of hospitalizations were reported by respondents in the Brazilian survey, then an estimated 379,000 women were hospitalized for the treatment of abortion complications in 1985; if we assume 50 percent, then 570,000 women were hospitalized.

There were an estimated four million births in Brazil in 1985, which means that about 99,374 women (4,007,000 x 0.0248) could have had spontaneous abortions requiring hospitalization. If this number is subtracted from the number of hospitalized abortion patients, and we then assume the moderate ratio of four safe abortions to each hospitalized case, the resulting estimates of the total number of induced abortions performed in Brazil would be 928,130, 1,398,130 or 2,353,130, depending on whether there is complete reporting, 25 percent underreporting or 50 percent underreporting. These estimates in turn lead to ratios of 232, 349 or 587 abortions per 1,000 live births in Brazil in 1985. The high-estimate ratios (assuming six safe abortions for every one resulting in complications) would range from 324 to 822 abortions per 1,000 live births in 1985. Although the ranges of the 1980 and 1985 estimates overlap slightly, the 1985 range is considerably higher. Because the levels of hospitalization due to abortion reported in 1985 were so low, the estimates are likely to suffer from large sampling errors. Therefore, it would be premature to conclude from this evidence that there was an increase in induced abortion in Brazil between 1980 and 1985. However, both sets of estimates point strongly to a fairly high level of abortion in Brazil.

Hospital Admissions in Colombia

In Colombia, the Ministry of Health collects statistics on hospital admissions by type of diagnosis. These data show that in 1985, 62,096 women were admitted to hospitals for the treatment of abortion complications.[17] Since hospital discharge data reported to the Ministry of Health are estimated to represent 87 percent of all hospitalizations,[18] there were probably 71,375 women admitted for abortion complications, of which 21,204 (855,000 live births x 0.0248) are likely to have been for spontaneous abortions. This leaves an estimated 50,171 patients who were treated for induced abortions. Because abortion clinics in Colombia are widely available, we believe a realistic assumption would be that four or six abortions without complications are performed for every one that results in the need for treatment, totaling 250,855 or 351,171 induced abortions. This would lead to abortion ratios of 293 or 411 abortions per 1,000 live births in Colombia in 1985.

Discussion

None of the uncertainties associated with the data that we have used to make these estimates of induced abortion are new. Abortion researchers have long recognized the problems inherent in both hospital admission statistics and data derived from national surveys of women. However, information about the prevalence of abortion in Latin America is likely to remain incomplete, and sometimes misleading, as long as abortion remains in a socially "gray" area of coexisting attitudes of tolerance and secrecy about the procedure.

On the books, abortion is illegal and punishable by law, but, prosecutions are few. In some large cities in Latin America where a network of abortion clinics known to most members of the medical profession has developed, the police may turn a blind eye to their operation, just as they do in other areas to the thousands of women treated in municipal hospitals for septic or incomplete abortions. Nevertheless, the fear of prosecution inhibits many doctors and hospitals from performing abortions, and few doctors or hospital administrators are prepared to risk publishing their service statistics accurately.

On the other hand, most health professionals in the region are aware of the health problems for women and of the strain on scarce health resources (hospital beds, antibiotics, blood supplies, nursing and medical care) imposed by the large numbers of women prepared to subject themselves to the dangers of unsafe induced abortions rather than carry an unplanned pregnancy to term. All the investigator can do in such a situation is take into account, and correct for, the deficiencies of the data by making assumptions about whatever aspects are not known or not clear. But because the resulting estimates depend on such assumptions, they will necessarily have broad margins of error and must be accepted with considerable reservation.

Despite these limitations, the estimates that we have attempted here have some merit. Since the true ratio of hospitalized abortions to all abortions, and therefore of abortions to live births, is difficult to estimate and varies with the conditions existing in each country, we have provided a wide range of estimates based on three differing assumptions about what part of the hidden iceberg is represented by women experiencing complications and receiving treatment in hospitals. Overall, these estimates support the belief that conditions that have long been suspected or claimed in Latin America do exist—that even though abortion is illegal throughout most of the region, it is widely practiced. By the 1980s, for every 10 women giving birth, the number terminating their pregnancies by induced abortion equaled 3–4 in both Colombia and Brazil (using a moderate-to-high ratio between all abortions and those hospitalized for the treatment of complications) and almost two in Peru (using our preferred low ratio in this country).

In the two countries with data available for more than one year, the reliability of the findings as a basis for charting trends in induced abortion differs somewhat. In Peru, because the estimates are based on the same type of data source and because measurement errors are relatively small, we are confident that the increase indicated by the findings did in fact occur. Moreover, there is other evidence to support this conclusion. Contraceptive prevalence is still low in Peru, the government program to distribute contraceptive services is highly uneven, and there is a considerable reliance on methods that have high failure rates.[19] However, fertility has declined substantially in the past 20 years.[20] In their report of an experimental study carried out as a part of the 1986 Peruvian Demographic and Health Survey, the investigators found it "quite possible that abortions account for a substantial part of the estimated decline" in fertility in Peru between 1980 and 1986, since "estimates of the proximate determinants . . . indicate almost no change in the proportions of women married, in the prevalence and efficacy of contraceptive use and in the extent of lactational amenorrhea."[21]

The finding of a possible increase in abortion suggested by the trend data for Brazil is more questionable. The source of data used in each year is different: The 1980 data come from national health statistics, while the 1986 source is a sample survey of women aged 15–44. The survey estimate is likely to be subject to large sample error, which results in a range of estimated abortion ratios for 1986 that overlaps the estimates for 1980. It is difficult, therefore, to conclude that an increase occurred, especially since the estimates show that levels of induced abortion were already high by 1980.

Analysis of the characteristics of Brazilian women who report that they have had an abortion (not shown here) confirms much previous research from Latin America: Abortion is most widely practiced among urban women, women in their late 20s or early 30s, married women and those with three or more children.[22] Since urban women now make up a majority of the female population in most Latin American countries and since clandestine (though often tacitly acknowledged) abortion clinics are most likely to be found in cities, large numbers of Brazilian women may now be able to obtain safe induced abortions performed by trained doctors using aseptic techniques. This development is one of the main reasons why we opted to use a one-to-five or one-to-seven ratio in describing the numerical relationship between patients hospitalized for treatment of complications and all abortions in Brazil.

However, contraceptive prevalence is high in Brazil, especially in urban areas, and most women practicing a reversible method use the pill,[23] which, in theory, has low failure rates. Yet women may be using this method incorrectly and very few other reversible methods are available in Brazil. In addition, social change in Brazil is occurring at an accelerated pace, bringing about rapid changes in sexual and reproductive behavior (more consensual unions, more liberal attitudes toward premarital and extramarital relationships) and in the roles of women, especially their increased participation in the labor force.[24] All these changes are likely to contribute to changes in the definition of unplanned pregnancy.

Finally, there is speculation that in countries where fertility regulation and birthspacing become attainable through the use of contraceptives, unplanned pregnancies occurring as a result of contraceptive failure become less acceptable and are more, rather than less, likely to be terminated by abortion. This seems to be the case in the United States, where family planning services are generally available and most modern methods are offered, yet both contraceptive prevalence and abortion rates are high.

Whatever the background conditions, our estimates suggest that a high proportion of women in Brazil, Colombia and Peru are seeking induced abortions; and existing statistics show that many thousands of women are suffering adverse health effects from those procedures, the treatment of which is bound to absorb scarce medical resources. Furthermore, women who suffer complications from induced abortion can be exposed to more serious problems, such as infertility; some may die. Yet the true level of induced abortion is unknown, and neither of these adverse outcomes can be measured with any accuracy. Because of the grave public health, economic and personal consequences of illegal abortion, researchers must practice statistical inventiveness in attempting to measure the true prevalence of this practice worldwide.

References

1. G. López-Escobar, G. Riaño-Gamboa and N. Lenis-Nicholls, *Aborto*, Corporación Centro Regional de Población, Bogotá, 1978; International Fertility Research Program, *Abortion in Latin America*, Research Triangle Park, N.C., 1980; P. I. Gomez and J. C. Pulido, "Mortalidad Materna en el Hospital Materno-Infantil, 1985–1986," unpublished mimeo, Facultad de Medicina, Universidad Nacional de Colombia, Bogotá, Feb. 1988; P. E. Bailey, et al., "Estudio Hospitalario del Aborto Ilegal en Bolivia," *Bulletin of the Pan American Health Organization*, **104**:144, 1988; E. Becerra, "Mortalidad Materna en el Instituto Materno-Infantil de Bogotá, Años: 1981–1982," *Revista Colombiana de Obstetricia y Ginecología*, **71**:328, 1986; L. A. Gómez et al., "El Aborto Inducido Ilegalmente en el Hospital de la Mujer, Berta Calderón, Managua: Costos y Consecuencias," unpublished mimeo, Managua, 1985; and K. D. Laguardia, "A 10–Year Review of Maternal Mortality in a Municipal Hospital in Rio de Janeiro: A Cause for Concern," *Obstetrics & Gynecology*, **75**:28, 1990.

2. E. F. Jones and J. D. Forrest, "Contraceptive Failure in the United States: Revised Estimates from the National Survey of Family Growth," *Family Planning Perspectives*, **21**:103, 1989, Table 1; and E. F. Jones and J. D. Forrest, "Underreporting of Abortion in Surveys of U.S. Women: 1976 to 1983," paper presented at the annual meeting of the American Public Health Association, New York, Oct. 1–4, 1990.

3. A. Narod and R. Khazen, "Spontaneous Abortions in Ontario, 1979–1984," *Canadian Journal of Public Health*, **80**:209, 1989; and L. Lawrence, "Detailed Diagnoses and Procedures for Patients Discharged from Short-Stay Hospitals, United States 1984," *Vital and Health Statistics*, Series 13, No. 86, 1986.

4. Ministerio de Salud, Dirección General de Salud Materno-Infantil y Población, *El Aborto en los Establecimientos de Salud de Perú*, Lima, 1980; and H. Pereira de Melo, "Sequelas do Aborto," unpublished thesis, Rio de Janeiro, May 1982.

5. S. Harlap, P. H. Shiono and S. Ramcharan, "A Life Table of Spontaneous Abortions and the Effects of Age, Parity and Other Variables, in E. B. Hook and I. Porter, eds., *Human Embryonic and Fetal Death*, Academic Press, New York, 1980, Table 1, pp. 148 & 157.

6. W. F. Taylor, "On the Methodology of Measuring the Probability of Fetal Death in a Prospective Study," *Human Biology*, **36**:86, 1964; F. E. French and J. M. Bierman, "Probabilities of Fetal Mortality," *Public Health Reports*, **77**:835, 1962; S. Shapiro, H. S. Levine and M. Abramowicz, "Factors Associated with Early and Late Fetal Loss," in *Advances in Planned Parenthood*, Excerpta Medica, New York, **6**:45, 1971; and L. S. Bakketeig, D. G. Seigel and P. M. Sternthal, "A Fetal Infant Life Table Based on Single Births in Norway, 1967–1973," *American Journal of Epidemiology*, **107**:216, 1978.

7. J. A. Pinotti, "Medical Perspective on the Causes and Consequences of Unwanted Pregnancy," paper presented at the Christopher Tietze Meeting on Unplanned Pregnancy, Rio de Janeiro, October 27–31, 1988; and J. A. Pinotti and A. Faúndes, "Unwanted Pregnancy: Challenges for Health Policy," *International Journal of Gynecology and Obstetrics*, Supplement 3, 1989, p. 97.

8. T. Frejka, The Population Council, Mexico City, personal communication, May 3, 1990.

9. L. S. Liskin, "Complications of Abortion in Developing Countries," *Population Reports*, Series F, No. 7, 1980, p. 144–149; T. Frejka and L. C. Atkin,"The Role of Induced Abortion in the Fertility Transition of Latin America," paper presented at the Seminar on the Fertility Transition in Latin America, International Union for the Scientific Study of Population, Buenos Aires, Apr. 3–6, 1990; R. Armijo and T. Monreal, "The Problem of Induced Abortion in Chile," *Milbank Memorial Fund Quarterly*, **43**:263, 1965; and T. Monreal, "Determinant Factors Affecting Illegal Abortion Trends in Chile," in H. R. Holtrop et al., eds., *New Developments in Fertility Regulation*, The Pathfinder Fund, Chestnut Hill, Mass., 1976, pp. 123–132.

10. E. F. Jones and J. D. Forrest, 1990, op. cit. (see reference 2).

11. Ministerio de Salud, 1980, op. cit. (see reference 4).

12. D. Gonzales del Carpio et al., Análisis del Sector Salud Project, *Perfil de Salud de la Población Peruana*, Informe Técnico, No. 1, Lima, May 1986.

13. Ministerio de Salud, 1980, op. cit. (see reference 4).

14. H. Pereira de Melo, 1982, op. cit. (see reference 4).

15. *Pesquisa Nacional Sobre Saúde Materno-Infantil e Planejamento Familiar, Brasil—1986*, Sociedade Civil Bem-Estar Familiar no Brasil and Instituto para Desenvolvimento de Recursos, Rio de Janeiro, Dec. 1987.

16. E. F. Jones and J. F. Forrest, 1990, op. cit. (see reference 2).

17. Unpublished table of data from the Colombian Ministry of Health: "Diagnósticos de hospitalización según 183 causas de la lista nacional, por sexo y grupos de edad para el total nacional: Colombia 1985."

18. E. Prada, Bogotá, Colombia, personal communication, Apr. 6, 1988.

19. Instituto Nacional de Estadistica, *Encuesta Demográfica y de Salud Familiar, 1986: Informe General*, Lima, 1988, Table 5.6, p. 62.

20. Ibid., Table 3.3, p. 32.

21. N. Goldman, L. Moreno and C. F. Westoff, *Peru Experimental Study: An Evaluation of Fertility and Child Health Information*, Office of Population Research, Princeton University, Princeton, N.J., and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Columbia, Md., Oct. 1989.

22. Special tabulations of the data tape of the 1986 DHS.

23. *Pesquisa Nacional Sobre Saúde Materno-Infantil e Planejamento Familiar*, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 15); and S. H. Costa et al., "Family Planning Among Low-Income Women in Rio de Janeiro: 1984–1985," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **16**:16, 1990.

24. M. H. Henriques et al., *Adolescentes de Hoje, Pais do Amanhã: Brasil*, Alan Guttmacher Institute, New York, 1989.

Resumen

Si bien el aborto es ilegal en todos los países de América Latina excepto Cuba, el aborto inducido se practica muchísimo en toda la región. Los planificadores de la salud necesitan estima-

(Continued on page 24)

Effect of Family Planning Program Components On Contraceptive Acceptance in Four Indian States

In India, the family planning program is implemented largely by state governments, and a state's organizational efficiency and socioeconomic milieu determine to a large extent the structure and effectiveness of any family planning input.

By K. Srinivasan, P. C. Saxena, T. K. Roy and R. K. Verma

Summary

Data collected during the mid-1980s from 2,175 primary health centers (PHCs) in rural areas of four Indian states reveal that the presence and effects of various components of the family planning program differ widely by state. In Maharashtra, for example, PHCs had an average of 6.5 physicians per 100,000 population, while in Tamil Nadu, there were fewer than three doctors per 100,000; Maharashtra had 34 paramedics per 100,000 population, while in West Bengal, Tamil Nadu and Karnataka, there were only 24–28 paramedics per 100,000. However, within states, most of these measures vary little by the socioeconomic conditions of the districts in which the PHCs are located. Acceptance levels of sterilization and of the IUD are often no higher in well-staffed and well-equipped PHCs than in those that are poorly staffed and equipped. Furthermore, a number of PHCs show little coordination in the types of services available (such as having an operating theater but no trained doctor capable of using it). The ability of the attributes studied to explain the variance in rates of sterilization and IUD acceptance in these four states came to no more than about 50 percent, and often a good deal less, indicating that other factors (probably political support and managerial efficiency) play a greater role in program success.

Background

India launched an official family planning program in 1952 as part of its First Five-Year Plan, and over the past 38 years, the program has been expanded considerably through the extension of a network of maternal and child health services and medical facilities in rural and urban areas. Almost every village and urban area of the country has now been provided with family planning education, supplies and services through primary health centers (PHCs) and urban welfare centers.

As of March 1988, a sum of Rs.50 billion (about U.S. $3 billion) had been expended since the program's inception. Nevertheless, despite the intensity of the national efforts, the program's achievements have been disappointing. The couple protection rate* (CPR) had increased to only 40 percent of eligible couples as of March 1988, and fertility had declined less than expected in every Five-Year Plan. Since 1977, the crude birthrate has stagnated at around 33 births per 1,000 population per year. Many countries in Asia that launched family planning programs much later than India—such as Korea, Indonesia and Thailand—have achieved higher CPRs and larger fertility declines. Efforts to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Indian family planning program are urgently needed.

One problem is that enormous interstate and interdistrict variations exist in the CPR and in fertility; for example, in 1988, there were areas in almost every state with a CPR as high as 60 percent—a level targeted for the country as a whole by the turn of the century—and at the same time districts with a CPR of less than 15 percent.[1] Similarly, there were districts with a total fertility rate (TFR) of close to 2.5 lifetime births per woman and districts with a TFR of more than five births per woman.

The basic administrative units for delivering family planning services in rural areas are the PHCs. Following a nationally set pattern, personnel and facilities are supposed to be deployed uniformly at the PHC level within each state, although there is some variation between states.† Why, then, should there be such a high degree of variation in family planning acceptance among the districts and PHCs within a state?

First, despite the government's intentions, the provision of facilities and personnel are not actually uniform in all PHCs.[2] Medical and paramedical positions in a PHC may often be vacant for long periods of time, and the supply of essential materials may be inadequate. However, it is not clear if variations in the availability of personnel and materials are wholly responsible for differentials in program performance at the PHC level. Little is known about the relationship between program input and performance; the findings of research on the topic could help decision-makers deploy additional resources or manage existing resources better to achieve an optimal acceptance rate.

Second, variation in program performance at the PHC level may also be affected by the overall socioeconomic development of the region. In more developed areas, people may demand health and family welfare services of their own volition. If the availability of any given component is drastically influenced by the population's social, economic and cultural

---

K. Srinivasan is director, P. C. Saxena and T. K. Roy are professors and R. K. Verma is reader at the International Institute for Population Sciences, Bombay, India. This article is based on a study financed by the United States Agency for International Development. The authors are grateful to Warren Robinson for his help and cooperation at different stages of the project. Consultancy services provided by John Stover are gratefully acknowledged; thanks are also due to Damodar Sahu, technical assistant in the Institute, for computer programming and assistance.

*The percentage of fertile couples using some method of family planning.

†PHCs provide curative, preventive and promotive health services to people in rural areas of India. They were originally intended to serve populations of 80,000–100,000; however, since 1978, the Indian government has moved to strengthen the rural health infrastructure by establishing one PHC for every 30,000 population (or one per 20,000 in hilly, tribal or backward areas). However, progress in achieving this goal has been uneven. Maharashtra has been fairly successful in establishing PHCs at a rate of one per 30,000, but Tamil Nadu and West Bengal persist in having PHCs cover populations of nearly 100,000, while the situation in Karnataka is somewhere between these.

conditions, program strategy may require reorganization.

Family planning program components are also believed to contribute substantially to increased contraceptive practice and therefore to reduced fertility. One study of the influence of family planning program effort on CPRs and fertility in 93 developing countries between 1965 and 1980 concluded that program effort had an independent and significant impact on fertility.[3] Another investigator presented a demographic approach for estimating the indigenous effect and the net program effect, country-wide, for four developing countries—Costa Rica, Mauritius, South Korea and Taiwan.[4] Thus, identifying all program components that affect family planning performance may provide useful guidelines for improving program strategies in India.

Some evaluations of the efficacy of the Indian family planning program have already been conducted. B. D. Mishra and colleagues observed that the functioning of the Indian family planning program was greatly influenced not only by the nature of the bureaucracy of the central and state health ministries but also by the political climate and by the socioeconomic and cultural conditions of the state.[5] After an analysis of program activities in the Indian states of Goa, Maharashtra and Tamil Nadu, T. V. Antony and associates concluded that the three major determinants of success in family planning performance were political support, program efficiency and socioeconomic environment; for success, at least one of these factors needed be highly conducive to and supportive of family planning activities.[6]

In recent years, there has been much discussion in the family planning field about strategic management and quality of care, with strategic management thought to consist of environment, strategy and process, and quality of care thought to be reflected in the method mix and in follow-up care.[7] Rushikash Maru has commented that in India, a highly bureaucratic program structure can achieve one-time performance (e.g., meeting sterilization targets), but its success in providing methods that require follow-up care is limited.[8] In fact, the most pertinent question is how to overcome this bureaucratic weakness so the program can utilize a wider range of methods. Anrudh K. Jain has observed that monitoring continuation rates alone is inadequate in identifying areas of strength and weakness, and that guided management toward program improvement is required instead.[9]

We undertook a large-scale study to investigate the relationship between input into the Indian family planning program in rural areas and the contraceptive acceptance rate at the PHC level. Its goals were to ascertain the personnel, training, and medical and service-related resources actually deployed at the PHC level, to study interrelationships between program components and the socioeconomic conditions of the population in which they are deployed, and to measure the impact of family planning program input on contraceptive acceptance.

Methodology

The study was conducted in the states of Karnataka, Maharashtra, Tamil Nadu and West Bengal; the CPR varied substantially in these states, from 30 percent in West Bengal to 55 percent in Maharashtra. Since PHCs are expected to maintain records on program input and performance, we compiled the necessary data through a structured questionnaire administered at each PHC. Various sections of the questionnaire covered background characteristics of the PHC, including the size of the population served, the number of subcenters and their distances from the PHC, the number of villages served and the length of time the center had been functioning; family planning program resources, including medical and paramedical personnel (both in position and sanctioned), their training, and the availability of medical and service-related facilities; acceptance rates of four official methods of family planning (sterilization, the IUD, the condom and the pill); and the functions and activities of the PHCs, including budget, incentives, maternal and child health services, and input from medical officers for the improvement of the program.

The data for this study, collected in 1987, concerned the medical and service-related facilities available at the PHC level. Data on personnel, however, covered all physicians in a PHC, including health department physicians posted either in the PHC or in subunits within the PHC's jurisdiction (such as primary health units in Karnataka and subsidiary health centers in West Bengal). Sanctioned posts for paramedics were at the subcenter level (i.e., grass-roots units providing preventive and promotive health services to populations of 5,000–10,000); the staffs of such subcenters have been included as PHC staff. Urban facilities and personnel have not been included, as the study was confined to rural areas of the states.

Data on program input for personnel, for medical and service facilities, for training, and for information, education and communication activities were collected from all PHCs in a district for the fiscal year 1986–1987. Data on family planning performance of the PHCs were obtained for fiscal years 1984–1985, 1985–1986 and 1986–1987. The information was compiled by statistical assistants in each district, who had been given training on the definitions of various terms used and on data to be compiled. The training of all statistical assistants within a state was carried out at state headquarters.

Information on socioeconomic and demographic characteristics of the rural population for each district and on the rural population covered by each PHC was compiled from 1981 census publications. Table 1 (page 16) provides the characteristics of the four states, the number of PHCs in each state and the proportion from which information was received. For example, of 2,510 PHCs in the four states, data were compiled from 87 percent, with this proportion ranging from 84 percent in Maharashtra to 95 percent in Tamil Nadu.

On the basis of the information collected from these sources, the following variables were used in the analysis of interrelationships:

- *Family planning program performance measures*—average number of sterilizations per 1,000 population per year (from April 1, 1984, to March 31, 1987) in a PHC area; and average number of IUD insertions per 1,000 population per year (from April 1, 1984, to March 31, 1987) in a PHC area.
- *Family planning program input measures*—**Personnel:** number of doctors per 100,000 population in a PHC area; whether the PHC has at least one medical officer trained in laparoscopy or tubectomy (no=0; yes=1); number of female paramedics per 100,000 population in the PHC area;* and number of dais (trained traditional birth attendants) per 1,000 population in the PHC area. **Medical, service and other facilities:** whether the PHC has an operating theater (no=0; yes=1); whether the PHC has adequate medical facilities

---

*Only female paramedics such as auxiliary nurse-midwives and public health nurses have been included in the present analysis, because the role of these female workers has become more crucial in recent years in the promotion of program performance. In addition, in Tamil Nadu (and, to some extent, in Maharashtra), exact information on the number of male paramedics at the subcenter level was not uniformly provided because of administrative difficulties. Therefore, we decided to exclude information on male paramedics from this analysis.

Table 1. Basic demographic and family planning program characteristics, four selected Indian states

Characteristic	State			
	Karnataka	Maharashtra	Tamil Nadu	West Bengal
1981 population (in 000,000s)	37.1	62.8	48.4	54.6
% of population in rural areas, 1981	71.1	65.0	67.0	73.5
% literate among women ages ≥15, 1981	28	35	35	33
Per-capita net domestic product at 1984 prices (in rupees)	2,136	3,430	2,353	2,813
Total fertility rate, 1984	3.8	3.8	3.3	3.9
Life expectancy at birth—both sexes, 1984	62	61	58	56
Couple protection rate, Mar. 1987	39.7.	54.9	46.3	29.5
No. of public health centers (PHCs)	465	1,378	382	285
% of PHCs for which information was received	88.2	84.2	94.5	86.3

Sources: 1981 population, percentage of the population living in rural areas, percentage literate among women age 15 and older, per-capita net domestic product and couple protection rate—Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, *Family Welfare Programme in India Year Book 1986–87*, Government of India, New Delhi, 1988, Tables A.2.2, C.8, C.2.1 and E.2; total fertility rate—*Sample Registration System, 1984*, statement 25, p. 43, Vital Statistical Division, Ministry of Home Affairs, New Delhi, 1986; and life expectancy—S. Parsuraman, computed from "SRS Age-Specific Death Rate for 1984," mimeo, International Institute for Population Sciences, Bombay, 1987.

(no=0; yes=1);* whether the PHC has adequate service-related facilities (no=0; yes=1);† whether at least one doctor is staying in the staff quarters or in the PHC area (no=0; yes=1); and whether the PHC has at least one vehicle in working condition (no=0; yes=1). **Incentives:** whether the PHC offers incentives other than those provided through the official government program (no=0; yes=1).‡

- *Socioeconomic measures*—percentage of literate women and percentage of never-married women aged 15–19 in rural areas of the district; percentage of the district's population that is rural; percentage of the district's rural male population engaged in nonagricultural work; and percentage of scheduled castes,§ percentage of scheduled tribes, and percentage of Muslims in the district's rural population.

Data on the input variables were compiled for each PHC in the four states. Information on the number of family planning acceptors was compiled from PHC service statistics, and the acceptance rate was computed using information on the rural population of the PHC area, which was drawn from the census records. The socioeconomic variables (dating from 1981) for each PHC are district-level figures, because no such data were available for the PHC populations.

The family planning performance of PHCs was assessed only in terms of sterilization and the IUD for three reasons. First, particularly in rural areas, sterilization continues to be the most popular contraceptive method, used by the majority of the population. Second, the IUD (especially the Copper-T) has been systematically promoted by the program since 1981. Third, the statistics on other methods of family planning, such as condoms and the pill, are of poor quality.

This analysis may appear to be limited by the fact that in certain family planning program measures—the number of doctors, paramedics and dais—and in the performance indictors, the numerators pertain to 1986–1987, while the denominators refer to the estimated population of the PHC area based on 1981 census figures (the only reliable source of information on the size of the population at the village or PHC level). However, it is useful to relate the input variables to 1981 census data, since resources have been deployed to the PHCs and all official computations of rates and targets have been made on the basis of census data. We also believe that the rural population of the districts in a given state had not experienced any abrupt change in socioeconomic and demographic characteristics over the five years between the 1981 census and the 1986 measures of program input. Therefore, we assume that the differential pattern of growth rates of the rural population has remained unchanged in the selected four states during the period in question.

Relating the average number of sterilizations and IUD insertions to the number of eligible couples in the PHC area might have provided more precise measures of family planning performance, but in the absence of such information, the estimate of the total population of the area based on the 1981 census was the only alternative. The use of 1981 census figures affects the family planning performance rate in absolute terms, leading to an overestimate of the performance rates, but the indexes nonetheless provide the basis for comparing differential performance across PHCs and analyzing program factors behind it.

Logically, one could question how well family planning acceptance rates based on averages for 1984–1987 can be related to program input for 1986–1987, when input should ideally relate to 1984 or 1985. However, preliminary analyses revealed that annual acceptance rates of sterilization and rates of IUD insertion were remarkably stable from 1984 on, and average annual rates between 1984 and 1987 can be taken to represent acceptance for 1986–1987. In addition, precise PHC-level data on various program inputs were not available for any time prior to 1986–1987. Further, family planning program services have been built up over a period of two decades, and one can assume that PHC-level input measured in 1986–1987 was a close approximation of the situation in 1985–1986. Finally, the present study is a comparative analysis of the situation of the various PHCs in different states, not an attempt to specify the actual acceptance rate at some particular time.

Results

- *Program input and socioeconomic conditions.* Table 2 depicts levels of program input and performance for each of the four states, classified according to the PHC dis-

---

*We compiled information on seven aspects of the medical facilities deployed in a PHC: a ward; a dispensary; a laboratory; a labor room; abortion services; thermocol boxes (which allow health workers to transport vaccine while keeping it at the specified temperature); and a sterilizer. A PHC was considered to have adequate medical facilities if it had any six of these seven resources, and inadequate facilities if had any less than six.

†The measure of service-related facilities consisted of five items: waiting space; a doctor's room; a toilet; a cupboard; and electricity. Facilities were considered adequate if any four of these were present, and inadequate if less than four were available.

‡While there is a standard incentive payment that is to be given to acceptors of various methods (e.g., Rs. 150—about U.S. $9—to a man who becomes sterilized, and Rs. 195—about U.S. $12—to a woman who becomes sterilized), PHCs are permitted to pool incentives (in cash or kind) from various other sources, such as other government organizations, voluntary organizations and other local bodies.

§In India's hierarchical caste system, some castes are considered extremely backward and are called "untouchables" by the rest of society. After independence in 1947, to improve these groups' socioeconomic conditions, the government of India identified many of these castes in a "schedule" and gave special preferences to them in admission to schools, in employment and in politics. These castes are called "scheduled castes." Similar groups living in hilly or interior areas that have been singled out for such privileges are termed "scheduled tribes."

Table 2. Mean value of program input and performance, by component, according to state and level of socioeconomic development among PHCs

Program input and performance components	State and socioeconomic level															
	Karnataka				Maharashtra				Tamil Nadu				West Bengal			
	All	High	Med.	Low	All	High	Med.	Low	All	High	Med.	Low	All	High	Med.	Low
Program Input																
No. of MDs per 100,000 in PHC area	3.09	3.06	3.09	3.10	6.52	7.02	6.40	5.73	2.78	2.91	3.06	2.40	3.78	4.13	3.72	3.72
No. of paramedics per 100,000 in PHC area	28.2	34.2	28.3	25.1	33.7	36.2	31.2	32.5	25.3	28.6	23.2	25.8	23.6	24.1	23.6	23.1
PHC has at least one MD trained in laparoscopy or tubectomy	0.64	0.60	0.66	0.64	0.75	0.72	0.77	0.78	0.38	0.36	0.31	0.47	0.74	0.69	0.76	0.74
No. of trained dais per 100,000 in PHC area	0.79	0.89	0.84	0.70	0.91	0.98	0.84	0.90	0.90	0.83	0.89	0.94	0.80	0.85	0.72	0.89
At least one MD stays in staff quarters or PHC area	0.89	0.91	0.87	0.89	0.78	0.75	0.80	0.79	0.96	0.96	0.97	0.95	0.95	0.97	0.96	0.92
PHC has operating theater	0.65	0.72	0.66	0.60	0.59	0.56	0.56	0.69	0.85	0.78	0.88	0.84	0.59	0.46	0.56	0.71
PHC has at least one working vehicle	0.88	0.87	0.85	0.92	0.88	0.87	0.87	0.92	0.98	0.99	0.97	0.99	0.56	0.67	0.53	0.54
PHC has adequate medical facilities	0.69	0.76	0.71	0.65	0.21	0.23	0.21	0.20	0.54	0.49	0.56	0.56	0.41	0.49	0.37	0.44
PHC has adequate service facilities	0.77	0.80	0.79	0.73	0.61	0.63	0.57	0.63	0.92	0.95	0.91	0.92	0.33	0.26	0.30	0.42
PHC offers additional incentives	0.57	0.65	0.54	0.57	0.51	0.52	0.51	0.50	0.24	0.18	0.18	0.36	0.06	0.08	0.06	0.04
Program Performance																
Avg. annual no. of sterilizations per 1,000 population in PHC	9.20	8.80	9.33	9.28	9.92	10.46	9.92	8.86	6.02	6.41	5.13	6.83	5.34	5.70	5.27	5.26
Avg. annual no. of IUD insertions per 1,000 population in PHC	4.65	5.01	4.68	4.43	10.05	9.55	9.87	11.31	2.53	3.56	2.44	2.05	1.15	1.18	1.10	1.23

trict's level of socioeconomic development.* Maharashtra, the only state with a PHC for every 30,000 population, leads in the provision of medical and paramedical personnel to its rural population. There were 6.5 physicians per 100,000 population, on average—close to the standard for a PHC of providing two medical officers per 30,000 population. Maharashtra also has an average of 34 paramedics per 100,000 population, close to the expectation that the average PHC of 30,000 people will have about 10 paramedics.† In addition, 74 percent of its PHCs were found to have the services of a medical officer trained in laparoscopy or tubectomy.

In the other three states, the number of workers available to rural residents was well below the prescribed standard. In Tamil Nadu and West Bengal, where each administrative unit still covers about 100,000 people, the ratios of both doctors and paramedics to population are inadequate. The scarcity of doctors was most apparent in Tamil Nadu, where there were fewer than three doctors per 100,000 population, and where only 38 percent of PHCs had the services of a doctor trained in laparoscopy or tubectomy. West Bengal was most lacking in paramedical personnel (with 24 per 100,000 population), although the availability of such workers was also below the norm in Tamil Nadu (25 per 100,000) and Karnataka (28 per 100,000).

In Maharashtra, more than 94 percent of PHCs reported having at least 75 percent of the expected number of paramedics available (not shown); this proportion was 80 percent in West Bengal, with the other two states falling between these two levels. In all four states, there was a significant positive correlation between the number of doctors and the number of paramedics per 100,000 population: the higher the number of doctors in a PHC, the greater the chance that there was a relatively large number of paramedics, while a smaller number of doctors indicated a lower likelihood of a large number of paramedics. This may appear to be the logical result of the deployment of personnel, but the lack of both doctors and paramedics in some PHCs represents a major problem; except in Maharashtra, the proportion of such PHCs is likely to have been sizable. All states have made satisfactory progress in meeting the national standard of one dai per 1,000 population in rural areas, although none of them has really achieved the target.

Table 2 also shows that 95 percent or more of PHCs in Tamil Nadu and West Bengal provided housing for at least one

---

*Using available data for five socioeconomic indicators (the percentage of women who are literate, the proportion of 15–19-year-olds who are single, the percentage of the population living in rural areas, the percentage of males engaged in nonagricultural work, and the percentage of Muslims in the 1981 census), we calculated a composite score for each district of a state by pooling the ranks given to the above five variables. The distribution of the composite score was then partitioned equally into three parts: Districts with a composite score falling above the 67 percent cut-off were classified as high socioeconomic status, those with a composite score between 33 percent and 67 percent were classified as medium, and those with a score below 33 percent were classified as low.

†The standard number of paramedical personnel per PHC is worked out on the basis of the size of the population to be served. A PHC with 30,000 people is supposed to have six auxiliary nurse-midwives, and a supervisor for every four nurse-midwives. In addition, each PHC has one other female paramedic and a public health nurse, making the total about 10 female paramedics per PHC.

Table 3. Proportion of PHCs having particular combinations of program components, and average number of sterilizations and average number of IUD insertions in PHCs with these combinations, by state

Combinations	State and measure											
	Karnataka			Maharashtra			Tamil Nadu			West Bengal		
	% of PHCs	Avg. no. of sterilizations	Avg. no. of IUD insertions	% of PHCs	Avg. no. of sterilizations	Avg. no. of IUD insertions	% of PHCs	Avg. no. of sterilizations	Avg. no. of IUD insertions	% of PHCs	Avg. no. of sterilizations	Avg. no. of IUD insertions
At least one trained MD, at least one MD staying in PHC area, adequate paramedics, an operating theater, and a working vehicle	37	9.35	4.65	40	12.20	12.24	29	6.10	2.42	19	5.42	1.07
At least one trained MD, adequate paramedics, an operating theater, and a working vehicle	37	9.33	4.62	45	11.76	11.72	30	6.09	2.41	20	5.51	1.05
At least one trained MD, an operating theater, and a working vehicle	47	9.31	4.58	48	11.69	11.73	32	6.19	2.34	26	5.71	1.12
At least one trained MD and a working vehicle	59	9.33	4.66	67	10.58	10.77	37	6.01	2.33	41	5.68	1.17
At least one trained MD and an operating theater	50	9.40	4.60	52	11.82	11.93	33	6.12	2.32	47	5.50	1.18
At least one trained MD, but no operating theater	14	na	na	23	na	na	5	na	na	27	na	na
No trained MD, but an operating theater	16	na	na	10	na	na	52	na	na	11	na	na

doctor. In Maharashtra, on the other hand, a doctor was living in only 78 percent of PHCs. The number of PHCs in Maharashtra has swelled in recent years because many of its subcenters were converted into PHCs by the addition of doctors and paramedics, but the state appears to have had problems coping with the need to provide residential facilities.

Facilities such as an operating theater and a working vehicle were available in the greatest proportion of PHCs (85 percent and 98 percent, respectively) in Tamil Nadu. In West Bengal and Maharashtra, an operating theater was available in 59 percent of PHCs, while the proportion was slightly higher in Karnataka (65 percent). One roadworthy vehicle was available in at least 88 percent of PHCs in each of the states but West Bengal.

The Tamil Nadu program seems to have emphasized the provision of physical facilities, although in terms of personnel it has lagged considerably. The situation in Maharashtra, on the other hand, is the opposite, with most PHCs having adequate personnel but lagging behind even Karnataka in physical facilities. The absence of adequate medical facilities was particularly evident: A mere 21 percent of PHCs in Maharashtra reported having such facilities. This finding leaves one wondering what the quality of services provided by a PHC could be if it lacks even basic medical facilities. Service-related facilities were extremely unsatisfactory in West Bengal, and were less than ideal in Maharashtra and Karnataka. The latter two states were most likely to have PHCs that offered incentives beyond those routinely provided by the family planning program, while PHCs in Tamil Nadu were less likely to do so and those in West Bengal generally did not.

A comparative analysis of input in the four states according to prevailing socioeconomic conditions in the PHCs reveals that within each state, the distribution of the majority of the program components shown in Table 2 was not greatly influenced by the PHC's socioeconomic climate. However, an interesting interstate variation emerges regarding the deployment of a few of these components. For example, in West Bengal, a significantly higher proportion of PHCs in areas of low socioeconomic development had an operating theater and adequate service-related facilities than did PHCs in more highly developed areas; in the other three states, there were few socioeconomic differences in the deployment of these facilities. Likewise, in Tamil Nadu, PHCs in areas of low socioeconomic development were more likely to have reached the targeted standard for trained dais and to have at least one doctor trained in sterilization procedures than were PHCs in more developed areas.

About 40 percent of PHCs in less developed areas of Tamil Nadu offered additional incentives to family planning acceptors, compared with less than 20 percent of PHCs in high-and medium-development areas. In the other states, extra incentives were offered uniformly in all PHCs; in fact, in Karnataka and Maharashtra, the majority of the input at the PHC level seems to be distributed regardless of local socioeconomic development. For example, the average number of doctors in Maharashtra PHCs of higher socioeconomic development was 7.6 per 100,000 population, compared with 6.9 per 100,000 in areas of medium socioeconomic development and 6.1 per 100,000 in areas of low socioeconomic development; in Karnataka, the respective rates were 3.0, 3.3 and 3.1 per 100,000.

Thus, the distribution of family planning program components in the PHCs appears to be related to local socioeconomic development only with regard to the provision of facilities (an operating theater and medical and service-related facilities) and of incentives. This finding suggests that except for a few components in West Bengal and Tamil Nadu, there has been no selective deployment of input to areas that are socioeconomically deprived. If we assume that such areas are likely to have fewer nongovernmental medical and paramedical facilities, then increased investment of public resources on medical and other facilities must compensate for this deficiency. Program managers planning to deploy resources into rural areas should probably take note of an area's socioeconomic conditions, rather than simply considering the size of its population.

•*Program performance and socioeconomic conditions.* As with program input, there were striking variations in the acceptance of sterilization and the IUD in the four states. For example, the average acceptance rates for sterilization and the IUD in Maharashtra were 9.9 and 10.1 acceptors per 1,000 population, respectively (see Table 2). In contrast, West Bengal's acceptance rates for these two methods were 5.3 and 1.2 per 1,000, respectively. Except in Maharashtra, IUD acceptance was much lower than sterilization acceptance.

Socioeconomic differentials in the acceptance of both sterilization and the IUD were most striking in Maharashtra and Tamil Nadu. However, contrary to our general expectations, these associations varied in direction: In Maharashtra, sterilization acceptance rose with socioeconomic development (from 8.9 per 1,000 in low-socioeconomic-status areas to 10.5 per 1,000 in high-socioeconomic-status areas), while IUD acceptance was higher in low-socioeconomic-status areas (11.3 per 1,000) than in high-socioeconomic-status areas (9.6 per 1,000). In West Bengal and Karnataka, on the other hand, there was little variation in program performance according to the level of socioeconomic development.

Family Planning Packages

It is generally believed that family planning components are most effective in coverage and quality when they are deployed as a package. For example, if a PHC has a trained doctor, an operating theater, adequate paramedical personnel and a working vehicle, it should be more effective than when one or more of the above components is absent. To study the extent to which services are provided in packages, we examined seven input combinations.

The first and most desirable package included the presence of at least one doctor trained in sterilization techniques, at least one doctor staying in the PHC area, the presence of at least 75 percent of the mandated paramedical staff, the availability of an operating theater and a working vehicle. The next highest priority combination consisted of all of the above components except having at least one doctor staying in the area of the PHC. A third, less desirable, combination consisted of one trained doctor, an operating theater and a roadworthy vehicle. The fourth and fifth combinations represented the minimum that a PHC should have—one trained doctor and a working vehicle, or a trained physician and an operating theater. Thus, each PHC was studied in terms of a range of input, from the ideal to the bare minimum. Further, to examine administrative anomalies, two mismatches were also examined—the percentage of PHCs with a trained doctor but without an operating theater, and the percentage of PHCs with an operating theater but no physician.

As shown in Table 3, the majority of PHCs were not equipped with the most ideal combination of attributes; Maharashtra had the highest proportion, with 40 percent. The situation was particularly disappointing in West Bengal, where only 26 percent of PHCs had even the third-best combination of resources. The percentage of PHCs with the minimum essential packages of inputs varied from only 33–37 percent in Tamil Nadu to 52–67 percent in Maharashtra.

The table also reveals that in three of the four states (Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and West Bengal), there was no relationship between the addition of a crucial input variable and the PHC's performance. In Karnataka, for example, the average number of sterilizations in PHCs with the ideal combination of components (9.4 per 1,000) was no different from the average in PHCs with the minimum acceptable set (9.3–9.4 per 1,000). In Maharashtra, there was a systematic rise in sterilization and IUD acceptance rates with the inclusion of additional inputs, but the increase was not as striking as might have been expected. There is no logical explanation for the lack of association between the range of program inputs and program performance. However, it could be explained in part by the fact that sterilization camps were regularly organized in different parts of the states, and these pooled resources from various PHCs and from headquarters.

Table 3 also indicates the extent of mismatches in inputs. In some places, program inputs were deployed somewhat arbitrarily: In Tamil Nadu, 52 percent of PHCs had an operating theater but not a doctor trained in sterilization; in West Bengal, 27 percent of PHCs had a trained physician but no operating theater. In Karnataka, both types of mismatches could have been reduced considerably if doctors in the 14 percent of PHCs with no operating theater were transferred to the 16 percent of PHCs with an operating theater but no physician trained to do sterilizations. This situation suggests that the provision of facilities to PHCs has not been planned or monitored closely, and that some program inputs have been used wastefully or inefficiently.

Multivariate Analyses by State

To study the nature of the relationship between program input and sterilization and IUD acceptance, we conducted hierarchical analyses of variance and multiple classification analyses.* First, however, we conducted a stepwise regression analysis to identify the program components that had a greater (although not necessarily statistically significant) influence on sterilization or IUD acceptance; these were introduced into the multiple classification analysis. Furthermore, a set of covariates—essentially social, structural or economic characteristics of the population—was selected on the basis of a stepwise regression analysis and was used to study the impact of the program components after the effects of these covariates were taken into account. All variables found to be significant for any of the four states were included. The addition of program input factors or of socioeconomic variables other than those already included in the model did not improve its explanatory power for any of the four states. The findings of the analysis are presented separately for each state.

•*Karnataka.* Table 4 (page 20) provides the results of the multiple classification analysis and the analysis of variance for the state of Karnataka. Among the seven program components considered in the multiple classification analysis, the variable with the maximum explanatory power was the number of trained physicians per 100,000 population, which explained seven percent of the variability when the other factors and covariates were ignored (η^2) and about six percent after the effects of all covariates were controlled for (β^2). The effect of this factor on levels of steriliza-

---

*For the analyses, the three program inputs defined on an interval scale (the number of doctors, the number of paramedics and the number of dais) were transformed into ordinal scales, by converting them into categories of low (0), medium (1) and high (2), according to whether a particular value fell below 33 percent, between 33 percent and 67 percent, or above 67 percent in the distribution.

Table 4. Unadjusted and adjusted mean acceptance rates of sterilization and of the IUD, by type of analysis and program input, Karnataka

Analysis and program input	Sterilization			IUD		
	No. of PHCs	Unadjusted mean	Adjusted mean	No. of PHCs	Unadjusted mean	Adjusted mean
MULTIPLE CLASSIFICATION ANALYSIS						
No. of MDs						
0	107	8.06	8.18***	107	3.99	4.09***
1	119	8.77	8.81	119	4.38	4.42
2	120	10.51	10.35	120	5.48	5.35
Coefficient		η=.27	β=.24		η=.31	β=.26
No. of paramedics						
0	111	8.18	8.86	111	3.82	4.19***
1	118	8.70	8.73	118	4.62	4.63
2	117	10.53	9.85	117	5.44	5.08
Coefficient		η=.26	β=.13		η=.32	β=.17
No. of dais						
0	113	8.54	8.86	113	4.18	4.43
1	116	9.05	9.12	116	4.65	4.68
2	117	9.84	9.46	117	5.07	4.81
Coefficient		η=.14	β=.06		η=.18	β=.08
At least one trained MD						
0	224	9.33	9.29	224	4.66	4.65
1	122	8.82	8.88	122	4.60	4.62
Coefficient		η=.06	β=.05		η=.01	β=.01
Adequacy of medical facilities						
0	255	9.38	9.06	255	4.75	4.59
1	91	8.50	9.39	91	4.35	4.79
Coefficient		η=.10	β=.04		η=.08	β=.04
Adequacy of service facilities						
0	278	9.42	9.36	278	4.75	4.59
1	68	8.04	8.23	68	4.17	4.29
Coefficient		η=.14	β=.12		η=.11	β=.08
At least one MD staying in PHC area						
0	311	9.20	9.14	311	4.67	4.65
1	35	8.70	9.27	35	4.34	4.54
Coefficient		η=.04	β=.01		η=.05	β=.02
R^2			35.0			36.3
ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE†						
R^2			43.2***			47.6***

Note: In this and subsequent tables, *=statistically significant at p<.05; **=statistically significant at p<.01; ***=statistically significant at p<.001.

†In this and subsequent tables, the seven program input factors listed for the multiple classification analysis were used in the hierarchical analysis of variance, as were six covariates: percentage of women who are literate; proportion of never-married women who are 15–19; proportion of the population that is rural; proportion of the population that is of scheduled castes; percentage of population that is of scheduled tribes; and percentage of Muslims. None of the second-order or higher order interactions among the program input factors were statistically significant. Among the 21 potential first-order interactions, only two (number of paramedics with number of dais, and number of dais with presence of at least one MD trained to do female sterilizations) were found to be significant for IUD acceptance in Karnataka.

tion and IUD acceptance (as assessed from the adjusted mean values) is systematic and positive: The PHCs with the highest density of doctors were found to have a sterilization acceptance rate about 2.2 points higher and an IUD acceptance rate about 1.3 points greater than the PHCs with the lowest density of doctors. Similarly, the availability of paramedical personnel (mainly auxiliary nurse-midwives) also contributed significantly to IUD acceptance rates. No other program input was found to have a significant effect on contraceptive acceptance.

All 13 variables in the analysis of variance accounted for 43 percent of the overall variance in sterilization acceptance and for 48 percent of variance in IUD use, compared with 35 percent and 36 percent, respectively, that were explained in the multiple classification analysis. The major difference is that the former method included interaction effects (not necessarily statistically significant), while the latter ignored them. These results indicate that there was very little interaction among these variables: Besides two interaction effects in the case of IUD acceptance (between the number of paramedics and number of dais and between the number of doctors trained in sterilization techniques and number of dais), no second-order interactions among the program components turned out to be significant in the analysis of variance. Most program components deployed in Karnataka's family planning program, then, have contributed independently to contraceptive acceptance, especially of sterilization. This is not unexpected, considering that targets are assigned to individual workers, and that an individual's work is judged on the basis of his or her performance compared with that target. Thus, it appears that the program could not gain momentum in Karnataka because of a lack of organized group efforts and because of ad hoc decision-making in the deployment of program resources.

Another important observation based on this analysis is that almost 57 percent of the variability in the acceptance rate of sterilization and 52 percent of the variability in IUD acceptance remained unexplained. We propose several hypotheses to explain this failure; all should be explored in more in-depth studies.

First, the deployment of personnel and facilities may not be as important as the extent to which these personnel and facilities are used effectively. The presence of an organizational structure does not imply that it functions; for it to do so effectively, program resources and facilities need to be managed properly. Our findings indicate that management interventions, which are crucial to the full utilization of program input, must be incorporated in any input-output analysis.

Second, personnel and facilities from various governmental departments other than the public health and family welfare department are frequently used to meet targets, especially during February and March, when the state government wants to reach previously set targets in hopes of winning awards and certificates from the central government. Thus, the whole governmental machinery is geared to attaining the targets close to the end of the fiscal year through crisis management. Under such circumstances, family planning program resources deployed through the health and family welfare department probably play only a limited role.

Third, since 1985–1986, there has been a shift in program strategy, with a greater emphasis on spacing methods. Under such conditions, program input could have been expected to play a greater role in explaining the variability in the acceptance of spacing methods than of sterilization. Unfortunately, the data available on the use of spacing methods (like the condom and the pill) at PHCs are not reliable, and no such detailed analysis could be done.

The relatively small proportion of the variance explained in the present analysis suggests that one or more of the above factors may have had a strong influence. Testing these hypotheses, however, requires a separate analysis that treats the acceptance rates for sterilization and for all spacing methods as dependent variables and information on the management aspects of the family planning program and the role of departments other than the health department in the operation of the program as predictors.

•*Maharashtra*. Table 5, which presents findings from the state of Maharashtra, reveals that six of the seven program inputs contributed significantly to explaining the variability in sterilization and IUD acceptance rates; all were in the expected direction. The maximum effect was in the case of medical facilities and physicians' housing. Thus, while the availability of program personnel had the largest effect in Karnataka, the availability of facilities had the greatest impact on acceptance rates in Maharashtra. This may be related partly to the very high density of program personnel in all PHCs in Maharashtra.

The percentage of variance in the sterilization rate explained by all 13 variables in the multiple classification analysis is 20 percent, compared with 22 percent explained in the analysis of variance. In the case of the IUD, the respective percentages of the variance explained by these variables were 16 percent and 19 percent. Any interaction effects are small, suggesting once again that the various program components are not interacting. That 78 percent of the variability in the rate of sterilization acceptance and 81 percent of variance in the IUD acceptance rate remained unexplained indicates that the three issues raised with regard to Karnataka require more careful attention in Maharashtra as well.

•*Tamil Nadu*. Table 6 (page 22) shows that in Tamil Nadu, the amount of the variance explained by the 13 variables considered in the analysis of variance is discouragingly low—only nine percent in sterilization acceptance and about 19 percent in IUD acceptance. Among the program components considered, the variable that had the greatest effect on sterilization acceptance was service-related facilities (beta coefficient of .10). Surprisingly, this effect is the opposite of what one would generally expect: The analysis suggests that PHCs having inadequate service-related facilities performed better than those with adequate facilities. However, none of the input factors had a significant effect on sterilization acceptance. Regarding IUD acceptance rates, the number of dais, the number of doctors trained to do sterilizations and the number of paramedics had significant effects.

These results must be interpreted in the context of this state's organizational and program implementation, though. In Tamil Nadu (formerly Madras state), the family planning program has been viewed since its inception in 1951 as a state-run program to which all government departments are committed. It was the first state to introduce an incentive-related vasectomy program, and from the late 1950s placed an emphasis on achieving targets. The machinery of all government departments is routinely mobilized to achieve the set targets. Thus, family planning program resources deployed directly through the network of PHCs can be expected to play a relatively minor role in determining the overall acceptance of family planning.

Further, there has been tremendous political support in Tamil Nadu over five decades for the small-family norm, particularly by the popular regional party Dravida Munnettra Kazhagam, which, like its predecessors, has emphasized the need for small families if the economic well-

Table 5. Unadjusted and adjusted mean acceptance rates of sterilization and of the IUD, by type of analysis and program input, Maharashtra

Analysis and program input	Sterilization			IUD		
	No. of PHCs	Unadjusted mean	Adjusted mean	No. of PHCs	Unadjusted mean	Adjusted mean
MULTIPLE CLASSIFICATION ANALYSIS						
No. of MDs						
0	275	8.85	9.48***	278	9.76	10.54**
1	310	10.47	10.59	312	10.53	10.65
2	307	12.04	10.59	307	12.37	11.54
Coefficient		η=.15	β=.09		η=.10	β=.04
No. of paramedics						
0	289	9.41	9.86**	289	9.11	9.51***
1	298	9.87	10.10	302	10.56	10.54
2	305	12.18	11.52	306	13.01	12.63
Coefficient		η=.14	β=.09		η=.14	β=.11
No. of dais						
0	297	9.40	9.56***	298	8.62	8.80***
1	288	9.67	9.88	293	9.91	9.93
2	307	12.37	12.02	306	14.13	13.93
Coefficient		η=.16	β=.13		η=.21	β=.19
At least one trained MD						
0	671	11.03	10.73***	671	11.47	11.05*
1	221	8.93	9.86	226	9.29	10.53
Coefficient		η=.11	β=.04		η=.08	β=.02
Adequacy of medical facilities						
0	209	16.10	15.09***	208	16.06	14.88***
1	683	8.80	9.11	689	9.37	9.73
Coefficient		η=.36	β=.30		η=.25	β=.19
Adequacy of service facilities						
0	571	11.85	10.81	571	12.28	11.29
1	321	8.12	9.97	326	8.54	10.27
Coefficient		η=.21	β=.05		η=.16	β=.04
At least one MD staying in PHC area						
0	704	11.17	10.88**	710	11.57	10.51**
1	188	8.03	9.12	187	8.45	9.35
Coefficient		η=.15	β=.08		η=.11	β=.07
R^2			20.0			16.4
ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE						
R^2			22.3***			19.0***

Table 6. Unadjusted and adjusted mean acceptance rates of sterilization and of the IUD, by type of analysis and program input, Tamil Nadu

Analysis and program input	Sterilization			IUD		
	No. of PHCs	Unadjusted mean	Adjusted mean	No. of PHCs	Unadjusted mean	Adjusted mean
MULTIPLE CLASSIFICATION ANALYSIS						
No. of MDs						
0	104	5.33	5.49	104	2.43	2.72**
1	110	5.91	5.79	110	2.13	2.17
2	108	7.06	7.03	108	3.03	2.72
Coefficient		$\eta=.11$	$\beta=.10$		$\eta=.20$	$\beta=.14$
No. of paramedics						
0	107	5.51	5.46	107	2.04	2.32*
1	104	5.83	6.15	104	2.52	2.51
2	111	6.94	6.71	111	3.01	2.76
Coefficient		$\eta=.09$	$\beta=.08$		$\eta=.21$	$\beta=.16$
No. of dais						
0	107	6.36	6.15	107	2.13	2.08
1	114	5.68	5.53	114	2.54	2.56
2	101	6.34	6.71	101	2.90	2.97
Coefficient		$\eta=.14$	$\beta=.06$		$\eta=.16$	$\beta=.20$
At least one trained MD						
0	124	6.00	6.26	124	2.30	2.43
1	198	6.18	6.02	198	2.67	2.59
Coefficient		$\eta=.01$	$\beta=.02$		$\eta=.10$	$\beta=.04$
Adequacy of medical facilities						
0	174	5.75	6.16	174	2.60	2.57
1	148	6.53	6.05	148	2.44	2.48
Coefficient		$\eta=.06$	$\beta=.01$		$\eta=.04$	$\beta=.02$
Adequacy of service facilities						
0	297	5.85	5.91	297	2.59	2.56
1	25	9.18	8.44	25	1.77	2.17
Coefficient		$\eta=.13$	$\beta=.10$		$\eta=.12$	$\beta=.06$
At least one MD staying in PHC area						
0	314	6.06	6.06	314	2.56	2.55
1	8	8.16	8.00	8	1.29	1.93
Coefficient		$\eta=.05$	$\beta=.04$		$\eta=.11$	$\beta=.05$
R^2			8.7			18.7
ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE†						
R^2			8.7*			18.7***

†The percentages of the variance explained in the multiple classification analysis and analysis of variance are the same because higher order interactions were suppressed as a result of empty cells or a singular matrix. Analyses carried out with fewer input factors and covariates, including interaction effects, also revealed no significant differences between the percentage of variance explained by the two approaches.

being of the state is to be improved and the status of women raised. Thus, the political climate set by the government also strongly supports the family planning program.

These two factors together probably play a key role in the state's record of achieving family planning targets and reducing fertility. Tamil Nadu recorded India's lowest marital fertility levels in 1986 and the lowest growth rate during 1971–1981. If the effects of family planning program input are to be assessed accurately, we must introduce into the analysis such factors as management characteristics, the contribution of departments other than the health department and the strong political support for the small-family norm.[10] Otherwise, it may not be possible to ascertain the true effect of the direct measures considered in our analysis.

- *West Bengal*. The multiple classification analysis and the analysis of variance presented in Table 7 indicate that the maximum effect for both sterilization and IUD acceptance was caused by the number of paramedics, the adjusted effect being .27 and .26, respectively. The number of doctors trained to do sterilizations also contributed significantly to explaining the variance in acceptance rates. On the whole, personnel-related program components seem to have had a greater effect in West Bengal than has facility-related input.

The percentage of the variance in the acceptance of sterilization explained by all 13 variables was 33 percent in the multiple classification analysis and 44 percent in the analysis of variance, while the respective percentages of explained variance in IUD acceptance were 33 percent and 49 percent. These analyses also suggest a lack of significant interaction effects at the PHC level.

Discussion

Among the four states considered in the multiple classification analysis, the greatest percentage of the variance in sterilization acceptance explained by program input and socioeconomic variables was in Karnataka (35 percent); smaller percentages of the variance were explained in West Bengal (33 percent), Maharashtra (20 percent) and Tamil Nadu (nine percent). The amount of the variance in IUD acceptance explained by these predictors was generally the same in each respective state as in the case of sterilization. The effects of two particular program inputs differed widely among states, however: The number of doctors trained in sterilization techniques at the PHC level had a greater impact than the number of paramedics in Karnataka and Maharashtra, while in West Bengal the number of paramedics had a greater effect than the number of trained doctors. We find, then, that even the effects of personnel factors vary from state to state. Similarly, the effects of the socioeconomic and structural covariates differ by state, suggesting that the effect of any program input or socioeconomic variable depends largely on the state in which the input is deployed or on the prevailing social conditions.

In India, the implementation of the family planning program is largely the responsibility of state governments, although the financial resources are provided by the central government. The state's organizational efficiency and socioeconomic milieu determine to a large extent the structure and effectiveness of any family planning input. The four states studied here differ widely in terms of the political parties that were in power during the study period—the Marxist Party (for over a decade) in West Bengal, the Dravida Munnettra Kazhagam regional party or its offshoot (for over two decades) in Tamil Nadu, the Congress Party in Maharashtra and the Janata Party in Karnataka. All of these political parties placed different emphases on the family planning program, although all programs were funded by the central government.

Thus, a number of factors—differing political philosophies, levels of organizational efficiency, program input and socioeconomic conditions—become confounded and yield widely varying impressions of program impact. Political and organizational variables have not been taken into account in this analysis; hence, the findings of the study presented here are to be weighed carefully. Nonetheless, several salient observations can be drawn from this analysis regarding the impact of program components on family planning acceptance and implications for future research.

During the past decade, there has been a growing controversy in India among demographers, family planning program administrators and development specialists concerning the impact of increased investment of resources (human, financial or physical) in the family planning program. Criticisms have ranged from the passionate advocacy of a manyfold increase in family planning program resources (to contain population growth once and for all) to the total abolition of such input (on the argument that it is a wasteful expenditure, given its lack of impact so far). On the basis of our results, we believe that the answer lies somewhere in the middle.

The effect of any program input, whether it is related to personnel or facilities, depends essentially on the state in which it is deployed. The state effect seems to be the most dominant factor in determining the impact of each program input. Thus, criticism of the family planning program at the national level seems to be baseless and unjustified. The same program input may be effective in one state and ineffective in another; all program components combined also seem to have a different level of explanatory power in each state. Paradoxically, direct program input seems to have the least explanatory power in Tamil Nadu, where fertility decline has been rapid and the couple protection rate high. Political commitment to the family planning program and to the small-family norm seems to have played the dominant role in family planning acceptance in Tamil Nadu.

Our study also reveals that the management of the family planning program in the PHCs has been poor, and that there is little coordination of program components. A number of PHCs have doctors trained in sterilization but do not have operating theater or medical facilities, while a number of PHCs with an operating theater lack an appropriately trained doctor. There may be a deficiency in basic management principles at the PHC level. The absence of management-related variables from the crucial program components considered here not only may have reduced the explanatory capacity of the analysis, but also may have biased its effects. Management variables need greater attention in future analyses.

Family planning program input, in terms of personnel or facilities, may also have become progressively less relevant over the years. If the above analysis had been carried out in the 1960s or 1970s, the same set of factors might have explained a greater amount of the variance.

In the present study, the dependent variables are limited to sterilization and IUD acceptance rates. Since 1985, the Indian program has placed a greater emphasis on spacing methods, and while this change has not yet had a noticeable effect (sterilization continues to be the dominant family planning method), changes may be forthcoming. The impact of personnel and facilities on the use of spacing methods such as the condom and the pill can be expected to differ from their effect on sterilization and IUD use, and such differences need further investigation.

The results of our study seem to indicate that personnel input is more important than facilities, at least in reliance on sterilization or the IUD. Since the motiva-

Table 7. Unadjusted and adjusted mean acceptance rates of sterilization and of the IUD, by type of analysis and program input, West Bengal

Analysis and program input	Sterilization			IUD		
	No. of PHCs	Unadjusted mean	Adjusted mean	No. of PHCs	Unadjusted mean	Adjusted mean
MULTIPLE CLASSIFICATION ANALYSIS						
No. of MDs						
0	60	4.30	4.97**	58	0.88	1.06**
1	67	5.29	5.28	67	1.23	1.19
2	73	6.24	5.70	73	1.43	1.32
Coefficient		η=.30	β=.11		η=.25	β=.12
No. of paramedics						
0	68	4.29	4.75***	65	0.89	0.93***
1	66	5.08	4.93	67	1.16	1.16
2	66	6.68	6.35	66	1.54	1.50
Coefficient		η=.37	β=.27		η=.30	β=.26
No. of dais						
0	66	4.69	4.95	64	1.04	1.03
1	67	5.16	5.25	67	1.14	1.25
2	67	6.16	5.81	67	1.41	1.31
Coefficient		η=.14	β=.06		η=.18	β=.13
At least one trained MD						
0	152	5.44	5.36	148	1.26	1.21
1	48	5.04	5.27	50	1.04	1.16
Coefficient		η=.06	β=.01		η=.11	β=.03
Adequacy of medical facilities						
0	91	5.88	5.78	89	1.37	1.29
1	109	4.89	4.98	109	1.06	1.12
Coefficient		η=.19	β=.15		η=.18	β=.10
Adequacy of service facilities						
0	65	5.51	5.51	65	1.05	1.05
1	135	5.26	5.26	135	1.27	1.27
Coefficient		η=.04	β=.04		η=.12	β=.12
At least one MD staying in PHC area						
0	189	5.39	5.34	188	1.21	1.21
1	11	4.40	5.26	10	0.92	1.06
Coefficient		η=.08	β=.01		η=.07	β=.04
R2			32.5			32.5
ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE						
R^2			44.0***			48.8***

tion work for such methods is done largely by paramedical personnel, and since the paucity of medical facilities in any health center could be compensated for (at least to some extent) by mobile teams of appropriately trained doctors, it is understandable that personnel play a greater role than facilities. This is not to underestimate the need for adequate facilities—operating theaters and other medical facilities—in every PHC to improve the quality of services. However, the scarce resources available should not be spread thinly over all PHCs; they should be centered in areas where they are likely to be most effective because of the availability of trained personnel and other support systems.

References

1. Government of India, *A Brochure of Couple Protection Rates (As of 31st March, 1988)*, Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, New Delhi, 1989, p. 8.

2. M. E. Khan et al., eds., *Performance of Health and Family Welfare Programmes in India*, Himalaya Publishing House, Bombay, 1988.

3. R. J. Lapham and W. P. Mauldin, "Family Planning Program Effort and Birthrate Decline in Developing Countries," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, 10:109, 1984.

4. D. J. Hernandez, *Success or Failure? Family Planning Programs in the Third World*, Greenwood Press, Westport, Conn., 1984.

5. B. D. Mishra et al., *Organizing for Change: A Systems Analysis of Family Planning in Rural India*, Radiant Publishers, New Delhi, 1982.

6. T. V. Antony, K. Srinivasan and P. C. Saxena, "Case Studies of Population Policies and Programmes in India," in G. D. Ness and E. Sattar, eds., *Strategic Management of Population Programmes*, Management Contributions to Population Programmes Series Vol. 7, International Committee on the Management of Population Programmes, Kuala Lumpur, 1989, p. 219.

7. G. D. Ness, "Implementing Strategic Management in Population Programmes: The Search for Strategic Interventions," in G. D. Ness and E. Sattar, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 6), p. 13; and R. M. Maru, "Strategic Management of Population Programmes," in G. D. Ness and E. Sattar, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 6), p. 1.

8. Ibid.

9. A. K. Jain, "Fertility Reduction and the Quality of Family Planning Services," *Studies in Family Planning*, 20:1, 1989.

10. T. V. Antony, K. Srinivasan and P. C. Saxena, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 6).

Resumen

Los datos suministrados por 2.175 centros de atención primaria de la salud ubicados en zonas rurales de cuatro estados de la India revelan que la presencia y los efectos de distintos componentes del programa de planificación familiar difieren muchísimo de un estado a otro. En Maharashtra, por ejemplo, los centros tenían un promedio de 6,5 médicos por cada 100.000 personas, mientras que en Tamil Nadu había menos de tres médicos por cada 100.000 personas; Maharashtra tenía 34 paramédicos por cada 100.000 personas, mientras que en Bengala occidental, Tamil Nadu y Karnataka había sólo de 24 a 28. Dentro de los estados, sin embargo, la mayoría de estos datos varían poco según las condiciones socioeconómicas de los distritos en que están ubicados los centros. Los niveles de aceptación de la esterilización y del DIU en centros que cuentan con personal y equipos adecuados suelen no ser más altos que en los que tienen poco personal y equipo. Además, en varios centros se observa poca coordinación en los tipos de servicios disponibles (como que haya quirófano pero no médico capacitado para utilizarlo). Las características estudiadas explicaban sólo en un 50 por ciento de los casos, y a menudo mucho menos, las diferencias en las tasas de esterilización y aceptación del DIU en estos cuatro estados, lo que indica que hay otros factores (probablemente el apoyo político y la eficiencia administrativa) que influyen más en el éxito de los programas.

Résumé

Les données provenant de 2.175 centres de soins de santé primaires situés dans les zones rurales de quatre états indiens révèlent des différences considérables d'un état à l'autre quant à la présence et aux effets des différents composants du programme de planning familial. Dans l'état du Maharashtra, par exemple, les centres de soins primaires comptaient à leur emploi 6,5 médecins, en moyenne, pour 100.000 habitants tandis qu'il y avait au Tamil Nadu moins de trois médecins pour 100.000 habitants; on trouvait, au Maharashtra, 34 auxiliaires médicaux pour 100.000 habitants par rapport à un nombre variant entre 24 et 28 auxiliaire médicaux pour 100.000 habitants au Bengale occidental, au Tamil Nadu et au Karnataka. A l'intérieur des états, la plupart de ces mesures diffèrent peu suivant les conditions socio-économiques des districts dans lesquels sont situés les centres de soins primaires. Dans bien des cas, les niveaux d'acceptation de la stérilisation et du stérilet ne sont pas plus élevés dans les centres de soins primaires bien dotés en personnel et équipement que dans ceux dont les ressources humaines et matérielles laissent à désirer. En outre, les types de services offerts sont mal coordonnés dans un certain nombre de centres (par exemple, le fait de posséder une salle d'opération sans aucun médecin qui sait l'utiliser). La capacité des attributs étudiés d'expliquer la variance des taux d'acceptation de stérilisation et de stérilet dans ces quatre états ne s'élevait pas à plus de 50 pour cent et souvent à beaucoup moins, ce qui indique que d'autres facteurs (probablement l'appui politique et l'efficacité administrative) contribuent davantage au succès du programme.

Estimating Abortion Levels

(Continued from Page 13)

ciones razonables de la prevalencia de esta práctica. Se propone una metodología para calcular el número de abortos ilegales que se practican, basada principalmente en el número de complicaciones tratadas en los hospitales. Los cálculos del número de abortos inducidos y la proporción entre abortos y nacimientos en el Perú, el Brasil y Colombia indican que por cada 10 mujeres que dan a luz, 3–4 en Colombia y el Brasil y dos en el Perú abortan.

Résumé

Bien que l'avortement soit illégal dans tous les pays d'Amérique latine à l'exception de Cuba, l'avortement provoqué est pratiqué fréquemment dans toute la région. Les planificateurs en matière de santé ont besoin d'estimations raisonnables quant à la fréquence de cette pratique. Une méthodologie est décrite pour estimer le nombre d'avortements illégaux effectués, principalement sur la base du nombre de complications d'avortement traitées dans les hôpitaux. Les estimations du nombre d'avortements provoqués et le rapport entre les avortements et les naissances au Pérou, au Brésil et en Colombie indiquent que, sur 10 femmes donnant naissance, 3–4 en Colombie et au Brésil et deux au Pérou mettent fin à leurs grossesses.

Premarital Sex in Costa Rica: Incidence, Trends and Determinants

> **"The adjusted risk [of premarital sex] is seven times higher for women who are engaged to marry compared with those who are not. Premarital coital activity among Costa Rican teenagers is thus driven in part by marriage at a young age."**

By Luis Rosero-Bixby

Summary

A hazards model using retrospective data from a national sample of Costa Rican women aged 15–24 interviewed in 1986 indicates that every year approximately 10 percent of women aged 17–19—the peak ages for the initiation of premarital sexual activity—become sexually active. The cumulative proportion of women who have had premarital sex by their 20th birthday is 38 percent. The data fail to support the popular belief that premarital sexual activity has increased among younger cohorts: The younger cohorts of women tended to have a lower risk of premarital sexual activity than the older cohorts. Education reduces the risk of premarital sex, whereas being engaged to marry increases this risk sharply. Women in communities with large proportions of consensual unions tend to have an increased likelihood of premarital sex, and the restraining effects of education tend to be weakened.

Introduction

The incidence of premarital sex is probably high in many Latin American countries. It is poorly documented, however, because of the lack of data and the use of inadequate indicators. Nevertheless, high regional levels of adolescent fertility, out-of-wedlock births and consensual unions suggest substantial coital activity before or outside of legal marriage. This article uses a national sample of Costa Rican women to estimate current incidence and recent trends of premarital sexual activity, with the hypothesis that premarital sexual activity is increasing. It also addresses the question of how individual and contextual characteristics determine the likelihood of engaging in premarital sex. Sexual activity within marriage or consensual union, even if it occurs at a young age, is not within the scope of this study. The findings should help direct the efforts of family planning programs and other interventions to prevent pregnancy and sexually transmitted diseases among adolescents.

Two types of forces influence the initiation of coital activity before marriage—the microlevel, or the individual characteristics of an adolescent, and the macrolevel, the social context in which she lives including the marriage norms and sanctions on sex outside of marriage. The microlevel variables in this analysis are the adolescent's level of education and whether she is engaged to marry. The macrolevel variable considered here is the looseness of community social norms regarding marriage, as measured by the prevalence of consensual unions.

Figure 1 (page 26) depicts the model of causal relationships used in the present analysis. To test the hypothesis that premarital sex has recently increased, the model includes two cohort effects—an indirect effect operating through education and engagement to marry, and a direct effect, represented by the arrow connecting the cohort and premarital sex variables.

Educational attainment, as an indicator of socioeconomic status, modernity and alternatives for young women other than dating and marriage, can affect the probability of premarital sex. In Costa Rica, modernity and a high socioeconomic status are thought to be conducive to premarital sexual activity. In addition, education can act indirectly by postponing engagements to marry, the other microlevel determinants in the model. On the other hand, the content of school curricula and the values transmitted by formal education can also influence the initiation of sexual activity by transferring the prevailing sexual and marital values in Costa Rican society, which strongly condemn premarital intercourse.

The contextual variable in the model is thought to be positively associated with premarital sex: Communities with traditionally high levels of consensual unions probably have a high incidence of premarital sex. In addition, the microlevel effects probably change in different contexts. Figure 1 portrays this interactive effect with an arrow from the macro determinant modifying the other three causal links to premarital sex. The model posits no cause-effect relationships between social marital norms and educational attainment or cohort.

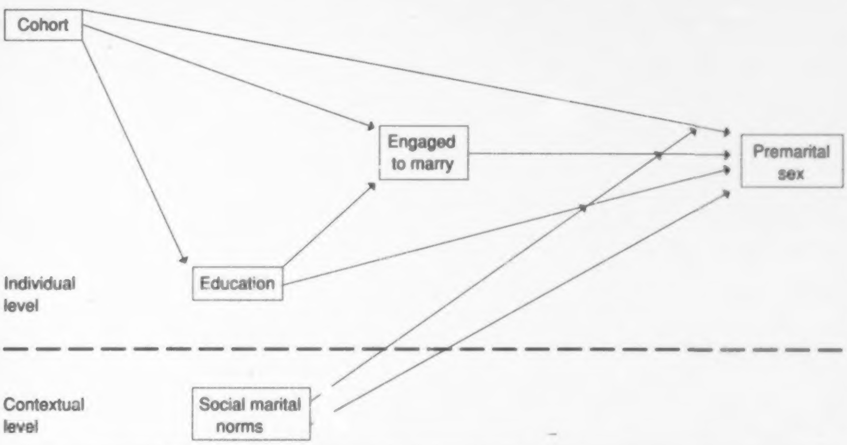
An indirect effect of social marital norms working through engagement is also depicted in the diagram: In cultures where the institution of marriage is valued highly, engagements are entered into earlier and last longer, and the risk of premarital intercourse probably increases with the duration of the engagement. Identifying this intervening effect is important because if most, or a substantial part, of premarital sexual activity occurs among engaged couples, then the causal relationship between engagement and early age at marriage would proceed, in theory, from marriage to premarital sex rather than the other way around.

Since young women choose neither the community they live in nor the year they are born, it seems appropriate to treat social marital norms and age-cohort as exogenous variables. Accepting causality between education and premarital sex on the one hand, and engagement and pre-

---

Luis Rosero-Bixby is a professor at the Instituto de Investigaciones en Salud, Universidad de Costa Rica. The Costa Rican Demographic Association collected the data on which this article is based as part of the National Fertility and Health Survey, with the assistance of the Centers for Disease Control. Doris Sosa was the survey director and the United States Agency for International Development (USAID) funded the survey. The opinions expressed do not necessarily reflect those of USAID. Mark Oberle, Leo Morris and William Mason made useful suggestions to improve the manuscript. A version of this article was distributed at the International Conference on Adolescent Fertility in Latin America and the Caribbean, Oaxaca, Mexico, November 1989.

Figure 1. Causal model depicting the determinants of the initiation of premarital sex, Costa Rica, 1986



marital sex on the other, assumes the former variables precede the latter. The required time sequence was assured by making education and engagement time-dependent variables; that is, they were computed at the beginning of each month of exposure.

Data and Methods

Measurement of the incidence of premarital sex can be difficult. An indicator frequently used in the literature is the proportion of women who have ever had premarital intercourse.[1] This proportion can be misleading because it actually measures both the risk (per unit of time) of initiating sexual activity before marriage and the length of exposure to the risk. With all other factors held constant, the proportion who have ever had premarital sex should increase with age and with older age at marriage because of the increased duration of exposure. In other words, the date of the survey interview truncates the exposure in younger women while marriage truncates the exposure in women who married earlier than the date of interview. Measures of the risk of premarital sexual activity should be independent of these two censoring effects, particularly when the risks between populations or across time are being compared. Life-table methods, also called hazards models, can efficiently handle these types of censoring effects and effectively incorporate time-varying covariates as well.[2]

This article describes the results of a proportional hazards model, or Cox's model, that simultaneously examines the effects of several variables on the risk of premarital sex. The major assumption of Cox's model is that the relative risk is constant at each duration or age, which is not to say that the risk itself is constant over time. Actually, the risk, or hazard, can be any function of time, as long as this function is the same in all individuals or groups. Moreover, the assumption of a constant relative risk over time is not a crucial feature of the model because the hazards cease to be proportional as soon as time-dependent explanatory variables are introduced.[3] Cox's model compares hazards of individuals with identical ages or durations to estimate relative risks and thus it implicitly controls for the effect of different age structures.

The analysis utilizes data from the 1986 Fertility and Health Survey, a nationally representative survey conducted by the Costa Rican Demographic Association in collaboration with the U.S. Centers for Disease Control.[4] The survey asked 1,379 women from 15 to 24 years of age whether and when they had first had premarital intercourse. This figure shrank to 1,358 women after incomplete or inconsistent observations were excluded. Consensual unions were considered in the analysis as marriages. Subjects were grouped into three age-cohorts according to the year of the woman's 15th birthday—1976–1979, 1980–1982 and 1983–1985; these three age-cohorts correspond to women who were approximately aged 21–24, 18–20 and 15–17, respectively, at the date of the interview. The number of years of education completed at each month of the young woman's life, starting at age 12, was estimated by combining information on the years of education and age at the time of the interview, using Costa Rican standards of correspondence between age and educational level.

The dichotomous, time-dependent variable "engaged or not" was defined month by month. Since the survey did not ask the date of engagement, this date was set at three months before the legal marriage; women who were single or in consensual unions were considered to have never been engaged. The major limitation of these assumptions is that the periods of engagement not resulting in legal marriages are missed.*

The contextual variable "looseness of marriage norms," was measured by the proportion of couples in consensual union in each canton (or county), which was obtained by the 1973 census. The use of these relatively old data was deliberate, since the analysis considers the social context of the woman's childhood rather than that of

Table 1. Among women aged 15–24 in 1986, estimated number of woman-years of exposure to the risk of premarital sex, annual rate of initiation of premarital sex and cumulative probability (and standard errors), by age, Costa Rica, 1986

Age	Woman-years of exposure	Annual rate	Cumulative probability
12	1,354.0	0.7 (0.2)	na
13	1,339.0	1.7 (0.4)	0.7 (0.2)
14	1,292.5	3.2 (0.5)	2.3 (0.4)
15	1,161.0	5.8 (0.7)	5.4 (0.6)
16	949.0	5.5 (0.7)	10.7 (0.9)
17	738.5	9.4 (1.2)	15.5 (1.0)
18	532.0	9.8 (1.4)	23.4 (1.3)
19	372.5	11.4 (1.8)	30.6 (1.5)
20	244.0	8.2 (1.8)	38.0 (1.8)
21	156.5	5.9 (1.9)	42.9 (1.9)
22	86.5	8.4 (3.2)	46.2 (2.1)
23	37.0	5.5 (4.0)	50.5 (2.5)
24	9.5	na	53.2 (3.0)

Note: na=not applicable. Source: Data tape from the *Encuesta Nacional de Fecundidad y Salud, Costa Rica, 1986*, Asociación Demográfica Costarricense.

---

*This classification error may bias the true effect of the exposure either upwards or downwards. The bias, however, is acceptable if the effect of engagement is substantial and the amount of time that adolescents spend engaged is short. Let's assume, for example, that 10 percent of the years from ages 12–19 is spent in engagement; only half of the engagement period is correctly classified by the definition of three months before marriage; and the relative risk of premarital sex is 8.0 for the five percent exposure period that has been correctly classified. If the relative risk for the misclassified exposure were identical to the correctly classified period, the observed relative risk would be 5.8 compared with an actual value of 8.0. If, by contrast, the relative risk for the misclassified exposure were only 2.0, the observed relative risk would be 7.6, compared with a true value of 5.0. These two examples represent extreme situations and, therefore, the error is probably in the range of plus-or-minus three points, for a true relative risk ranging between 5.0 and 8.0.

her current situation. The 1986 survey questionnaire asked about the respondent's main residence only during the five years preceding the survey. Less than 15 percent of women probably moved before this five year period and thus the great majority spent most of their childhood in the canton recorded in the survey. The proportion in consensual union, as well as years of education, were included as continuous variables in the model.

A separate life-table estimated the risk of premarital sex by age. Cox's models with time-dependent covariates were used to estimate the proposed micro and macro effects.* The "survival" or "failure" time variable for these analyses—that is, the length of time between the beginning of the observation and the target event—was counted in months, starting at age 12. Censoring occurred at marriage (or entry into a consensual union) or three months before the interview, whichever came first. The BMDP statistical software package was used to compute the results.[5]

Results

How common is premarital sex in Costa Rica? Twenty-eight percent of women aged 15–24 stated that they had had premarital intercourse. This percentage, though indicative of considerable sexual activity before marriage, is a crude measure because it is affected by the censoring effects previously pointed out. Table 1 presents the more meaningful life-table analysis and shows that the annual rate, or risk, of initiating premarital sexual activity reaches a peak at ages 17 to 19. At its highest value, the risk is 9–11 percent per year. The rate of initiation of premarital intercourse is lower before age 17: The risks are one percent at age 12 and six percent at ages 15–16. The life-table suggests a decline in the risk after age 19, but the estimates are too imprecise (the standard errors are large) to draw definitive conclusions.

The last column in Table 1 shows the proportion of unmarried women who have had sex before the specified age. This cumulative probability of having premarital sex increases monotonically with age. Twenty-three percent of young women have engaged in premarital sex before their 18th birthday, and 38 percent by their 20th birthday, a proportion that rises to 53 percent at age 24.

To what extent is premarital sex associated with each of the other variables? As expected, the crude percentage that have had premarital sex is higher among the older cohorts: Among those aged 21–24 at the time of the survey, 40 percent have had premarital sex, compared with 34 percent of those in the middle cohort (ages 18–20 at the interview) and 20 percent of those in the youngest cohort (ages 15–17 at the interview). The association between age-cohort and premarital sex is substantial, but it cannot be concluded that the likelihood of premarital sex is declining in younger cohorts; the association is undoubtedly an artifact of the truncated exposure among the younger cohorts.

Table 2. Among cohorts of 15–24-year-old women, annual rates of initiation of premarital sex (and standard errors), by age; and cumulative probability by 18th birthday

Age	Cohort*		
	1976–1979 (N=490)	1980–1982 (N=420)	1983–1985 (N=448)
12	0.4 (0.2)	0.5 (0.4)	1.1(0.5)
13	1.7 (0.6)	2.2 (0.7)	1.1 (0.5)
14	2.4 (0.7)	4.6 (1.1)	2.9 (0.8)
15	6.0 (1.2)	7.1 (1.4)	4.0 (1.1)
16	5.5 (1.1)	6.6 (1.4)	3.7 (1.4)
17	10.8 (1.8)	9.5 (1.8)	6.0 (3.0)
18	10.4 (1.9)	9.3 (2.0)	†
19	10.7 (2.0)	12.7 (3.4)	†
20	6.9 (1.8)	†	†
Cumulative probability by 18th birthday	23.5 (2.0)	26.2 (2.2)	17.1 (3.0)

*Cohort defined by year of the respondent's 15th birthday.

†Less than 100 exposed individuals.

Marital status and the probability of premarital sex appear to be strongly related. Among ever-married women, 53 percent had had premarital sex, compared with 13 percent among single women. Once again, uncontrolled exposure to risk is a problem: Single women are probably younger and thus have been exposed for a shorter period of time, and married women have a censored exposure because of their marriage. It is not clear whether the higher percentage of premarital sex among married women is attributable to an increased risk of premarital sex during engagements, some other factor associated with not having sex while single, or more openness among married women in reporting premarital sex.

A clear negative association also exists between education and premarital sex. The proportion of college-educated women who have had premarital sex is half that of women with only an elementary school education (17 percent vs. 34 percent). In addition, 25 percent of those who had a secondary school education had initiated sexual activity before marriage. However, since younger age at interview and earlier age at marriage (shorter exposure) are associated with less education, censoring effects once again influence the comparison. Moreover, given that the measure of education corresponds to the time of the interview rather than to the period of exposure, one may argue that the association is spurious or even that low educational level is a consequence rather than a cause of premarital sexual activity; that is, early sexual activity may lead to dropping out of school.

The results indicate a positive association between a tradition of consensual unions in the community and the likelihood of premarital sex. In cantons where less than 10 percent of couples were in a consensual union in 1973, 24 percent of the women surveyed in 1986 had had premarital intercourse. The corresponding proportions of those who initiated premarital sex in cantons with 10–19 percent and ≥20 percent of couples in consensual unions were 28 percent and 40 percent, respectively. However, this association could be affected by the tendency toward lower educational attainment and early marriage in communities with high proportions of consensual unions.

The associations examined so far, although they suggest that levels of premarital sex are affected by early marriage, education and social norms, are hardly conclusive. The proportion of women who have had premarital sex is biased by differences in the length of exposure time or by censoring effects. A discrete life-table analysis is a straightforward approach to controlling for the censoring effects. Table 2 compares the life-table, age-specific rates of premarital sexual activity among different age-cohorts. Women in the 1980–1982 cohort have slightly higher rates of sexual initiation than the 1976–1979 cohort, except at ages 17 and 18. Women in the youngest cohort (1983–1985) have lower rates than either of the older cohorts except at age 12. However, the large standard errors of these annual rates prevent

---

*William Mason distinguishes between two approaches of estimating macro effects in multilevel analyses—the fixed-effect approach, which assumes no disturbances to the macro effects and the stochastic-parameter approach, which assumes the existence of macro disturbances independent of micro errors. Since the currently available software used to estimate Cox's models allows for only one type of disturbance, the estimates in the present article use the fixed-effect approach. In the empirical example presented by Mason to compare the two approaches for logistic regression, the results were virtually identical. (See W. M. Mason, "Addendum to Manual IX: The Methodology of Measuring the Impact of Family Planning Programmes on Fertility," *Population Studies*, No. 66, United Nations, 1986, pp. 24–31).

Table 3. Among 15–24-year-old women, crude and adjusted relative risk of initiating premarital sex (and 95 percent confidence intervals), by variable

Variable	Relative risk	
	Crude	Adjusted
Cohort*		
1975–1979	1.00 reference	1.00 reference
1980–1982	1.13 (0.91–1.42)	1.12 (0.90–1.41)
1983–1985	0.75 (0.54–1.06)	0.77 (0.55–1.08)
1983–1985†	0.67 (0.47–0.95)	0.68 (0.47–0.99)
6 additional years of education	0.33 (0.26–0.43)	0.39 (0.30–0.51)
Engaged to marry	8.12 (5.84–11.3)	6.90 (4.96–9.61)
Additional 10% of couples in consensual unions	1.28 (1.19–1.37)	1.23 (1.15–1.32)
Global chi-square		324.48 (p=0.000)

*Cohort defined by year of the respondent's 15th birthday.

†Calculated with the 1980–1982 cohort as the reference group.

drawing conclusions about the existence of trends. The cumulative probability of having had premarital sex by age 18 for the 1976–1979, 1980–1982 and 1983–1985 cohorts is 24 percent, 26 percent and 17 percent, respectively. Although the slight increase between the two older cohorts is not statistically significant, the decline for the youngest cohort is. If there is a trend, then it is toward declining rates of premarital sexual activity among younger women.

The use of Cox's model conveniently summarizes comparisons of age-specific rates from discrete life-tables. The model also facilitates multivariate analyses, which are severely limited by the sample size in discrete life-tables, and considers the lifetime variations in conditions such as education and engagement status. Table 3 presents two series of relative risks estimated with Cox's model, namely "crude" and "adjusted," for the four explanatory variables under study. The crude relative risks describe bivariate associations estimated with separate hazards models for each explanatory variable. The adjusted relative risks, which show the net or direct effect of each variable on the rate of premarital sex, come from a multivariate model that includes all the explanatory variables.

The differences between the crude and adjusted relative risks, if any, indicate the importance of indirect and shared effects.* The fact that the differences are trivial suggests that the indirect effects are minor, and it is not necessary to study the two series separately. Therefore, the analysis focuses on the adjusted series of relative risks only.

The relative risks by cohort confirm the results from the discrete life-table analysis and refute the popular perception that sexual activity among young people has recently increased. The adjusted risk of initiating intercourse before marriage is 12 percent higher among the 1980–1982 cohort than among the 1976–1979 cohort, but this slightly elevated risk is not statistically significant. Young women in the 1983–1985 cohort are 23 percent less likely to initiate premarital sexual activity than those in the 1976-1979 cohort but a full 32 percent less likely to do so than those in the 1980–1982 cohort, a statistically significant difference.

The preventive effect of education on early premarital sex is clear from the results of the proportional hazards model in Table 3. Holding all other variables constant, each six additional years of education reduces the risk of initiating coital activity before marriage by 61 percent. As expected, the period of engagement is particularly risky for the initiation of coital activity. The adjusted risk is seven times higher for women who are engaged to marry compared with those who are not. Premarital coital activity among Costa Rican teenagers is thus driven in part by marriage at a young age.

The results in Table 3 of the effect of the proportion of consensual unions in the community are consistent with the hypothesis that premarital sex is partly determined by contextual, or macro, characteristics. Young women who live in cantons that presumably have loose social norms of marriage, as indicated by traditionally high proportions of consensual unions, are more likely to initiate coital activity before marriage or entry into a union. For each 10 percentage points in the proportion of all unions in the canton that are consensual, the risk of premarital sex increases by 23 percent, net of the effect of the other explanatory variables. In the extreme case of cantons where, for example, half of all couples are in consensual unions, this risk would be three times higher than in cantons where legal marriage is universal (i.e., 1.23 to the power of five, yielding a relative risk of 2.8).

Table 4. Among 15–24-year-old women, adjusted relative risk of initiating premarital sex (and 95 percent confidence intervals), by the percentage of consensual unions in the community, according to variable

Variable	Consensual unions	
	<20% (N=1,042)	≥20% (N=316)
Cohort*		
1976–1979	1.00 reference	1.00 reference
1980–1982	1.03 (0.79–1.36)	1.28 (0.86–1.89)
1983–1985	0.63 (0.41–0.98)	1.05 (0.61–1.81)
1983–1985†	0.61 (0.38–0.97)	0.82 (0.46–1.45)
6 additional years of education	0.33 (0.24–0.45)	0.51 (0.32–0.82)
Engaged to marry	9.01 (6.29–12.9)	2.80 (1.96–6.96)
Global chi-square	304.79 (p=0.000)	15.43 (p=0.004)

*Cohort defined by year of the respondent's 15th birthday.

†Calculated with the 1980–1982 cohort as the reference group.

With the existence of a contextual effect confirmed, the final step in the analysis is to determine if the contextual variable also influences the microlevel effects. Table 4 compares the microlevel effects on the initiation of premarital sex among cantons with a low prevalence of consensual unions and those with a high prevalence.† The table shows that the proposed moderator effect of the social context indeed exists. The decline in premarital sexual activity among the 1983–1985 cohort occurs only in contexts where consensual unions are rare. Moreover, the microlevel effects of education and engagement are substantially reduced—although they are still significant—in cantons where consensual unions are common. In these cantons, each six additional years of education reduces the risk of initiating premarital sex by 49 percent, and during periods of engagement, the risk increases nearly threefold (relative risk of 2.8). By contrast, in cantons with low proportions of consensual unions, each six additional years of education reduces the risk of premarital sex by 67 percent, and being engaged increases this risk by a factor of nine.

---

*The table also shows two pieces of information for statistical inference—the 95 percent confidence interval for the estimated relative risks, and the global chi-square with their probabilities. Confidence intervals whose range includes the value of 1.0 indicate statistically nonsignificant effects. The global chi-square statistic, and its p-value, test the hypothesis that all regression coefficients are identically zero, which is a way of testing the fit of the model as a whole.

†The chi-square test was used to evaluate the statistical significance of the two-term interactions between the contextual variable and each of the individual variables. All two-term interactions implicit in Table 4 were statistically significant at p=.05.

Conclusions

The evidence from the analysis confirms that the incidence of premarital sex in Costa Rica is high. At the peak ages of 17–19, the annual risk of initiating premarital sexual activity is about 10 percent; the cumulative proportion who have had premarital sex by age 20 is 38 percent. However, the data refute the popular belief that the incidence of premarital sex has increased among younger cohorts: Women in the youngest cohort—those who turned 15 in 1983–1985—have lower risks of initiating premarital sex than women in the two older cohorts. Although this difference is statistically significant, it is probably premature to conclude that a downward trend has started. The youngest cohort was observed only until their 18th birthday, and the trend may reverse itself after that age. The apparent decline may also reflect less openness among younger respondents in reporting premarital sexual experience.

The results of the analysis confirm the proposed microlevel effects of education and engagement: Increased education reduces the risk of premarital sex, and this risk rises sharply during periods of engagement. The results also confirm the macrolevel influence of the prevailing marriage norms, as well as the interaction of this variable with the microlevel variables: In cantons with loose marriage norms, the likelihood of premarital sex is high, and the microlevel effects of education are weakened.

The analysis demonstrates the critical role of education and social context. It also suggests that the relationship between early marriage and premarital sex is more complex than it appears. It would be misleading to speak of premarital sex as the cause and early marriage as the effect. In some circumstances the contrary is true: Premarital intercourse is often considered less of a sin once a formal engagement has been entered into and much of the premarital sexual activity in Latin America probably takes place during this period of engagement. Adolescent women initiate sexual activity at a young age because they engage to marry at a young age. As a policy implication, the results of the analysis indicate the importance of targeting prevention programs in adolescent pregnancy and sexually transmitted diseases to single adolescents with low educational attainment and to those living in communities with traditionally high proportions of consensual unions.

References

1. L. Morris, "Young Adults in Latin America and the Caribbean: Their Sexual Experience and Contraceptive Use," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **14**:153, 1988.

2. P. D. Allison, *Event History Analysis: Regression for Longitudinal Event Data*, Sage Publications, Beverly Hills, Calif., 1984.

3. Ibid.

4. Data tape from the *Encuesta Nacional de Fecundidad y Salud, Costa Rica, 1986*, Asociación Demográfica Costarricense; and M. W. Oberle et al., "Contraceptive Use and Fertility in Costa Rica, 1986," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **14**:103, 1988.

5. W. J. Dixon, ed., *BMDP Statistical Software*, University of California Press, Berkeley, Calif., 1985.

Resumen

Según un modelo de riesgo en que se utilizaron datos retrospectivos de una muestra nacional de mujeres costarricenses de entre 15 y 24 años entrevistadas en 1986, cada año aproximadamente el 10 por ciento de las mujeres de entre 17 y 19 años—la edad más proclive a la iniciación sexual prematrimonial—comienzan su vida sexual activa. La proporción acumulada de mujeres que han tenido relaciones sexuales antes del matrimonio a los 20 años es del 38 por ciento. Estos datos no corroboran la creencia popular de que la actividad sexual antes del matrimonio ha aumentado entre las cohortes más jóvenes, pues las de menor edad tendieron a registrar menos riesgo de actividad sexual prematrimonial que las cohortes mayores. La educación reduce el riesgo de sexo prematrimonial, mientras que estar comprometida para casarse lo aumenta marcadamente. En las comunidades con grandes porcentajes de uniones consensuales la probabilidad de sexo prematrimonial es mayor, tendiendo a atenuarse los efectos restrictivos de la educación.

Résumé

Un modèle de risques ayant recours à des données rétrospectives provenant d'un échantillon national de Costa-riciennes âgées de 15 à 24 ans, interviewées en 1986, indique que, chaque année, environ 10 pour cent des femmes âgées de 17 à 19 ans (âges auxquels débutent principalement les activités sexuelles prémaritales), deviennent sexuellement actives. La proportion cumulative de femmes ayant eu des rapports sexuels prémaritaux avant leur 20ème anniversaire de naissance est de 38 pour cent. Les données ne confirment pas la croyance populaire suivant laquelle les rapports sexuels prémaritaux ont augmenté parmi les cohortes plus jeunes: règle générale, le risque d'activités sexuelles prémaritales était plus bas chez les cohortes de femmes les plus jeunes par rapport aux cohortes de femmes plus âgées. L'instruction réduit le risque d'activités sexuelles prémaritales, ce même risque étant de beaucoup accru chez les fiancées. Dans les communautés où les unions consensuelles sont répandues, les femmes sont généralement plus susceptibles d'avoir des rapports sexuels prémaritaux, et l'instruction tende à avoir un effet moins fort.

DIGEST

Trinidad and Tobago: Users of Reversible Methods Prefer Pill or Condoms over Hormonal Injectables

The pill is the most popular method among women in Trinidad and Tobago. However, although most women who have practiced contraception have used oral contraceptives, only about one-fourth of current users are doing so. The condom, used by just over one-fifth of current contraceptive users, is the next most popular method. Female sterilization, used by 16 percent of current users, is the most popular method among those aged 35–49. Injectables are not popular among women in Trinidad and Tobago; the vast majority of women who try them do not continue using them. These are some of the highlights of a 1990 follow-up analysis of data from the 1987 Trinidad and Tobago Demographic and Health Survey (DHS).[1]

Trinidad and Tobago is a republic made up of two main islands and several smaller islands in the Caribbean. About 80 percent of the population is of Indian or African ethnicity, in approximately equal proportions. The republic's Family Planning Association provides a variety of contraceptives at little or no cost.

Contraceptive Use

In the 1987 DHS, 63 percent of all respondents aged 15–49 and 82 percent of those ever in a union[*] said they had practiced contraception at some point in the past. Those aged 25–29 are most likely to have ever used contraceptives (86 percent), while those aged 15–19 and 45–49 are least likely to have used them (69 percent and 73 percent, respectively). Although there is some variation in ever-use according to education, residence, ethnicity, current union status and religion, the majority of women in all the subgroups have used contraceptives.

Sixty-seven percent of women who have ever practiced contraception have tried the pill, 58 percent have used the condom and 36 percent withdrawal. The pill is the method most likely to have been tried by ever-users between ages 20 and 49. Women 15–19, however, are more likely to have used withdrawal or the condom (58 percent and 53 percent, respectively) than the pill (42 percent). About 10 percent of ever-users are protected by female sterilization; in general, the proportion sterilized increases with age, with almost one-quarter of women 45–49 having undergone sterilization.

The pill is the most popular method among ever-users in each educational, residential and ethnic subgroup. The popularity of other methods varies somewhat, however: Rural women and women with a primary education or less are more likely than their urban and more educated counterparts to have been sterilized and are less likely to have ever used periodic abstinence. Urban women are more likely than rural women to have ever used the IUD. In addition, a greater proportion of non-Indian than Indian women have ever used the IUD, periodic abstinence and vaginal methods.

In the 1987 DHS, 53 percent of women currently in a union reported that they were practicing contraception at that time. Patterns of current use according to subgroup are, in general, similar to those of ever-use. However, while non-Indians are more likely than Indians to have ever practiced contraception (87 percent vs. 76 percent), they are less likely to currently be doing so (50 percent vs. 57 percent). Similarly, ever-use is greater among Roman Catholics (85 percent) than among Hindus or other non-Christians (79 percent and 83 percent, respectively), but current use is greater among Hindus and other non-Christians (about 57 percent of each group) than among Catholics (54 percent).

Among current users aged 15–34, the pill is the most commonly used method (ranging from 24 percent to 41 percent). Among older women, however, female sterilization is the most popular method: More than one-quarter of women aged 35–39 and over half of those aged 45–49 are sterilized. Female sterilization is, overall, the third most popular method among current users (16 percent), following oral contraceptives (26 percent) and the condom (22 percent).

Thirty percent of current users aged 15–19 use withdrawal or periodic abstinence. The author of the report finds this proportion "appallingly high" in light of the accessibility of more effective methods. She also suggests that the 1987 finding that there is a high degree of knowledge about contraceptives in this age-group (94 percent had general knowledge and 93 percent knew about modern methods) "should be suspect."

The pill is not favored by all subgroups of current users as overwhelmingly as by ever-users. For instance, rural women are about as likely to use the condom (25 percent) as the pill (24 percent). In addition, legally married women and Hindu women are more likely to use the condom (27 percent and 28 percent, respectively) than they are to use the pill (21 percent and 24 percent, respectively).

The 1987 DHS asked all women who were not currently practicing contraception if they intended do so in the future. Of the 2,384 who were not using contraceptives at the time of the survey, 35 percent said they intended to use them in the future. Women aged 15–34 are more likely than those aged 35–49 to intend future use (34–51 percent vs. 3–22 percent). In addition, women with a secondary or greater education are more likely than those with a primary or less education to intend to practice contraception in the future (42 percent vs. 26 percent). Intentions do not vary much according to residence, ethnicity or religion.

---

[*] Women are said to be "in a union" if they are legally married and living together, in a common-law union (i.e., living with a sexual partner) or in a visiting union (i.e., having regular sexual relations with one partner). All data given here on ever-use or current use of contraceptives are for women ever in a union or currently in a union, respectively.

Of those who say they intend to use contraceptives in the future, nearly 25 percent are not sure what method they will choose, while almost 40 percent plan to use the pill. Among women 35 and older, sterilization is slightly preferred to the pill. Seventy percent of the women intend to use a modern method, and only six percent think they will use a traditional method.

Discontinuation of Use

In the 1987 survey, women were asked what methods they had used since their last live birth, as well as what methods they had used between any live births they had had during the previous five years. The investigators recorded only the last two methods the women reported using. The resulting data yielded information on discontinuation rates and method-switching.

Overall, 55 percent of women were using a method at some time and then stopped; these women were no more likely to have switched to a new method than to have discontinued contraceptive use altogether (27 percent vs. 28 percent). For all contraceptives except the condom and the pill, the majority of users are more likely than not to have stopped using the method at some point in the past. Women who discontinued pill use are more likely to have stopped practicing contraception altogether than to have switched to another method (26 percent vs. 23 percent). Condom users, however, are more likely to have tried another method than to have ceased contraceptive use completely (30 percent vs. 18 percent). The overwhelming majority of women who tried injectables did not keep using them: Almost 90 percent of women who used injectables stopped using them, with 62 percent switching to another method and 26 percent ceasing contraceptive use altogether.

The likelihood of discontinuation does not vary a great deal by age, education, residence or ethnicity. The only large difference in the proportion switching methods and the proportion ceasing use is among women in a visiting union: Forty-nine percent of women in such unions began using another contraceptive after discontinuing use of an earlier method, while just 20 percent stopped practicing contraception.

Respondents to the 1987 DHS who said they had stopped using a method during the intervals specified were given a list of possible reasons why and were asked to choose their primary motivation for discontinuing use. Women who had had at least two births in the previous five years were most likely to cite the desire to become pregnant as their major reason for discontinuing use between the last two births. Users of all methods except the IUD and injectables were most likely to say that their primary reason was wanting to become pregnant; users of the IUD and injectables were most likely to cite health concerns.

Trends in Use

Although data from a 1970–1971 knowledge, attitudes and practice-type survey and from the 1977 Trinidad and Tobago Fertility Survey are not strictly comparable with the 1987 DHS, the author identified some broad trends. Between 1970–1971 and 1977, ever-use of contraceptives increased substantially among women 20–44 years of age; however, between 1977 and 1987, there was no change in ever-use among women in this age-group. Among women 25–29 and 30–34, ever-use actually declined slightly in the latter interval.

Current use of modern methods increased somewhat between 1977 and 1987 among women 35–44 and 45–49, but decreased among those 25–34. Current use of the pill decreased among all three age-groups, while current use of the IUD increased in all age-groups. Reliance on female sterilization also increased among all women, but did so most dramatically among those aged 45–49.—*P. Rind*

Reference

1. N. Abdulah, *Selection, Change, and Discontinuation of Contraceptive Methods in Trinidad and Tobago*, Demographic and Health Surveys Further Analysis Series, No. 4, Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., Columbia, Md., Mar. 1990.

Weekly Testosterone Injections Suppress Sperm Production, May Provide Effective Contraception

Weekly injections of testosterone enanthate suppressed sperm production in a large group of fertile men, and provided contraceptive efficacy at a rate comparable to that of female injectable contraceptives and better than that of the IUD, the pill or the condom.[1] A 10-center study conducted by the World Health Organization (WHO) also showed that recovery from sperm suppression was easily achieved, and that side effects from the injections were minimal. However, discontinuation rates were high, and were related mostly to the treatment's inability to completely suppress sperm production.

The WHO study subjects were 271 healthy, fertile men between ages 21 and 45 recruited from 10 study centers around the world.* To be eligible for the study, subjects had to be in stable relationships with healthy partners no older than 35 years old and to have normal sperm with a count of more than 20 million per milliliter. The mean age among study participants was 29 years; 228 (84 percent) of the men had established fertility with their partners, for a median of two completed pregnancies per participant.

The study was divided into three phases—suppression, efficacy and recovery. Throughout the study, subjects were given weekly 200 mg injections of testosterone enanthate. Semen samples were collected once a month for the first two months, and then once every two weeks during the remainder of the suppression phase. Two months into the suppression phase, any couple using a hormonal method was required to switch to a barrier method. This phase ended when the man stopped producing sperm—in other words, became azoospermic—at which point he and his partner ceased all other contraceptive use. The efficacy phase then began, and continued until an individual subject stopped receiving injections (which could be up to a year after the first injection). At that point, the subject entered the recovery phase, during which he was monitored for his return to normal spermatogenesis.

Fifty-eight percent of the men participating in the study (157 in all) ceased sperm production during the suppression phase; their mean time from the first injection to azoospermia was 120 days. Seventy-five percent of these men (119) completed the efficacy phase. Thus, 114 men (42 percent) left the study during the suppression phase and 38 (14 percent) left during the efficacy phase. More than half of those who left during the suppression phase did so because they did not achieve sufficient sperm suppression; this was a 23 percent life-table discontinuation rate within six months of beginning injections. However, the six-month life-table rate for becoming azoospermic was almost 65 percent; 70 percent of those who completed the suppression phase were able to completely cease sperm production. There were no variations in age, height, weight or other baseline characteristics between those who successfully completed suppression and those who did not. There was some variation between centers, however: The Chinese centers had a mean azoospermia rate of 91 percent, compared with 60 percent in the other centers.

---

*Men enrolled in the study were from one center each in France, Finland, the United States, Scotland and Sweden, from two centers in Australia and from three centers in China.

After the injections began, subjects who became azoospermic, as well as those who did not, experienced a four percent increase in mean body weight; a six percent increase in mean hemoglobin level and a 142 percent increase in mean testosterone level. Among all subjects, there was also a six percent decrease in mean testicular volume, an eight percent decrease in mean plasma urea level, a decrease in mean luteinizing hormone level of 67 percent, and a decrease in follicle-stimulating hormone level of eight percent. All of these values returned to normal baseline levels during the recovery phase.

Eight men stopped receiving injections during the suppression phase because their partners became pregnant. (Participants had agreed to use other forms of contraception during this phase, but it is not known how well they complied with this regulation.) One pregnancy occurred during the 1,486 months of the efficacy phase, a pregnancy rate of 0.8 per 100 person-years. Sperm were found in only 21 semen samples (from 11 men) out of 1,515 samples taken during the efficacy phase; of these men, none discontinued the study, nor did any of their partners become pregnant.

Two men were released from the study during the efficacy phase because they did not satisfy the original admission criteria, and 15 men (an annual cumulative life-table discontinuation rate of about eight percent) left during the suppression and efficacy phases because of the following difficulties with the injections: Dosages were too frequent (five subjects), too painful (six subjects), caused infection at the injection site (one subject) or were not given within the prescribed time interval (three subjects). A total of 52 men left during the suppression and efficacy stages for medical or personal reasons (annual rates of 12 percent and 13 percent, respectively): Nine reported acne; three reported increased aggressiveness or libido; two each left because of raised packed cell volume and hemoglobin, weight gain, and abnormal lipids; and one each because of hypertension, depression, fatigue, aphthosis, acute prostatitis, pneumonia, and Gilbert's syndrome. Three left the study because of their partners' medical problems.

At the time of the study report, recovery information was available for 230 subjects (85 percent of the original sample). In 192 men (84 percent), sperm concentration had surpassed the study baseline of 20 million per ml, and in 106 (46 percent) it had returned to their own baseline level. The median time needed to return to 20 million per ml was 3.7 months among those who had reached azoospermia, 3.0 months among those who had not and 3.9 months among those who had discontinued the study for other reasons. The participants needed somewhat longer to return to their own baseline sperm concentration—6.7 months, 5.7 months and 9.0 months, respectively. During the recovery period, there were 11 conceptions, of which two resulted in induced abortion, one in spontaneous abortion, four in normal live births and the remainder in continuing pregnancies. Two men left so that their partners could conceive; the women became pregnant during the recovery phase.

The failure rate of the testosterone injections in this study was comparable with the first-year failure rates of women's injectable contraceptives (0.2–0.4 per 100 person-years of protection), and better than that of oral contraceptives (three per 100 person-years) and IUDs (six per 100 person-years).[2] Furthermore, the efficacy rate is significantly better than that of the condom (12 per 100 person-years of protection), the only other reversible male contraceptive.

The investigators emphasize that the aim of the study was to determine if the laboratory diagnosis of azoospermia corresponded to high contraceptive efficacy, not to promote testosterone enanthate as a hormonal method. Apart from its inability to induce complete azoospermia in many men, the frequency of the injections would be inconvenient for the general population, and would create difficulties in dispensing the method. However, the researchers point out that the WHO and other groups have been investigating longer-acting testosterone formulations that might allow for 3–4 month intervals between injections.—*R. Turner*

Reference

1. World Health Organisation Task Force on Methods for the Regulation of Male Fertility, "Contraceptive Efficacy of Testosterone-Induced Azoospermia in Normal Men," *Lancet*, **II**:955, 1990.

2. J. Trussell and K. Kost, "Contraceptive Failure in the United States: A Critical Review of the Literature," *Studies in Family Planning*, **18**:237, 1987.

Three in Four Jamaican Pregnancies Are Either Mistimed or Unwanted

Fertility in Jamaica has declined sharply over the past 15 years, and the use of effective methods of contraception has risen substantially, according to the findings of the 1989 Jamaica Contraceptive Prevalence Survey (CPS).[1] Nevertheless, 55 percent of the women who were pregnant at the time of the survey said their pregnancy was mistimed, and 20 percent said it was unwanted. Women are starting childbearing at younger ages, but want smaller families than do women in earlier generations. Almost all women have heard of AIDS, but misconceptions about how the disease is transmitted are widespread, and few women consider themselves to be at risk.

Jamaica, a Caribbean island located south of Cuba and west of Haiti, attained independence from Great Britain in 1962. Its population in 1988 was estimated at 2.4 million; about one-third of these people live in major urban areas. In 1989, fewer than half of one percent of women aged 15–49 had no education, 36 percent had some primary schooling, 51 percent had some secondary education and eight percent had some postsecondary education. Women are attaining higher levels of education than in the past: Among 15–19-year-olds, 74 percent had some secondary education and 20 percent had some primary education; the corresponding proportions among 45–49-year-olds were nine percent and 80 percent.

Marriage and Fertility

The 1989 Jamaica CPS was conducted among 6,112 women aged 15–49. It is the most recent in a series of fertility surveys, including the 1975 Jamaica Fertility Survey (JFS), three earlier Contraceptive Prevalence Surveys (in 1974, 1979 and 1983) and the 1987 Young Adult Reproductive Health Survey. Of the women who were interviewed, 17 percent were legally married, 23 percent were in a common-law relationship, 28 percent were in a visiting union, 12 percent had previously been in a union and 20 percent had never been in a union. In 1989, the median age at first union was 16.8 years; 16 percent of the respondents had entered a union before age 15, and 63 percent had done so before age 20. Although there was little difference between rural women and urban women in the median age at marriage, women with a postsecondary education were a year and one-half older at first marriage than those with a primary education (18.3 years vs. 16.8 years).

In Jamaican society, young men and women tend to enter more stable, formal relationships as they grow older. In 1989, only five percent of women aged 20–24 were legally married, compared with 42 percent of those aged 45–49. Conversely, 43 percent of the 20–24-year-olds were in visiting relationships, compared with 11 percent of the 45–49-year-olds. These proportions did not vary substantially according to rural or urban residence. Only nine percent of the women who were legally married at the time of the survey had been married to their partner from the beginning of their union; 73 percent had initially had a visiting relationship and 19 percent had had a common-law union. Among those who were in common-law marriages at the time of the survey, 87 percent had initially had a visiting relationship with their partner.

The average desired family size has decreased over time: Women aged 45–49 at the time of the survey considered three children ideal, while those aged 15–19 wanted only two children. There was no difference between rural women and urban women or between women at different educational levels in the number of children desired.

Comparison with data from earlier surveys shows that levels of fertility in Jamaica have fallen during the past 15 years. The total fertility rate (TFR) in 1989 was 2.9 lifetime births per woman, compared with 3.5 in 1983 and 4.5 in 1975. The mean number of children ever born to women aged 45–49 also decreased during that period, from 5.3 in 1975 to 4.8 in 1989; on average, rural women had more children than did urban women (5.1 vs. 4.3). Childbearing seems to be starting at younger ages: The mean age at first birth among women aged 45–49 was 23.9 years, compared with 19.5 years among those aged 25–29.

At the time of the survey, the mothers of substantial proportions of the infants born in the preceding 24 months were still breastfeeding (52 percent), amenorrheic (21 percent) or practicing postpartum abstinence (29 percent); as a result, the mothers of 37 percent of the infants were not exposed to the risk of pregnancy. Both the prevalence and the duration of breastfeeding have increased during the last 15 years. Of the infants born in the 24 months prior to the survey, 96 percent were breastfed, compared with 94 percent in 1975. The mean duration of breastfeeding increased by 50 percent between 1975 and 1989 (from eight months to 12 months). There were slight differences in postpartum insusceptibility by education and area of residence, reflecting longer-than-average durations of breastfeeding and postpartum abstinence among women with a primary education and those in rural areas. -

Contraceptive Knowledge and Use

Almost all of the survey respondents knew of at least one effective method of birth control, with little variation by urban or rural residence, age or level of education. The pill and the condom were the most widely known methods (99 percent each), followed by injectables (96 percent), female sterilization (92 percent) and the IUD (83 percent). The proportions of women who knew about the pill, the condom, injectables and female sterilization varied little by educational level, but knowledge about other methods rose steeply with educational level.

Seventy-one percent of Jamaican women have used a contraceptive at some time, with little difference between rural areas and urban areas or between types of union. The median age at first use was 19 years. Women with a secondary education were less likely to have used a method than were women in the other educational groups (67 percent vs. 74–77 percent). Almost half of the respondents who had ever used a method had used the pill (48 percent), and smaller proportions had relied on condoms (33 percent), injectables (23 percent) or female sterilization (11 percent).

In 1989, 55 percent of women currently in a union were using a contraceptive, compared with 51 percent in 1983 and 38 percent in 1975. The largest proportion were using the pill (20 percent), followed by female sterilization (14 percent), the condom (nine percent) and injectables (eight percent). In 1975, those proportions were 12 percent, eight percent, seven percent and six percent, respectively. At the time of the survey, contraceptive prevalence was slightly higher among rural women than among urban women (56 percent vs. 52 percent), but the method mix for each group was similar to the overall pattern.

Contraceptive use was higher among women in legal marriages than among those in common-law marriages or visiting relationships (60 percent vs. 52 percent and 54 percent). Method mix also varied by type of relationship: Female sterilization was the most common method among legally married women (29 percent), followed by the pill (11 percent), the condom (seven percent) and injectables (five percent); among women in common-law marriages, on the other hand, the pill was the preferred method (21 percent), followed by female sterilization (12 percent), injectables (nine percent) and condoms (seven percent). Women who had a visiting partner relied primarily on the pill (24 percent), condoms (11 percent) and injectables (nine percent), and less on female sterilization (six percent).

Both contraceptive prevalence and method mix varied considerably by age. Contraceptive prevalence rose steadily from 48 percent of 15–19-year-olds to 59 percent of 35–39-year-olds, and then declined among older women. Pill use was most common among women aged 20–29 (27 percent) and then decreased steadily with age, while reliance on female sterilization rose sharply among women older than 30, peaking at 37 percent among 40–44-year-olds. Condom use, on the other hand, declined from 17 percent among women aged 15–19 to one percent among those aged 45–49. Use of injectables, like use of the pill, peaked among 20–29-year-olds (10 percent) and declined among older women.

There were considerable differences in both overall prevalence and method mix by level of education. Women with a postsecondary education were more likely to be using a method (61 percent) than were those with a secondary or primary education (55 percent and 52 percent, respectively). Women with a primary education were most likely to rely on female sterilization (21 percent) or the pill (14 percent), while those with a secondary education were more likely to use the pill (24 percent) or condoms (10 percent); among women with a postsecondary education, the pill was the most commonly used method (20 percent), followed by female sterilization (12 percent) and the condom (11 percent).

In 1989, 64 percent of the women in a union who were not using a method gave

DIGEST

reasons related to pregnancy, infertility or lack of sexual activity. Spousal opposition was cited as a factor by fewer than one percent of the respondents. Of those who had used a method in the past, but were not doing so at the time of the survey, about half cited health problems or side effects (29 percent and 23 percent, respectively).

According to CPS data, 16 percent of Jamaican women aged 15–49 were in need of family planning services in 1989.* Despite this relatively low level of unmet need, only 29 percent of all births in the five years before the survey were planned, while 52 percent were mistimed and 18 percent were unwanted. The proportion of planned births was higher among women in urban areas (31 percent) and women with a postsecondary education (50 percent).

About seven percent of women currently in union were pregnant at the time of the survey; of these women, 23 percent said their pregnancy was planned, 55 said it was mistimed and 20 percent said it was unwanted. Again, the proportion of planned pregnancies was higher among urban women than among rural women, and women with a postsecondary education were considerably more likely to have planned their pregnancy than were those with a secondary or primary education. Moreover, women aged 25–29 were twice as likely as those aged 15–19 to have planned their pregnancy (32 percent vs. 16 percent). This may reflect, in part, the disparity between median age at first intercourse (17 years) and median age at first contraceptive use (19 years).

Maternal and Child Health

Among children born in the five years preceding the survey, 98 percent were born to mothers who received prenatal care. The mothers of 65 percent received tetanus shots, and the mothers of 22 percent were inoculated against rubella. During that period, 77 percent of all births took place in a hospital, 20 percent at the mother's home and two percent in a private nursing home or rural maternity center. Women who were young, those who lived in urban areas and those who had a postsecondary education were more likely to give birth in hospitals than those who were older, lived in rural areas and had a primary education. More than 90 percent of births were attended by a doctor or trained nurse-midwife.

In 1989, virtually all of the survey respondents had heard of AIDS; the proportion did not vary according to residence in urban or rural areas, age or union status. Of these women, most knew that the human immunodeficiency virus could be transmitted by heterosexual intercourse (99 percent), intercourse between men (98 percent), receiving a blood transfusion (83 percent) or sharing needles used for drugs (77 percent). However, substantial proportions believed they could become infected by giving blood (59 percent) or being bitten by an insect (35 percent). Moreover, 73 percent believed they were at little or no risk of becoming infected.—*F. Althaus*

Reference

1. C. McFarlane and C. Warren, *1989 Jamaica Contraceptive Prevalence Survey, Final Report*, National Family Planning Board, Kingston, Jamaica, 1990.

Poor Health Care Leads To African Women's High Rates of Uterine Rupture

The incidence of uterine rupture during labor may be higher in some African countries than anywhere else in the world. A large study at a Nigerian referral hospital found that six out of every 1,000 women giving birth developed a ruptured uterus;[1] a somewhat smaller study in Guinea/Conakry found an incidence of nearly nine per 1,000 deliveries.[2] Although only a small proportion of the women died as a result of uterine rupture, the complication was often fatal for the newborn infant: Between three-fifths and three-quarters died as a result of the rupture. Lack of prenatal care and poor health care delivery services seem to be the major factors contributing to this problem.

Uterine rupture is a severe complication of pregnancy and a major cause of maternal morbidity and mortality in developing countries, particularly where prenatal and obstetric care are unavailable to or underused by large numbers of women. Researchers at the University College Hospital in Ibadan, Nigeria, retrospectively studied the incidence of uterine rupture at that hospital during the 12-year period from January 1975 to December 1986, and examined related factors and maternal and infant outcome. (It should be noted that because women with serious problems are more likely to be referred to a teaching hospital, problem cases may have been overrepresented in the study population.)

During the period studied, there were 37,313 deliveries, with 227 cases of ruptured uterus (6.1 per 1,000). (This is far higher than the rates of 0.7 per 1,000 deliveries and 0.09 per 1,000 deliveries reported in the United States and Canada, respectively; Uganda has the highest known incidence—10 per 1,000 deliveries.) The rate of ruptured uterus in Ibadan varied widely from year to year, from 3.5 per 1,000 in 1981 to 9.9 per 1,000 in 1986. Seventeen (7.5 percent) of the women diagnosed with a ruptured uterus died, and many more experienced any of a variety of associated complications; only 37 percent had no related complications. Sixty-two percent of infants born to mothers with ruptured uterus died at or around the time of birth.

Prenatal care was strongly associated with the risk of uterine rupture: While 80 percent of the total obstetric population had received prenatal care, only 29 percent of those with a ruptured uterus had done so. In addition, women in their 30s were at greater risk than younger women: Women 30 and older made up just 31 percent of the obstetric population, but constituted 57 percent of those who developed a ruptured uterus.

Women who had had a prior cesarean delivery were at greater risk of uterine rupture than those who had never had one: Only 14 percent of the total obstetric population had had a previous cesarean delivery, compared with 48 percent of those with a ruptured uterus. The use of oxytocin to augment labor was not related to the risk of uterine rupture

The researchers believe that the high incidence of uterine rupture in the country is primarily a result of poor delivery of health care services. They note that a recent increase in the number of obstetricians in Nigeria has had no effect on the incidence of uterine rupture, and point to "the declining economic status of individuals, the increasing cost of medical care and the dependence on 'spiritual therapy'" as possible explanations. They suggest education, legislation and increased funding of safe health care as appropriate measures to deal with the problem. Of particular importance to the researchers is improved education, because although managing high-risk labor in a hospital setting would go a long way toward preventing many cases of ruptured uterus, most Nigerians do not readily accept the idea of delivering outside of the home.

---

*Defined as women who are not pregnant, do not desire a pregnancy and are not using a contraceptive method for reasons unrelated to pregnancy, subfecundity or sexual inactivity.

Another group of researchers looked at the incidence of uterine rupture and related factors at the Donka University Hospital in Conakry/Guinea. From January 1985 to December 1986, there were 9,535 births at that hospital, of which 81 (8.5 per 1,000) involved a ruptured uterus. Seventeen (21 percent) of the women and 61 (75 percent) of the infants died.

In this study, parity was associated with the incidence of ruptured uterus: Women with five or more lifetime births constituted 22 percent of the total obstetric population, but made up 44 percent of those with a ruptured uterus.

These investigators, like those who conducted the Ibadan study, contend that a major factor in the high incidence of uterine rupture in their country is the desire of women to attempt delivery at home. Compounding that problem are the deficiencies found in many developing countries—"inadequate prenatal care, lack of surgical equipment and qualified staff, [and] grand multiparity. . . . "—*P. Rind*

Reference

1. J. C. Konje, O. A. Odukoya and O. A. Ladipo, "Ruptured Uterus in Ibadan—A Twelve Year Review," *International Journal of Gynecology and Obstetrics*, 32:207, 1990.

2. M. D. Balde, G. P Breitbach and G. Bastert, "Uterine Rupture—An Analysis of 81 Cases in Conakry/Guinea," *International Journal of Gynecology and Obstetrics*, 32:223, 1990.

Contraceptive Practice Doubles in Nigerian City Over a Five-Year Period

Contraceptive use among married women aged 15–35 doubled in Ilorin, Nigeria, in just five years, according to the results of two surveys carried out in 1983 and 1988.[1] The largest relative increase in ever-use occurred among the least educated women, and the great majority of these women—88 percent—used a contraceptive method for the first time in the four years before the 1988 survey. Overall, there was a shift toward the use of more effective methods over the period between the surveys. The considerable increase in method use appears to reflect the abrupt decline in Nigeria's oil-based economy and the resulting changes in fertility desires and in population policy and programs.

The two surveys conducted among residents of Ilorin, the capital of Nigeria's Kwara state, followed the same basic sampling design. Because recent Nigerian census data allowing a representative sample do not exist, sufficient numbers of women in each education group in Ilorin had to be drawn from areas of low, medium and high socioeconomic status. The 1983 survey (conducted between September 1983 and January 1984) covered 913 married women aged 15–35. The later survey (conducted from September 1988 to December 1988) was extended to include those aged 36–49 and the husbands of all women surveyed, but for comparability, the analysis described here considers only the responses of 818 married women aged 15–35. While both surveys asked about contraceptive knowledge as well as about current use and ever-use, only the later survey asked women when and how they first heard about contraceptives, and when and where they obtained them.

There were slight variations between the surveys in the proportions sampled from each area of the city: In 1983, the proportions living in the areas of low, medium and high socioeconomic development were 38 percent, 29 percent and 33 percent, respectively; in 1988, the comparable proportions were 31 percent, 41 percent and 28 percent. Although the percentage of women with a primary education was identical in each of the surveys (28 percent), the percentage with no education decreased from 42 percent in 1983 to 30 percent in 1988, and the percentage with at least a secondary education increased from 30 percent to 42 percent.

By 1988, knowledge of any contraceptive method was nearly universal among Ilorin women; it was lowest among the least educated and those living in the poorest area, 90 percent of whom had heard of a method. The increase in knowledge of the most effective methods (the pill, the IUD, injectables and sterilization) was particularly dramatic. For example, among women with no education and those living in the poorest neighborhood, the proportion knowing of at least one effective method increased by 62–63 percentage points between the surveys.

In general, a large proportion of Ilorin women had acquired their contraceptive knowledge very recently. Roughly two-thirds of women with no education or only primary schooling, half of those with a secondary education and one-third of those with more than secondary schooling had heard about family planning for the first time in the four years before the survey. Only among the most educated had a sizable proportion of women (32 percent) known about family planning for 10 years or longer. Although most of the respondents had found out about family planning through the mass media, a majority of the least educated women (62 percent) and of those living in the poorest neighborhoods (71 percent) first learned about family planning from a doctor or nurse.

The proportion of women in each of the four education categories who were currently using a contraceptive method increased substantially between surveys. For example, in the five-year period, current contraceptive use increased from one percent to five percent among the least educated, from four percent to 15 percent among those with a primary education, from 11 percent to 20 percent among those with a secondary education and from 22 percent to 40 percent among the most educated. By area of residence, the largest relative gain in current use (from 11 percent to 30 percent) occurred among women living in the most developed area of Ilorin.

Over the five years between surveys, there was also a shift toward the use of more effective methods. In 1983, 60 percent of women in the sample were using a more effective method; by 1988, that figure had risen to 74 percent. Consequently, the use of the less effective modern methods (the condom, the diaphragm, and foam or jelly) declined from 24 percent to 11 percent, while reliance on the least effective methods (rhythm, withdrawal and other) changed little (14–16 percent).

Finally, the results of the 1988 survey indicate that the majority of women in each education and residence category started contraceptive use very recently. For instance, 88 percent of women with no education, 71 percent of those with primary schooling, 67 percent of those with secondary schooling and 57 percent of those with more than secondary schooling used a method for the first time in the four years preceding the survey. Similarly, the proportions within areas of residence, from lowest to highest socioeconomic development, ranged from 88 percent to 61 percent. The great majority of Ilorin residents (83–96 percent) obtained their method from either a hospital or a clinic.

The researchers assert that contraceptive knowledge is now nearly universal in Ilorin, Nigeria, even among the poorest and least educated women. Moreover, although absolute levels of method use are still lowest among the most disadvantaged women, current contraceptive use increased substantially in the period between surveys among all education and residence subgroups. According to the investigators, these sharp increases could reflect the efforts to promote family planning made by the Nigerian government, the mass media

DIGEST

and medical personnel after the collapse of the country's oil-based economy in 1983, and the increased demand for family planning among couples that also may have resulted from the economic crisis.

However, it is not clear whether the rise in contraceptive use corresponds to an increased demand for contraceptives to space births or to limit them. Furthermore, the researchers warn that some of the effects of increased contraceptive use could be cancelled out by the continuing erosion of traditional breastfeeding practices and postpartum abstinence in urban Nigeria. They point out that more extensive analyses of quantitative data from the 1988 survey are forthcoming—including data on changes in proximate determinants, fertility desires and the attitudes and behavior of men. The researchers conclude that "although it is still too early to announce the start of widespread fertility reduction in Africa, the progress of family planning programs in Nigeria . . . warrants close attention."—*L. Remez*

Reference

1. G. A. Oni and J. McCarthy, "Contraceptive Knowledge and Practices in Ilorin, Nigeria: 1983–88," *Studies in Family Planning*, **21**:104, 1990.

Rhythm Accounts for Half Of All Contraceptive Use In Bolivia, DHS Reveals

Bolivian women can expect to have five children during their childbearing years; fertility is higher in Bolivia than in Latin America overall and modern methods of contraception are rarely used. Although a slight fertility decline appears to have occurred among younger Bolivian women, it has been confined almost exclusively to urban areas and to educated women. Less than one-third of married Bolivian women use any contraceptive method, and reliance on traditional methods—especially rhythm, which accounts for half of all use—is far more common than is use of modern methods. These are some of the main findings of the Encuesta Nacional de Demografía y Salud (ENDSA),[1] which surveyed 7,923 Bolivian women aged 15–49 between March and July of 1989.

The Andean nation of Bolivia, situated in the center of the South American continent, is one of the least densely populated countries in Latin America. The population is unevenly distributed, however, with 20 percent living in Los Llanos, an area in the northern central region that accounts for 65 percent of Bolivia's territory. The remaining population is almost equally divided between the Altiplano (the western part of the country, which contains the capital, La Paz) and Los Valles (the central region). The indigenous Indian population is concentrated in the Altiplano (the highlands) and Los Valles, regions that are primarily rural. However, a large part of the Los Llanos region is urban and is influenced by modernizing trends from neighboring Brazil. As of 1988, Bolivia had an estimated six and one-half million people, of which just one-quarter live in cities of 200,000 or more inhabitants.

Considerable gains in educational attainment are apparent from the characteristics of the ENDSA sample: While nearly one-half (48 percent) of women aged 45–49 had never been to school, just four percent of young women aged 15–19 had had no schooling. Educational gains are strongly concentrated in urban areas, however, with 46 percent of urban women, but only seven percent of rural women, having completed at least nine years of schooling. Overall, according to ENDSA data, 18 percent of Bolivian women are currently illiterate, 36 percent have had 1–5 years of schooling, 16 percent have had 6–8 years and 31 percent have completed at least nine years.

Marriage and Fertility

Marriage is nearly universal in Bolivia; just four percent of women in the sample had not married by the end of their reproductive years. More than 60 percent were in a union at the time of the survey,* and the proportion of those over age 30 who were in a union exceeded 80 percent. Table 1 presents some selected findings from the 1989 Bolivian ENDSA. According to the survey results, the median age at first union has not changed in recent years, remaining constant at age 20. While there is little difference in age at marriage according to urban or rural residence, women living in Los Llanos tend to marry earlier (at about age 19) than do those living in the other two regions (at about age 21).

Bolivian women tend to begin childbearing at a relatively young age: Half of the sample had their first child before age 21. Moreover, the ENDSA data on age at first birth (calculated for women age 25–49) indicate a consistent trend in recent years toward an even earlier age at first birth. Among women aged 45–49 at the time of the survey, the median age at first birth was 22 years, compared with age 21 among women currently 25–29. Age at first birth varies considerably by region and by level of educational attainment; the most educated women, for instance, have their first baby two and one-half years later than all other women. In addition, the median age at first birth is lower in Los Llanos (20) than in the Altiplano and Los Valles (over 21 years in both).

By the end of their childbearing years, Bolivian women can expect to have nearly five births; this total fertility rate (TFR) is substantially higher than the average of 3.7 lifetime births per woman across all of Latin America. Bolivian women aged 40–49 have had 5.6 lifetime births; given that this rate is higher than the country's current TFR, there is an indication that fertility has started to decline slightly. However, downward trends are confined primarily to urban areas: According to the ENDSA data, rural women can expect to have over two children more than urban women (6.4 vs. 4.0 lifetime births). Although the data show regional differences in fertility as well, these are much less pronounced than the observed educational variations. For example, at current rates, women with no education will have three more lifetime births than those who have had at least nine or more years of school (6.1 vs. 2.9).

Knowledge and Use of Contraceptives

Roughly three-quarters of the ENDSA sample have heard of at least one contraceptive method, and over 90 percent of these women know where to obtain one. The best-known methods among women in union are periodic abstinence, the IUD, the pill and female sterilization (known by 52–55 percent). The next most commonly recognized methods are injectables (43 percent), the condom (29 percent) and withdrawal (27 percent), while just 16 percent of the overall sample have ever heard of vasectomy. As expected, knowledge levels are highest in urban areas (82 percent) and in the region of Los Llanos (93 percent).

Thirty-three percent of the ENDSA sample have ever used a contraceptive method, although that proportion rises to 46 percent when only married women are considered. Periodic abstinence is not only the best-known method, but is also the most widely used: Thirty-one percent of married women have ever practiced periodic abstinence.

---

*Both legal and consensual unions were considered as marriages in the Bolivian ENDSA.

The ENDSA findings indicate that 30 percent of Bolivian women in union were practicing contraception at the time of the survey, with 18 percent using traditional methods and 12 percent using modern methods.* Over half of all current use is accounted for by periodic abstinence, which 16 percent of married women say they were using at the time of the interview. Even though periodic abstinence is the most popular method among all age-groups, the highest proportion relying on it (85 percent) can be found among the youngest women (15–19-year-olds). Two-thirds of women relying on periodic abstinence can correctly identify the most fertile period in the menstrual cycle, although less than one-third of *all* respondents know when a woman is most likely to conceive.

After periodic abstinence, the next most popular methods currently used are the IUD (five percent), female sterilization (four percent), the pill (two percent) and withdrawal (one percent). Less than one percent of Bolivian women are using injectables, the condom or the diaphragm, and very few women have a partner who is vasectomized.

Contraceptive prevalence and methods used vary considerably with urban or rural residence, region, education and parity. For example, 40 percent of urban women are using a contraceptive method, compared with 19 percent of rural women. The overall level of use is highest in the region of Los Llanos (43 percent), with more than one-quarter using modern contraceptive methods. Although a relatively high proportion of the highly educated women use the IUD (13 percent), the most popular method in this group, as in all other groups, is periodic abstinence (26 percent). The data also indicate that women may be starting contraceptive use at younger ages and at lower parities: Twice as many 20–35-year-olds as 35–44-year-olds began practicing contraception after the birth of their first child (20 percent vs. 10 percent).

The most frequently cited source of methods (other than the condom) is a private doctor's office. Furthermore, the only method for which the public sector is an important provider is female sterilization: Fifty-four percent of Bolivian women who choose sterilization have their operation in a government hospital.

Table 1. Selected findings from the 1989 Bolivian Encuesta Nacional de Demografía y Salud

Measure	Median, % or rate
Median age at marriage (in yrs.)*	20.3
Median age at first birth (in yrs.)*	21.0
TFR (lifetime births per woman)	4.9
% of married women knowing at least one contraceptive method	75.0
% of married women currently using any contraceptive method	30.3
% of married women currently using a modern method	12.2
% of married women who want no more children†	72.3
% of married women with a potential need for family planning	58.4

*Based on women aged 25–49.

†Includes users of sterilization.

To ascertain why the majority of married women in Bolivia do not practice contraception, the 1989 ENDSA asked respondents how they would feel if they became pregnant in the next few weeks. Twenty-four percent said they would be happy, 53 percent said they would be unhappy and six percent claimed they were indifferent. The main reasons why women who would not welcome a pregnancy do not practice contraception are their lack of knowledge about methods and their religious objections to contraception. Of the 80 percent of nonusers in the last interval between births who had children in the five years before the survey, 21 percent said the births were mistimed and 27 percent said they were unwanted. Furthermore, 57 percent of women currently not practicing contraception have no intention of using a method in the future, while 34 percent of nonusers do intend to do so and eight percent are undecided. Among those who expect to start, the methods they said they would most likely use are periodic abstinence (25 percent) and the IUD (22 percent).

Married women not protected by sterilization were asked during the interview whether they wanted any more children. Two-thirds said they did not, a high proportion that varies little by region or by rural or urban residence. The proportion who want no more children increases sharply with parity, rising from 31 percent among women with one child to 66 percent among those with two children, and reaching 83 percent among those with six or more. Including women who have been sterilized increases the proportion of married women who want no more children to three-fourths.

The ENDSA data reveal that 58 percent of married Bolivian women are potentially in need of family planning services because they are fecund, not using any contraceptive method and want no more children or want to wait at least two years before having another. Forty-nine percent want to limit births and 10 percent want to space them. Potential need for family planning is highest among illiterate women (72 percent), rural women (68 percent) and those living in the Altiplano (63 percent).

On average, Bolivian women consider a family of three children to be ideal. Although this ideal is fairly stable across subgroups of women, it varies according to region, with women in the Altiplano saying they would like two children, while those in Los Valles and Los Llanos want three. As a further examination of ideal fertility levels, the wanted fertility rate was calculated for the 1989 ENDSA. With all unwanted fertility excluded, the TFR drops to 3.2 lifetime births per woman, and this decline holds across all subgroups.

Maternal and Child Health

Rates of infant and child mortality—95 deaths per 1,000 infants and 142 deaths per 1,000 children under age five—are higher in Bolivia than in any other Latin American nation that has participated in the DHS program to date. The largest differentials are between the infants of the best educated and least educated women (46 per 1,000 live births and 124 per 1,000, respectively). The intervals between births also exert an important influence on mortality: Babies born less than two years after a previous birth are twice as likely to die as those born after an interval of 2–3 years (154 infant deaths per 1,000 live births vs. 77 per 1,000 live births).

According to the 1989 ENDSA, more than half of the women who gave birth in the five years preceding the survey received no prenatal care. Receipt of prenatal care varies markedly according to educational attainment and urban or rural residence. For example, although 88 percent of the best educated women receive prenatal care, the comparable proportion among uneducated women is only 19 percent. Further, only one-fifth of Bolivian mothers receive a tetanus toxoid vaccination to prevent neonatal tetanus, a major contributor to neonatal mortality in the developing world.—*L. Remez*

---

*Included as modern methods were the pill, the IUD, injectables, vaginal barrier methods (the diaphragm and foam), the condom and male and female sterilization. Rhythm, withdrawal and "others" were included as traditional methods.

Reference

1. República de Bolivia, Ministerio de Planeamiento y Coordinación, *Encuesta Nacional de Demografía y Salud, 1989*, Instituto Nacional de Estadística and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., Columbia, Md., 1990.

Books in Review

Two Views of Childbearing in India

The Causes of Demographic Change: Experimental Research in South India
by John C. Caldwell, P. H. Reddy and Pat Caldwell, The University of Wisconsin Press, Madison, 1988, $37.50 hardbound, $19.95 paperbound, 285 pp.

Labour Pains and Labour Power: Women and Childbearing in India
by Patricia Jeffery, Roger Jeffery and Andrew Lyon, Zed Books Ltd., London, 1989, $15.00 paperbound, 292 pp.

Reviewed by Leela Visaria

These two studies, published within a year of each other, have many parallels. Both are based on anthropological research in rural India, both are products of teamwork, in which the primary responsibilities were shouldered by non-Indians and Indian students and researchers acted as assistants, and the field work in both cases was conducted in the early 1980s. However, the settings of the two studies are different: Jeffery and colleagues conducted their research in two villages of Uttar Pradesh state in northern India; Caldwell and colleagues worked in nine villages of Karnataka state in southern India.

The two studies address many of the same issues. The Jeffery book analyzes women's childbearing experiences in the context of the domestic and class politics of northern India. Using verbatim responses, they examine the way in which various aspects of childbirth—including the child's sex and birth order and the structure and class position of the household it is born to—have different implications for the mothers in the study region. Caldwell and his colleagues are concerned with the nature and causes of demographic change, including determinants of fertility such as education, marriage, contraception, family structure, health care and mortality. The authors unravel many of the underlying processes and meanings through a combination of in-depth interviews and a demographic survey.

The two books are somewhat different in their arrangement of material and style of writing. Each chapter of the Caldwell book is more or less self-contained; all the chapters were written separately and published in various books and journals between 1982 and 1986. The first chapter provides an overview of and a link to the rest of the chapters, along with an elaboration of the focus of the study and methodologies used. In contrast, the text of *Labour Pains and Labour Power* is in the classic anthropological tradition, quoting many of the informants' responses verbatim. Both studies provide useful insights into regions that warrant close watching.

The two communities observed are experiencing similar social, economic and demographic changes, some of which are occurring throughout India. In the Jeffery book, the authors contend that the effects of many of these changes are not necessarily favorable to women in agrarian northern Indian society, but Caldwell and coauthors express guarded optimism by suggesting that in rural southern India, changing family relationships have given greater voice to women in decisions that were once solely the domain of the family patriarch. Comparing these studies might help readers understand the persistent regional diversity of India and explain how changes that enhance the status of women in one region can have the opposite effect in another.

The drought-prone southern region studied by Caldwell and his colleagues has experienced several changes that have influenced traditional power struggles, both on the family and community level and between generations and genders. These changes include a reduction in the average size of landholding; a decline in overall mortality (especially in infant and child mortality, resulting in more children surviving to adulthood); an increase in the availability of local off-farm and urban employment; and the expansion of education, particularly for women, because of educated-men's demand for educated wives.

In this changed environment, childbearing is viewed differently. Prolonged schooling of both boys and girls imposes economic strains on families. The expansion of health services, including contraceptive facilities provided by the state, has helped couples accept contraceptive use and limit their family size. Parents have increasingly ceded to young couples the right to control their fertility within marriage, and education has given women more say in fertility decisions (even though major decisions, such as sterilization, are still not made without the permission of the husband's parents).

The area studied by Jeffery and her colleagues in the north has also experienced fragmentation of land due to population increase. Like most of the regions around the river Ganges, this study area has experienced a "green revolution." Reliable water supplies and new seeds have helped peasants to maintain two or three crops a year and have provided more seasonal work for those without land. Consequently, farm workers have not felt as much pressure to seek employment in nearby towns as have residents of the south. With the increased agricultural productivity, the economic conditions of most households have improved.

At the same time, however, the workloads of women in land- and cattle-owning households in the north have risen. Furthermore, women are excluded not only from property ownership, but from the world beyond their immediate households. Education among women is not

---

Leela Visaria is a senior fellow at the Gujarat Institute of Area Planning in Ahmedabad, India.

seen as necessary: Even in the 1980s, virtually every daughter-in-law in the study area was illiterate and very few young women attended school. Childbearing women appear to have little say in matters relating to fertility control; husbands say they make all of these decisions, and they are unwilling to concede that their parents play any role. However, women say that in the patriarchal family structure, their in-laws continue to play a strong role in family planning decisions.

Both studies report similar demographic changes at the household level, yet even these changes have different implications for the women in each region. In both the northern and southern regions studied, women's age at marriage has increased in recent years, although the initial levels were different. Delayed marriage has not, however, led to smaller family size. In fact, rise in age at marriage has led to a decrease in the time interval between marriage and cohabitation in the north and between cohabitation and first pregnancy in both regions. Overall, young women experience their first pregnancy at approximately the same age as their mothers did.

Caldwell and coauthors state that men's age at marriage in southern India has not increased as much as women's, and that, therefore, the age gap between spouses has narrowed; this has led to marriages based on companionship. Researchers in the Jeffery study did not inquire about the age at marriage among men in the north, and therefore they do not provide the corresponding information for their study region. However, macrolevel data from the Uttar Pradesh censuses suggest that although the age gap between spouses has always been smaller there than in the south, the rise over time in mean age at marriage of men has meant that the age gap between spouses has been maintained. In any event, an unequal relation between spouses does persist in the north, and men continue to make most of the decisions for at least several years after marriage.

The studies also show that in both southern and northern India, young couples seem to be living in nuclear family arrangements sooner after marriage than did the older generations; in some regions, this has given women some freedom from the influence and control of in-laws. The taboos on postpartum intercourse in both study areas are not as firmly adhered to as they were in the past, largely because of resistance by young men. The duration of breastfeeding has also declined by up to six months in both regions, although in the northern villages, mothers continue to breastfeed their children well into the next pregnancy. All these changes seem to raise the frequency of sexual intercourse and have a positive effect on fertility.

Caldwell and his colleagues report on a number of changes in the southern region, including a rise in both the use of the dowry system and the amount paid for dowries; a decline in marriage between relatives; an increase in the average age of brides; and an increased level of education. There has been a change in the internal relationships within the family as well, leaving matters relating to fertility control to the couples themselves. By contrast, in the northern region, setting up a nuclear household does not free a woman from her husband's authority; she tends to lose whatever help her female in-laws may give her in an emergency, and once she is separated from her native village, she loses the support of her own kin.

Regarding this latter factor, the studies show an important difference between the two societies in the practice of visiting natal homes. Even in the 1980s, pregnant women in the north did not ordinarily visit their home village to deliver any of their children, as they do in the south. This is true across social classes and among both Hindus and Muslims. Pregnancy is a demonstration of women's sexuality and is therefore considered shameful, so women are expected to distance themselves from their families at this time. In addition, husbands and their relatives offer virtually no help during labor, which renders their wives even more isolated. In southern India, however, women's contacts with their parental kin are frequent; they go to their natal villages not only for their first delivery, but for subsequent ones if possible. Natal kin continue to be a source of at least moral support for women long after their marriage.

Why are women in the north unable to profit from economic, demographic and social changes, while similar changes actually enhance women's status in the south? Jeffery and coauthors suggest that the lack of access to productive resources or property along with the prevailing systems of kinship, residence and marriage have put women in the north in a disadvantageous position. While this thesis is clear in the context of gender and class allegiances, it must be conceded that there is very little differentiation among women belonging to different class categories. In addition, changes that cut across class divisions have not shaken the hold of patriarchy, which has strong roots in the caste system in northern India. Property or employment will not enhance the status of women unless there are drastic changes in the patriarchal structure and in the increasingly pervasive norms and mores of the ruling upper castes. In the south, the population belonging to the high castes has been numerically small, and the large middle-range caste groups have shown greater readiness to adapt to changes. This might explain the emerging social flexibility in that region.

In the Caldwell book, there is much unnecessary repetition in several chapters, especially about the sources of data and the research approach; this could have been avoided with better editing of the material. Secondly, although the authors have used and analyzed data collected in a demographic survey, they have refrained from presenting most of the data in a tabular form. Instead, table reading is done in the text, which is a bit jarring. The text of the Jeffery volume flows smoothly.

Although they are based on microstudies, these two books have raised larger issues pertaining to changing Indian social structure, responses to change at the household level, and the coping mechanisms of various household members. Yet the books also go beyond previous work by Western scholars on the differences between northern and southern India by pointing out specific factors relating to women's status. They make significant contributions to our understanding of the disparities observed between the two societies and will be valuable not only to demographers but to all social scientists. Both books will also be useful to students interested in microstudies, and guide them in interpreting and analyzing observational data in a larger societal context.

Note to Authors

International Family Planning Perspectives is a peer-reviewed quarterly journal publishing research articles about the developing world that are intended to be of assistance to professionals in the fields of fertility and family planning, maternal and child health and population policy. The editors invite researchers, policymakers and program operators from around the world to submit articles on such topics as contraceptive practice and research; population growth; fertility levels, trends and determinants; childspacing; pregnancy termination; public policies and legal issues affecting family planning and childbearing; family planning program operation, development and evaluation; information, education and communication activities; sexually transmitted diseases; and reproductive, maternal and child health. Manuscripts should be sent to the address below, and should include the affiliation, address, telephone number and Fax number of the corresponding author.

Manuscripts may be submitted in English, French or Spanish, and are read with the understanding that they neither are under consideration elsewhere nor have been published previously. All submissions are reviewed by the editorial staff and, if deemed of interest, undergo anonymous peer review. Manuscripts not accepted for publication will not be returned. Upon acceptance, all manuscripts are edited to the extent necessary to conform to the style of the journal. Authors will have two opportunities to review their article after editing. Authors must assign copyright to the journal.

Selected articles appear on an annual basis in the Spanish edition of the journal, *Perspectivas Internacionales en Planificación Familiar*, and in the French edition, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial.*

Manuscripts should be typed double-spaced, with all pages numbered and with a title page that includes the names and affiliations (at the time of the work reported) of all authors. Submissions should run no more than 30–35 pages, with no more than 7–8 tables; only one copy need be sent. Manuscripts should include a summary of up to one page in length.

Each table and chart should be on a separate page. Authors should check previous issues of *International Family Planning Perspectives* to gain an idea of how tables are to be styled. Authors must supply data points for all line graphs and charts; final art work will be done by the journal's staff.

International Family Planning Perspectives es una revista trimestral que publica monografías sobre el mundo en desarrollo destinadas a asistir a profesionales en las áreas de fecundidad y planificación familiar, salud materno-infantil y políticas de población. Invitamos a investigadores y responsables de políticas y programas de todo el mundo a que presenten artículos sobre temas tales como práctica e investigación en materia de anticonceptivos; crecimiento demográfico; niveles, tendencias y determinantes de la fecundidad; espaciamento de los hijos; terminación de embarazo; políticas oficiales y cuestiones jurídicas que afecten la planificación familiar y la fecundidad; aplicación, elaboración y evaluación de programas de planificación familiar; actividades de información, instrucción y comunicación; enfermedades transmitidas sexualmente y salud reproductiva y materno-infantil. Los originales deberán enviarse a la dirección que figura abajo, debiendo constar en ellos la filiación completa, domicilio postal, teléfono y, de ser posible, número de Fax del remitente.

Los originales pueden ser escritos en español, francés o inglés. Serán aceptados en la inteligencia de que son inéditos y no están siendo considerados por ninguna otra publicación. El personal de edición examinará todos los trabajos presentados y, de hallarlos interesantes, los hará evaluar por otros especialistas sin divulgar el nombre del autor. No se devolverán los originales rechazados. Los que se acepten serán revisados en la medida necesaria para conformarlos al estilo de la revista. Los autores tendrán dos oportunidades de examinar sus monografías revisadas y deberán ceder los derechos de autor a la revista.

Algunos artículos se seleccionarán para la edición anual en español, *Perspectivas Internacionales de Planificación Familiar*, o para la edición francés, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial.*

Los originales deberán presentarse mecanografiados a doble espacio. Las páginas deberán estar numeradas, debiendo figurar en la primera, nombre y filiación (al momento de escribirse el trabajo) de todos los autores. Los artículos no podrán exceder de 30–35 páginas ni incluir más de ocho cuadros. No hace falta enviar sino un ejemplar. Los originales deberán ir acompañados de un resumen de hasta una página.

Cada cuadro o gráfico deberá ir en hoja por separado. Conviene que los autores consulten números anteriores de *International Family Planning Perspectives* para formarse una idea del respectivo formato. Deberán suministrar también todas las cifras y datos necesarios para cada gráfico o cuadro. La revista se encargará del diseño gráfico.

La revue trimestrielle *International Family Planning Perspectives* publie des articles présentant des résultats de recherche sur les pays en développement et destinés à éclairer les spécialistes en matière de fécondité, planification familiale, protection maternelle et infantile et politiques démographiques. La rédaction invite tout chercheur, dirigeant ou administrateur de programme à soumettre des articles sur les sujets suivants: pratique contraceptive et recherche dans le domaine de la contraception; croissance démographique; niveaux, tendances et facteurs déterminants de la fécondité; espacement des naissances; interruption de grossesse; questions juridiques et d'ordre public influant sur la planification familiale et la procréation; administration, élaboration et évaluation de programmes de planification familiale; activités relatives à l'information, l'éducation et la communication; maladies sexuellement transmissibles; hygiène sexuelle et comportement reproducteur; et protection maternelle et infantile.

Les auteurs devraient adresser les manuscrits à l'adresse ci-dessous et mentionner l'affiliation complète, adresse, numéro de téléphone et numéro de télécopieur (si possible) de la personne avec qui nous devons communiquer.

Les manuscrits peuvent être rédigés en français, en anglais ou en espagnol et ne seront acceptés qu'à la condition qu'ils n'aient été soumis à aucune autre publication, ni déjà publiés. Tous les articles sont évalués par la rédaction et s'ils sont jugés intéressants, présentés, à titre anonyme, à l'appréciation de spécialistes. Les manuscrits non publiés ne seront pas renvoyés à leur(s) auteur(s). Une fois acceptés, les manuscrits seront éventuellement révisés afin de les adapter au style et présentation propres à la revue. Les auteurs auront ensuite, à deux reprises, l'occasion de revoir leur article. Ils devront céder les droits d'auteur à la revue.

Certains articles retenus sont également publiés dans la version annuelle de la revue, en espagnol, *Perspectivas Internacionales en Planificación Familiar*, ou en français, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial.*

Tous les manuscrits devraient être préparés de la manière suivante: dactylographiés en double interligne, avec un maximum de 30–35 pages; chaque feuillet doit être soigneusement paginé. La première page doit fournir les noms de tous les auteurs ainsi que leur affiliation (au moment où travaux ou recherches ont été effectués). Les manuscrits ne doivent pas comporter plus de 7–8 tableaux et doivent inclure un résumé ne dépassant pas une page. L'auteur ne doit soumettre qu'un seul exemplaire.

Tableaux et graphiques devront figurer chacun sur un feuillet séparé. Les auteurs sont priés de consulter les numéros précédents de la revue afin de voir comment les tableaux doivent être présentés. Ils devront également fournir les points de données pour tous diagrammes et graphiques. La rédaction se chargera du dessin graphique.

Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg
Editor-in-Chief
International Family Planning Perspectives
The Alan Guttmacher Institute
111 Fifth Avenue
New York, NY 10003
USA

International Family Planning Perspectives
Published quarterly by The Alan Guttmacher Institute

Editorial Office: 111 Fifth Avenue,
New York, N.Y. 10003, United States of America

Editorial Advisory Committee
Barbara M. Boland, Trinidad and Tobago

John C. Caldwell, National Centre for Epidemiology and Population Health, The Australian National University, Canberra

John Cleland, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, England

Mercedes B. Concepcion, The Population Institute, University of the Philippines, Manila

Ronald Freedman, The Population Studies Center of the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor

Noreen Goldman, Office of Population Research, Princeton University, Princeton, New Jersey

Roushdi A. Henin, Department of Sociology, University of Zimbabwe, Harare

Maria Helena Henriques-Mueller, Brazil

Shireen J. Jejeebhoy, Bombay, India

Gavin W. Jones, The Research School of Social Sciences, The Australian National University, Canberra

Lin Lean Lim, International Labor Office, United Nations, Bangkok, Thailand

Wolfgang Lutz, International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis, Laxenburg, Austria

Edith Alejandra Pantelides, Centro de Estudios de Población, Buenos Aires, Argentina

Allan G. Rosenfield, School of Public Health, Columbia University, New York

Nafis Sadik, United Nations Population Fund, New York

Mpembele Daniel Sala-Diakanda, Institut de Formation et de Recherche Démographiques, Yaoundé, Cameroon

Zeba Sathar, Pakistan Institute of Development Economics, Islamabad

Claudio Stern, El Colegio de México, The Population Council, Mexico City

Léon Tabah, Comité International de Coopération dans les Recherches Nationales, Paris, France

Martin Vessey, Department of Public Health and Primary Care, University of Oxford, England

Subscriptions are $22 a year for individuals, $32 a year for institutions, and $29.80 a year for subscription agencies. Back issues are available for $8.00 per copy.

This publication is partly supported by the U.S. Agency for International Development (AID) through contract No. DPE-3032-Z-00-7061-00 with the Population Information Program of The John Hopkins University (JHU). The contents of this publication do not necessarily reflect the views or policies of AID or JHU.

Credits
Cover design: Sheldon Cotler + Associates

Volume 17, Number 2, June 1991

A [illegible] A

International Family Planning Perspectives

Contraceptive Failure in Developing Countries

Making Vasectomy More Attractive
Family Planning Among [illegible]
Impact of Ads on Condom's Image in Mexico

A Publication of
The Alan Guttmacher Institute

International Family Planning Perspectives

ISSN 0162–2749
Volume 17, Number 2, June 1991

Published quarterly by
The Alan Guttmacher Institute

President: Jeannie I. Rosoff
Director of Publications and Editor-in-Chief:
Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg

Executive Editor: Jeanette H. Johnson
Editor: Michael Klitsch
Associate Editor: Frances A. Althaus
Assistant Editors: Lisa Remez, Patricia Rind, Rebecca M. Turner
Copy Editor: Donna Cohen
Production Manager: Valerie Morris
Senior Production Assistant: Georges Louis-Jacques
Production Assistants: Elizabeth LaPorta, Jennifer Reed
Administrative Assistant: Ruth A. Zlotnick

Contributing Editor, Law and Public Policy: Susan Cohen

Consulting Editor:
Charles Westoff

Editorial Office:
111 Fifth Avenue
New York, N.Y. 10003
United States of America

© 1991 by The Alan Guttmacher Institute, An Independent, Nonprofit Corporation for Research, Policy Analysis and Public Education; all rights, including translation into other languages, reserved under the Universal Copyright Convention, the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works and the Inter- and Pan American Copyright Conventions (Mexico City and Buenos Aires).

Second-class postage paid at New York, N.Y. Postmaster: Send address changes to International Family Planning Perspectives, 111 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10003.

Table of Contents

		Page
Update		42
Articles		
Contraceptive Failure Rates In Developing Countries: Evidence from the Demographic And Health Surveys	Lorenzo Moreno and Noreen Goldman	44
Family Planning Knowledge, Attitudes And Practices of Males in Ilorin, Nigeria	Gbolahan A. Oni and James McCarthy	50
Making Vasectomy Services More Acceptable to Men	Ricardo Vernon, Gabriel Ojeda and Ana Vega	55
The Impact of AIDS on Knowledge And Attitudes About Condoms as a Contraceptive Method in Urban Mexico	John Stover and Mario Bravo	61
Comment		
Fertility Decline and Pronatalist Policy in Singapore	Sharon M. Lee, Gabriel Alvarez and J. John Palen	65
Books in Review		
People vs. the Environment	Jodi L. Jacobson	70
An Updated Text: The Figo Manual	Ramiro Molina Cartes	71
Digest		
Family Planning Programs Reduce Developing-World Populations		74
China's Fertility Patterns Closely Parallel Recent National Policy Changes		75
Burmese Total Fertility Rate Remained Stable Between 1973 and 1983		76
Better Access to Health Services in Nicaragua Lowered Infant Mortality		77
Misconceptions About HIV Transmission Are Common in Kinshasa		78
Compliance with AID's Mexico City Policy Has Been Careful and Complete		79

UPDATE

Islamic Okay on Sterilization

In November 1990, the Iranian government legalized female contraceptive sterilization and announced that it would be made available free through the health care system.[1] There still will be limits on access, however: A prospective sterilization client must have had at least three children and have received her husband's permission. Family planning programs had been shut down in the first few years after Iran's 1979 revolution, but 12 years later, all contraceptive methods are now available free of charge. Iran has also adopted a plan designed to shrink the total fertility rate from its current level of 6.3 lifetime births per woman to about four per woman, and is sponsoring a media campaign encouraging smaller families. At around the same time as Iran's announcement, a group of Indonesian Muslim clerics made public a consensus statement pronouncing sterilization to be an acceptable contraceptive method.[2] The statement, released during the 1990 National Seminar for Muslim Scholars on Islam and Population Policy, did not represent a blanket endorsement of contraceptive sterilization, however; it concluded that sterilization is acceptable if it is "wisely implemented [and] only after considering medical, psychological and social factors."

1. N. Roudi, "Iran Eases Limits on Sterilization," *Population Today*, Vol. 19, No. 3, Mar. 1991, p. 3.
2. "Indonesian Muslim Leaders Allow Sterilization," *Population Headliners*, No. 191, Feb. 1991, p. 1.

Honduras Promotes Breastfeeding

New mothers in Honduras became more likely to breastfeed their infants between 1981 and 1987, especially in urban areas.[1] Data from three nationally representative population surveys show the overall probability of an infant being breastfed at six months of age to have risen from 67 percent in 1981 to 80 percent in 1987; in urban areas, the increase was from 38 percent to 59 percent, while in rural areas it was from 80 percent to 89 percent. The median duration of breastfeeding also rose substantially, from 4.1 to 9.9 months in urban areas and from 16.7 to 18.8 months in rural areas. The gains in breastfeeding were particularly large among babies born in hospitals. Multivariate analyses indicate that a hospital-based breastfeeding promotion campaign played a major role in the increase in breastfeeding, especially in the early 1980s. However, its effects appear to have decreased toward the end of the decade, leading the investigators to caution that "intervention in maternity services to support breastfeeding [may have] approached its limits in Honduras."

1. B. M. Popkin et al., "An Evaluation of a National Breastfeeding Promotion Programme in Honduras," *Journal of Biosocial Science*, 23:5, 1991.

Zairian Condom Sales Expand

Nearly nine million condoms are thought to have been sold in Zaire in 1990, according to a preliminary report on a social marketing project.[1] In addition, almost two million foaming contraceptive tablets are estimated to have been sold. The project, recently expanded from Kinshasa to four outlying regions, distributes condoms and spermicides to a variety of outlets—pharmacies, stands, hotels and bars, among others. Market research techniques were used to select a suitable brand name ("Prudence") and slogan ("For the confident man") for the condom. To establish a market for condoms, they have initially been priced to sell at below actual costs (a dozen for about half the price of a bottle of beer). The social marketing effort is also closely linked to a mass media campaign on AIDS prevention.

1. C. Green, "Zaire Leads on Condom Sales," *People*, Vol. 18, No. 1, 1991, p. 37.

Africa's HIV–Tuberculosis Problem

Forty percent of a group of 2,043 tuberculosis patients at treatment centers in Abidjan, Côte d'Ivoire, tested positive for the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), compared with 10 percent of a group of blood donors of similar ages and backgrounds.[1] Once they had controlled for other factors, investigators concluded that tuberculosis patients in Abidjan were 5.8 times as likely as blood donors to be infected with HIV. Such an association could be seen for both HIV-I and HIV-II infection, and for dual infections as well, with tuberculosis patients being 10.6 times as likely as blood donors to be infected with both strains of HIV. When study participants born in Côte d'Ivoire who had confirmed pulmonary tuberculosis were compared with the blood donors by five-year age-group, the same association was seen throughout the sample. In Abidjan, the investigators estimate, 35 percent of all cases of tuberculosis can be attributed to HIV infection. "In Africa," they observe, "tuberculosis may be the commonest opportunistic infection complicating HIV infection. . . . Efforts to control tuberculosis in sub-Saharan Africa can no longer be dissociated from public health programmes for preventing and managing infection with HIV-I and HIV-II."

1. K. M. DeCock et al., "Risk of Tuberculosis in Patients with HIV-I and HIV-II Infections in Abidjan, Ivory Coast," *British Medical Journal*, 302:496, 1991.

Chinese Misstate Family-Size Plans

Family-size preferences reported by Chinese women in surveys are probably seriously underreported, according to an analysis of data from a county in Sichuan province.[1] A total of 664 women canvassed in 1987 were asked how many children they would prefer to have in the absence of a national family planning program, but were also asked a series of more general questions about hypothetical ideal family size. Comparisons of the various answers led the investigator to estimate that 84 percent of rural women and 60 percent of urban women who say they would prefer to have one child actually want to have more children. "In fact," the author states, "[underreporting] was the rule rather than the exception among women expressing a preference for one child." Underreporting is much less common among women who say they want two children. Among those who claim to prefer a one-child family, less educated women and rural women are more likely than others to understate their preferences, but because urban and better educated women are far more likely to claim to prefer a one-child family, the latter represent the majority of all women who appear to understate their family-size preference. "In other words," the researcher concludes, "these more 'modern' women appeared to be the most sensitive to the government's one-child policy."

1. J. Wang, "Women's Preferences for Children in Shifang County, Sichuan, China," *Asian and Pacific Population Forum*, Vol. 4, No. 3, 1990, p. 1.

Son Preference in Bangladesh

Bangladeshi women's strong preference for sons may contribute an additional 4–8 percent to overall fertility there.[1] The behavior of a group of 22,819 women in Matlab, a rural section of Bangladesh, was studied between July 1983 and the end of 1986. These women lived in two sets of villages—70 villages in which special family planning and maternal and child health services were available and 79 in which they were not. During the three-and-one-half-year study, fewer women gave birth in the villages with family planning services (59 percent) than in the comparison villages (69 percent), and this differential was particularly large among women with three or more children. Overall, at each family-size level, women with more sons were less likely to have given birth during the study period than were those with fewer sons. The researchers estimate that in the absence of any gender preference, fertility would have been four percent lower in the villages with no special family planning services and eight percent lower in the villages that had such services. They comment that "a program to promote egalitarian attitudes toward children of both sexes might lead to lower fertility."

1. M. K. Chowdhury and R. Bairagi, "Son Preference and Fertility in Bangladesh," *Population and Development Review*, **16**:749, 1990.

Nepal's Social Marketing Success

Contraceptive social marketing in Nepal is reaching women who had never used family planning previously, most of whom seek to limit rather than to space births.[1] Moreover, these customers appear to be so pleased with the availability and convenience of these services that they say they would be willing to pay more for them. A total of 763 women who had obtained contraceptives from 290 medical shops participating in the social marketing program were interviewed. Around 70 percent of those surveyed had heard advertisements for their method on the radio. Oral contraceptive users were quite likely to know about proper pill use and about contraindications to pill use, although they were less likely to know what to do if they missed three pills during a cycle. Between 50 percent and 75 percent of the oral contraceptive users had never used a method before. Eighty percent of the respondents said they would continue to purchase their method through the social marketing program, even if the price were to rise by 50 percent. A parallel survey of retailers revealed that a small (but not negligible) proportion were poorly informed about contraindications to pill use; however, those who had received special training from the social marketing organization were generally more knowledgeable than the other retailers. A majority believed that raising the price by 50 percent would not affect sales, although three-quarters believed that doubling the price would cause a significant sales downturn. At least two-thirds of retailers who had heard of pregnancy detection kits and of injectables were eager to stock them.

1. A. Shrestha, T. T. Kane and H. Hamal, "Contraceptive Social Marketing in Nepal: Consumer and Retailer Knowledge, Needs and Experience," *Journal of Biosocial Science*, **22**:305, 1990.

The Farming Metaphor

Using terms and concepts familiar to poorly educated rural women and men can improve their understanding of family planning concepts and their use of contraceptive methods, claims a Philippine doctor.[1] Juan Flavier, president of the International Institute of Rural Reconstruction, reports that his organization has used interviews with rural Filipinos to devise new approaches for teaching about family planning. First, they found that rural farmers overwhelmingly wanted to know what family planning is and how it works. "Central to the approach," he explains, "is teaching the unfamiliar by building it on the familiar." Thus, they illustrate the concept of birth control by reminding the farmers that mango growers often remove some of the flowers from a branch because a branch bearing too many fruits will break. Likewise, the condom is compared to the plastic bag that farmers sometimes place over the tassel of corn in order to prevent pollen from falling onto the ear immediately below it. Similarly, rocky soil prevents the formation of cassava tubers; thus, the action of the IUD can be likened to the rocks that hinder the root's development. Flavier recommends education "through nonformal means . . . if farming couples are really [to be] free to decide" how many children they are to have.

1. J. M. Flavier, "The Agricultural Approach to Rural Family Planning in the Philippines," *Integration*, No. 26, 1990, p. 35.

Breastfeeding as Family Planning?

Lactation provides a woman with excellent contraceptive protection for the first six months after delivery, and can even serve as a good contraceptive beyond that point, provided that the woman uses another method after menstruation has resumed.[1] Australian investigators collected data on first postpartum menses for 101 women belonging to the Nursing Mothers' Association of Australia; in addition, by conducting hormonal tests on saliva samples collected from most of these women, they were able to determine the timing of ovulation for 89 of them. The results indicate that lactational amenorrhea persists for a mean of 9.5 months and that anovulation lasts for 10.6 months. The women fully breastfed their infants for 5.3 months, on average. The researchers calculate that if the breastfeeding women in their study had used no method of birth control, half would have become pregnant again during the first 12 months. They observe that such a high one-year pregnancy rate indicates that "although breastfeeding alone reduces fertility, it is not a particularly effective or reliable form of contraception." However, they project that if the breastfeeding women all had started using another method when menses resumed, only seven percent would have become pregnant after one year. The investigators conclude that "an extended period of breastfeeding can produce long periods of lactational amenorrhea and thus exert a major contraceptive effect."

1. R. V. Short et al., "Contraceptive Effects of Extended Lactational Amenorrhea: Beyond the Bellagio Consensus," *Lancet*, **I**:715, 1991.

Contraceptive Failure Rates in Developing Countries: Evidence from the Demographic and Health Surveys

Overall failure rates—inclusive of sterilization—vary substantially across countries, ranging from low values of two percent in Thailand and three precent in Indonesia to high values of 16 percent in Peru and almost 29 percent in Bolivia.

By Lorenzo Moreno and Noreen Goldman

Summary

Based on Demographic and Health Survey data, contraceptive failure rates are estimated for 15 countries in Latin America, Asia and North Africa. The results are generally consistent with those reported in other studies in developed and developing countries. Method-specific failure rates vary dramatically across regions—rates for the Asian countries are generally below those for both the North African and the Latin American countries—as well as within regions. For example, first-year life-table rates for the pill vary between 5.4 percent for Brazil and 11.8 percent for the Dominican Republic. Such variation is believed to result both from data reporting problems and from true variation in the consistency of use across societies.

Introduction

Since the 1960s, data from hundreds of large-scale surveys have documented a substantial increase in contraceptive practice in developing countries. For example, between the mid-1970s and the mid-1980s, the average level of contraceptive prevalence rose from 36 percent to 49 percent in Latin America and from 41 percent to 57 percent in Southeast Asia.[1] Until the 1970s there was little information available on the effectiveness of contraceptive practice in these countries. In recent years, the subject has received more attention: Contraceptive effectiveness has become a more important determinant of fertility because of rising contraceptive prevalence, decreasing desired family sizes and the unavailability of abortion in many countries.[2]

Undoubtedly, the paucity of estimates of contraceptive failure results in large part from the limitations of the available data. The national fertility and family planning surveys most frequently used to track contraceptive behavior since the 1960s—particularly the Contraceptive Prevalence Survey (CPS) and the World Fertility Survey (WFS)—mainly sought information on knowledge, availability and accessibility of contraceptive methods and on current use and ever-use of a method. Occasionally a survey collected additional data on contraceptive use in the respondents' most recent birth interval or intervals, but rarely did either type of survey elicit the two pieces of information necessary for the calculation of contraceptive failure rates: duration of use, and reason for contraceptive discontinuation.* As a result, most current estimates of failure for developing countries were obtained either from clinical trials or program surveys of modern medical methods,[3] or from specialized studies, such as those using a calendar to collect information on contraceptive use.[4]

Because of the availability of data from Demographic and Health Surveys (DHS), failure rates can now be estimated for a large number of developing countries in Latin America, Asia and Africa. These data offer several advantages over information collected from clinical trials or user studies: the ability to calculate failure rates for traditional as well as modern methods, the use of a national sample not characterized by the selection biases frequently associated with other types of samples, and data that are not affected by loss to follow-up.

The DHS core questionnaire contains a truncated contraceptive history. As described in detail later, the questionnaire allows for the coding of one or two methods within each recent birth interval. (In this article we refer only to the version of the core questionnaire used in countries with moderate to high levels of contraceptive use.[5]) As described later, this information appears to be sufficient for the calculation of life-table probabilities of contraceptive failure during the first year of use, even though the surveys contain no specific information on the timing of use. As argued by James Trussell and Kathryn Kost,[6] the life-table estimate—which explicitly controls for duration of use—is the most appropriate way of assessing the relative efficacies of different contraceptive methods and for comparing method failure across subgroups or populations.

The objective of this analysis is to obtain life-table estimates of contraceptive failure for 15 countries with completed DHS surveys and to compare these estimates with those previously obtained for developed countries[7] and for selected developing countries.[8] We seek answers to the following questions: Are the rates of method-specific failure in the developing world greater than those in industrialized countries? Do failure rates in countries with strong family planning programs differ from those with weaker programs? How varied are method-specific failure rates across countries and across regions?

Lorenzo Moreno is on the research staff and Noreen Goldman is professor of demography and public affairs at the Office of Population Research, Princeton University. The research for this article was supported in part by National Institute for Child Health and Development Grant R01-HD-22417 and the Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems. The authors would like to thank Kathryn Kost, Anne Pebley, Germán Rodríguez, James Trussell and Charles Westoff for helpful comments on an earlier draft of this article.

*Only in Egypt, the Philippines and Mexico did the Contraceptive Prevalence Surveys obtain information on reasons for discontinuation or on duration of use of recent methods. In some cases, the World Fertility Survey (WFS) asked about use in the open interval and last closed birth interval, but this information was usually restricted to the method used and the reason for termination; in very few cases was information obtained on the timing and duration of use. (See: S. Singh, "Comparability of Questionnaires: Forty-one WFS Countries," *WFS Comparative Studies*, No. 32, International Statistical Institute, Voorburg, The Netherlands, 1984) In some of these WFS surveys, the data were sufficient for the calculation of extended-use failure rates (see: N. Goldman et al., "Contraceptive Failure Rates in Latin America," *Studies in Family Planning*, 14:50, 1983) but not for use-failure rates. Only in Malaysia and Korea did the WFS collect extensive contraceptive use information.

Questionnaire Structure

The standard, or core, DHS questionnaire, administered to women between 15 and 49 years of age, collects a full birth history as well as considerable information on the respondent's background, contraceptive and postpartum behavior, and the health of any young children she may have. One section of the questionnaire is devoted to contraception: After data on contraceptive knowledge, ever-use, availability and acceptability are collected, a series of questions elicits information about current use and use in the open interval (the period since the most recent birth). A tabular format is then used to record use information for the intervals closed by births that occurred during the five years preceding the year of the interview. For example, for an interview that took place in 1986, contraceptive use information is collected for intervals preceding births since January 1981.

The nature of the information provided varies between the open and closed birth intervals. For the open interval, interviewers determined the duration of use of the current method. If a woman used two separate methods during this interval, or if she was not currently using a method, she was asked the duration of use and the reason for discontinuation of the previous method. Thus, essentially complete contraceptive information is obtained for up to two segments of use in the open interval. With regard to closed birth intervals, the questionnaire also allows for the coding of up to two methods within each of the relevant birth intervals. However, data on duration of use and reason for discontinuation are collected for only the last method in each interval; with the exception of the surveys in Thailand and Mexico, no information on the timing of use was obtained for segments in closed intervals.

The DHS core questionnaire falls short of a calendar survey in two ways: the lack of information on timing of use in closed intervals, and the collection of data for only two segments of use in the open interval and, basically, only one in the closed intervals. Experimental questionnaires in Peru and the Dominican Republic used six-year monthly calendars to collect data on contraceptive use, as well as fertility, postpartum, marital union, residence and employment information. Detailed comparisons were made between the information collected with the experimental calendar and that collected from the core questionnaires in these two countries to determine if the omissions in the latter had any impact on estimates of failure.[9] The results indicate that although the core questionnaire leads to modest underestimates of prevalence of use for periods prior to a survey, the estimates of method-specific failure rates are generally similar to those obtained from the corresponding calendars. Simulation exercises carried out for Peru demonstrated that estimates of failure are much more sensitive to reported durations of use than to the reported starting or stopping dates of use.[10] Thus, although information on the timing of use is helpful in estimating failure—as well as prevalence—reasonable estimates of failure can be obtained for approximate time periods without such data.

Data and Methods

The data used in this paper are derived from nationally representative samples of women of reproductive age in nine countries in Latin America, three in Asia and three in North Africa, all of which were DHS participants. These countries and their survey years are: Bolivia, 1989; Brazil, 1986; Colombia, 1986; Dominican Republic, 1986; Ecuador, 1987; Egypt, 1988; Guatemala, 1987; Indonesia, 1987; Mexico, 1987; Morocco, 1987; Peru, 1986; Sri Lanka, 1987; Thailand, 1987; Trinidad and Tobago, 1987; and Tunisia, 1988. All calculations are based on the Standard Recode version of the relevant data and are weighted for the eight countries that did not have self-weighting samples.

Table 1 presents three measures for each country: the total fertility rate for the three-year period prior to the survey, the contraceptive prevalence rate among married women aged 15–49 (in Brazil and Guatemala, aged 15–44), and a measure of the national family planning effort as of the early 1980s. The first two measures were calculated from the relevant data tapes of the DHS surveys, and the third was based on Robert Lapham and W. Parker Mauldin's 30-item evaluation scale consisting of eight items for policy- and stage-setting activities, 13 for service-related activities, three for record keeping and evaluation, and six for the availability and accessibility of fertility regulation supplies and services.[11] The index can assume values from 0–120.

Table 1. Total fertility rate, current contraceptive use among married women and family planning program effort, by country

Country	Total fertility rate*	% using a method	Program effort†
Latin America			
Bolivia, 1989	4.97	30.3	9
Brazil, 1986‡	3.37	66.2	51
Colombia, 1986	3.17	65.0	85
Dominican Republic, 1986	3.64	49.8	66
Ecuador, 1987	4.13	44.3	42
Guatemala, 1987‡	5.50	23.3	34
Mexico, 1987	3.99	52.9	80
Peru, 1986	4.04	46.2	26
Trinidad and Tobago, 1987	3.05	53.1	56
Asia			
Indonesia, 1987	3.30	47.7	90
Sri Lanka, 1987	2.70	61.7	80
Thailand, 1987	2.23	67.5‡	73
N. Africa			
Egypt, 1988	4.41	37.8	48
Morocco, 1987	4.58	35.9	43
Tunisia, 1988	4.30	49.8	70

*For the three years preceding the survey.

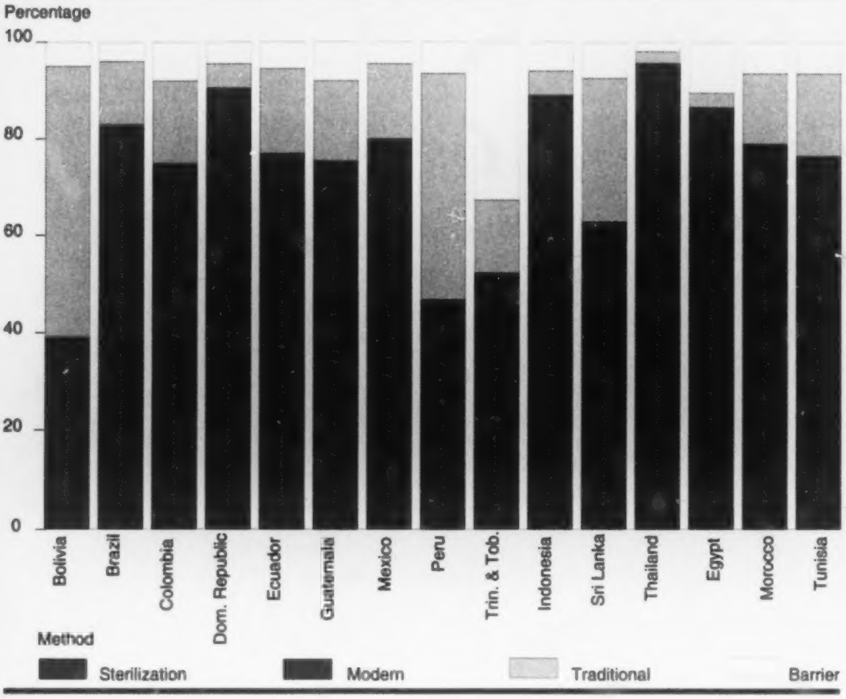
†This score measures the strength of the family planning program effort as of 1982. The measure is based on 30 items which are classified under four general headings: policy- and stage-setting activities; service and service-related activities; record keeping and evaluation; and availability and accessibility of fertility control supplies and services. The index can assume values from 0–120 (see reference 11).

‡Women aged 15–44.

Total fertility rates range from a low of 2.2 children per woman in Thailand to a high of 5.5 children in Guatemala. Correspondingly, contraceptive prevalence is highest in Thailand, with more than two-thirds of women using a contraceptive method, and lowest in Guatemala, with fewer than one-quarter of married women using a method. Only in Guatemala, Bolivia, Egypt and Morocco are prevalence rates below 40 percent. On the index of family planning effort, values range from a low of nine in Bolivia to a high of 90 in Indonesia.

Figure 1 (page 46) considers the specific types of contraceptive use in each country. Use is classified into four categories: sterilization, modern methods (pill, IUD, injectables and implants), traditional methods (rhythm and withdrawal), and barrier methods (primarily the condom and vaginal methods). The graph indicates large variations across countries in the types of methods used. For example, while modern methods dominate in the Asian and North African countries (and in some Latin American countries), use of traditional methods is high in Bolivia and Peru, and barrier method use is high only in Trinidad and Tobago. Sterilization is by far the most common method in the Dominican Republic, yet is relatively uncommon in Bolivia, Egypt, Indonesia, Morocco, Peru and Trinidad and Tobago. Clearly, we would expect to see large variations in the overall failure rates among these countries because of the differing compositions of method use.

Figure 1. Percentage distribution of contraceptive users, by type of method, according to country



Life-Table Calculations

Throughout the demographic literature, life tables have been used to measure several different types of contraceptive failure: user failure, extended-use failure, and method failure. User failure includes only pregnancies that occur while a couple considers themselves to be users of the method; extended-use failure includes unintended pregnancies during and subsequent to actual use, but prior to a subsequent pregnancy; and method failure includes only pregnancies directly attributable to the method, not to improper use.[12]

There are also two major ways of calculating failure—multiple decrement and the associated single decrement (often referred to elsewhere as net and gross rates, respectively). Whereas the multiple decrement measure recognizes that failures occur within the same time intervals as do other types of contraceptive terminations (such as discontinuing use to become pregnant or discontinuing the method for other reasons), the single decrement measure is a hypothetical calculation that examines failure in the absence of any other "competing risk."[13] Although multiple decrement calculations are more indicative of the actual proportion of couples likely to experience a failure, they can vary among methods simply because discontinuation rates vary; if discontinuation rates are high, multiple decrement failure rates will be relatively low because most women will have "exited" the life table for other reasons.

Since our interest in this analysis is on failure that results both from improper use of a method and from the inherent difficulties in using a method, we consider life-table probabilities of user failure. Moreover, since the essence of the study is comparative, we restrict ourselves to single-decrement measures of failure, namely, the probability of becoming pregnant (by a specified duration) while using a method, in the absence of any other form of contraceptive discontinuation. We present only the corresponding first-year probability—also known as the first-year rate—which is the most common life-table measure employed in other studies. The first-year rate is derived from the first 12 months of contraceptive use for each episode of use within the sampling frame. Since fetal deaths are not reported in the DHS maternity history, all failures (except current pregnancies) refer to pregnancies that produced live births.

The life tables constructed in this analysis are based on interviews with women who were in a union at the time they were surveyed. We included in the calculation all contraceptive use segments reported for intervals occurring after the starting date of the contraceptive history (this includes up to two segments in the open interval and the last segment of use within each closed interval). Thus, for a survey that took place at the end of 1986, all segments of use reported for birth intervals beginning after January 1981 would contribute exposure to the life-table calculation, according to the reported duration of use.[*] Although the questionnaire collected information for one interval that began prior to the reference period, use within this interval could have occurred as far back as 10 or 20 years before the survey and was not included in our calculations. Restriction of the sampling frame of use segments to intervals beginning in the reference period imposes an approximate time period on the life-table calculation.[†]

Because our sampling frame is restricted to women proven to be fertile during a specified period, there are potential biases associated with the resulting estimates.[‡] However, a comparison of estimates derived from this definition of the sampling frame with estimates based on all contraceptive exposure from the experimental DHS survey in Peru revealed only small differences.[14]

The number of contraceptive use segments included in the life-table calculations for the first year of use (for all methods combined) ranges from 560 in Guatemala to 4,258 in Indonesia. Since the numbers become considerably smaller in method-specific calculations, separate life-table calculations were carried out for only four specific methods: the pill, the IUD, rhythm and withdrawal. The remaining methods, including the condom, vaginal methods, injections and implants, have been grouped into the "other" category. Since there were few failures resulting from sterilization (there were one or more failures in the calculations for Brazil, Indonesia, Sri Lanka and Thailand), separate life-table calculations are not shown for this method. However, first-year failure rates for all methods combined have been calculated with sterilization both included and excluded from exposure. Greenwood's formula was used to obtain approximate values for the standard errors of the life-table survivorship probabilities on the assumption of a simple random sampling design.[15]*

---

[*] All exposure was censored three months prior to an interview so that first-trimester pregnancies, which are notoriously underreported, would be excluded from the calculations.

[†] With this sampling frame, we lose relatively more exposure in the beginning of the period. For example, much of the use in 1981 would have taken place within birth intervals which began prior to 1981. However, without specific information on the starting or stopping dates of use, we cannot calculate a true period rate of contraceptive failure. Comparisons with the calendar in the Dominican Republic experimental survey indicate that the sampling frame used here captures 64 percent of all first-year failures that occurred during the six-year calendar period (1981–1986). Thus, life-table failure rates based on our sampling frame capture roughly 6 x .64 or 3.8 years' worth of failures in the Dominican Republic.

[‡] For example, this sampling frame would likely exclude recently married women, older women and women who use contraception effectively, and would definitely exclude infertile women or women who consistently abort pregnancies. The definition of the sampling frame could be broadened to include first intervals (i.e., the interval between marriage and first birth) which occur during the reference period. A potential complication with this expanded frame is that one would have to assume that use prior to the first birth occurred after marriage.

Table 2. First-year probabilities of contraceptive failure (and standard errors), by country, according to method

Country	Pill	IUD	Rhythm	Withdrawal	Other	All methods	
						Inc. ster.	Exc. ster.
Latin America							
Bolivia	10.5 (3.8)	3.0 (1.2)	21.2 (1.5)	34.8 (7.6)	35.4 (4.6)	19.2 (1.2)	20.4 (1.2)
Brazil	5.4 (0.8)	13.0 (7.4)	22.8 (3.7)	20.7 (3.1)	16.8 (3.9)	7.9 (0.7)	10.4 (0.9)
Colombia	7.7 (1.2)	5.3 (1.4)	24.8 (3.9)	20.1 (3.3)	23.6 (3.5)	11.7 (0.9)	13.7 (1.0)
Dominican Republic	11.8 (1.4)	3.6 (1.7)	19.9 (4.5)	29.2 (5.4)	23.3 (4.1)	8.7 (0.7)	14.0 (1.2)
Ecuador	5.8 (1.4)	4.6 (1.6)	13.9 (2.9)	27.2 (6.8)	21.1 (4.9)	8.1 (0.9)	10.0 (1.1)
Guatemala	9.8 (2.4)	7.7 (3.7)	24.6 (4.5)	12.0 (6.6)	16.6 (4.5)	10.9 (1.4)	14.5 (1.8)
Mexico	5.4 (0.9)	1.5 (0.5)	3.7 (1.4)	4.0 (1.7)	5.8 (1.3)	3.2 (0.4)	4.1 (0.5)
Peru	5.9 (2.0)	4.2 (1.9)	23.6 (2.0)	17.3 (4.2)	16.8 (3.5)	15.7 (1.2)	16.7 (1.2)
Trinidad and Tobago	5.9 (1.4)	4.2 (2.4)	13.7 (5.4)	17.6 (4.2)	15.2 (1.9)	10.3 (1.0)	11.3 (1.1)
Asia							
Indonesia	2.7 (0.5)	1.9 (0.5)	10.8 (3.2)	8.5 (3.0)	2.6 (0.5)	2.8 (0.3)	2.9 (0.3)
Sri Lanka	7.2 (1.8)	3.4 (1.9)	13.0 (1.3)	11.5 (2.6)	8.1 (1.8)	7.4 (0.6)	10.6 (0.8)
Thailand	2.8 (0.6)	2.5 (1.0)	14.8 (5.3)	7.4 (3.5)	1.0 (0.4)	1.9 (0.3)	2.5 (0.4)
N. Africa							
Egypt	6.9 (0.7)	1.8 (0.4)	38.4 (7.2)	10.3 (5.0)	8.9 (1.4)	6.0 (0.4)	6.0 (0.4)
Morocco	8.6 (0.8)	1.1 (1.1)	30.5 (3.8)	11.5 (2.9)	22.6 (4.1)	10.9 (0.8)	11.1 (0.8)
Tunisia	5.4 (1.1)	2.7 (0.7)	14.2 (2.5)	12.5 (4.2)	21.2 (3.2)	7.4 (0.7)	8.0 (0.8)

Results

Table 2 presents first-year failure rates by method, along with the associated standard errors, for each of the 15 countries. Overall, the resulting life-table values are plausible. The median first-year failure rates (not shown) are 5.9 percent for the pill, 3.4 percent for the IUD, 19.9 percent for rhythm, and 12.5 percent for withdrawal. In only three cases do the failure rates for the pill or the IUD exceed 10 percent: in Bolivia and the Dominican Republic for the pill and in Brazil for the the IUD.

By contrast, failure rates exceed 20 percent for withdrawal in five countries and for rhythm in seven countries. The category of "other" methods is characterized by the greatest variation in failure rates partly because of the different methods used across countries; for example, there is heavy reliance on injections in Indonesia and Thailand and frequent use of the condom and abstinence in Bolivia, Egypt, Tunisia, Morocco and Sri Lanka.

The failure rates for Mexico show little variation by method and are consistently low. We speculate that the resulting estimates in Mexico are distorted by reporting errors. The Mexico survey was the only DHS survey to collect information on contraceptive use without reference to birth intervals. The fact that dates and durations of use were frequently missing appears to have resulted in several anomalous findings for Mexico.†

Because of the small number of Asian and North African countries included in this analysis, it is difficult to tell whether life-table failure rates show variation across regions. Our estimates suggest that the rates for the Asian countries—particularly Indonesia and Thailand—generally fall well below the average values for the other countries. The variation across countries appears to correlate strongly with Lapham and Mauldin's measure of the degree of family planning effort in each country. For example, there is an average correlation of -0.75 between the overall first-year failure rate (including sterilization) and the index of effort. The only major exception is Colombia, which has a strong family planning effort but a relatively high failure rate (12 percent). As shown in Table 1, the Asian countries generally have both the highest indices of effort and the lowest failure rates, while Bolivia and Peru have both the lowest indices of effort and the highest failure rates in the sample. The high correlation does not result primarily from wider use of modern methods in countries with strong family planning efforts. Correlations between the measure of effort and the first-year failure rate for the pill, rhythm, withdrawal and other methods are -0.46, -0.48, -0.52 and -0.59, respectively; the correlation for the IUD is much smaller (-0.20). This suggests that a strong family planning program results in more effective use of traditional methods, as well as use of modern methods, perhaps as a result of increased information and motivation. Undoubtedly, however, part of this high correlation also results from social and economic factors that are probably associated with both the failure rates and the level of family planning effort across countries.‡

To see how these failure rates compare with those reported in previous surveys in both developed and developing countries, we rely primarily on three comprehensive recent reviews of failure rates by Trussell and Kost, Shireen Jejeebhoy and Charles Hammerslough.[16] In each review, as in our analysis, rates for a given method vary enormously across countries, making comparisons among reviews difficult. Such variation could result from a variety of factors, including true differences in consistency or correctness of method use and a combination of recall and reporting errors.

---

*Since the DHS surveys are based on multistage cluster samples, the actual sampling errors are larger than those calculated here under the assumption of simple random samples.

†In the Mexico DHS, a history of contraceptive use was collected for the period between January 1982 and the interview date (March to May 1987) without reference to the interval between successive births (See: *Encuesta Nacional Sobre Fecundidad y Salud, 1987*, Dirección General de Planificación Familiar, Secretaría de Salud, and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Mexico City, 1989) This type of data collection has been shown to result in poor reporting of contraceptive use (See: A. R. Pebley, N. Goldman and M. K. Choe, "Evaluation of Contraceptive History Data in the Republic of Korea," *Studies in Family Planning*, 17:22, 1986). The result in the Mexico DHS was a large number of missing responses for starting and stopping dates of use. Considerable imputation was required to convert the contraceptive history information into segments of use within birth intervals; moreover, a large percentage of segments with missing durations of use remained. (In the life-table calculations presented in this analysis, segments with missing durations of use were excluded from the calculation.) Tabulations not shown here indicate yet another problem with these estimates—the percent of failures that occurred during the first year of use was substantially smaller in Mexico than in any of the other 14 surveys.

‡Calculations not presented here indicate that the correlation would be -0.64 (in other words, remain almost as high) after controlling for women's education and region of residence.

The main difference between the rates presented in this study and those reported for developed countries concerns the relative efficacy of the pill and the IUD. In our study, the failure rate of the pill exceeds that of the IUD in all countries except Brazil, for which the standard error of the IUD failure rate is very high. In contrast, among the studies in the United States and Western Europe discussed by Trussell and Kost as well as by Jejeebhoy, the first-year failure rate of the IUD generally exceeds that of the pill. The reversal appears to be attributable to higher user failure rates associated with the pill in developing countries, compared with the United States and Europe. For example, the average first-year failure rate for the pill reported in Trussell and Kost is about two percent, yet the corresponding rate in our study exceeds five percent in 13 out of the 15 countries (only Indonesia and Thailand have rates comparable to those for the United States). The higher failure rates for the pill found in our study are consistent with higher first-year failure rates for the pill (compared with the IUD) in previous studies in the Philippines, Venezuela, Egypt, Bangladesh and Korea.[17]

The average first-year failure rate of three percent for the IUD in our study is close to the average of about two percent for the studies considered by Trussell and Kost and the range of three to five percent in previous studies in Egypt, the Philippines and Venezuela.[18] The IUD shows less variation in failure rates across countries than do the other methods in our study. IUD failures are more likely to result from method failure (as opposed to improper or inconsistent use); this probably results in smaller variances in user failure rates.

Failure rates for rhythm in our study are generally consistent with those reported elsewhere. For example, the average first-year failure rate of 20 percent in our study compares with a typical value of about 16 percent in the Trussell and Kost review, a rate of 20 percent in a recent study of the ovulation method,[19] and rates of 20 percent and 33 percent in the Philippines and Venezuela, respectively.[20] Not surprisingly, the variation in the failure rate for rhythm as well as for withdrawal exceeds that for the pill and the IUD.

The final two columns of Table 2 indicate the overall first-year failure rates, including and excluding sterilization. Once again, the rates for Mexico are much lower than in other Latin American countries. The failure rates inclusive of sterilization show substantial variation across countries, ranging from low values of about two percent in Thailand and three percent in Indonesia to high values of 16 percent in Peru and almost 20 percent in Bolivia. The range of failure rates remains as large when sterilization is excluded. Although part of this range results from method-specific variation—method-specific failure rates in the two Latin American countries consistently exceed those in the two Asian countries, sometimes by a factor of four—the range is widened by the heavy reliance on traditional methods of contraception in Bolivia and Peru. The importance of sterilization in reducing the failure rates in Brazil, the Dominican Republic, Guatemala and Sri Lanka is apparent from a comparison of the relatively wide differences between the estimates including and excluding sterilization in these countries.

Discussion

Quality of data is important in estimating contraceptive failure rates. Any estimate of failure depends critically on whether or not particular births are reported as having resulted from contraceptive failure, and respondents are likely to be sensitive about reporting such information. In addition, there are obvious ambiguities of classification for conceptions following imperfect or sporadic method use. Life-table measures are also dependent on the correct reporting of durations for each segment of use and the acknowledgment of multiple segments of use within intervals.

Recent analyses based on a comparison between the DHS core questionnaire and an experimental questionnaire fielded in Peru and in the Dominican Republic[21] indicate that the use of a monthly calendar for the collection of contraceptive information leads to more complete and more accurate reporting, and subsequently to more reliable estimates of contraceptive prevalence and discontinuation. The DHS project has therefore decided to include a monthly calendar for a five- to six-year period in the second round of surveys in countries with a significant level of contraceptive practice. The calendar is designed to collect a record of contraceptive use (as it relates to pregnancies and births in the period), detailed information on the reasons for contraceptive discontinuation, and a monthly record of postpartum behavior; the latter measure is also important for estimating failure, since women using a contraceptive method may not be exposed to the risk of conception.

Using a calendar will allow for the inclusion of all relevant exposure and failures within the specified reference period. The resulting failure rates will not be affected by the potential sampling frame biases described earlier, and they should have substantially smaller standard errors than those presented here. The next round of DHS data is expected to lead to both more accurate and more robust measures of contraceptive failure for a large number of developing countries.

References

1. "Levels and Trends of Contraceptive Use as Assessed in 1988," *Population Studies 110*, United Nations, New York, 1989.

2. J. Bongaarts and G. Rodriguez, "A New Method for Estimating Contraceptive Failure Rates," *Working Paper No. 6*, The Population Council, New York, 1989; C. R. Hammerslough, "Overview" and "Introduction," *Measuring the Dynamics of Contraceptive Use*, proceedings of the United Nations Expert Group Meeting on Measuring the Dynamics of Contraceptive Use, United Nations, New York, 1991.

3. J. E. Laing, "Differentials in Contraceptive Use-Effectiveness in the Philippines," *Studies in Family Planning*, **10**:302, 1974; J. Bailey, C. Measham and M. Umaña, "Fertility and Contraceptive Practice, Bogotá, 1964–74," *Studies in Family Planning*, **15**:249, 1976; A. Gallegos et al., "Recent Trends in Contraceptive Use in Mexico," *Studies in Family Planning*, **14**:50, 1977; J. E. Laing and A. N. Alcántara, "Final Report on the 1976 National Acceptor Survey," unpublished manuscript, University of the Philippines Population Institute, Manila, 1980; A. R. Khan, W. H. Mosley and F. A. Jahan, "Early Experience with Use of Norethisterone Enanthate as Injectable Contraceptive in Model Clinic," *Johns Hopkins University Fertility Research Program Report No. 7*, Dacca, Bangladesh, 1976; J. E. Laing, "Estimation of National Contraceptive Prevalence from Survey Data on Acceptors," unpublished manuscript, University of the Philippines Population Institute, Manila, 1977; P. Prior, "IUD Use-Effectiveness in an Urban Guatemalan Clinic," Bulletin of the Pan American Health Organization, **11**:117; T. Narkavonnakit, T. Bennett and T. R. Balakrishnan, "Continuation of Injectable Contraceptives in Thailand," *Studies in Family Planning*, **13**:99, 1982; D. Martínez and R. F. García-Flores, "La T Postparto, un Anticonceptivo Intrauterino Para el Puerperio Inmediato," *Ginecología y Obstetricia de México*, **51**:331; B. Affandi et al., "Clinical Trials of Norplant in Indonesia," in M. M. Shaaban, ed., *The Norplant Subdermal Contraceptive System*, Assiut University, Assiut, 1984, p. 43; R. R. Lara, "Métodos de Barrera," in *Planificación Familiar, Población, Salud Materno-Infantil*, J. Martínez Manautou and J. Giner, eds., Instituto Mexicano del Seguro Social, Subdirección General Médica, Jefatura de Servicios de Planificatión Familiar, 1984, p. 335; A. Y. Choudhury et al., *Use-Effectiveness of Oral Pills and Condoms*, technical report, Program for the Introduction and Adaption of Contraceptive Technology, Dacca/Bangladesh, 1986, p. 158; J. Gao et al., "A Randomized Comparative Clinical Evaluation of the Steel Ring, the VCu 200 and the TCu 220c IUDs," *Contraception*, **33**:443, 1986; M. Salah et al., "Five-year Experience With the Norplant Implants in Assiut, Egypt," *Contraception*, **35**:543; Chi et al., "Clinical Acceptability, Use-Patterns and Use-Effectiveness of the Vaginal Contraceptive Sponge and Neo Sampoon Tablets—An International Multi-Center Randomized Clinical Trial," *Contraception*, **36**:499, 1987; K. Lassner et al., "Analysis of Sterilization Failure in Brazil," *International Journal of Gynecology and Obstetrics*, **27**:255, 1988;

D. Nolasco, "Can Natural Family Planning Really Work?," *Population Forum*, 1989, p. 13; R. Ramos, "A Comparative Analysis of Three Different Dose Combinations of Oral Contraceptives," *Contraception*, **35:**543, 1989.

4. S. Gaslonde and E. Carrasco, "The Impact of Some Intermediate Variables on Fertility: Evidence from the Venezuelan National Survey," World Fertility Survey Occasional Papers, No. 23, Voorburg, The Netherlands, 1982; J. E. Laing, "Natural Family Planning in the Philippines, *Studies in Family Planning*, **15:**49;—"Continuation and Effectiveness of Contraceptive Practice: A Cross-Sectional Approach," *Studies in Family Planning*, **16:**138, 1985.

5. Model "A" questionnaire, *DHS Basic Documentation No. 3*, Columbia, MD, 1987.

6. J. Trussell and K. Kost, "Contraceptive Failure in the United States: A Critical Review of the Literature," *Studies in Family Planning*, **18:**237, 1987.

7. Ibid.

8. C. R. Hammerslough, 1990, op. cit. (see reference 2).

9. L. Moreno, N. Goldman and O. Babakol, "Collection of Survey Data on Contraception: Experimental Studies in Peru and the Dominican Republic," paper presented at the annual meeting of the Population Association of America, Toronto, May 3–5, 1990.

10. N. Goldman, L. Moreno and C. F. Westoff, "Peru Experimental Study: An Evaluation of Fertility and Child Health Information," Office of Population Research, Princeton University, and Demographic and Health Surveys (DHS), Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Columbia, MD, 1989.

11. R. Lapham and W. P. Mauldin, "Contraceptive Prevalence: The Influence of Organized Family Planning Programs," *Studies in Family Planning*, **16:**117, 1985.

12. C. Tietze, "Ranking of Contraceptive Methods By Levels of Effectiveness," *Advances in Planned Parenthood*, **6:**117, 1971; J. Trussell and K. Kost, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 6).

13. R. Potter et al., "Appendix X.2," in R. Freedman and J. Y. Takeshita, *Family Planning in Taiwan*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, 1969, p. 458; C. Tietze and S. Lewit, "Statistical Evaluation of Contraceptive Methods," *Clinical Obstetrics and Gynecology*, **17:**121, 1974.

14. N. Goldman, L. Moreno and C. F. Westoff, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 10), p. 51.

15. R. C. Elandt-Johnson and N. L. Johnson, *Survival Models and Data Analysis*, John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1980.

16. J. Trussell and K. Kost, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 6); S. Jejeebhoy, "Measuring Contraceptive Use-Failure and Continuation: An Overview of New Approaches," *Measuring the Dynamics of Contraceptive Use*, proceedings of the United Nations Expert Group Meeting on Measuring the Dynamics of Contraceptive Use, United Nations, New York, 1988; and C. R. Hammerslough, 1991, op. cit. (see reference 2).

17. S. Jejeebhoy, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 16); C. Hammerslough, 1990, op. cit. (see reference 2); I. H. Park and S. K. Kong, "Contraceptive Failure and Discontinuation in Korea," *Comparative Study of Fertility Control Experiences in Republic of Korea and Republic of China*, Korea Institute for Population and Health, Seoul, 1987, p. 121.

18. B. Entwisle and H. A. Sayed, "Estimation of Use-Failure Rates for the Pill and Intrauterine Device in Egypt: An Assessment of Life Table and Current Status Approaches," *Measuring the Dynamics of Contraceptive Use*, proceedings of the United Nations Expert Group Meeting on Measuring the Dynamics of Contraceptive Use, United Nations, New York, 1991; and S. Jejeebhoy, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 16).

19. J. Trussell and L. Grummer-Strawn, "Contraceptive Failure of the Ovulation Method of Periodic Abstinence," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **16:**5, 1990.

20. S. Jejeebhoy, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 16).

21. N. Goldman, L. Moreno and C. F. Westoff, "Peru Experimental Study: An Evaluation of Fertility and Child Health Information," Office of Population Research, Princeton University, and Demographic and Health Surveys, Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Columbia, MD, 1989; and C. F. Westoff, N. Goldman and L. Moreno, "Dominican Republic Experimental Study: An Evaluation of Fertility and Child Health Information," Office of Population Research, Princeton University and Demographic and Health Surveys, Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Columbia, MD, 1990.

Resumen

En base a datos de las Encuestas de Demografía y de Salud, tasas de falla de anticonceptivos fueron estimadas para 15 países en América Latina, Asia y Africa del Norte. Las medidas resultantes son generalmente consistentes con las reportadas en otros estudios en países desarrollados y en vías de desarrollo. Tasas de falla específicas por método varían dramáticamente tanto entre regiones como dentro de estas regiones. Por ejemplo, las tasas para los países asiáticos son generalmente menores que aquéllas en los países del Norte de Africa y de América Latina, y dentro de América Latina, las tasas de falla del primer año para la píldora varían entre 5,4 por ciento en Brasil y 11,8 por ciento en la República Dominicana. Se piensa que la variación se debe tanto a problemas de notificación de los datos así como a variaciones reales en la consistencia de uso entre sociedades.

Résumé

Les taux d'échec de la contraception sont estimés pour 15 pays d'Amérique latine, d'Asie et d'Afrique du Nord, en se basant sur les données tirées des Enquêtes démographiques et de santé. Les chiffres qui en résultent sont généralement compatibles avec ceux signalés dans d'autres études effectuées dans les pays développés et en développement. Les taux d'échec spécifiques aux méthodes varient considérablement d'une région à l'autre—les taux des pays asiatiques sont généralement inférieurs à ceux des pays d'Afrique du Nord et d'Amérique latine—ainsi qu'à l'intérieur d'une région. Ainsi, les taux d'échec de la première année pour la pilule, calculés en faisant usage de la méthode des tables de mortalité, varient entre 5,4 pour cent pour le Brésil et 11,8 pour cent pour la République dominicaine. On croit cette variation attribuable à des problèmes de communication de données et à une variation véritable dans l'uniformité d'utilisation d'une société à l'autre.

Family Planning Knowledge, Attitudes And Practices of Males in Ilorin, Nigeria

"Although the use of contraceptives among [Ilorin] men in our study was limited, favorable attitudes toward family planning and a willingness to use contraceptives have clearly emerged, probably recently, among some of the population."

By Gbolahan A. Oni and James McCarthy

Summary

A household survey conducted between September 1988 and January 1989 in Ilorin, Nigeria, yielded data on the contraceptive knowledge, attitudes and practices of 1,022 men. Although the sample is not representative of the city, the data provide comparative information by level of education and area of residence, which serves as a proxy for socioeconomic status.

Contraceptive knowledge is virtually universal among these men, with the condom and oral contraceptives the most commonly known methods. The condom is also the most commonly used method, yet less than half of men from the most educated and highest socioeconomic groups have ever used it.

The majority of men at all education and residence levels have positive attitudes toward family planning, and contraceptive use is associated with communication about family planning between husbands and wives. Among men who say they have had such discussions, 22–60 percent report that their wives use a method, compared with 4–10 percent of those who say they have not discussed family planning with their wives.

Introduction

In research on the determinants of fertility in sub-Saharan Africa, and in programs designed to increase contraceptive use among African populations, increasing attention is being paid to the contraceptive knowledge, attitudes and practices of African men.[1] This interest stems from the widely held belief that in the patriarchal, traditional African family, the role of husbands is paramount in couples' decisions about fertility regulation.[2] Although this belief is widely supported by the research of many scholars, there are relatively few empirical studies of the family planning knowledge, attitudes and practices of African men.

In contrast, as a result of such international efforts as the World Fertility Surveys (WFS) and the Demographic and Health Surveys (DHS), there are a fair number of large, comparable, nationally representative surveys on the fertility attitudes and behaviors of African women. Although women are the best sources of information on actual fertility and its proximate determinants, a thorough understanding of the social and cultural determinants of fertility, especially in patriarchal societies, requires that studies of men also be undertaken.

Most recent studies of men's perspectives on fertility have been based on analyses of data from selected populations, often those of single cities. Until such projects as the WFS and DHS include males in their country surveys, results from the smaller studies will continue to provide essential information both to scholars interested in the determinants of fertility in Africa and to policymakers and program officials interested in effective interventions to promote contraceptive use.

The traditional African pattern of male involvement in fertility decision-making is clearly reflected in existing studies of men's influence over these matters in Nigeria. In a study carried out among married Nigerian students, one out of every five women who were not using a contraceptive method gave husband's objection as the reason for nonuse.[3] Another study reported that men fear their wives' use of contraceptives will undermine their own authority as head of household or encourage their wives to be promiscuous.[4]

However, most of these studies were conducted some time ago, and more recent research throughout Africa, particularly in Nigeria, has shown an increase among both men and women in knowledge about, favorable attitudes toward and ever-use of contraceptives.[5] Some attribute these changes to the severe economic deterioration that has hit Nigeria since the end of the oil-fed boom of the 1970s and early 1980s. Although there is some dispute over the long-term effect of such crisis-led changes on fertility and contraceptive use,[6] public policy in Nigeria has clearly altered dramatically with regard to fertility and contraceptive use during the current economic crisis. Evidence can be found in the very existence of an explicit population policy that has specific targets for fertility reduction, and in the recent development of large public information and service delivery programs designed to increase the use of contraceptives.[7]

In this article, we examine the contraceptive knowledge, attitudes and practices among a sample of men in Ilorin, Nigeria, who are married to women aged 15–49. We are interested specifically in finding answers to the following questions:

- To what extent are married men aware of family planning?
- Do they know of specific methods?
- What are their sources of information and how long ago did they first receive this information?
- Do men use contraceptives? If so, what method do they use and how long ago did they start using it?
- Do men have positive attitudes towards contraception?
- Do they generally discuss family planning with their wives? What are their wives' attitudes toward using contraceptives?
- Do men think they or their wives should have the primary responsibility for deciding about contraceptive use? Which of them do they think should be responsible for using the contraceptives?

Gbolahan A. Oni is senior lecturer in the Department of Epidemiology and Community Health, University of Ilorin, Nigeria. James McCarthy is director of the Center for Population and Family Health, Columbia University, New York.

Ilorin, the capital of Nigeria's Kwara State, has a population of approximately 700,000. It became the capital in 1967, when the first 12 states were established in Nigeria (the number of states has since increased to 21). Prior to 1967, Ilorin could have been characterized as a traditional town, with indigenous occupations that included farming, pottery-making, weaving, leather work and embroidery. Substantial population growth accompanied the city's becoming a state capital, and additional opportunities for employment have opened up in federal and state agencies (including a university, a polytechnic and both a general and a teaching hospital) as well as in manufacturing and construction. Many of the people who have filled these new positions in the modern sector are educated men and women from other parts of Nigeria, drawn to Ilorin by job opportunities. Ilorin can now be described as an emerging modern city, with a diverse population.

The availability of contraceptives in Ilorin has also changed in recent years. Modern contraceptives can be obtained at three government clinics and in dozens of private hospitals, chemist shops and drugstores. Most of these sources were unavailable before 1983, when there were only two government clinics providing any extensive service. In addition, in 1986 the Kwara State Ministry of Health, in collaboration with Columbia University in New York, introduced community-based distribution of family planning methods in Ilorin; this made it possible for some market women and traders to sell certain types of contraceptives, including the pill and the condom. Kwara State also sponsored one of Nigeria's first state-wide media campaigns to promote contraceptive use and the idea of having small families.[8]

Data and Methods

The data analyzed in this paper are from a household survey fielded in Ilorin between September 1988 and January 1989 that focused on fertility attitudes and behavior, knowledge and use of contraceptives, and a number of important socioeconomic background characteristics. Separate samples of married women ages 15–49 and men currently married to such women were collected. In 1983, a similar survey of women only was carried out with a sample of wives aged 15–35.[9]

The decision to interview separate samples of men and women was based on practical considerations. Although a survey of couples would have allowed a direct comparison of responses from husbands and wives, such a design could also create problems in a setting as traditional as Ilorin. Kwara State, and Ilorin, are on the border between largely Muslim northern Nigeria and largely Christian southern Nigeria; many aspects of husband-wife relations in Ilorin, especially among the more traditional segments of the population, are similar to those typical in northern Nigeria. For example, the consent of the husband is often required before a woman can participate in a study such as the one we conducted. In this context, a woman might be reluctant to answer questions her husband had already been asked. Thus, the local investigator concluded that the practical difficulties of interviewing husbands and wives of the same families outweighed the analytical benefits.

Table 1. Percentage of men who have knowledge of contraceptives and those who have practiced family planning, by selected socioeconomic and demographic characteristics, Ilorin, Nigeria, 1988

Characteristic	N	Have knowledge	Have practiced
All	**1,022**	**97**	**32**
Education			
None	259	89	6
Primary	194	96	21
Secondary	173	98	33
Postsecondary	395	99	53
Socioeconomic residence			
Low	350	90	8
Medium	438	98	40
High	234	99	50
Occupation*			
None	359	97	23
Traditional	330	92	16
Modern	655	97	40
Religion			
Muslim	482	92	17
Christian	536	98	45
Age-group			
15–24	27	85	7
25–29	120	95	27
30–34	220	94	29
35–39	217	98	36
40–44	189	97	37
45–49	125	97	37
≥50	122	93	25
Type of marriage			
Monogamous	801	96	33
Polygamous	186	94	26
Children ever born			
0–2	329	96	26
3–4	327	97	36
5–6	204	94	35
≥7	158	94	32
Additional child wanted			
Yes	690	95	23
No	265	97	52

*Traditional occupations include farming, various crafts and petty trading. Modern occupations include professional positions as well as manufacturing and service positions.

Note: Numbers of cases in categories do not always add to 1,022 because of missing values for some cases.

Because the last reliable census in Ilorin, and in all of Nigeria, was conducted in 1963, when Ilorin was a very different place, no adequate data to establish a representative sample of the Ilorin population existed. Hence, the sampling frame for the current study was designed to collect data from groups of men and women that represented the socioeconomic range of the population.

Ilorin administrative wards were stratified into three groups, depending on whether they represent a low, medium or high socioeconomic area. The identification of each ward was carried out by the local investigator, in consultation with colleagues from the University of Ilorin who have carried out research studies in the city and were familiar with the characteristics of each ward. One or two wards were selected from each stratum, and random samples of households were drawn from the selected wards. Trained male interviewers administered questionnaires to men married to women aged 15–49 who were not included in the female sample. This article concentrates on the data from a total of 1,022 males.

We emphasize that the resulting sample of men is not representative of the Ilorin population. This limitation, however, does not interfere with analysis of the data to reveal differentials in knowledge and behavior that are likely to characterize the distinct socioeconomic groups living in Ilorin, and we confine our analysis and discussion to those groups. Table 1 presents basic information on knowledge and use of contraceptives for the entire sample and within categories of a number of social and demographic variables; all other results are reported within categories of either area of residence (the variable on which the sample was stratified) or level of education of the respondent (which is highly correlated with residence). If adequate census figures on the distribution of the population by residence should become available, appropriate weights can be applied to each case and overall prevalence levels for the population can be calculated.

Results

The sample of 1,022 married men was fairly evenly divided among the three types of residential areas, and included substantial numbers of men with a secon-

Table 2. Among men with knowledge about family planning, percentage who have heard of specific methods, by education and residence

Method	Education				Socioeconomic residence		
	None	Primary	Secondary	Post-secondary	Low	Medium	High
Pill	43	71	78	84	51	79	82
IUD	24	48	41	54	31	48	53
Injectables	46	66	74	76	52	73	76
Female sterilization	19	43	49	58	26	50	60
Condom	46	73	82	88	55	83	83
Withdrawal	31	55	55	73	36	65	70
Diaphragm	23	36	32	60	26	46	70
Spermicides	21	39	46	66	26	51	66
Male sterilization	17	41	45	57	24	46	60

dary or postsecondary education (Table 1—page 51). We are certain that the distribution of the population of married men in Ilorin differs from the distribution in our sample in that there are proportionally fewer well-educated men in the city and more living in poor areas. Table 1 also presents the distribution of the sample among categories of several other variables that are usually of interest in studies of African fertility.

• *Knowledge and Use of Contraceptives.* The data presented in Table 1 reveal that some knowledge of contraceptive methods is virtually universal among men in Ilorin (97 percent overall). Even among men with no formal education and among those living in the poorest areas of the city, approximately 90 percent reported that they knew of some family planning method. Levels of ever-use of contraceptives are considerably lower, and vary much more by residence and education. Ever-use ranges from six percent among men with no education to 53 percent among those with a postsecondary education, and from eight percent among those living in the poorest areas to 50 percent among those residing in the most affluent areas.

Respondents who said they had some knowledge of contraceptives were asked to indicate which of a list of methods they had heard of, and to report which methods they had used. As Table 2 shows, knowledge of specific methods is much lower among men with little or no education than among those with a postsecondary education. For example, 43 percent of men with no education said they knew of the pill, compared with 84 percent of those with a postsecondary education. Similarly, 24 percent of men with no education said they knew of the IUD, compared with 54 percent of those with a postsecondary education. Across all education groups, the condom was the method most likely to have been heard of; yet less than half (46 percent) of respondents with no education knew about it, compared with 88 percent of those in the highest education group. Sterilization, the diaphragm and spermicides were known by the lowest proportions of men of all levels of education. The pattern of knowledge according to residence is very similar to that according to education.

Most of the respondents (60 percent) reported that they had learned about family planning through radio, television or newspapers (not shown). In addition, except for those men with a postsecondary education, a majority of men reported first learning about family planning within the last five years.

Table 3. Percentage of men reporting that they or their wives have ever used specific methods, by education and residence

Method	Education				Socioeconomic residence		
	None	Primary	Secondary	Post-secondary	Low	Medium	High
Effective female methods*	0	3	4	7	2	6	6
Condom	4	14	26	43	6	30	43
Withdrawal	0	4	9	14	2	10	13
Others	1	3	6	10	1	8	8

*The pill, the IUD, injectables and sterilization.

As is evident from the data in Table 3, ever-use of most methods is low. The most commonly used method is the condom, with only four percent of those with no education and 43 percent of those with a postsecondary education reporting that they had ever used that method. Even among the most educated men, ever-use of all other methods was very low: Fourteen percent of these men had used withdrawal, and seven percent reported that their wives had used the pill, the IUD, injectables or sterilization; 10 percent said they had used some other method. Again, the pattern by residence is similar to that by education.

Although a thorough analysis of male-female differences in contraceptive knowledge, attitudes and practices is beyond the scope of this article, we compared reports of use obtained separately from men and women and found that the overall levels of ever-use do not differ much by gender. However, reports of the use of specific methods differ dramatically between men and women. Of the women sampled, very few reported use of condoms or withdrawal, and the methods most commonly ever used were the pill and the IUD. Since this pattern differs from that of the male respondents, it is unclear which report is more accurate, or whether a complete account of contraceptive use in Ilorin might require analysis of reports from both men and women.

• *Attitudes Toward Family Planning.* Regardless of their education or residence category, the vast majority of the male respondents who have knowledge of family planning said they have a positive attitude toward it (Table 4). However, men living in the poorest areas and having no formal education are considerably less likely than the other respondents to approve.

Large proportions of men in the highest socioeconomic and education categories had discussed family planning with their wives (71 percent and 77 percent, respectively). In contrast, very small proportions in the lowest socioeconomic and education groups had done so (16 percent and 13 percent, respectively). Those men who had discussed contraception with their wives were asked about their wives' attitude toward it; the vast majority of them reported that their wives had a positive attitude, regardless of residence or education.

The men were also asked if they would support their wives' use of contraceptives and whether they themselves would consider using a method in the future. Support for their wives' use of contraceptives ranged from 46 percent among men in the poorest areas to 78 percent among those in the most affluent areas. The pattern of support for wives' use is similar across categories of education. Men were slightly less likely to be willing to use contraceptives themselves in the future. Willingness to be the user varied by residence and education in the same way that support for wives' use varied. Approximately one-third of men in the poorest areas and with no education reported a willingness to use contraceptives in the future, compared with roughly two-thirds of men in the most affluent areas and with the highest levels of education.

To further understand the process through which men, women and couples make decisions about family planning, we asked men who should make the decision about using contraceptives and whether it should be the husband's or the wife's responsibility to use them (Table 5). Very few men, regardless of area of residence or level of education, felt that husbands alone should be the ones to actually use birth control, and between 40 percent and 59 percent of men, across all categories of education and residence, felt that wives alone should be the ones to use contraceptives. The greatest variation in responses appears when we consider those men who thought that both the husband and the wife should use or that neither should use. The proportions favoring joint use were much higher among men living in the most affluent areas and those with a postsecondary education (49 percent and 47 percent, respectively). Very few men in any category of residence or education felt that the wife should be the sole decision-maker. Most men living in the poorest areas, as well as most of those with no formal education, thought the husband should decide (61 percent and 60 percent, respectively). Among men in the most affluent areas and with the highest level of education, the majority believed that the decision should be a joint one (57 percent of each). However, even in these groups, approximately one-third said the decision should be the husband's alone.

• *Communication and Contraceptive Use.* One of the more interesting sets of findings in our analysis concerns the association between discussion of family planning with one's spouse and actual use of contraceptives.

The data presented in Table 6 (page 54) show that communication about family planning between husbands and wives is associated with considerably greater use of contraceptives, within all categories of residence and education. For example, 60 percent of men with a postsecondary education who had discussed family planning with their wives reported that their wives were using contraceptives. By contrast, in the same education category, only 10 percent of husbands who had not discussed family planning with their wives reported that their wives were using contraceptives.

Although use is much lower among the wives of men with no formal education, the relative difference between those who talk with their wives about family planning and those who do not is similar: Twenty-seven percent of those who had discussed family planning reported that their wives use a method, compared with only four percent of those who had not discussed family planning. The pattern of results is virtually the same when use and discussion are examined across categories of residence.

One possible interpretation of these results is that differences in use by whether or not family planning is discussed can be explained simply by the fact that those men who talk with their wives are more likely than those who do not to know if their wives are using a method. We examined method-specific patterns of use to determine if methods used by women are reported proportionally more often among couples who discuss family planning. Men who had discussed family planning with

Table 4. Among men with knowledge of contraceptives, percentage reporting various attitudes toward them, by residence and education

Education and residence	N	Have positive attitudes	Discuss with wives	Wives have positive attitudes*	Supports wives' use	Will use themselves
Education						
None	231	51	13	90	39	32
Primary	186	70	42	83	60	51
Secondary	169	80	54	81	73	64
Postsecondary	390	87	77	89	84	70
Socioeconomic residence						
Low	315	52	16	82	46	38
Medium	430	84	66	84	75	66
High	232	85	71	93	78	65

*Only those who had discussed family planning with their wives were asked about wives' attitudes.

Table 5. Percentage distribution of men with knowledge about contraceptives, by who they believe should use them and who should make the decision to use them, according to residence and education

Education and residence	N	Husband	Wife	Both	Neither	Total
WHO SHOULD USE						
Education						
None	231	5	59	10	2	100
Primary	186	6	53	26	15	100
Secondary	169	8	47	34	11	100
Postsecondary	390	4	44	47	5	100
Socioeconomic residence						
Low	315	6	58	12	24	100
Medium	430	7	49	37	9	100
High	232	4	40	49	6	100
WHO SHOULD DECIDE						
Education						
None	231	60	4	10	27	100
Primary	186	60	4	23	13	100
Secondary	169	46	7	41	6	100
Postsecondary	390	36	6	57	2	100
Socioeconomic residence						
Low	315	61	4	12	21	100
Medium	430	46	6	43	5	100
High	232	33	7	57	3	100

their wives were much more likely to report having used both male-specific and female-specific methods than men who had not discussed family planning with their wives. This leads us to conclude that the differences in level of use between the two groups are accurate and not simply a reflection of whether men are aware of use by their wives.

Summary and Conclusions

The results of our study provide a greater understanding of the determinants of reproductive behavior in Ilorin, and illustrate both the accomplishments of and challenges to a recently enacted Nigerian population policy. Many of these findings are contrary to what one would expect based on the traditional views of the attitudes of African men towards childbearing.

First, our data reveal that the vast majority of men in Ilorin are aware of the concept of fertility regulation, but that a smaller proportion have detailed knowledge of specific methods of contraception. Their knowledge has been acquired fairly recently, usually through radio or television shows. The extensive media campaigns in Ilorin and Kwara State in recent years have clearly reached a large part of the urban audience. However, most of the material presented in these radio and television spots is general. More detailed information is typically provided at health centers and clinics, facilities that focus their services on women and children, and that are rarely visited by men.

Although actual use of contraceptives is still not widespread among men in Ilorin, some men have used certain methods, particularly the condom. However, it is difficult to interpret the demographic significance of reported contraceptive use by men, for several reasons. First, we do not know the extent to which men are fully informed about their wives' use of contraceptives. Reports on husband-wife communication suggest that husbands may not be aware of their wives' contraceptive practice. Furthermore, approximately 18 percent of the men interviewed report having more than one wife. Questions on men's use of contraceptives do not ask if patterns of use are similar with all wives. In all likelihood, contraceptive use is not similar among all wives. Finally, we do not know the extent to which methods are used by married men as part of nonmarital sexual activity. Since the condom is the method most commonly reported by men, it is possible that much of this use is outside marriage.

Table 6. Percentage of men whose wives use contraceptives, by whether or not they have discussed family planning with their wives, according to residence and education

Education and residence	Have discussed		Have not discussed	
	N	% using	N	% using
Education				
None	30	27	195	4
Primary	75	33	106	5
Secondary	86	43	71	6
Postsecondary	289	60	84	10
Socioeconomic residence				
Low	49	22	258	4
Medium	275	56	138	7
High	156	49	61	7

Attitudes toward the use of contraceptives are generally positive, although there is considerable variation by socioeconomic status. One interesting aspect is that men are somewhat more willing to support their wives in using contraceptives than they are to consider using them themselves. Differences in the relative authority and responsibility of men and women are also revealed by the finding that men feel they should have a major role in the decision to limit fertility but that the responsibility for actual use of contraceptives lies predominantly with women. Among men from the less traditional sectors of Ilorin, there is a tendency to believe in sharing both the authority to make decisions and the responsibility for implementing them.

A particularly important set of findings relates to the level of communication between husband and wife and the association between communication and use of family planning. Use is dramatically higher among couples who have discussed family planning with each other, and it may be that couples who do discuss family planning find, to their surprise, that both of them support the use of contraceptives but that neither was aware of the other's positive view. As another study in urban Africa recently found: "The men thought that women were largely ignorant of family planning, generally opposed to it and in need of education. . . . The women said the same thing about men."[10]

These findings have several important implications for population policy in Nigeria. First, it is clear that men in Ilorin are now well aware of the issue of family planning and that ongoing efforts by the federal government of Nigeria and the Kwara State government should explore ways in which more detailed information about specific methods could be conveyed to men. A particularly important group that might benefit from such information would be those men who have already decided that they do not want any more children but who have not yet used contraceptives.

Additionally, future efforts to promote fertility regulation need to consider ways to encourage communication between husbands and wives. Such efforts, especially among the more traditional segments of Ilorin, will not be easy or straightforward; it is likely that women are often not included in many family decisions. Nevertheless, encouraging open communication between husbands and wives ought to be seriously considered as a focus of future population education programs.

Findings from this study also have implications for our understanding of the determinants of fertility in Ilorin and of the prospects for fertility declines in the future. Although the use of contraceptives among men in our study was limited, favorable attitudes toward family planning and a willingness to use contraceptives have clearly emerged, probably recently, among some of the population. These changes in attitudes toward the use of contraceptives are important indicators of potential changes in fertility, even if they are still confined to those segments of the population that are more closely linked with the modern sectors.

Important questions remain. Can we expect to see signs of fertility reduction, especially among the most highly educated and otherwise advantaged segments of the population of Ilorin? How long will it take for positive attitudes to become diffused throughout all segments of the population of Ilorin? An essential factor in the answers to each of these questions is the role of continued efforts on the part of both state and federal governments in Nigeria to achieve the ambitious population goals that the country has set. Since Nigeria contains one-fifth of the population of all of sub-Saharan Africa, close monitoring of fertility trends in that country should interest researchers and program officials alike.

References

1. T. McGinn, A. Bamba and M. Balma, "Male Knowledge, Use and Attitudes Regarding Family Planning in Burkina Faso," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **15**:84, 1989; and M. A. B. Mustafa and S. O. Mumford, "Male Attitudes Towards Family Planning in Khartoum, Sudan," *Journal of Biosocial Science*, **16**:437, 1984.

2. M. M. Kritz and D. T. Gurak, "Women's Status, Edu-

(Continued on page 64)

Making Vasectomy Services More Acceptable to Men

"The findings suggest that Profamilia and other family planning service providers in Colombia could increase the use of vasectomy by adopting a mixed [male-female] service delivery strategy in midsized clinics."

By Ricardo Vernon, Gabriel Ojeda and Ana Vega

Summary

The results of an operations research project that tested two models of vasectomy service delivery in Colombia show that although clinics serving only males performed a higher monthly average of vasectomies than did clinics serving men in a mixed male-female context (12 vs. nine), that difference was not statistically significant. In both types of experimental clinics, specially trained personnel offered vasectomies and other male services that were advertised and promoted; as a result, those clinics performed an average of almost twice as many vasectomies per month as did control clinics that had a traditional female orientation (10 vs. five). The number of vasectomies performed during the project increased by nearly 120 percent in the experimental clinics and by 59 percent in the control clinics. Contrary to expectations, clients of the exclusively male clinics were no more satisfied with the services they received or with their vasectomy than were clients of the mixed clinics or the control clinics.

Introduction

According to data from the 1986 Colombian Demographic and Health Survey, 65 percent of currently married Colombian women aged 15–49 use some form of contraceptive protection.[1] The most widely used method is female sterilization, relied on by 18 percent of women in union. Only 0.4 percent of married women of reproductive age are protected by their partner's vasectomy.

The low prevalence of vasectomy may be partly explained by the lack of awareness of the method among the Colombian population. While most contraceptive methods were recognized by at least 85 percent of women in union, only 51 percent had ever heard of vasectomy. (In contrast, 96 percent of married women knew about female sterilization.) The limited availability of vasectomy services may also explain the low prevalence. Of all the major providers, only the private family planning agency Profamilia (the Colombian affiliate of the International Planned Parenthood Federation) consistently offers vasectomy services.

Profamilia pioneered the first vasectomy program in Latin America in 1970, performing 92 operations that year. The number of vasectomies increased over the following four-year period, peaking at 1,064 ~~in 1975,~~ the year that female sterilization services were first made available at Profamilia clinics.[2] Subsequently, the number of vasectomies decreased steadily, falling to only 480 operations in 1981. This number did not increase appreciably until 1985, when the first male-oriented clinics were opened in Bogotá, the capital, and Medellín, Colombia's second largest city.

Profamilia's male-oriented clinics are markedly different from traditional clinics. They offer facilities completely segregated from those used by women (including classrooms, waiting rooms, operating rooms and recovery rooms); they have separate staffs (i.e., counselors, doctors, nurse's aides, receptionist and doorman); and they provide a wide variety of services for men only (e.g., vasectomies, urological exams, infertility treatment, sexual counseling, general medicine, outpatient surgery and clinical laboratory services). These clinics were promoted through publicity campaigns in the mass media and by field workers.

In 1986, Profamilia managed 39 clinics that provided family planning services and information to clients with limited economic resources. That year, 59,681 female sterilizations and 2,201 vasectomies were performed.[3] Although Profamilia was able to perform 77 percent more vasectomies in 1986 than in 1985, largely because of the newly opened male-oriented clinics in Bogotá and Medellín, vasectomies still represented only 3.6 percent of all sterilizations performed that year. In addition, of the 39 Profamilia clinics, only 23 performed vasectomies in 1986 and, of these, 13 clinics performed less than 14 vasectomies each that year.*

According to evaluations by Beth Atkins and Terrence Jezowski, seven basic elements are important to the success of a vasectomy program: strong leadership by the program director, a focused program design, attention to men's needs, appropriate training strategies, community-based orientation of services, multiple communication strategies and thorough counseling.[4] Although Profamilia emphasizes appropriate training of personnel, and responsible and thorough counseling at all its clinics, the male-oriented clinics have been better able to incorporate the five remaining variables (especially the focused program design, attention to men's needs and communication strategies). Starting up the segregated clinics in Bogotá and Medellín, however, was very costly, making it difficult to consider adapting this strategy to other family plan-

---

Ricardo Vernon is an associate with The Population Council, Mexico City. Gabriel Ojeda is director of planning and evaluation and Ana Vega is research assistant at Profamilia, Bogotá. The research on which this article is based was funded by The Population Council's operations research program to improve service delivery in family planning and maternal and child health in Latin America, under contract #DPE-3030-C-00-4074-00 with the U.S. Agency for International Development. The authors would like to thank Nancy Murray and two anonymous reviewers for their comments on an earlier version of this article.

*Apart from the male-oriented clinics in Bogotá and Medellín (which in 1986 performed 1,163 and 476 vasectomies, respectively), the clinics providing the most vasectomies were those in the cities of Cali (199), Pereira (73) and Palmira (46). These centers were followed by clinics in Bucaramanga, Ibague, Manizales, Neiva and Pasto, which each performed about 23 interventions.

Table 1. Number of procedures performed and percentage difference, by procedure and year, according to type of clinic

Procedure and year	Experimental clinics						Control clinics		
	Mixed hours			Male-only hours					
	Total	Manizales	Ibague	Total	Pasto	Pereira	Total	Neiva	Bucaramanga
Vasectomies									
June 1987–May 1988	105	81	24	123	86	37	80	24	56
June 1988–May 1989	220	165	55	281	110	171	127	46	81
% difference	109.5	103.7	129.2	128.5	98.8	197.3	58.8	91.7	44.6
Female sterilizations									
June 1987–May 1988	2,711	1,953	758	3,380	1,928	1,452	2,528	804	1,724
June 1988–May 1989	3,147	2,133	1,014	3,948	2,082	1,866	2,577	903	1,674
% difference	16.1	9.2	33.8	16.8	8.0	28.5	1.9	12.3	(2.9)
Other male services 1988–1989									
Vasectomy follow-up	168	161	7	200	116	84	7	1	6
Urology	197	75	122	80	11	69	0	0	0
STD treatment	49	13	36	55	3	52	0	0	0
Other visits	40	3	37	37	5	32	0	0	0
Ambulatory surgery	55	10	45	14	1	13	0	0	0

ning clinics. Thus, to design a cost-effective strategy to increase vasectomy use in Colombia, Profamilia conducted an operations research project to test two different approaches to providing male-oriented services that would not entail the expensive process of building segregated male centers. Primary questions were: To what degree is it necessary to separate men's and women's services, and can special promotional campaigns attract as many vasectomy clients as are attracted by the separation of services?

The Project

The observation period for the project, which compared the performance of two different experimental environments with a control environment, was from June 1988 through May 1989. The experimental strategies offered vasectomies and a variety of services for men through either sharing the clinic premises concurrently with women clients (two clinics) or establishing special hours at a traditional clinic for men only (one clinic) and establishing completely separate premises for men only (one clinic). Each of the four experimental clinics hired staff expressly to provide the men's services: a urologist for 15 hours a week, a full-time counselor and a full-time nurse's aide. During the hours that the staff urologist was not on duty, each clinic's counselor was engaged in community information, education and communication activities such as leaflet distribution and talks at workplaces, while the nurse's aide remained in the clinic to provide information to any client who was interested in male-oriented services.

In addition to vasectomies, the experimental clinics offered male-oriented services such as treatment of sexually transmitted diseases, general medical services, urology services and minor ambulatory surgery. In all four clinic cities, male-oriented services were launched with the support of a five-month mass-media campaign that included radio (14,080 spots), the press (60 newspaper advertisements),* the distribution of leaflets and brochures, talks at workplaces (1,045 sessions attended by 33,254 people) as well as household visits by counselors from the experimental clinics.

The strategy of concurrent male-female hours was followed in Profamilia's clinics in Ibague and Manizales. The same facilities in the traditional female-oriented clinics—i.e., waiting rooms, counseling areas, and operating and recovery rooms—were used by clients of both sexes, and general male services were offered during the same hours as the traditional female services. Separate surgery hours for men were set for a given day of the week, usually Friday or Saturday.

In the male-only environment, established in clinics in Pasto and Pereira, special hours were proposed during which men would receive services from the designated hour until closing, thus achieving an exclusively male atmosphere without buying or constructing separate facilities. However, Profamilia later obtained funding to remodel the Pereira clinic, allowing separate premises for men to be built. Thus, two different strategies for service delivery in a masculine context were tested: In Pasto, separate afternoon hours with a separate staff were scheduled for men only, Monday through Saturday; in Pereira, an entirely separate clinic for men was established. However, the Pereira clinic was unable to locate and hire a urologist until nine months after the project began. During this interim period, the director of the women's clinic in Pereira performed vasectomy and general medicine services, but no other male services were provided.

The two clinics selected as controls were Profamilia's centers in Neiva and Bucaramanga; these had performed roughly the same number of vasectomies over the previous year as the experimental clinics and served cities of approximately the same size. The control clinics did not hire any additional personnel and did not offer any special male-oriented services other than vasectomy, which was provided by the clinic directors. Also, there were no mass-media campaigns to promote vasectomy in the control-group cities.

To explore the levels of satisfaction with the clinic personnel and the different service delivery models, all male clients at the project clinics were asked to complete a survey questionnaire after they received care. Vasectomy patients also responded to a second method satisfaction questionnaire administered at follow-up.†

The operations research tested the following hypotheses: Among the experimental clinics, there will be a greater increase in vasectomies (and more men will receive other services) in the male-only environment than in the environment of mixed male-female hours; vasectomies will increase more in the experimental clinics than in the control clinics as a result of promotion in the mass media and the provision of additional male-oriented services; the number of female sterilizations will not be affected appreciably by the existence of male-oriented services; the social and demographic characteristics of vasectomy patients will change significantly in cities where promotional campaigns are launched and remain basically the same where they are not; and the clients of male-only clinics will be more satisfied with their vasectomy and other services than clients of the mixed clinics.

---

*The newspaper ads ran three times a month for five months in one local paper in each city. Four different radio spots were broadcast Monday through Friday, 10 times a day, on four local radio stations in each of the cities.

†The project also involved focus groups held among vasectomy acceptors in the Profamilia clinics of Pasto, Manizales and Pereira. Readers interested in the results of these sessions may contact the authors.

Results

There were no significant differences between experimental and control clinics in the social and demographic characteristics of vasectomy acceptors, according to clinical history data. Both before and during the project period, the mean age of vasectomy patients in the experimental clinics was approximately 36 years; they had 3.4 living children and had had roughly 7.5 years of schooling. Acceptors in the control clinics had a slightly higher number of living children (3.8) and had completed slightly fewer years of education (7.2).

Table 1 presents the number of procedures (vasectomies, female sterilizations and other male services) provided annually at each of the six project clinics, both before and during the project. The separate male clinic in Pereira performed the most vasectomies during the project period (171), even though it did not have a urologist for the first nine months. Except for Ibague, each of the experimental clinics performed more than 100 vasectomies.

Compared with the number performed in the 12 months before the project, vasectomies in the male-only clinics increased by 129 percent while those in the mixed clinics increased by 110 percent. Vasectomies increased by 120 percent overall in the four experimental clinics, and by 59 percent in the control clinics.*

Given that couples can elect either vasectomy or female sterilization as permanent contraceptive methods, Profamilia was interested in determining whether the vasectomy advertising campaign might lead to fewer female procedures as a result of the substitution by vasectomy. As the table shows, however, female sterilization increased by 17 percent in the experimental clinics and by two percent in the control clinics.

Even though the male-only clinics achieved a greater monthly average of vasectomies than the mixed clinics (12 vs. nine), as well as a greater monthly increase in vasectomies (seven vs. five), these differences were not statistically significant. The clinics in both experimental contexts provided roughly the same number of vasectomy follow-ups (7–8). In fact, only the monthly average of other male services, which were fewer in the male-only than in the mixed clinics, differed significantly (seven vs. 12, p<.05), but this result is not valid because, as mentioned earlier, the Pereira clinic lacked a urologist during the first nine months of the project. Except for the increase in vasectomies, the productivity of the experimental clinics was disappointing; in all, they provided only a monthly average of 17 other services (of which 7.5 were vasectomy follow-ups) and 1.4 outpatient surgical procedures (such as urological ones).

Compared with the two controls, the four experimental clinics performed twice as many vasectomies per month (10 vs. five, p<.01). Similarly, while the experimental clinics increased their monthly average by six during the project period, only two more operations per month were performed in the control clinics during the same period, a statistically significant difference (p<.01). In addition, the monthly increase in female sterilizations was also greater in the experimental clinics than in the controls (21 vs. two, p<.05).

Among clients who completed questionnaires after receiving care, there were no statistically significant differences in satisfaction ratings between the different service delivery models. Overall, when clients were asked to rate their clinic's services on a scale of zero to 10, they gave scores averaging from 9.4 to 9.9. The high ratings seem to be exceptional because the endpoint of the scale was labeled as "excellent, could not be better." Nearly all clients said they would return to the Profamilia clinics if they needed services, and that they would recommend the clinics to their friends.

Responses to other survey items show that almost 100 percent of the respondents thought the attention provided by the different employees (receptionist, counselor, physician and nurse) had been good or very good. Some 95 percent thought that the clinic's facilities were comfortable, pleasant and clean. The service schedules seem to have been appropriate, since approximately 76 percent of clients said that the clinic hours were convenient and another 13 percent reported that it had been neither easy nor hard to make the clinic's hours. Less than seven percent considered the services expensive or very expensive.

There were substantial differences, however, in the vasectomy counseling given to acceptors and the counseling given to clients who came for other male services: Although all vasectomy clients reported having been informed about the operation and only around 10 percent said they still had some questions about the method, just 40 percent of those who came for other services in the male-only clinics reported having been informed about vasectomy and 46 percent said they had questions about it. Finally, there was a significant difference among clinic clients in their preferences about the composition of the waiting room. While about half of all respondents said they were indifferent, about one-third of clients in the male-only clinics said they preferred to have only men in the waiting room, compared with 19 percent or less of clients in the clinics with mixed hours and in the control clinics.

The second questionnaire, administered to vasectomy patients at their follow-up visit—two to nine months after surgery—included items on the first source of knowledge about the method, the contraceptive decision-making process and the reasons for choosing vasectomy over other methods. Since most patients did not return for their spermograms, they were interviewed at their workplaces and homes; altogether, 49 percent of vasectomy patients from the six project clinics were surveyed.

The results show that clients usually learned about the method through a traditional interpersonal source, most commonly from friends (28 percent), their wives (19 percent) or other relatives (eight percent). However, family planning program personnel and the mass media were also important sources of information: More than 22 percent of clients in the experimental clinics mentioned the radio as one of the first sources, compared with less than four percent in the control clinics. In both experimental and control clinics, 21 percent of vasectomy patients mentioned Profamilia personnel as their initial source of knowledge for the method.

When asked whom they had discussed their vasectomy with before deciding to have one, nearly 90 percent mentioned their wives, 40 percent Profamilia personnel, 14 percent friends, 13 percent other medical or paramedical sources and 10 percent relatives. Even though there are relatively few vasectomized men in Colombia, they were an important source of knowledge (11 percent) about the op-

---

*An analysis of four nonproject clinics similar in size and resources to the two controls showed that vasectomies had increased over the previous year by 52 percent in those clinics as well. In each of the three years preceding the project, vasectomies had been increasing annually (by 36 percent, 66 percent and 36 percent, respectively), and the increase in the control clinics seemed to be part of a general trend in Profamilia's vasectomy activities. However, an interview with the Neiva clinic director revealed that the client satisfaction and personnel surveys administered in the control clinics were interpreted as demonstration of Profamilia's interest in promoting the method. The director therefore increased the scope of her vasectomy program by arranging a referral system for Profamilia clients with a local urologist at a discount. Thus, the surveys probably did bias the results of the control group somewhat. Still, the experience also confirms the importance of strong program leadership in promoting vasectomy.

Table 2. Results of questionnaire completed by vasectomy patients at follow-up visit, by item, according to type of clinic

Item	Total (N=306)	Type of clinic		
		Experimental		Control
		Mixed hours (N=121)	Male-only hours (N=104)	(N=81)
Average service satisfaction score (0 to 10 scale)*	9.7	9.8	9.6	9.6
Average vasectomy satisfaction score (0 to 10 scale)**	9.2	9.4	8.8	9.5
Quality of sexual relations after vasectomy†				
Better	42.2	40.8	44.1	41.9
The same	57.4	59.2	54.9	58.1
Worse	0.3	0.0	1.0	0.0
% who had recommended vasectomy to friends	74.3	78.9	72.3	69.4
% who would recommend vasectomy in the future	95.0	95.7	93.9	95.6
% who regret having had the vasectomy	1.4	0.0	2.9	1.4

*Indicates a significant difference of p<.05 among clinics.

**Indicates a significant difference of p<.01 among clinics.

†Significance tested by chi-square; all other tests for significance are by analysis of variance.

eration for men who were considering having one.

About 50 percent of vasectomy clients said they had deliberated for two months or less before deciding on the operation. Although nearly one-fourth reported that it had been mostly their own decision, over half said their wives had influenced their decision most. Eighteen percent mentioned Profamilia personnel as having influenced their decision most, which indicates that Profamilia's counseling can be very effective. Finally, the importance of the role that other satisfied vasectomy clients play in the decision-making process is demonstrated by the fact that nearly six percent of clients cited other vasectomized men as having influenced their decision most. Furthermore, 64 percent of acceptors reported knowing at least one other man who had had a vasectomy.

At the time clients requested a vasectomy, a larger proportion of those in the control clinics (65 percent) were using a contraceptive than were those in either of the two types of experimental clinics (51 percent at the male-only clinics and 57 percent at the mixed clinics). Furthermore, the vasectomy clients in the experimental clinics were less likely to have been using methods that require active male participation, such as the condom, withdrawal or periodic abstinence, suggesting that the mass media campaigns probably attracted men who were ambivalent about taking responsibility for planning their families. Finally, compared with vasectomy clients, users of the other male services were much younger (mean age of 29 years), and because they were also more likely to be single, less than half of these men could be considered to be potential vasectomy clients in the near future. (While nearly 50 percent of users of other male services were single, all vasectomy clients were either married or in union.)

About 40 percent of the respondents had not considered female sterilization as an alternative contraceptive method; this indicates that vasectomies do not necessarily substitute for female procedures. When female sterilization was considered, the reasons most frequently mentioned for choosing vasectomy were that the operation was simpler and safer (each mentioned by 39 percent of respondents). Other reasons given were concern for the wife's health (15 percent), compliance with her wishes (12 percent) and acknowledgment that it is important that men participate in family planning (nine percent), suggesting that "love" or "concern" for wives could be a good selling point for an advertising campaign. When asked why they preferred a permanent method over temporary methods such as the pill, the IUD or the condom, 77 percent of respondents said they did not want more children; 37 percent said that temporary protection was not as reliable; 16 percent cited undesirable side effects of temporary methods; and 21 percent mentioned other health reasons.

Table 2 shows that vasectomy clients were very satisfied both with the service provided and with the method, regardless of clinic environment. On a scale of zero to 10, respondents had an average clinic satisfaction score of 9.7. Clients of the mixed clinics were more satisfied with the preoperation services (score of 9.8) than were clients in the male-context clinics (9.4) or those attending the controls (9.2). Acceptors rated their satisfaction with the method an average of 9.2. Although it appears on the surface that the male-only clients were least satisfied with their vasectomy (average score of only 8.8), there were two unsuccessful vasectomies at one of these clinics and both patients rated the method a zero, lowering the average score for the group as a whole.

As shown in the table, 42 percent of all respondents said their sexual relations had improved after the vasectomy and 57 percent said they had remained the same. Approximately 74 percent of vasectomy clients had already recommended the operation to their friends and 95 percent said they would do so in the future. Only 1.4 percent overall regretted having been vasectomized—2.9 percent in the male-only clinics and 1.4 percent in the control clinics but none in the clinics with mixed hours. The proportion reporting side effects (most commonly swelling and pain) was also higher in the male-only and control clinics (18 percent and 16 percent, not shown) than in the mixed clinics (12 percent). Apart from the two vasectomy failures indicated earlier, the most serious complaint was impotence, mentioned by one man who, understandably, also gave the method a very low rating and regretted having had the operation.

Table 3 presents the results of a cost-effectiveness analysis of the four experimental clinics. (A comparison with the control clinics is not possible since their accounting reports did not separate out vasectomy costs.) Although the male-only clinics had smaller revenues than the mixed-hours clinics, the former performed a greater number of vasectomies, resulting in a better cost-effectiveness ratio—$9.20 per couple-year of protection (CYP) vs. $10.72 per CYP. However, the cost-effectiveness ratios of both strategies were nearly four times the 1988 cost per CYP for Profamilia's surgical contraception programs in general ($2.68) and three times that of Profamilia's separate male clinics ($3.82).

Table 3. Calculation of cost-effectiveness ratios per couple-years of protection (CYP), in U.S. dollars,* by experimental clinic, June 1988–May 1989

Calculation factors	Mixed clinic hours			Male-only clinic hours		
	Total	Manizales	Ibague	Total	Pasto	Pereira
No. of vasectomies	220	165	55	281	110	171
CYP	2,751	2,063	688	3,513	1,375	2,138
Revenues	4,170	1,786	2,384	3,612	1,699	1,913
Costs	33,650	15,353	18,297	35,930	17,339	18,591
Wages & benefits	16,962	7,696	9,266	18,436	8,991	9,445
Travel & per diem	451	144	307	696	653	43
Publicity	13,119	6,355	6,764	12,597	6,450	6,147
Other expenses†	3,118	1,158	1,960	4,201	1,245	2,956
Net cost	29,480	13,567	15,913	32,318	15,640	16,678
Cost-effectiveness per CYP	10.72	6.58	23.13	9.20	11.37	7.80

*The average exchange rate during the project period was 338 Colombian pesos to one U.S. dollar.

†Includes rent, utilities, other services, maintenance, equipment and supplies.

Discussion

Both of the experimental service delivery environments achieved similar cost-effectiveness ratios, which were about four times less cost-effective than Profamilia's programs of surgical contraception in general. There are three main factors that explain this. First, it is usual for new programs and clinics to have a low cost-effectiveness ratio during the first years of service delivery.* Second, the project overestimated the amount of urologists' time needed: All of the experimental clinics provided services six days a week and the urologists attended an average of only 0.8 patients daily, performing just 2.6 surgical procedures (2.3 vasectomies and 0.3 other out-patient surgeries) at each weekly operating session. Personnel costs could have been reduced by approximately one-third without this miscalculation. After the first year of the project, Profamilia decided to start paying urologists on a per-case basis, which should help avoid this problem in the future.

Finally, publicity costs accounted for over one-third of all costs. Although the full publicity costs were charged to the first year of operations, these first-time costs to launch new services actually should be spread over a longer period of time. The results obtained in the first six months after the project ended confirm the continuing effects of the publicity: The four experimental clinics increased the number of vasectomies by 15 percent (compared to the first six months of project activities); there was a decrease of eight percent in the two control clinics. Taking into account these three factors and the increase in demand for services during the first year of the project, Profamilia could expect to achieve a cost-effectiveness of about $5 per CYP during the second year of operation of the experimental clinics.

The project results do not support the first hypothesis that clinics with male-only hours would provide significantly more vasectomies than the clinics serving men and women concurrently. However, the results confirm the second hypothesis: Clinics that offered a variety of male services and conducted strong promotional campaigns performed almost twice as many vasectomies as clinics that continued to deliver vasectomy services under the traditional Profamilia model.

Two main factors appear to account for the large increase in the number of vasectomy clients at the experimental clinics—the availability of program-specific personnel and the strong promotional effort. The publicity campaigns probably increased vasectomy demand by raising public awareness of the method and by strengthening its legitimacy as a contraceptive option in the community. As new clients arrive at a clinic, specialized personnel are able to address their main concerns more specifically; staff can also promote vasectomy more intensively in their community as interest in the operation grows. On the other hand, the delivery of a whole range of other services for men did not directly increase the acceptability of vasectomy services, at least in the short term, because a large proportion of these users were either single, childless or under age 30 and therefore not in immediate need of a vasectomy.

Regarding the third hypothesis, the vasectomy promotion campaign in the experimental clinics did not seem to have a negative effect on the number of female sterilizations. In fact, the increase in female sterilization at the experimental clinics was almost identical to the nationwide increase that occurred in Profamilia's clinics from 1987 to 1988 (16 percent). This increase was not reflected in the control clinics, however, largely because of the poor performance in Bucaramanga (in which female sterilizations declined during the project period).

The social and demographic characteristics of vasectomy clients did not shift appreciably as a result of the media campaigns, disproving the fourth hypothesis. Karen Foreit and her colleagues found that a magazine advertising campaign in São Paulo, Brazil, seemed to attract a different segment of the public: New vasectomy clients who responded to the ads were older, had fewer children and had higher levels of education than those referred by traditional interpersonal sources.[5] The campaigns in this project, however, seemed to have enlarged the existing pool of vasectomy acceptors without attracting new types of candidates.

Finally, contrary to the fifth hypothesis, clients of the male-only clinics were not more satisfied with the service or with their vasectomy than were clients of either the experimental mixed clinics or control clinics. In fact, the evidence indicates that whenever small differences were found, they had nothing to do with type of environment: Users of the mixed clinics were the most satisfied clients, basically because there were no vasectomy failures in this group. Furthermore, over half of the vasectomy clients reported being indifferent to the idea of sharing the clinic premises with women and over 20 percent actually preferred sharing them.

Conclusions

The results of our operations research affirm that when program administrators take an active role in addressing men's needs, rather than simply making vasectomy services available, men will respond and more vasectomies will be requested. The findings suggest that Profamilia and other family planning service providers in Colombia could increase the use of vasectomy by adopting a mixed service delivery strategy in midsized clinics. Even though the male-only clinics continued to perform a larger number of vasectomies than the mixed clinics six months after the project ended, the difference was not large enough to justify segregated facilities or hours for men's services when large expenses are involved (e.g., for building separate male clinics) or when providing adequate services to women becomes difficult (e.g., limited hours due to a segregated schedule).

---

*For example, the 13 clinics that Profamilia opened between 1985 and 1987 improved their cost-effectiveness from $6.67 per CYP in 1987 to $4.83 in 1988, and the two clinics that started operations in early 1987 increased their self-sufficiency levels (the proportion of total expenditures in a given year that come from the sale of the clinic's services and products) by five times in 1988. (Source: Handout from the 1989 annual meeting of medical directors of Profamilia, Pereira, April 6–8, 1989.)

Under the mixed environment, traditional female-oriented family planning clinics could hire specialized personnel to provide a variety of male-oriented services during the regular clinic hours. Because vasectomy is still not well-known in Colombia and in most other developing countries, strong mass-media campaigns would be essential to generate demand for the clinics' vasectomy and other male services. In addition, a full-time counselor and a part-time nurse's aide should be hired to provide information to potential clients and conduct informational activities in the community. We also recommend that, in addition to the spermogram follow-up visit, the counselor always make a follow-up visit to vasectomy acceptors after their operation; these visits have a strong impact on the client's satisfaction with services, and satisfied clients are an important source of referral for new vasectomy clients.

An alternative strategy that Profamilia and other organizations may choose to test in Colombia is to hire only a full-time counselor, conduct strong vasectomy advertising campaigns in the mass media and use the existing medical personnel of female-oriented clinics to provide vasectomies but no other male services. Although similar endeavors have not been very successful in the past, the situation in Colombia would now seem to favor this strategy. Profamilia personnel expect the importance of vasectomy as a family planning method in Colombia to steadily increase. In addition, the public's awareness of vasectomy and its advantages over female sterilization, although still low, has increased substantially in the last few years.

In fact, the results of this project may be partly attributable to the stage in which the vasectomy diffusion process finds itself in Colombia. Thus, the findings cannot yet be generalized to other societies. As mentioned earlier, Profamilia made large gains in promoting vasectomy when it started the two male clinics in Bogotá and Medellín in 1985; using the completely segregated approach of these clinics might be successful in conservative cultures where vasectomy remains an unknown and little-requested method.

Finally, because vasectomy seems to appeal to men who show a special concern for their wives, we recommend that this theme be used in vasectomy promotion campaigns. Profamilia can also advertise new vasectomy techniques that have recently been introduced, such as the no-scalpel vasectomy, which may further increase the response to promotional campaigns and improve the satisfaction of those who undergo the procedure.

References

1. Corporación Centro Regional de Población, Ministerio de Salud and Institute for Resource Development/Westinghouse, *Encuesta de Prevalencia, Demografía y Salud, 1986*, Bogotá, 1987.

2. Profamilia, *Informe de Actividades de Servicio, 1986*, Boletín de Evaluación y Estadística, No. 44, Bogotá, Feb. 1987.

3. Ibid.

4. B. S. Atkins and T. W. Jezowski, "Report on the First International Conference on Vasectomy," *Studies in Family Planning*, **14**:89, 1983.

5. K. G. Foreit, M. P. de Castro and E. D. Franco, "The Impact of Mass Media Advertising on a Voluntary Sterilization Program in Brazil," *Studies in Family Planning*, **20**:107, 1989.

Resumen

Los resultados de un proyecto de investigación operativa en que se ensayaron dos modelos de prestación de servicios de vasectomía en Colombia demostraron que, si bien en las clínicas que atienden sólo a hombres se practicó un promedio mensual de vasectomías mayor que en los centros que atienden también a mujeres (12 contra nueve), la diferencia no es estadísticamente significativa. En ambos tipos de clínicas experimentales había personal especialmente capacitado que ofrecía al hombre servicios de vasectomía y de otro tipo promocionados previamente. Así pues, el promedio mensual de vasectomías efectuadas en dichas clínicas fue casi el doble del de las clínicas de control, tradicionalmente orientadas a atender a la mujer (10 contra cinco). La cantidad de vasectomías que se realizaron durante el proyecto aumentó casi un 120 por ciento en las clínicas experimentales y un 59 por ciento en las de control. Contra todas las expectativas, los pacientes de las clínicas exclusivamente masculinas no quedaron más satisfechos con los servicios que recibieron ni con la intervención que los pacientes de las clínicas mixtas o de control.

Résumé

Les résultats d'un projet de recherche opérationnelle ayant mis à l'épreuve deux modèles de prestation de services de vasectomie en Colombie révèlent que, bien que les cliniques servant uniquement les patients de sexe masculin aient pratiqué chaque mois un nombre moyen de vasectomies plus élevé que ne le faisaient les cliniques servant les patients des deux sexes (12 par rapport à neuf), cette différence n'était pas statistiquement significative. Dans les deux types de cliniques expérimentales, des employés ayant reçu une formation spéciale offraient des vasectomies et autres services masculins qui étaient annoncés et promus; ces cliniques pratiquaient donc presque le double de vasectomies par mois, en moyenne, par rapport aux cliniques-témoins traditionnellement orientées vers les services féminins (10 par rapport à cinq). Le nombre de vasectomies pratiqués durant le projet a augmenté de près de 120 pour cent dans les cliniques expérimentales et de 59 pour cent dans les cliniques-témoins. Contrairement aux résultats attendus, les clients des cliniques exclusivement masculines n'étaient pas plus satisfaits des services reçus ou de la vasectomie que ne l'étaient les clients des cliniques mixtes ou des cliniques-témoins.

The Impact of AIDS on Knowledge and Attitudes About Condoms as a Contraceptive Method in Urban Mexico

"The results from both Mexico and Jamaica indicate that AIDS information campaigns are likely to lead to an increase in knowledge of the condom as a method of AIDS prevention *and* a method of family planning."

By John Stover and Mario Bravo

Summary

Research conducted in urban areas of Mexico indicates that AIDS information programs do not harm the image of the condom as a family planning method. Spontaneous knowledge of the condom both as a method of preventing AIDS and as a contraceptive method increased as a result of a public information campaign and the publicity surrounding it. The two types of knowledge were highly correlated.

Introduction

Condoms are an important part of family planning programs in many countries and the ease of their commercial distribution makes them particularly important in contraceptive social marketing programs. However, the condom's usefulness in disease prevention has given it a poor image in many countries, where it is associated primarily with illicit sex and with disease prevention. Under such circumstances, married couples are often reluctant to use the condom for family planning purposes. Consequently, social marketing programs have devoted effort to improving the condom's image to make it a more acceptable contraceptive method.

The AIDS epidemic has put an even greater emphasis on the role of condoms in the prevention of sexually transmitted diseases. Since there is as yet no cure for AIDS, the epidemic has captured a great deal of public attention. Most countries with a serious AIDS problem are mounting large information programs with the key message that condoms are the best protection for sexually active people who do not have one monogamous partner.

What will be the effect of these AIDS communications programs on the use of the condom for family planning? It is possible that the extensive media campaign associating the condom with AIDS prevention will destroy its image as a family planning method. In this case, anyone purchasing or using a condom would be suspected of having AIDS or having sex with people who are likely to be infected. The introduction of a condom into a primary relationship by a partner would be seen either as an admission that he or she is having sex with other people (who might have AIDS), or as an accusation that the other partner is sexually active outside the relationship.

On the other hand, the tremendous publicity that AIDS information campaigns will generate for condoms could also boost their use for family planning. AIDS campaigns could increase overall awareness of the condom and improve its image by promoting "safe sex."

Given the importance of condoms in many social marketing programs and the need for insight into this issue, we conducted research in several countries on the effects of AIDS information campaigns on condoms. The objective was to determine the impact, either positive or negative, of AIDS information campaigns on knowledge and attitudes about condoms for family planning. The research does not provide a definitive analysis of the relationship but attempts to determine the direction of the influence and an indication of its strength. This article discusses the results of research conducted in urban areas of Mexico.

Background

To confront the spread of AIDS, the Mexican government formed the National Committee for Investigation and Control of AIDS (Comité Nacional para Investigación y Control del SIDA, or CONASIDA) in February of 1986. The committee's work is conducted through three directorates—Health Education, Research and Epidemiology, and Blood Banks. In April 1987, CONASIDA established its National Information Center, a pilot center in Mexico City designed to contact and inform high-risk groups and health professionals. The educational activities of CONASIDA included other activities such as an AIDS information hotline, seminars for health professionals and the preparation of posters and other promotional materials. In addition, the Epidemiology Directorate publishes a monthly bulletin for the health community with the latest facts on AIDS.

The mass media campaign discussed in this article was coordinated by the Directorate for Health Education, which conducted the campaign program in three phases. Phase I, a brief media blitz between May and June of 1987, was stopped short by concerns about poor planning and testing of the material. The only component of this phase that continued beyond June was a pair of short film segments shown in movie theaters.

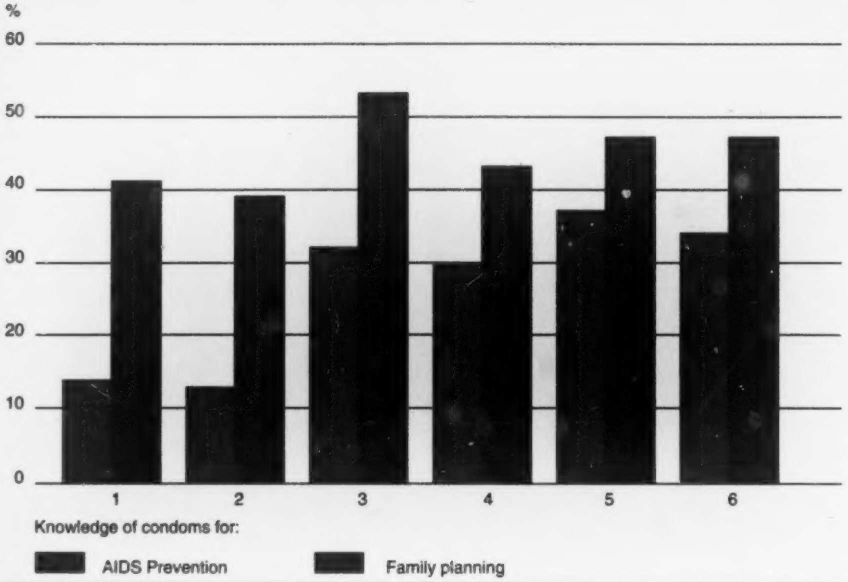
The second phase involved the production and testing of a television spot developed by a commercial advertising agency. The 30-second animated spot, aired for the first time on November 18, 1987, was directed at myths about AIDS and carried the message that AIDS cannot be transmitted by, for example, kissing, sneezing or using public bathrooms. At first this spot was given heavy exposure, but after objections by the Ministry of Government, it was aired only after 11 p.m.; it ran for three months.

The third phase of the campaign was to begin on December 20, 1987, with the airing of another animated spot, developed by the same agency, on methods of preventing AIDS. This spot had three succinct messages: Ask for disposable syringes whenever you receive an injection; have sexual relations only with your spouse; and use a condom. The spot was delayed

---

John Stover is vice president for development studies with The Futures Group, Glastonbury, Conn. Mario Bravo, formerly director of the Mexican National Committee for Investigation and Control of AIDS (CONASIDA), is a private consultant in Mexico City.

Figure 1. Percentage of respondents who knew about condoms for family planning and for AIDS prevention, by survey round, urban Mexico, 1988



until February 1988 because of objections to the use of the word condom, and it, too, was shown only after 11 p.m. for three months.

At the same time that these television spots were being aired, the local press carried a number of stories on AIDS and the information campaign. Many articles questioned why the campaign was not more visible.

In early April 1988, the Ministry of Health announced the immediate launching of a massive campaign that would focus on methods of preventing AIDS transmission. This announcement sparked a strong response by conservative groups, who accused the government of promoting "free sex" and acting against "good manners, social values and traditions." These groups placed ads in nearly every newspaper calling on the government to stop the campaign and accusing it of inundating schools and public places with condoms. As a result, the new government campaign was canceled. On July 17, 1988 as a separate activity, a National AIDS Day took place, coordinated with articles and interviews in the press; public figures talked about the need for open discussion of the problem.

Methodology

Continuous Omnibus Consumer Studies (Estudios Continuos de Consumidores Omnibus, or ECCO) is a Mexican affiliate of the Gallup Organization that conducts monthly omnibus surveys to collect standard demographic and economic information. Organizations can arrange with ECCO to have a particular question or module of questions inserted into the survey. The organization then receives the responses to their questions, along with the results from the standard demographic and economic items. Using the omnibus survey in this way for social research can be cost-effective when the number of questions is small.

On six different occasions between February and October 1988, a module of five questions concerning attitudes toward and knowledge of condoms was added to the monthly omnibus survey. The surveys coincided with the latter phases of the AIDS information campaign mounted by CONASIDA. The intent was to compare the change in attitudes toward condoms as the AIDS campaign progressed.

Every 1–2 months, the Mexican omnibus survey draws a random probability sample from the population aged 15–60 living in the 36 largest cities in the country. The completed sample size for each survey is 1,300 males and 1,300 females. With this sample size, the survey findings should be accurate to within plus or minus two percentage points. Respondents were contacted and interviewed in their homes. For this analysis, we weighted the sample by socioeconomic group and geographic area to produce a representative sample of urban Mexico.

Our analysis examines the results of six consecutive omnibus survey rounds. Unfortunately, the first survey to include the condom module was not fielded until February, after the first of the two television spots had already aired. However, the six survey waves did cover a period of nine months (the first one occurred before the airing of the second television spot) and included the month of April, when the campaign was especially strong.

The module on attitudes toward and knowledge of condoms consisted of five items. Respondents were asked to name the methods of contraception that they knew; to list the ways of protecting oneself from contracting AIDS; to give their opinions about using condoms for family planning; to indicate whether they would use a condom if they were to use a contraceptive in the near future; and to explain why they would not use a condom, if they so answered.

The responses to these questions were all unprompted; that is, respondents were not given a list of possible answers. We used spontaneous responses to get a truer picture of the knowledge that may affect the participants' behavior.

We also performed a correlation analysis to determine the degree to which knowledge about condoms for family planning and for AIDS prevention were related.

Findings

Figure 1 diagrams the responses to the first two questions regarding knowledge of the condom as a family planning method and as a method of preventing AIDS. Approximately 40 percent of participants mentioned it as a contraceptive method in the first two rounds of the survey (February 5–24 and March 9–24, respectively). By the third survey wave (April 27–May 23), the proportion jumped almost one-third to 54 percent. And while spontaneous knowledge of the condom as a method dropped slightly, to 43 percent, in the fourth round (July 20–August 18), it rose again and remained constant at 47 percent in the fifth and six rounds (August 22–September 15 and September 22–October 24, respectively).

In response to the second question, the proportion mentioning the condom as a method of preventing AIDS more than doubled, from 13–14 percent in the first two waves of the 1988 omnibus survey to 32 percent by the third. The proportion remained about the same in subsequent rounds. The large increase in knowledge between the second and third rounds may have been related to publicity surrounding the government's announcement to undertake a more vigorous AIDS campaign or to the controversy generated by groups opposing the campaign.

The similarity between patterns of knowledge about the condom as a contraceptive method and as a method of preventing AIDS suggests that AIDS information has a positive, reinforcing effect on knowledge of condoms for family planning. Both types of knowledge were relatively unchanged in the first two waves, increased dramatically in the third wave, and stayed at high levels for the three remaining rounds.

We performed a correlation analysis to show the degree to which the same people expressed knowledge or lack of knowledge of condoms for both purposes. The results are presented below:

Survey	Correlation
1	0.11
2	0.25
3	0.27
4	0.31
5	0.32
6	0.33

The positive correlation, which increased in value with each wave as the AIDS campaign progressed, indicates a reinforcing effect of AIDS messages on knowledge of condom use for family planning. Moreover, each of the correlations was statistically significant at $p<.001$. Thus, increasing knowledge of the condom as a means of preventing AIDS also increases recognition of its use as a family planning method.

The respondents' opinions about condoms were easily classified by us as either favorable or unfavorable. For example, favorable opinions included "condom use is responsible" and "it prevents pregnancy," while unfavorable remarks included "condom use reduces pleasure" and "it is unreliable." The proportion of respondents expressing favorable opinions about condoms for family planning increased from 56 percent in the first round to 67 percent by the third, falling to 61 percent by the last round (not shown). A similar pattern occurs in the percentage who said that protection against sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) added to the positive image of the condom as a contraceptive method.

Respondents expressing unfavorable opinions about condoms for family planning declined slowly, from 20 percent in Wave 1 to 15 percent in Wave 5, but rose to 20 percent again in the last survey wave. Almost no one cited the condom's role in AIDS prevention as contributing to a negative opinion of the method (less than one percent).

At each of the survey waves, over 50 percent of respondents said that they would use the condom in the future if they needed a family planning method (see Figure 2). The proportion increased from 51–56 percent in the first two rounds to 58–67 percent in the remaining four. The proportions who would not use the condom as a method of family planning declined throughout the campaign from a level of 42–44 percent in rounds one and two to 29–32 percent in the last four rounds. As with those who said that the condom's role in preventing AIDS did not create a negative association, when asked why they would not use a condom, almost no one answered because it was only for preventing AIDS (less than one percent).

Discussion and Conclusions

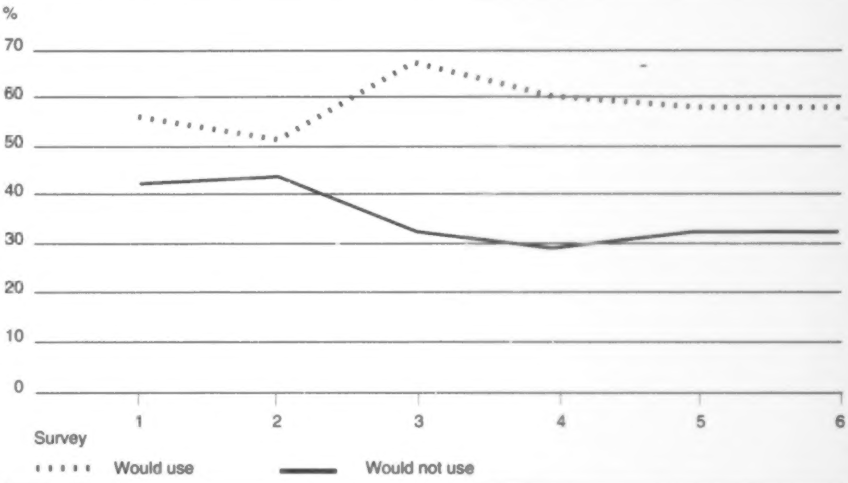
Although only part of the 1987 information campaign dealt with condom use to prevent AIDS, there was a significant increase in knowledge on this subject. According to baseline data from the same questions added to a June 1987 omnibus survey, knowledge about AIDS prevention was far from widespread in Mexico.[1] Only six percent of respondents mentioned condom use when asked how AIDS could be prevented. Respondents more frequently mentioned six other ways of preventing AIDS: avoiding sexual relations with homosexuals (23 percent); avoiding contact with people who have AIDS (11 percent); avoiding sexual contact with prostitutes (nine percent); practicing sexual hygiene (eight percent); avoiding blood transfusions (seven percent); and avoiding all sexual contact (seven percent).

Our study tracked changing attitudes about condoms during an important phase of the Mexican government's public information campaign about AIDS. Earlier research using the same omnibus survey conducted in July 1986[2] and September 1987[3] by the Futures Group and Mexico's Department of Family Planning (Dirección General de Planificación Familiar), which runs the contraceptive social marketing program indicated that the condom was more commonly known as a family planning method: About 37 percent of the respondents in each survey knew about condoms for family planning without prompting.

An increasing awareness of the condom's role in AIDS prevention, as demonstrated by the results of this study, did not seem to lead to a worsening of the condom's image as a family planning method. In fact, the AIDS messages improved knowledge about the condom as a contraceptive method (and possibly its image as well since the proportion saying they would not use one declined at various points over the survey period).

Since the research reported on here was conducted, CONASIDA has carried out four additional AIDS campaigns. Each has stimulated a debate about sexual taboos and deeply held beliefs. After each campaign, CONASIDA received anecdotal reports from condom distributors and producers that sales had increased. Recently, the advertising for some brands has stressed both the themes of family

Figure 2. Percentage of respondents who said they would or would not use condoms if they needed a contraceptive in the near future, by survey round



planning and protection from infection.

Our results generally agree with findings from two other research projects recently undertaken in Jamaica by the Ministry of Health of Jamaica and The Futures Group. A baseline survey of AIDS knowledge and attitudes in Jamaica indicated that the image of the condom as a family planning method was enhanced by its role in AIDS prevention.[4] Focus-group research conducted at the same time found that most participants regarded AIDS protection as a "bonus" when using the condom as a contraceptive.[5] There is evidence, however, that people who already held a negative image of condoms may have had these opinions reinforced.

The results from both Mexico and Jamaica indicate that AIDS information campaigns are likely to lead to an increase in knowledge of the condom as a method of AIDS prevention *and* a method of family planning. It appears unlikely that the introduction of AIDS-specific brands of condoms would hurt the image of other condom brands for family planning, although we did not specifically research this question. Whether AIDS-specific brands are needed in order to increase condom use for AIDS prevention, however, is unclear.

References

1. I. M. Reider, *Resultados del Estudio de Opinión Realizado a Través del Sistema Omnibus—Tema: Síndrome de Inmunodeficiencia-Adquirida*, Estudios Continuos de Consumidores Omnibus (ECCO), Mexico City, July 1987.

2. *Resultados del Estudio Realizado en su Primera Etapa para Evaluar la Categoría de Anticonceptivos*, ECCO, Mexico City, July 1986.

3. *Resultados del Estudio Realizado en su Tercera Etapa para Evaluar la Categoría de Anticonceptivos*, ECCO, Mexico City, Oct. 1987.

4. *A Baseline Survey on AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, Market Research Services Limited, Kingston, Jamaica, Aug. 1988.

5. M. Wedderburn, *An Evaluation of AIDS Messages in Jamaica: A Report of Focus Group Findings*, Hope Enterprises, Kingston, Jamaica, Sept. 1988.

Resumen

Investigaciones realizadas en zonas urbanas de México indican que los programas de información sobre el SIDA no perjudican la imagen del preservativo como método de planificación familiar. Gracias a una campaña informativa y a la publicidad que se le dio, aumentó el conocimiento espontáneo del preservativo como método anticonceptivo y de prevención contra el SIDA. Ambos tipos de conocimientos estaban estrechamente relacionados.

Résumé

Les recherches effectués dans les zones urbaines du Mexique révèlent que les programmes d'informations sur le SIDA ne ternissent pas l'image du préservatif comme méthode de planification familiale. La connaissance spontanée du préservatif, comme méthode de prévention du SIDA aussi bien que comme méthode contraceptive, a augmenté sous l'effet d'une campagne d'information publique et de la publicité qui l'a entourée. Les deux types de connaissances étaient en étroite corrélation.

Family Planning Knowledge . . .

(Continued from page 54)

cation and Family Formation in Sub-Saharan Africa," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **15**:100, 1989.

3. J. O. Ojeifo and B. Singh, "Paternal Health Services: A Missing Link in Family Health Services," presented at the 11th Annual International Health Conference, National Council for International Health, Arlington, Va., June 10–13, 1984.

4. P. O. Awsanya, "Nigeria: Cultural Barriers to Family Planning Among the Yorubas," *Studies in Family Planning* , **1**:13, 1969.

5. G. A. Oni and J. McCarthy, "Contraceptive Knowledge and Practices in Ilorin, Nigeria: 1983–1988," *Studies in Family Planning*, **21**:104, 1990; A. A. Olukoya, "The Changing Attitude and Practice of Men Regarding Family Planning in Lagos, Nigeria," *Public Health*, **99**:349, 1985; and D. Lauro, "Modern Contraceptive Use As a Determinant of Fertility in Africa," paper presented at a meeting of the National Academy of Sciences, Committee on Population, Washington, D.C., Apr. 1989.

6. R. J. Lesthaeghe, "Social Organization, Economic Crises, and the Future of Fertility Control in Africa," in R. J. Lesthaeghe, ed., *Reproduction and Social Organization in Sub-Saharan Africa*, University of California Press, Berkeley, 1989.

7. Federal Republic of Nigeria, *National Policy on Population for Development, Unity, Progress and Self-Reliance*, Federal Ministry of Health, Lagos, 1988.

8. P. T. Piotrow et al., "Mass Media Family Planning Promotion in Three Nigerian Cities," *Studies in Family Planning*, **21**:265, 1990.

9. G. A. Oni, "Effects of Women's Education on Postpartum Practices and Fertility in Urban Nigeria," *Studies in Family Planning*, **16**:349, 1985.

10. T. McGinn, A. Bamba and M. Balma, "Male Knowledge, Use and Attitudes Regarding Family Planning in Burkina Faso," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **15**:84, 1989.

Resumen

En una encuesta de hogares realizada entre septiembre de 1988 y enero de 1989 en Ilorin, Nigeria, 1.022 hombres informaron sobre sus conocimientos, actitudes y prácticas en materia de anticoncepción. Si bien la muestra no es representativa de la ciudad, los datos sirven para comparar información según el nivel de instrucción y el lugar de residencia por nivel socioeconómico.

Los conocimientos sobre anticonceptivos son prácticamente universales entre estos hombres, siendo el preservativo y la píldora los métodos más conocidos. El preservativo es también el método más generalizado en esta muestra de hombres casados con mujeres de entre 15 y 49 años, aunque menos de la mitad de los hombres de los grupos de mayor instrucción y nivel socioeconómico lo han utilizado alguna vez.

La mayoría de los hombres de todos los niveles de instrucción y áreas de residencia tienen una actitud positiva frente a la planificación familiar. El uso de anticonceptivos, además, está asociado con la comunicación al respecto entre marido y mujer. De los hombres que dijeron haber hablado del tema con su mujer, entre el 22 y el 60 por ciento informaron de que ésta usaba algún método. En el caso de los que manifestaron no haberlo hecho, en cambio, la proporción variaba del cuatro al 10 por ciento.

Résumé

Une enquête effectuée entre septembre 1988 et janvier 1989 auprès de ménages d'Ilorin, au Nigéria, a rendu des données sur les connaissances, les attitudes et les pratiques de 1.022 hommes en matière de contraception. Bien que l'échantillon ne soit pas représentatif de la ville, les données offrent des informations comparées par niveau d'instruction et rang socio-économique (tel que mesuré par zone de résidence).

La connaissance des contraceptifs est pratiquement universelle chez ces hommes, le préservatif et la pilule étant les méthodes les mieux connues. Le préservatif constitue également la méthode utilisée le plus souvent; cependant, moins de la moitié des hommes provenant des groupes les mieux instruits et des classes socio-économiques les plus élevées en ont jamais fait usage.

La plupart des hommes à tous les niveaux d'instruction et de résidence ont des attitudes positives à l'égard de la planification familiale, et l'utilisation des contraceptifs est liée à une communication entre maris et femmes au sujet de la planification familiale. Parmi les hommes déclarant avoir eu ces discussions, 22 à 60 pour cent signalent que leurs épouses utilisent une méthode, par rapport à 4–10 pour cent de ceux qui affirment n'avoir pas discuté de planification familiale avec leurs épouses.

Comment

Fertility Decline and Pronatalist Policy In Singapore

By Sharon M. Lee, Gabriel Alvarez and J. John Palen

Introduction

In an age dominated by global concern over rapid population growth, there is understandably less attention paid to areas where fertility may be declining. Yet the fear of population decline has a long history,[1] and the topic has experienced a revival in recent years as many industrialized nations have become increasingly aware of the potential consequences of long-term low fertility.[2]

Several countries have adopted pronatalist policies in an effort to reverse low fertility. France, West Germany, and the Soviet Union, for example, have instituted fertility incentives—such as financial grants and tax breaks, and more child care services and help for working mothers—to encourage births and slow the trend of declining fertility, while countries such as Romania, under the regime of Nicolae Ceausescu, had severely restricted access to contraceptive and abortion services to promote larger families. To date, most of these efforts have had only limited success in reversing low fertility.

In Singapore, a newly industrialized country, there has been a unique response to low fertility and projected population decline. The country moved from high fertility in the 1960s to below-replacement fertility in the 1980s, leading to a shift by the Singaporean government toward pronatalism.[3] This article discusses the new pronatalist policy—the factors behind it, the primary initiatives and the prospects for success.

Table 1. Singapore's population and growth rate, by year, 1871–2000

Year	Population	Growth rate
1871	97,111	na
1881	137,775	3.6
1891	181,612	2.8
1901	227,592	2.3
1911	303,321	2.9
1921	418,358	3.3
1931	557,745	2.9
1947	938,144	3.3
1957	1,445,929	4.4
1970	2,074,507	2.3
1980	2,413,945	1.5
1990	2,710,819	1.1
2000	2,929.662	0.6

Sources: C. K. Khoo, *Census of Population 1980, Administrative Report*, Department of Statistics, Singapore, 1983, Table 5.1; S. H. Saw, *Demographic Trends in Singapore*, Census Monograph No. 1, Department of Statistics, Singapore, 1981, Tables 1.1 and 5.1.

Note: na=not applicable.

Demography and History

Modern Singapore began as a trading port established by the British East India Company in 1819. The island was initially populated by a few hundred Malays, but the population quickly increased, as shown in Table 1. Prior to World War II, the main factor in population growth was immigration, mostly from China, and to a lesser extent, India and the surrounding Malay archipelago.[4] Restrictions on immigration were introduced in the 1930s and then tightened in the post-war decades; population growth since the 1940s has been primarily the result of an increased birth rate.

The independent Republic of Singapore was established in 1965. The government quickly recognized the potential adverse effect on economic development of a population approaching two million—with an annual population growth rate exceeding three percent in the 1960s—crowded on an island of 224 square miles. A population restriction program was initiated in 1966, with the goals of achieving zero population growth and the norm of a two-child family by 2030.

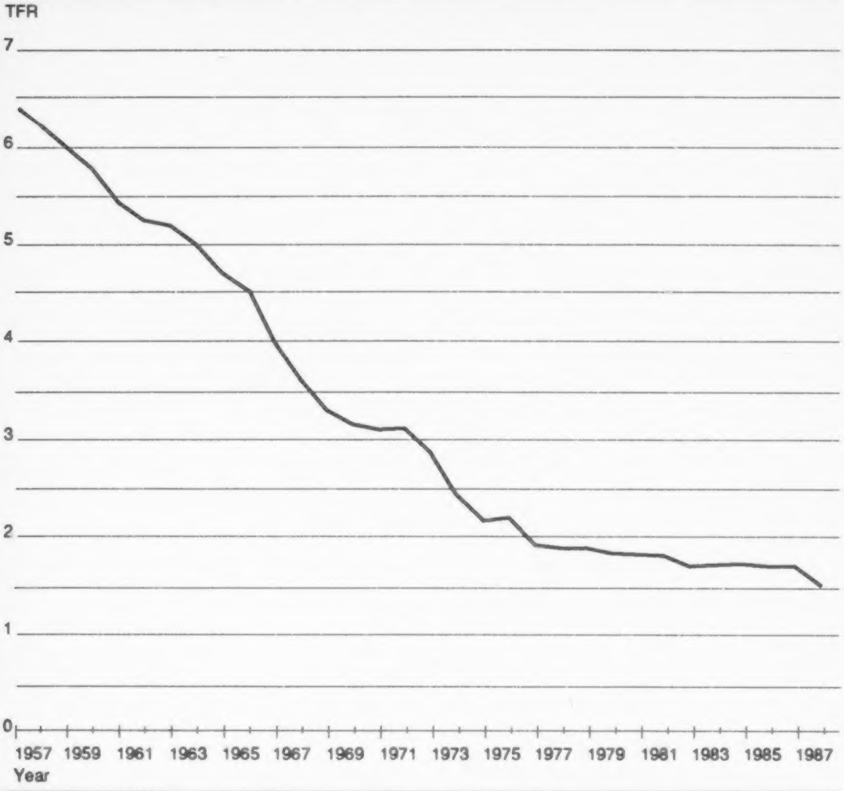
The Singapore Family Planning and Population Board (SFPPB) was established in 1966, and the government began a vigorous campaign to encourage smaller families. Fertility disincentives included financial deterrents (for example, higher delivery fees for second and later children, paid maternity leave for the first two children only, and no tax breaks for third and subsequent children), as well as a decreased chance of obtaining government-subsidized housing if families had three or more children. (The majority of Singaporeans rely on subsidized housing; it currently provides homes for 85 percent of the island's population, and almost all are low- and middle-income residents). The government-controlled mass media circulated family planning messages, and the Ministry of Education introduced classes on population and family planning into the schools. Family planning services were made easily available, and legislation to provide low-cost abortion and sterilization was enacted in 1970.[5]

Figure 1 (page 66) shows the trend of the declining total fertility rate (TFR) from 6.5 in 1957 to 1.4 in 1988. Singapore's TFR is now among the lowest in the world. The net reproduction rate, estimated at 1.4 in 1969, had dropped to 0.76 in 1985. If recent levels continue, the current generation of Singaporean women will, on average, be replaced by a generation of daughters that is proportionately smaller by about one-fourth. Many factors may have played a role in this population shift, including government programs, industrialization and changes in family structure and social values.[6] In any event, the goals of the population restriction policies and pro-

---

Sharon M. Lee is assistant professor, Department of Sociology, University of Richmond; Gabriel Alvarez is assistant professor, Department of Sociology, University of North Carolina-Charlotte; and J. John Palen is professor and chair, Department of Sociology and Anthropology, Virginia Commonwealth University. This is a revised version of a paper presented at the 1989 annual meeting of the Population Association of America. The survey data reported here were collected with the assistance of a grant to John Palen from the Population Council. The authors thank Barry Edmonston and Murry Gendell for their helpful comments on an earlier version of this article.

Figure 1. Total fertility rate, Singapore, 1957–1988



grams introduced in the late 1960s have been achieved for over a decade now, and until recently, Singapore had been seen as a role model for government fertility control programs.

The Switch To Pronatalism

The first hint of a change in population policy came on August 14, 1983, in the National Day speech of Prime Minister Lee Kuan Yew. Census data for 1980, he noted, showed that women with little or no formal schooling had an average of 3.5 children, while university-educated women had 1.6 children. In addition, close to 16 percent of female university graduates remained single at 35 years of age.

According to the Prime Minister, such differentials imperiled the country's future because "nature, or what is inherited, is the greater determinant of a person's performance than nurture. . . .If we continue to reproduce ourselves in this lopsided way, we will be unable to maintain present standards. Level of competence will decline. Our economy will falter; administration will suffer; and our society will decline."[7] The Prime Minister's speech assumed that educational attainment was a valid substitute for natural talent, in which case, such educational differentials in fertility would not be eugenically beneficial for Singapore.

While the Prime Minister and other officials did not refer to ethnic differences in fertility in their 1983 speeches, the government's concern with eugenics and population clearly revealed worries about the future ethnic composition of Singapore's population. Immigration by Chinese and Indians in the 1800s and early 1900s resulted in a multiethnic population. The Chinese are now the majority (77 percent of the population), followed by Malays (15 percent), Indians (six percent), and a small population of other and mixed ethnicities.[8] While the Chinese dominate politically, economically, socially and culturally, census data reveal that a below-replacement fertility pattern is found mainly among Chinese women: The Chinese produce 69 percent of births, Indians eight percent, and Malays 19 percent.[9] In addition, more university-educated women are Chinese than are Malay or Indian, and while virtually all Malay and Indian women marry (whether or not they are college educated), Chinese women show lower marital rates, particularly among college graduates.[10]* Thus, the concern over marriage and fertility among educated women was specifically directed at Chinese women.

While controlling population growth was an integral part of the push toward economic development in the 1960s, by the 1980s Singapore was faced with a population that was changing not only in size but in its reproductive patterns. Singaporeans have been delaying marriage, and many are not marrying at all. While the mean age at first marriage for men has remained relatively stable at 28 years from 1957 to 1985, that of women has increased steadily from 23.6 to 25.3 years. Delayed marriage patterns are especially marked in regard to educational attainment; 1985 data show that the mean age among total and first marriages is highest for people with a university education.[11] The inverse relationship between fertility and education is revealed in the latest census data: University-educated women have the lowest mean number of living children, 1.57, compared with 4.37 among women without formal education, 2.34 among women with only primary or elementary schooling, and 1.59 among women with secondary and upper secondary schooling.[12]

Because of their political and economic implications, population changes in Singapore are viewed seriously by the government. An island with no natural resources other than its harbor, Singapore has depended on its own labor force for economic development, which has been spectacular over the last two decades: In 1987, the per capita gross national product was U.S. $7,410, second in Asia only to Japan, and higher than Italy and Spain. On health and other quality-of-life indicators, Singapore has also done well. The 1987 infant mortality rate was 9.3 per 1,000, lower than that of the United States (10.5), the United Kingdom (9.4) and West Germany (9.5), and life expectancy at birth was 73 years.[13] Most Singaporeans live in modern government-subsidized apartments, and the island has extensive highways and a new mass transit system.

The Government's Efforts

Michael S. Teitelbaum and Jay M. Winter suggest that governments can respond to potential population decline in four ways: limiting access to effective family planning, increasing fertility through incentives, increasing immigration and adapting to demographic change rather than trying to influence it.[14] Singapore has chosen an active response by trying to affect fertility through numerous incentives directed at specific groups of women.

---

*A growing proportion of Indian and Malay women aged 30–34 are also remaining single. The sources for such a development are unclear, but if this trend continues, the problems of low fertility can only be exacerbated. (See: Singapore Ministry of Health's Population Planning Unit, 1985.)

Since 1983, several policies have been introduced to encourage Singaporeans, especially those with what are considered "desirable" characteristics, to have more children. Numerous shifts in the pronatalist programs have occurred, reflecting the difficulties faced by officials in attempting a complete reversal in population policy.

The first pronatalist program was the "Graduate Mothers Program" introduced in January 1984. The program tried to encourage university-educated women to have more children by offering the women a series of incentives, including giving them priority in choice of schools for their children if they had three or more and tax relief if they were of higher parity.*

The program stemmed directly from the government's equating educational attainment with intelligence. Officials felt that these incentives would encourage highly-educated women "to have a second, if not a third, child. This will go a little way toward correcting the present lopsided pattern of procreation in Singapore which is a cause for concern."[15] The program was directed at educated Singaporean women, who tend to marry men of similar educational backgrounds. The government also wanted to enhance the appeal of women graduates as spouses, given that 16 percent of graduate women remained single, compared with just five percent of graduate men.[16]

The fertility incentive program for highly educated women was accompanied by an antinatalist Sterilization Cash Incentive Scheme directed at poor and less-educated women.[17] If a woman was younger than 30 and had a family income below U.S. $2,750 annually, and if neither she nor her husband had completed high school, her sterilization would be rewarded by a cash grant of about U.S. $5,000 to be used in purchasing a government-subsidized apartment. The cash award was approximately one-third the cost of a three-bedroom apartment and was more than enough to cover the required 20 percent down payment. However, if the operation were ever reversed, the woman would have to return the grant with 10 percent compound interest.

By mid-1985, only 57 couples had signed up for the sterilization program, and only 47 women were sterilized.[18] Despite its limited success, the sterilization program did not meet with notable opposition, which was surprising, given the ethical questions raised by a program targeting poor and less-educated women for sterilization. This suggests that Singaporeans, on the whole, may believe that poor people should not have large families, yet it is unclear whether such a belief has a eugenic or economic basis.

The Graduate Mothers Program turned out to be more controversial than the government had expected; there was especially strong criticism from high school-educated women who resented the benefits extended to a small group of highly educated women.† (According to the 1980 Census, just 1.8 percent of women aged 10 and over were university graduates.) The target group of women graduates was also unenthusiastic about the proposals, judging from letters published in the newspapers.[19] These women resented the government's appeal for their "superior" genes, and were not happy with the intrusion into their personal lives.[20]

It was not surprising when, in March 1985, the Graduate Mothers Program was abruptly terminated, as the Minister of Education, Tony Tan, announced: "The response from graduate mothers would indicate that this premise [incentives would encourage graduate women to have more babies] is unlikely to be true. In view of the anxiety and resentment which the priority scheme has aroused in Singaporeans, both graduate and nongraduate, and as the scheme is not likely in my view to produce the desired results, I see no reason for continuing [it]."[21]

Because a major concern of the government was the low marriage rates of university-educated women, almost all of whom were Chinese, a Social Development Unit (SDU) to facilitate marriage for university-educated women was established in 1984 within the Ministry of Finance. Still in operation, its primary objective is to bring together single university graduates by organizing tea dances, bowling clinics, weekend holiday trips to resorts, computer workshops and even cruises (dubbed "love boat cruises" by Singaporeans). In addition, all unmarried government employees with university degrees are required to attend workshops and seminars on marriage and the family, and there is a computerized matchmaking service run by the SDU to pair couples for dates.

As of 1988, about 40 percent of single graduates (approximately 7,000 members) belonged to the SDU and it claims to have produced nearly 500 marriages since 1984. The unit's deputy director summed up the SDU's activities by saying, "If you want to produce geniuses, you have to get the graduate man to marry a graduate girl."[22]

Despite the failure of its early incentive programs, the Singapore government kept its pronatalist policy. Early in 1987, new fertility incentives (which were continued in 1989) were announced. These incentives were phrased in terms of affordability ("Have Three, or More if You Can Afford It"[23]) and the previous emphasis on educated mothers was dropped. However, it is unclear how different the "new" fertility incentive program was, because the higher incomes of better-educated Singaporeans meant that essentially the same groups remained the targets of pronatalism.

The new incentives also included financial benefits. For example, parents with three children were granted tax rebates of up to U.S. $10,000, spread over a five-year period. Working mothers received a tax rebate equal to 15 percent of earned income—up to a maximum of U.S. $5,000—and tax deductions for the third and fourth children were increased. Delivery fees for children of third and higher parity were subsidized by the government.

In addition to these financial benefits, families with three or more children were awarded priority in school registration and in housing (the wait for government-subsidized housing was cut from an average of two years to two months). The government would also contribute towards child-care costs, and female government employees were given additional maternity leave benefits.[24] A new incentive announced in the 1990 budget offers a U.S. $10,000 tax rebate, valid for seven years, to couples who have a second child before the mother is aged 28. The longer the mother waits to have her second child, the smaller the tax break. This policy was intended to discourage delayed childbearing and bring about higher fertility by rewarding couples who have their families sooner.[25]

---

*While the Singapore education system is public and schooling is available to all, schools vary in quality and reputation, and the system is highly competitive. Children are "tracked" from age eight, and are tested frequently. The chances of proceeding to a good high school depend on which elementary school one attended; in turn, one's high school is a major determinant of entering a university, which only eight percent of high school graduates are selected to attend. Therefore, having priority in school registration is a decided advantage, because parents can more easily place their children in the better elementary schools.

†The Graduate Mothers Program was later extended to include women who were high school graduates.

Table 2. Projections of total population (in 000s), population younger than 15 (in 000s) and percentage of population aged 59 and older, by three assumptions regarding family size, according to year

Year	2-child family			1.5-child family			1.3-child family		
	Total	<15	≥59	Total	<15	≥59	Total	<15	≥59
1985	2,558	624	7.8	2,558	624	7.8	2,558	624	7.8
1990	2,703	621	8.5	2,691	609	8.6	2,686	604	8.6
1995	2,850	659	9.3	2,809	618	9.5	2,789	[illegible]	9.5
2000	2,987	682	10.5	2,900	595	10.8	2,858	[illegible]	11.0
2005	3,102	681	11.5	2,961	552	12.0	2,896	492	12.3
2010	3,191	660	14.2	3,000	509	15.1	2,911	440	15.5
2015	3,266	642	17.4	3,018	481	18.8	2,905	410	19.6
2020	3,328	643	17.4	3,014	468	23.3	2,873	393	24.4
2025	3,372	660	23.8	2,979	457	26.9	2,807	374	28.5
2030	3,391	671	24.5	2,912	438	28.5	2,708	346	30.6
2035	3,382	669	24.4	2,814	412	29.3	2,577	315	32.0
2040	3,358	659	23.2	2,698	387	28.9	2,429	288	32.1
2045	3,332	651	22.4	2,577	368	28.9	2,275	268	32.7
2050	3,317	654	22.0	2,460	355	29.3	2,125	252	33.7

Source: Based on projections by Saw Swee Hock in "When Couples Have Fewer Than Two," *The Straits Times*, June 15, 1986.

Future Projections

When population policy was first changed in 1983, the official reason was concern with the genetic quality of future generations. By 1987, the reasons for population policy changes had evolved to include concerns about the moral character of Singapore, economic growth, aging of the population, and ethnic balance. Casting pronatalist programs in a moral context, the Prime Minister characterized the advent of oral contraceptives as a catalyst of the decline in the West: "When the pill was discovered, it was supposed to be a blessing for mankind, and we just took the pill in and family planning dispensed the pill. It has led to promiscuity in the West, the total breakdown of all family control over children, and a new kind of society where you shack up with people and have one-parent families."[26]

The move towards encouraging higher fertility could mean changes in the government's growing role in contraception and family planning, including a reconsideration of abortion policies. The number of abortions compared to pregnancies has increased steadily since 1970, when only four percent of pregnancies ended in abortions. By 1985, 36 percent of pregnancies ended in abortion, which is both easily available and affordable (in government hospitals, an abortion costs just U.S. $2.50[27]). As yet, no decision affecting abortion policy has been made, although it is clearly a potential target of the pronatalist movement in Singapore,[28] and it may be only a matter of time before the availability of abortion is limited.

Because the aging of the population and the implications that imbalances in age groups could have for economic growth and the size of the labor force have been used to bolster pronatalist policy, we have summarized projected changes in population size and age distributions under three fertility assumptions (see Table 2). If the current below-replacement fertility level persists, the population will continue to grow, and will peak early in the next century. The various projections suggest that peak population may range from about three million (assuming below-replacement fertility) to a high of 3.4 million (with fertility at replacement level) in 2030.

The norm in Singapore is now the two-child family; if each couple were to have only two children from now on, the young segment of the population (those below 15 years old) will remain at a relatively stable size. When fertility is below replacement level, there will be at least a 43 percent decrease in this age segment between 1985 and 2050, and a decline in absolute numbers in this group beginning in the 1990s.

The proportion of Singaporeans aged 59 and older is expected to increase from 7.8 percent of the population in 1985 to 10.5 percent in 2000,[29] assuming replacement-level fertility. This older segment of the population will comprise 22 percent of the population by 2050, and even higher proportions of older citizens are expected with below-replacement fertility.[30]

A pronatalist policy is therefore seen as critical in maintaining an adequate Singaporean work force that can support the elderly as well as sustain current levels of economic development. The Singapore government wants to phase out foreign temporary workers by 1992; these workers, mainly from Malaysia, Indonesia and Sri Lanka, numbered over 150,000 in the mid-1980s, accounting for almost 12 percent of the labor force. Foreign workers are tolerated, but the government fears they could become politically and socially disruptive. Thus, economic considerations, combined with concerns over an aging population, strengthen current arguments in favor of pronatalism.

Perhaps the critical factor underlying Singapore's pronatalism, however, is ethnicity. When the alarm over educated women's low fertility was first sounded in 1983, it was clear that ethnicity was a crucial but unexpressed concern. Then, in a speech delivered at the end of 1986, the Prime Minister stated that "the problem" was that the Chinese were not replacing themselves.[31] Since then, officials have addressed the ethnic factor even more directly. When First Deputy Prime Minister Goh Chok Tong announced the new population policy based on affordability in 1987, he said: "The Malays, with a fertility rate of 2.1 over the past decade, have been replacing themselves. The Indian fertility has also tended to be near replacement level, fluctuating between 1.9 and 2.1. But the Chinese fertility rate has been sliding for the past ten years. It is now down to 1.5, and is expected to slip further. So the source of the problem is the Chinese community. They are not replacing themselves."[32]

Thus, while all Singaporean couples are eligible for the tax rebates, making children the country's biggest tax break, the main targets of the fertility incentive programs are the Chinese. Richard Hu, the finance minister, made it clear that delayed childbearing is "particularly pronounced for the higher educated,"[33] so the 1990 proposal to encourage earlier childbearing can be seen as another attempt to persuade the Chinese to have large families.

Reactions to Pronatalism

The government appears confident that increasingly explicit statements regarding ethnicity will not provoke tension, a remarkable attitude given the history of Chinese-Malay racial tension and conflict in Singapore and the proscription of public discussions of "sensitive" racial issues. The present government has had tight control over the country since Singapore emerged from colonization—Lee Kuan Yew, the first Prime Minister of Singapore, stepped down in 1990 and was replaced by his hand-picked successor, Goh Chok Tong. As with all political, economic, and social policy decisions in Singapore, population policies are formulated and implemented "from the top down"; upper-level government officials (particularly the Prime Minister) announce new policies without much prior public debate.

There is little systematic collection of information on Singaporeans' attitudes toward recent shifts in population policies and the programs designed to implement them, other than letters published in the government-controlled press. This information would be helpful in considering the potential effects of the new fertility programs as well as the future of population trends. A purposive sample survey of 399 Singaporean university students, intended to gauge young people's attitudes and potential responses to the new population policies, was conducted in 1983–1984.* Data from the Chinese respondents, who were 93 percent of the sample, are presented here.

About 91 percent of the 370 Chinese respondents expressed intentions to have children. Over 83 percent believed that marriage is necessary, with more female respondents considering marriage necessary (88 percent of females versus 78 percent of males). It appears that marriage and children remain normative among Chinese college students. If these attitudes are generalized to university graduates, it is clear that the observed lower marriage rate of university-educated women may not be entirely voluntary.

Among those who intended to have children, most preferred two children (56 percent) although 34 percent said they wanted three or more children. Only 22 students said they did not want any children, while just 12 preferred one child. Thus, nine out of 10 respondents intended to have at least two or more children. There were no differences by sex of respondent on number of intended children. Almost three out of four of the respondents said they would wait at least two years after marriage to have their first child.

Compared to females, males were more likely to want to start a family soon after marriage (31 percent versus 21 percent). On the whole, the sample's fertility intentions suggest little basis for further declines in fertility among highly educated Chinese.

The government often expresses concern over the large percentage of highly educated women who choose to remain single rather than marry "below themselves." Results from our survey suggest that this pattern is unlikely to change significantly: Most of the male respondents (47 percent) said they preferred a spouse with educational attainment similar to theirs; and almost equivalent percentages of the women expressed a preference for a partner with similar qualifications (40 percent) or more schooling (38 percent). In addition, almost 13 percent of the males preferred a partner with less schooling, while none of the women would consider marrying a man with less education.

In general, the sample expressed indifference to the SDU (54 percent), while about 20 percent said they were "agreeable" towards its activities and 18 percent said they were not. More males were receptive to the SDU's activities—26 percent compared to 17 percent of females. As expected, respondents who had no intentions of marrying or having children had the least positive attitudes toward the SDU.

More than one-half of all the respondents expressed a willingness to participate in various types of SDU activities, including lectures on courtship and marriage, and student socials and holiday cruises. There were no differences by sex on these items. The respondents balked, however, at participating in computer dating and matchmaking. Approximately 55 percent would not participate in computer dating, and females were clearly more negative about this than males: Males were split about evenly in their opinions, while 64 percent of women said they would not use this service. Opinions on marriages resulting from matchmaking were overwhelmingly negative, with about 85 percent of males and females saying they preferred to choose their spouse themselves.

Of course, these findings are based on limited data, but the overall picture shows that most highly educated Chinese Singaporeans intend to marry and have at least two children, and seem willing to participate in SDU activities that facilitate meeting potential spouses, but they are unwilling to yield to government control in actual dating and choice of spouse. Whether they can be motivated to have three or more children can only be determined by different data and with time.†

Discussion and Conclusion

The survey data indicate that the marriage and fertility intentions of Chinese Singaporean college students are at variance with the current practices of Singaporeans who are university graduates (most of whom are Chinese). They also provide evidence of widespread support for the norms of marrying and having two or more children. However, recent demographic trends in Singapore indicate delays in marriage, increased numbers of never-married Singaporeans and larger proportions of childless couples or couples with only one child—trends that are especially evident among university-educated persons younger than 40. It is possible that university students, when faced with the prospect of marriage and childbearing, may behave consistently with current practices, and therefore continue low fertility levels. This would not bode well for the future success of the pronatalist policy.

The Singapore case shows the various options countries can choose when faced with declining fertility. It is also significant because of the rapidity of the country's demographic transition from high to below-replacement fertility, and the dramatic reversal in its population policies. In spite of the limited success of the fertility incentive programs introduced since 1983, the government is convinced that it can persuade Singaporeans to reconsider their attitudes toward family size.‡ Because the population control policies in the 1960s and 1970s played a major role in decreasing fertility, the government is confident that it will be able to increase fertility.

The ultimate success or failure of current population policy and programs in Singapore cannot yet be determined, although we believe that these programs are unlikely to achieve the population objectives of the government. The very success of fertility limitation may well be a major obstacle to the new pronatalist policy. The two-child family is the norm for most Singaporeans, and current appeals for larger

(Continued on page 73)

---

*The survey was funded in part by a grant to John Palen from the Population Council; the results are unpublished.

†Findings from a non-random sample survey of university graduates confirm the normative patterns on marriage and fertility observed in our data. The majority of the 398 respondents in that survey stated that the "ideal" number of children was three or more, and over 90 percent of those still unmarried would like to be married eventually. Again, these expressions of intended marital and fertility plans are not consistent with current patterns among highly educated Singaporeans. (See: "Grads' Ideals on Children Don't Match Reality: Survey," *The Straits Times*, Apr. 9, 1987.)

‡In 1989, the trend of a declining total fertility rate in Singapore was reversed: The TFR increased to 1.6 in 1989 and to 2.0 in 1990. It is unclear whether this signals a long-term change in fertility levels; it is also unclear which groups of women are contributing to the rise in the TFR. Therefore, the most recent TFR levels cannot be considered evidence of long-term changes in fertility or the success of pronatalist programs.

Books in Review

People vs. the Environment

The Population Explosion
by Paul R. Ehrilich and Anne H. Ehrlich, Simon & Schuster, New York, N.Y., 1990, $18.95, 320 pp.

Reviewed by Jodi L. Jacobson

The publication of *The Population Explosion*, by Paul and Anne Ehrlich, follows by two decades Paul Ehrlich's first major work on the subject, *The Population Bomb*. While the earlier book served to alert the general public to the likely social, economic and environmental consequences of rapid population growth, the new book tells us that, at 5.3 billion and rising, the human population bomb has now been "detonated," and that we must do whatever is within our means to clean up the resulting mess.

Most readers will find the Ehrlichs' fluid writing and well-researched presentation of issues compelling and persuasive. In its multiple roles as a chronicle of the decline in local and global environmental support systems, a useful reference on demographic concepts such as exponential growth and momentum, a treatise on the problems associated with rapid population growth and a guide to political action, *The Population Explosion* is highly readable and comprehensive.

The book arrives at a critical juncture in the evolution of public debate on the relationship of increasingly worrisome demographic and environmental trends. As we emerge from what is now commonly referred to as "the lost decade of the eighties," leaders in international development are seeking a renewed political and financial commitment to programs aimed at slowing population growth and coping with ecological degradation. Not surprisingly, those convinced of the need to accord these issues top priority on every nation's agenda view the next 10 years as a period that will "make or break" the fate of the planet.

This urgency is warranted. An additional one billion people will be added to the world's population by the turn of the century. Current estimates project a global population of over nine billion by 2030, a near doubling in less than 40 years. Given such a scenario, the prospects for restoring the ecosystems upon which human beings ultimately depend appear bleak indeed. But, as the Ehrlichs acknowledge early in the book, "the assault . . . upon the environment and resources of the planet is not just a matter of brute numbers of people. Rather it is what those people do; it is their impact on the things we care about—on each other, on nonrenewable resources, and above all on the environmental systems that sustain us" [p. 58].

It has long been recognized that people are the root cause of the deterioration of air, soils and water, whether through pollution or overuse. Human beings are rapidly consuming finite resources such as oil and destroying renewable ones such as forests. More recent additions to this list of ills are vast global changes such as the expected warming of the earth's atmosphere caused by [illegible] buildup of "greenhouse gases" like [illegible]n dioxide, and the depletion of the ozone layer resulting from the use of chlorofluorocarbons. These problems are complicated by their interconnections: Net losses of forest cover worldwide, for example, increase atmospheric carbon dioxide. If we act now, we can hope to reverse the decline in renewable resources locally within a matter of years or decades; if we do not, we risk irreversible global changes.

Meanwhile, we find ourselves backsliding in the struggle to meet basic human needs. Despite decades of economic growth, the number of people who lack access to adequate food and health care, clean water, good housing and education is greater than ever before. That a growing world population will exacerbate these problems, as the Ehrlichs' book points out, is not in dispute. But the book is flawed by the Ehrlichs' eagerness to attribute virtually all of the world's social and environmental ills to overpopulation, giving short shrift to the roles that poverty, inequality and consumption play in current demographic and environmental trends. As many studies show, high fertility rates in developing countries reflect persistent poverty and political powerlessness, particularly among women; nevertheless, the Ehrlichs' strident calls for demographic targets, immigration quotas and absolute reductions in the size of the global population are barely tempered by scattered references to the need to encourage better use of resources or to address the problem of poverty, clearly the most effective steps in solving environmental problems in the short run.

One of the major weaknesses in the Ehrlichs' argument stems from their biased application of "carrying capacity" to the problems of environmental degradation. Carrying capacity is a concept used by biologists to describe the relationship between the size of an animal population and the capacity of the surrounding environment to support it. Applying this concept to human populations is inherently difficult because, unlike other species, humans can manipulate natural resources through technology.

They also fail to acknowledge the extent to which the consumption patterns of a small but privileged share of the earth's population contribute to environmental problems. For instance, there is the issue of climate change. The burning of fossil fuels was the source of 21 billion of the total 24 billion tons of carbon dioxide released into the atmosphere in 1988. (Deforestation and other factors make up the rest.) Seventy percent of fossil fuel emissions derived from activity in developed countries, which together make up only 25 percent of the world's population. The average American, for example, consumes 26 times as much fossil fuel as does the average South Asian. Yet the Ehrlichs claim that because the "atmospheric concentrations of greenhouse gases are tightly tied to population size. . . . there is no practical way to achieve the necessary reduction in greenhouse emissions without population control" [p. 59].

By changing their habits, U.S. consumers alone could make a tremendous contribution to reducing carbon emissions long before any changes in demographic trends could have a notable impact. Clearly, the earth could not support 10 billion people living at the U.S. level of consumption. But given that we are unlikely, barring draconian measures, to end up with less than eight billion people by the middle of the next century, we must make changing consumption patterns a major focus of policymaking today. Most current models suggest that to slow or prevent human-induced climate change, the world community will have to reduce total emissions of carbon dioxide by some 50–70 percent by the middle of the next century. In fact, more efficient use of energy and the development and popularization of renewable

---

Jodi Jacobson is senior researcher at Worldwatch Institute, Washington, D.C.

energy technologies could keep total emissions to six billion tons in 2010 instead of the nine billion tons suggested by current trends, even taking into account increases in the world's population.

Over the long term, of course, the rate of change in global carbon emissions will depend on the size of the world's population. But, even in the most populous countries, the choices made today about energy use are as important as future population size. Although per capita emissions of carbon in most developing countries are far lower than in industrial countries, many make up for this by the sheer size of their populations. The 1.3 billion Chinese emit only 0.6 tons per person annually, but together account for 11 percent of annual global emissions. Even if the Chinese were the only people on earth, but lived as the 250 million in the United States do, the world would still face the threat of climate change. Unfortunately, China is now mining its extensive coal reserves and imitating the West in energy-intensive patterns of industrialization and transport.

The Ehrlichs are most persuasive in their comprehensive discussion of the importance of population in relation to food supply, to which they devote two chapters. As the book points out, the chronic hunger and malnutrition evident throughout the world are in part related to purchasing power, consumption patterns and the economics of food distribution. The Ehrlichs estimate that about a billion or so people in the world, mostly in wealthy countries, are "too well-fed"; this group uses about one-third of the world's grain for livestock feed to provide themselves with meat, eggs and dairy products. An additional three billion people, many of them on a meatless diet, are adequately nourished. Another billion are chronically malnourished, half of them to such an extent that their health is threatened or their growth stunted. The Ehrlichs note that if food were better distributed, the poor would be better fed, but not much would be left over to accommodate an increase in population. Worldwide, food production has increased somewhat faster than population growth, but only through the use of resource-intensive farming practices that are themselves the culprit in much environmental damage. Moreover, food production has fallen behind population growth in two regions, Africa and Latin America. And the Ehrlichs are rightfully troubled by food production trends in the two most populous countries, China and India.

The Ehrlichs point out that population growth compromises food production and improved nutrition in much of the world. But putting all or most of the blame on population growth would be like constructing only half the puzzle. In these chapters, by discussing skewed patterns of land distribution and agricultural policies that ignore the needs of the poor as well as population growth, the authors provide the missing pieces. In Brazil, for example, one percent of landowners own 45 percent of the available arable land. Much of the deforestation in the Amazon basin, often blamed solely on population growth, can be traced back to the land tenure situation, which forces poor farmers to clear virgin forest. Throughout the rest of Latin America, as in India and much of Africa, land tenure patterns, the mechanization of farming and the subsidization of export crops to earn foreign exchange have compromised the ability of small farmers to produce food and have increased the numbers of landless people.

Unfortunately, *The Population Explosion* virtually ignores the powerful and all pervasive politics of reproduction. The discussion of abortion and contraception is facile, refers only to the United States and is sometimes ill-informed. The authors state, for example, that "abortion is a crude and relatively dangerous method of birth control even when legal and conducted under medical auspices" [p. 196]. Women's health issues are also absent: A chapter on population and public health fails to mention the enormous toll taken by maternal mortality and morbidity.

The Ehrlichs strongly advocate "population control" rather than, as they put it, "the more euphemistic 'family planning' [which] all too often means planning to have too many children but spacing them more evenly" [p. 190]. (So much for voluntary family planning.) In supporting their call for population control, the Ehrlichs point out that 97 percent of women in Rajasthan, India, who refuse birth control are "well-informed on family planning programs." The problem, they declare, "is that family planning focuses on the needs and desires of individuals and couples; population control focuses on the needs of societies as well." They then add, in a somewhat confused reflection on these statements, that "of course, population control need not be coercive" [p. 190].

These statements are troubling for several reasons. First, there is no discussion whatsoever of the cultural and economic obstacles to closing the gap between knowledge and practice in contraceptive use. In societies where cultural constraints on women are strong and where women remain economically and politically subservient to men, an individual woman has little, if any, power to determine at what stage she becomes sexually active, to whom she is bonded, when sex will take place, or when and how to bear children. Once a woman marries, decisions about the timing and number of births are more often the prerogative of her husband and in-laws than of the woman herself. Without considering these issues, the Ehrlichs cannot hope to "end the population explosion humanely."

Furthermore, use is often limited by cost, availability or the fact that contraceptives on the market don't suit women's needs. Even when the means to prevent pregnancy are available to women in the Third World (and this is relatively rare), lack of spousal support often leads to high rates of contraceptive failure.

Last, the documented increase in unmet need for family planning worldwide suggests that governments and policymakers have not gone far enough in making family planning or primary health care a priority, or in finding out what women perceive their needs to be and how these needs might best be met.

The Ehrlichs argue that "limiting human numbers will not alone end warfare, environmental deterioration, poverty, racism, religious prejudice, or sexism; it will just buy us the opportunity to do so" [p. 23]. A different analysis leads to the conclusion that many of these social ills are part and parcel of global population trends and must be addressed from the very start.

An Updated Text

The FIGO Manual of Human Reproduction

series editors Allan Rosenfield and Mahmoud F. Fathalla, The Parthenon Publishing Group, Carnforth, England, 1990, $90 for 3 volumes; $475 for complete set of slides and books.

Reviewed by Ramiro Molina Cartes

Those of us who have long been teaching with the *Manual of Human Reproduction*, published originally by the International

---

Ramiro Molina Cartes is associate professor of obstetrics and gynecology, and professor of public health, at the University Hospital, Faculty of Medicine of the University of Chile, Santiago. He is also the director of the Center of Reproductive Adolescent Medicine at the same university.

Federation of Obstetrics and Gynecology (FIGO) and the Population Council in 1975, cannot help but be delighted with the 1990 revision, edited by Allan Rosenfield and Mahmoud F. Fathalla. The new, three-volume manual on the science of human reproduction, which incorporates feedback from the first edition, forms a complete lecture course when used with the accompanying full-color slides.

The first volume of the set covers the physiology of reproduction, the second, family planning and the third, global aspects of reproductive health. The new manual, oriented to the needs and realities of the developing world, has been updated and restructured to reflect recent improvements and advances in the field. The individual volumes and the chapters in each volume can be used independently, since they each offer a comprehensive treatment of their topic and contain a separate table of contents, references and illustration credits.

Volume 1, *Reproductive Physiology*, edited by Luigi Mastroianni, Jr., and Christos Coutifaris, consists of six chapters. It has been updated with new information on hypothalamic releasing factors and their cycles, the biosynthesis of sex steroids and the characteristics of the ovum's transport system. Aspects of the embryo's development have also been added to the description of reproductive anatomy. The volume concludes with a summary of the normal human sexual response.

The major change since the first edition is the chapter "Genetics and Reproduction," a tight, well-executed synthesis that covers basic terminology and elements of genetics; genetic diseases affecting pregnancy, reproduction and the family; and the indications and problems associated with fetal diagnosis and its effects on reproductive behavior. The chapter's illustrations are excellent and abundant, making the complex material accessible to the nonspecialist.

The second volume, *Family Planning*, edited by Mahmoud F. Fathalla, Allan Rosenfield and Cynthia Indriso, consists of nine chapters and has been almost completely restructured. The first offers a description of the basic principles of contraception. Beginning with the modern methods, the individual methods are developed in the eight subsequent chapters, reviewing the acceptability, continuation rates, effectiveness and safety of each.

The material on oral contraceptives has been restructured and given a more clinical emphasis in the new edition. The editors have added new paragraphs on postcoital contraception, the use of the pill among special groups such as nursing mothers and adolescents, and the pill's interaction with other drugs and with tropical diseases. However, it would have been useful to have information on pill use among disabled women who, thanks to medical advances, are now reaching reproductive age and have additional risks of cardiovascular and neurological complications. Also, there is barely any mention of older women's use of the pill: Since many 35–40-year-olds rely on oral contraception, material on the relative and absolute contraindications to use among this age-group would be welcome. The editors have also introduced a discussion of the risks and benefits of oral contraceptives into this edition. Safety issues are discussed separately, however, in an updated review of the relationship between gynecologic cancers (particularly breast and cervical cancer) and contraceptive steroids.

A separate chapter covers long-acting hormonal contraception, updating information on implants and steroid-releasing vaginal rings. The chapter on intrauterine devices has been restructured in a more didactic format, expanding on the clinical aspects of IUDs. However, important aspects, such as diagnostic and therapeutic techniques and the detection of side effects, have yet to be included. The chapter on barrier methods now includes more information on the use of the condom and the cervical cap.

The sixth chapter discusses "periodic abstinence," a more appropriate term than the commonly used "natural methods." An analysis of the cervical mucus, or Billings, method has been added in this edition and the chapter concludes with an excellent table comparing the advantages and disadvantages of the ways in which periodic abstinence can be practiced.

The chapter on surgical contraception contains new visual material on laparoscopy. The penultimate chapter in the volume covers pregnancy termination and has been updated with information on RU 486 and on techniques for using prostaglandins. It also describes the health and demographic impact of abortion legislation more effectively than did the earlier edition. The final chapter, on family planning programs and services, has been rewritten and updated to reflect the results of the World Fertility Surveys and now stresses the importance of primary health care, especially in Africa and in the densely populated countries of the developing world.

The third volume, *Reproductive Health: Global Issues*, differs from the first edition in both focus and content. Edited by the same team as the second volume, with the addition of Dilup K. Sen and Shan S. Ratnam, its 10 chapters cover the most important topics in reproductive health today and successfully incorporate both clinical and service aspects, with an emphasis on public health. Each subject area is expanded on, from its basic principles to its more complex aspects, including future possibilities. Whereas the entire volume in the first edition had a demographic focus, the revised edition devotes only the first two chapters to demography, chiefly its impact on development and health.

Unlike the original manual, this edition covers infertility, using mostly research material from the countless multicenter projects supported by the World Health Organization's Special Programme of Research, Development and Research Training in Human Reproduction. This is an excellent chapter, from which the nonspecialist can rapidly learn the most important points about infertility and understand its priority within the context of major reproductive health problems. In a chapter on maternal mortality the editors discuss the importance of illegal septic abortion as a major cause of maternal deaths. The material does not include much detail—probably because of the lack of reliable data—but given the controversial nature of abortion and its broad impact throughout much of the developing world, the subject could merit its own chapter in future editions.

The chapter devoted to adolescent sexuality and pregnancy describes the principal characteristics of adolescent physical development and related problems of mental and social health. It begins with an excellent introduction to counselling both adolescents who are sexually active and those who are not and discusses the sensitive problems of method provision; however, the legal problems, in both the developed and developing world, of providing services to minors are left out. Just under half the chapter reviews contraceptive use among adolescents, focussing on the suitability of specific methods to this population. It would be useful if future editions were to include a comparison of contraceptive failure rates between adolescents and adults, along with some suggestions or comments on how best to reach adolescents at risk of pregnancy.

Two chapters cover sexually transmitted diseases (STDs). One is reserved for the most common STDs—including chlamydia and the herpes virus—and their pathologies, prevention and treatment.

The editors also discuss the relationship between contraceptive use and the impact of STDs on maternal and child health.

The other chapter on STDs is devoted to AIDS and its implications for women and children. This long and well-documented discussion treats the basics of immunology, the epidemiology of the disease, the links with contraceptive use and breastfeeding, and the prospects for a vaccine in the future. The chapter concludes with a discussion of the epidemic's impact on maternal and child health and on the delivery of health services. This is invaluable teaching material, with an abundance of well-designed graphs and charts.

The ninth chapter in the volume offers a comprehensive review of gynecologic cancers, including breast cancer. The analysis is epidemiologic and concentrates on prevention within primary health care. The tenth and final chapter is devoted to breastfeeding, describing its importance to infant development and the need to promote breastfeeding for child health. In addition, the editors review contraceptive options for breastfeeding mothers and the interrelationships between AIDS and breastfeeding.

In summary, the revised FIGO manual is an excellent text in reproductive health. The visual representation of the material, and its educational format, facilitate comprehension among readers with a basic background in human reproduction, and educators may therefore find it useful for diverse purposes. Although written with the medical student of obstetrics and gynecology in mind, it could easily prove accessible to undergraduates and even preuniversity students in many divisions of the health and social sciences. The manual provides high-quality material for specialists as well, since it incorporates the latest information. The teaching material is universal and can be modified to fit most any educational setting or objective. Moreover, translations of the manual into Spanish and French will be available in 1992, extending its usefulness throughout the developing world.

Fertility Decline and Pronatalist Policy . . .

(Continued from page 69)

families are directed at an increasingly affluent and consumption-oriented society. Singaporeans may not be willing to risk their higher standard of living by having large families, and economic incentives may not mean as much to couples who are already relatively well-off.

In addition, women have become an essential part of the labor force, and higher rates of female work force participation are often accompanied by low fertility. Unless female labor force participation changes dramatically—and there is no indication that it will—it is unlikely that fertility, particularly of the well-educated and affluent, will increase. The Western industrialized nations' experiences are informative; those nations with low fertility show no signs of the social changes that would reverse their situations.[34]

Low period fertility rates do not automatically lead to low cohort fertility, however. Women may be deferring childbearing temporarily by delayed marriage and use of effective contraceptives. It therefore remains to be seen if current and future cohorts of Singaporean women in their reproductive years will sustain below-replacement fertility. The population dilemma for Singapore's political leaders is finding an effective means to convince Singaporeans of the personal rather than the public benefits of having more children. Since the government does not, at this point, consider immigration a viable option for maintaining population size, the effort to promote higher fertility through incentives may continue for many years. However, history suggests both caution and patience in responding to fertility changes.

References

1. M. S. Teitelbaum and J. M. Winter, *The Fear of Population Decline*, Academic Press, Orlando, Fla., 1985.

2. "On Pronatalist Policies in the Soviet Union," *Population and Development Review*, **7**:372, 1981; J. L. Simon, *The Ultimate Resource*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, 1981; and B. Wattenberg and K. Zinsmeister, "The Birth Dearth: The Geopolitical Consequences," *Public Opinion*, **8**:13, 1986.

3. *World Population Data Sheet*, Population Reference Bureau, Washington, D.C., 1989.

4. S. M. Lee, "Female Immigrants and Labor in Colonial Malaya: 1860–1947," *International Migration Review*, **23**:309, 1989; K. S. Sandhu, *Indians in Malaya: Some Aspects of their Immigration and Settlement, 1786–1957*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1969.

5. J. T. Fawcett and S. E. Khoo, "Singapore: Rapid Fertility Transition in a Compact Society," *Population and Development Review*, **6**:549, 1980; S. H. Saw, *Singapore Population in Transition*, University of Pennsylvannia Press, Philadelphia, 1970; A. K. Wong and J. Salaff, "Planning Births for a Better Life: Working Class Response to Population Disincentive," in P. Chen and J. Fawcett, eds., *Public Policy and Population Change*, The Population Council, New York, 1979.

6. F. Leete, "The Post-Demographic Transition in East and South East Asia: Similarities and Contrasts with Europe," *Population Studies*, **41**:187, 1987.

7. "Lop-Sided Birth Rate Drop," "80 Percent Nature and 20 Percent Nurture," and "Talent for the Future," *The Straits Times*, Aug. 15, 1983.

8. C. K Khoo, *Census of Population 1980, Singapore*, Release No. 1, Department of Statistics, Singapore, 1980.

9. "Singapore's Ethnic Balance Shifting," *International Demographics*, **6**:11, 1987.

10. "When Graduate Doesn't Marry Graduate," *The Straits Times*, Sep. 5, 1983.

11. *Statistics on Marriages and Divorces, 1985*, Department of Statistics, Singapore, 1986.

12. C. K. Khoo, *Census of Population 1980, Singapore*, Release No. 9, Department of Statistics, Singapore, 1981.

13. *World Population Data Sheet*, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 3).

14. M. S. Teitelbaum and J. M. Winter, 1985 , op. cit. (see reference 1).

15. "Lop-Sided Birth Rate Drop," "80 Percent Nature and 20 Percent Nurture," "Talent for the Future," 1983, op. cit. (see reference 7).

16. "When Graduate Doesn't Marry Graduate," 1983, op. cit (see reference 10).

17. S. H. Saw, "New Population Policies for More Balanced Procreation," *Contemporary Southeast Asia*, **17**:2, 1985.

18. "You Can't Succeed in Both Career and Marriage," *The Straits Times*, Aug. 16, 1983.

19. J. J. Palen, "Fertility and Eugenics: Singapore's Population Policies," *Population Research and Policy Review*, **5**:3, 1986.

20. "Graduate Mum Scheme to Go," *The Straits Times*, Mar. 26, 1985.

21. S. H. Saw, 1985, op. cit. (see reference 17).

22. S. Mydans "How to Marry Up, and Avoid the Frogs and Nerds," *New York Times*, July 11, 1988.

23. "Affordability Level Counts, not the Education Level," *The Straits Times*, Mar. 2, 1987.

24. Ibid; "Dr. Hu's Third Child Carrot," *The Straits Times*, Mar. 5, 1987; "Third Child HDB Priority," *The Straits Times*, Apr. 4, 1987.

25. "Birth of Another Nation," *The Economist*, Mar. 10, 1990, p. 37; D. E. Sanger, "An Incentive For Bigger Families," *The New York Times*, May 15, 1990, p. D5.

26. "Time to Educate a New Generation," *The Straits Times*, Mar. 2, 1985.

27. "One Woman in Three Seeks an Abortion," *The Straits Times*, Aug. 6, 1986.

28. "Government Hopes to Restrain and Later Reduce Number of Abortions," *The Straits Times*, Mar. 26, 1986.

29. S. H. Saw, "Indian Immigration in Malaya Before the Second World War," *Malaysia in History*, **23**:47, 1980.

30. S. H. Saw, 1985, op. cit. (see reference 17); "When Couples Have Fewer Than Two," *The Straits Times*, June 15, 1986.

31. "Disaster if Sparse Birth Patterns Remain Unchanged," *The Straits Times*, Dec. 15, 1986.

32. "Affordability Level Counts, not the Education Level," 1987, op. cit. (see reference 23).

33. "Birth of Another Nation," 1990, op. cit. (see reference 25).

34. C. F. Westoff, "Fertility Decline in the West: Causes and Prospects," *Population and Development Review*, **9**:1983.

DIGEST

Family Planning Programs Will Lead to One-Third Reduction in Developing-World Population by 2100

The population of the developing world is 412 million people smaller than it would have been if there had been no family planning programs; by the year 2100, the developing-world population is expected to be 10 billion, one-third lower than it would have been if there were no family planning programs.[1] According to a recent analysis of the impact of family planning programs, the eventual size of the world's population could vary widely, depending on the use of family planning services.

According to United Nations estimates, the total fertility rate (TFR) in the developing world declined from 6.1 lifetime births per woman in 1960–1965 to 4.2 per woman in 1980–1985. However, certain regions attained far lower fertility rates than others. In East Asia, for example, the TFR for 1980–1985 was 2.4 births per woman, down from 6.1 in 1960–1965. In contrast, the African TFR fell by just 0.3 births per woman, from 6.6 in 1960–1965 to 6.3 in 1980–1985.

Contraceptive use in the developing world grew in a pattern similar to TFR declines. Although overall contraceptive prevalence among developing nations rose from nine percent to 45 percent between 1960–1965 and 1983, prevalence in East Asia rose from 13 percent to 74 percent between those two periods. Contraceptive use nearly tripled in Africa during that period (from five percent to 14 percent), but as of 1983 the vast majority of Africans were not using contraceptives.

Because of these disparities, three Population Council researchers sought to determine the effects of family planning programs on fertility decline and population growth in developing countries. Using indices of economic development and family planning program effort, they first categorized the developing countries according to four levels of development (ranging from high to low) and four levels of program effort (ranging from strong to very weak or none). A multiple regression analysis indicated that development and program effort mutually reinforce each other, so that the effect of strong program effort is not nearly as great for countries with a low development index as for those with a high development index. The analysis showed that in the absence of family planning programs, the TFR in the developing world during 1980–1985 would have been 5.4 births per woman, 1.2 births more than the estimated TFR for that period.

The investigators then projected the effects of such programs on future fertility. They began with the assumption that in the absence of family planning programs, fertility decline in the developing world would have occurred at the same rate as it has, but would have begun later. They determined that for the 1980–1985 TFR to have been 5.4 births per woman, the fertility decline would have had to have begun about 9.8 years after it did. An adjustment of the standard World Bank population projection that takes this delayed beginning into account shows that as of 1990, the population in the developing world was 412 million lower than it would have been if there had been no family planning programs up to that point. As shown in Table 1, the standard World Bank population projection for the year 2050 is 8.8 billion, but if worldwide fertility decline had started 9.8 years later in the absence of family planning programs, the total in 2050 might have been as much as 11.9 billion. Similarly, the standard World Bank projection for 2100 is 10.0 billion; the projected population in the absence of family planning programs is 14.6 billion.

Table 1. Standard population projections for the developing world for the years 2050 and 2100, and projections without family planning programs and without unwanted births (in billions)

Model	2050	2100
Standard projection	8.8	10.0
Without programs	11.9	14.6
Difference	3.1	4.6
Standard projection	8.8	10.0
Without unwanted births	7.3	7.8
Difference	1.5	2.2

Research has shown that a substantial number of women in developing countries who do not want any more children or who want to space their births do not use contraceptives. As births resulting from such nonuse would be classified as unwanted or unplanned, the impact of unwanted fertility on population size is likely to be significant. The researchers estimate that 21 percent of current childbearing in the developing world is unwanted. They plotted the population growth in the absence of unwanted births, again using World Bank projections (see Table 1). The difference between the World Bank standard population projections and population projections in the absence of unwanted births indicates that without unwanted births, the developing-world population in 2050 would be 1.5 billion lower than is projected, and in 2100 would be 2.2 billion lower.

The researchers conclude that family planning programs have had a significant effect on population growth in developing countries, particularly those of Latin America and Asia, and can continue to do so in the future. Although they acknowledge that the elimination of all unwanted childbearing would be impossible, they believe that "improved programs and contraceptive technology can produce significant further declines in fertility, and this in turn can have potentially very substantial effects on the population sizes of developing countries in the long run."—*P. Rind*

Reference

1. J. Bongaarts, W. P. Mauldin and J. F. Phillips, "The Demographic Impact of Family Planning Programs," *Studies in Family Planning*, 21:299, 1990.

China's Fertility Patterns Closely Parallel Recent National Policy Changes

Fluctuations in birthrates in China closely reflect changes in national marriage and family policies, according to the results of three recent studies. An analysis of data from the 1987 national population survey finds that the proportion of Chinese mothers with one child who go on to have a second child dropped to just 63 percent in 1984. A subsequent relaxation in enforcement of China's one-child policy appears to have caused a temporary increase in second births in China in 1986–1987, which accounted for most of that period's overall fertility increase.[1] Findings from smaller surveys in the provinces of Hebei and Shaanxi show that the one-child policy has had varying impacts in urban and rural areas, and higher socioeconomic development is associated with lower rates of second births.[2] On the other hand, an analysis of a large 1988 national survey indicates that the marriage "boom" resulting from a relaxation of marriage restrictions in 1980 exercised a greater influence on rates of second births throughout the period 1980–1986 than did the vigor with which the one-child policy was enforced.[3]

National Analysis, 1987

In a study based on data from the 1987 One-per-Hundred Survey, investigators analyzed fertility data for 172,446 women aged 15–64. Because the survey, which was similar to a census, did not take detailed birth histories, the investigators reconstructed the women's birth histories using an extension of the "own children" technique, and then calculated transition rates from first births to higher order births and derived annual total fertility rates (TFRs) from these data. Since the 1987 survey was conducted in mid-year, the data were organized not by calendar years but by years ending in June (i.e., the data for 1987 refer to the period from July 1986 through June 1987).

The one-child policy—"one is best, at most two, never a third"—was enacted in 1979 and resulted in sharp declines in the rate of progression to second births in 1981 and 1982. For example, in 1979, fully 95 percent of Chinese mothers who had had one child would have been expected to go on to have a second child, but this proportion declined to 87 percent in 1981 and to 83 percent in 1982. This trend continued at an even faster pace in the following two years, with the parity progression ratio reaching a low of 63 percent in 1984. However, in the following three years, the trend was reversed, and there was a steady increase in the rate of second births; the proportion of women who went on to have a second child rose from 65 percent in 1985 to 77 percent in 1987.

Transition rates to higher order births followed a different pattern. The proportion of Chinese women with two children who went on to have a third began to decline in the early 1970s and experienced a pronounced drop between 1980 and 1981, from 64 percent to 54 percent; after a slight increase to 58 percent in 1982, this decline continued unabated through 1986, when the proportion reached 43 percent. In 1987, however, it rose slightly, to 48 percent. Similarly, the rate of progression from third births to fourth births and from fourth births to fifth births increased in that year, from 36 percent to 39 percent and from 31 percent to 35 percent, respectively.

The researchers calculate that the increase between 1986 and 1987 in the progression to second births explained 89 percent of the overall increase in the TFR (as calculated from the parity progression ratios) over that period. An additional nine percent of the increase was accounted for by the rise in progression to third and fourth births. The researchers speculate that fluctuations in the proportion of women who had second-order and higher order births followed changes in the implementation of the one-child policy: The initial slow decline corresponded to the relatively lenient start-up period of 1980–1981, the quickened pace of the 1982–1984 decline followed stricter enforcement, and the subsequent increase in 1984–1987 corresponded to a relaxation of the policy in 1984–1986.

According to the researchers, the proportions of women having a second birth in China are extremely low by any standard; this affirms that the impact of the one-child program has "taken China far outside the bounds of usual human experience." The relaxation of the one-child policy in 1984–1986 may have been a premature response to its earlier success. The researchers predict that future efforts may bring the rates of progression to higher parities down again, but "resurgences are likely after the campaigns have run their course."

Hebei and Shaanxi, 1980–1984

Another analysis used data from two small-scale surveys in the provinces of Hebei and Shaanxi to determine the rates of second-order and third-order births and the characteristics of couples who have them. The In-Depth Fertility Survey, conducted in April 1985, employed a stratified multistage sample and gathered data on conceptions occurring between January 1980 and July 1984 that ended in live births. (Conceptions occurring in the nine months before the survey date were omitted, since their outcomes would be unknown.)

The analysis of the transition to a second birth included 2,599 women who had had their first child by January 1980—1,566 from Hebei province (1,263 from rural areas and 303 from urban areas) and 1,033 from Shaanxi (781 from rural areas and 252 from urban areas). Since minorities have always been exempt from the one-child policy, the analysis included only Han Chinese. The researcher constructed a proportional hazards model to examine the simultaneous effects of socioeconomic and demographic variables on the likelihood of having a second child.

Rates of second births differed widely according to area of residence and to household income. For example, the percentage of women who had one child and went on to have a second birth was nearly twice as high in rural areas as in urban areas (49 percent vs. 26 percent in Hebei, and 55 percent vs. 30 percent in Shaanxi). The multivariate analysis of the relative probability of having a second birth revealed that in rural areas of both provinces, the sex of the first child significantly influenced that probability ($p<.05$). Moreover, in urban areas of Hebei and in both urban and rural areas of Shaanxi, couples in households with the highest annual income (more than 400 yuan per person) were significantly less likely to have a second birth than were couples in the lowest income group (200 yuan or less per person). In rural Hebei and urban Shaanxi, women living with their parents or in-laws were also significantly more likely than women who did not to have a second birth, confirming the researcher's hypothesis that the presence in the household of parents (who are likely to be more traditional) would positively influence the probability of a second birth.

In 1984, the Chinese government relaxed the one-child policy somewhat, allowing some couples whose first child was a girl and couples who were living in disadvantaged areas to have a second child. To determine how fertility was affected, the periods directly before and after the enactment of this change were entered into the multivariate models. The results indicate that in rural Hebei, the influence of the sex of the first child on the probability of having another child closely followed the change in policy: In 1984, women whose first child was a girl were 1.9 times as likely to have a second birth as were women whose first child was a boy, compared with risks of 1.5 in 1982–1983 and 1.2 in 1980–1981. This pattern was not observed in rural Shaanxi, reaffirming the researcher's premise that the one-child policy was more strictly enforced in that area.

An analysis of urban and rural residents that controlled for a number of demographic and socioeconomic variables* revealed that the probability of a second birth did not vary significantly by urban or rural residence in Shaanxi. This suggests that the sex of the first child, the yearly household income and the possession of a television all contributed significantly ($p<.05$) to the probability of a second birth in Shaanxi, independently of area of residence. On the other hand, urban or rural residence remained a significant indicator of a second birth in Hebei.

Overall, yearly household income emerged as the strongest determinant of differentials in second births. According to the researcher, further reductions in urban fertility can be expected if China's economy remains stable, since higher income was associated with lower probabilities of second births in urban areas. Furthermore, the results fail to support the notion that "more affluent peasants can better afford to violate the one-child policy, and, therefore, are more likely to have more than one child." Finally, since second-order and higher order births are still common in rural areas and since neither son preference nor rural economic conditions are likely to change in the next few years, the researcher concludes that a strong government policy is needed to maintain current fertility levels—or to lower them further—in rural areas of Hebei and Shaanxi.

National Analysis, 1988

In 1980, a new marriage law lifted bureaucratic restraints on marriage before age 23 for rural women and before age 25 for urban women. Researchers used data from a 10 percent sample of the 1988 Two-per-Thousand Survey (which collected detailed birth history data from women aged 15–57) to examine the effects of changing nuptiality patterns since 1980 on trends in fertility.

The researchers calculated the total first marriage rate (TMR)† for the years immediately before and after the change in the marriage law. Once the restrictions on age at marriage were lifted, the TMR increased by 41 percent (from 0.9 in 1979 to 1.3 in 1981). It remained above 1.0 through 1987, and the mean age at first marriage fell by 1.4 years in the period 1979–1985. Thus, the change in enforcement of marriage regulations was followed by a substantial increase in marriages among Chinese women in their early 20s.

Since marriage is universal in China and nearly all childbearing is marital, calculating the total fertility rate by duration of marriage (the total duration-specific fertility rate, TDFR) rather than by age results in a synthetic measure of fertility that is free from the effects of changing age at marriage. Throughout the period 1950–1981, rising age at marriage kept the TDFR above the total age-specific marital fertility rate (TAFR); increasing age at marriage decreased the number of young women who were married, and childbearing among the lower age-groups was strongly reduced as a result. However, when age at marriage declined in the early 1980s, the two rates converged: As a result of having several "marriage crops" in the same year (since [illegible] women married instead of waiting [illegible] the previously recommended age), the [illegible] for first marital births in 1978–1987 was 36 percent higher than the rate for 1970–1978 (1.04 vs. 0.76), while the TDFR changed very little. Likewise, the TAFR for second marital births also rose sharply in the 1980s—the 1987 rate was 43 percent higher than the 1980 rate—but the TDFR for second births actually declined over the period.

The investigators comment that the number of women having their second child at that time was "greatly inflated by the [marriage] boom that began in 1980," and that the "effect of the one-child policy was not in fact greatly weakened." They conclude that the marriage boom sparked by the 1980 relaxation of the marriage laws was a "major element in the [seemingly] undiminished or rising fertility" of the Chinese population in that period.—*L. Remez*

References

1. N. Y. Luther, G. Feeney and W. Zhang, "One-Child Families or a Baby Boom? Evidence from China's 1987 One-per-Hundred Survey," *Population Studies*, **44**:341, 1990.

2. U. Larsen, "An Assessment of the One-Child Policy in China from 1980 to 1985," *European Journal of Population*, **6**:257, 1990.

3. A. J. Coale et al., "Recent Trends in Fertility and Nuptiality in China," *Science*, **251**:389, 1991.

Burmese Total Fertility Rate Remained Stable Between 1973 and 1983

There is little evidence of fertility decline in Burma between 1973 and 1983, according to a recent analysis of census data.[1] The total fertility rate did not change over the period, but the crude birthrate apparently decreased, especially in urban areas. Age at marriage rose and the proportion of women entering the reproductive years decreased during the decade between the censuses, leading the investigator to suggest that fertility may have declined in urban areas.

Burma (now known as Myanmar) is geographically a large country in Southeast Asia. The 1983 census revealed a population of 35.3 million, more than two-thirds of whom are ethnic Burmese. Buddhism is practiced by 89 percent of the population. Burma is primarily a rural society, and has been isolated from most of the outside world for some time.

The author of the report derived estimates of fertility rates primarily from Burma's 1973 and 1983 censuses. In the 1983 census, 20 percent of households received a long form that included questions about the number of children ever born and the number of children surviving. The 1983 fertility estimates rely heavily on those data.

For the period 1973–1983, the average intercensal crude birthrate (CBR) was 34 births per 1,000 population. Using the reverse-survival technique and the age distribution from the 1983 census, the investigator derived independent estimates of the CBR for two and one-half years before and seven and one-half years before the 1983 census, and found overall CBRs of 34 per 1,000 population for 1975 and 31 per 1,000 population for 1980. A straightforward CBR calculation of the 1982 CBR from the 1983 census data on number of children born last year yielded an estimate of 35 per 1,000. The author suggests that the apparent decline may be due both to a low proportion of women entering the reproductive years and to an increase in female age at marriage. In contrast to the trends in overall CBR and in rural CBR, the CBR for urban areas appears to have declined between 1975 and 1982 (from 30 per 1,000 to 27 per 1,000). The author cautions, however, that this 10 percent drop is not large enough to support the assumption that fertility declined in urban areas; the drop may again be related to a decrease in the proportion of women of reproductive age and an increase in women's age at marriage.

---

*These variables were: urban or rural residence, sex of first child, living arrangements (lived with parents for less than two years or two years or more, still living with parents, or never lived with parents), wife's literacy, husband's literacy, yearly household income (less than 201 yuan, 201–400 yuan or more than 400 yuan), possession of a radio, possession of a television, availability of water, and reason given for the government's one-child policy (for population control, for economic development or health, other, and don't know).

†The TMR is the sum of all marriage rates in a given period, from the youngest age at first marriage to the oldest age at first marriage. It equals 1.0 when marriage is universal (as it is in China) and when the mean age at marriage is holding relatively steady. The TMR will exceed 1.0 when an unusually large number of women of different ages marry in the same year.

Based on the 1983 data, the total fertility rate (TFR) for 1982–1983 is estimated to be 4.7 lifetime births per woman. In urban areas, the TFR is 3.4 births per woman, while in rural areas it is 5.2 births per woman. A comparison of these estimates with TFRs for 1973–1978 derived from the 1975 CBRs shows possible competing trends of decreasing fertility in urban areas and increasing fertility in rural areas, which result in little to no change in overall TFR between 1973–1978 and 1982–1983 (4.6 and 4.7 births per woman, respectively).

There is almost no out-of-wedlock childbearing in Burma. Therefore, trends in age at marriage should affect trends in fertility. In 1983, both in urban and rural areas, a greater proportion of women were single in each five-year age-group from 15–19 to 35–39 than was the case in 1973. In addition, the singulate mean age at marriage was higher in 1983 (22.4) than in 1973 (21.3). In urban areas, the singulate mean age at marriage rose by 1.5 years (from 21.9 to 23.4), while in rural areas it rose by one year (from 21.1 to 22.1). The investigator concludes that "the decline in CBRs . . . is due in part to the increase in female age at marriage [and] the large proportion of females remaining single at the key reproductive ages. . . . "

Overall infant mortality in Burma for 1977, the approximate midpoint of the 1973–1983 intercensal period, was 101 infant deaths per 1,000 live births. There are large regional differences: In rural areas, the infant mortality rate was 107 per 1,000, compared with 70 per 1,000 in Rangoon City, the Burmese capital. The infant mortality rate in all other urban areas was 87 per 1,000. In Rakhine State, a rural region, the infant mortality rate reached 139 per 1,000 in 1976.

The author concludes that although there was a substantial decline in child mortality between 1973 and 1983, any evidence of a fertility decline is spurious. He believes that among the less educated rural population, fertility is unlikely to decrease in the near future and, in fact, may increase as health programs are expanded. In addition, he cautions that although governmental efforts to promote family planning have the effect of lowering fertility, a simultaneous improvement in maternal health may offset that effect; he adds, however, that "in urban areas, one can expect further reductions in fertility resulting not only from the rising age at marriage, but also from better education and perhaps the availability of contraceptives."—*P. Rind*

Reference

1. M. I. K. Maung, *Estimates of Burma's Mortality, Age Structure, and Fertility, 1973–83*, Papers of the East-West Population Institute, No. 116, East-West Center, Honolulu, June 1990.

Better Access to Health Services in Nicaragua Lowered Infant Mortality

Infant mortality in Nicaragua has declined steadily since the 1970s. An analysis of possible factors leading to this decline, including income, children's nutrition, breastfeeding, literacy, immunization, and access to health services, suggests that an increase in the number of workers at primary health care facilities and the resulting improvement in access to health services had the most significant effect.[1] Political changes in the country may have also led to improved primary health care.

Researchers from Great Britain and Nicaragua analyzed data on infant mortality from five different sources: the 1971 census, the 1978 National Demographic Survey of Nicaragua, the 1985 Sociodemographic Survey, the Sentinel Sites Study of 1986 (which collected data on 34 selected survey areas), and the national system of vital statistics. When combined, these data show that infant mortality began to fall in the 1960s at a slow rate, declined more sharply in the early 1970s and was continuing to decline at a rapid pace in 1986. A weighted average of these data shows that the rate fell from around 130 deaths per 1,000 live births in 1970 to about 70 deaths per 1,000 in 1985. On average, the infant mortality rate declined by 4.7 deaths per 1,000 for each year from 1974 to 1986. (There is no evidence that the decline in infant mortality was any greater in rural areas than in urban areas.)

The researchers then examined trends in factors that might have led to this decline. Data on gross national product (obtained from the National Autonomous University of Nicaragua) revealed that the drop in infant mortality did not correspond to a rise in the standard of living; per capita gross national product remained steady in the 1970s and fell sharply in the 1980s. Data on child nutritional status were obtained from three nationwide surveys, in 1966, 1977–1978 and 1986; data on food production and caloric intake were taken from World Bank and United Nations Food and Agricultural Organization statistics, respectively. In 1966, 36 percent of children under age five were found to be stunted (i.e., below two standard deviations in the ratio of their height to their age). In 1977–1978, this figure was 26 percent, and in 1986 the corresponding rate of stunting in children aged 6–9 years was 22 percent. However, food production in 1986 was only 70 percent of the 1967 rate; the number of calories consumed per capita also dropped during this time.

The prevalence of breastfeeding was estimated from two ad hoc surveys in Managua: In 1977, 58 percent of mothers in Managua breastfed their children for at least six months; in 1988, only 33 percent of children aged 3–5 months still received breast milk. To determine the extent of maternal education, literacy levels were derived from national surveys and censuses from 1950–1985. Illiteracy in the general population decreased from 62 percent of all men and women in 1950 to 25 percent in 1985. Rates of children's deaths related to diseases that are preventable through immunization (taken from the Latin American Center for Demography) were compared with estimates of vaccination coverage from Nicaraguan Ministry of Health figures. Deaths from these diseases among children ages 1–4 dropped from 21 per 10,000 in 1975 to three per 10,000 in 1986. Immunization coverage rose sharply in the early 1980s, probably because of increased numbers of voluntary health workers participating in national immunization campaigns.

On some other public health indicators, Nicaragua does not rate highly. In 1981, the number of urban households with access to clean water was almost unchanged from the number prior to the 1972 earthquake, and latrine construction, which had averaged 4,590 annually in 1974–1978, was still barely able to keep up with the growth in the rural population.

Analyses of the country's health system from 1960–1985 were reviewed and combined with statistics from the public and private health sectors. Prior to the 1960s, Nicaragua's health system has always been concentrated in the cities, especially Managua. A 1965 loan from the U.S. Agency for International Development helped establish more health centers and outreach programs in rural areas. Additional primary health care services were established in the early 1980s. There was also a drop in the availability of hospital care in the early 1970s; the number of hospital beds peaked at two per health professional in 1971 and has since been declining. Insurance coverage was also low, but has risen somewhat over the years, from four percent of the population in 1963 to eight percent in 1978 and 10 percent in 1980. The number of doctors and nurses per 10,000 inhabitants increased from five doctors and two nurses in 1970–1974 to six doctors and three nurses in 1975–1979 and to slightly more in 1980–1984. The increase in personnel was reflected in rising rates of hospital discharge and in increasing outpatient consultations, especially in emergency rooms.

The authors suggest that the most plausible explanation for the decline in infant mortality in Nicaragua is the change in health services that began in 1974. The decline in the number of hospital beds meant that more resources were allocated to ambulatory and preventive care. The shift away from hospitals was the result of a combination of factors, including devastation from the 1972 earthquake, rapid population growth and constraints on public spending. At the same time, health professionals were being trained at a rate surpassing that of the population growth. The political turmoil during the last years of the government of Anastasio Somoza and the years following the 1979 insurrection also may have contributed to this trend. The authors of the report suggest that late in his regime, Somoza spurred investment in social programs, and the Sandinista National Liberation Front, which took power after the insurrection, continued and expanded these investments. The researchers note that Nicaragua's new government, elected in early 1990, "is committed to contraction of public expenditure," and that "the effects of any change in policy on child health and survival will provide an opportunity to explore the validity of the explanations advanced" in their study.

The investigators also point out that Nicaraguans generally prefer manufactured pharmaceuticals to traditional herbal remedies (although both are often used), are quick to change treatments when no improvement occurs and are sensitive to the progress of their children's illnesses; hence, when health services became more widely available in the 1970s and 1980s, the population quickly took advantage of them.—*R. Turner*

Reference

1. P. Sandiford et al., "Why Do Child Mortality Rates Fall? An Analysis of the Nicaraguan Experience," *American Journal of Public Health*, **81**:30, 1991.

Misconceptions About HIV Transmission Are Common in Kinshasa

Awareness of AIDS is almost universal in Kinshasa, Zaire, according to data from a 1988 study.[1] However, some misconceptions about the disease are common: Almost half of men and women do not know that the AIDS virus cannot be transmitted by mosquitos, nearly half of men and nearly two-thirds of women believe there to be a cure for the disease and less than half of women know that condoms help protect against transmission of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Only small proportions of those surveyed have ever used condoms, and less than two percent reported always using them with their spouses.

Researchers interviewed 3,140 men and 3,485 women in Kinshasa between January and September 1988 to investigate AIDS-related knowledge and contraceptive and sexual behavior. A random sample of women aged 15–49 and men aged 20–59 was taken from among 24 administrative zones of Zaire's capital. The mean age of the men was 33; that of the women was 27. The majority of both the male and the female respondents had a secondary education (61 percent of each), but the men were more likely than the women to have attained higher levels of schooling (20 percent vs. three percent). About half of the men were married and had only one wife (53 percent); four percent had two or more wives, two percent were in consensual unions and 40 percent were separated, divorced, widowed or never-married. Fifty-two percent of the women were married, 10 percent were in consensual unions and 38 percent were separated, divorced, widowed or never-married.

AIDS-Related Knowledge

Knowledge of AIDS was almost universal—99 percent of men and 96 percent of women had heard about the disease. There were, however, some important misconceptions about its nature and the ways in which the virus can be transmitted. For example, 29 percent of men and 38 percent of women either believed that one can get AIDS by working beside an infected person or did not know whether that was possible. In addition, almost half of the respondents thought that mosquitos can transmit the AIDS virus. Most of the men and women knew that symptoms of AIDS include persistent diarrhea and extreme weight loss, but a majority were unaware that recurrent fever and prolonged fatigue may also be symptoms. Almost 80 percent of the men and 73 percent of the women knew that individuals with multiple partners are at greater risk for contracting the virus than are those in monogamous relationships. However, only 42 percent of women were aware that condoms can prevent HIV transmission. When asked if there is a vaccine against AIDS, a surprisingly high proportion of respondents said there is one or did not know (41 percent of men and 57 percent of women); similarly, 48 percent of men and 32 percent of women either believed there to be a cure for the disease or did not know. Most men and women believed themselves to be at low or no risk for contracting AIDS.

By conducting a multivariate regression analysis to determine associations between background characteristics and knowledge about AIDS, the investigators found that men and women who received a high score on an AIDS knowledge test were likely to be more educated, to have known someone who died of AIDS and to be of higher socioeconomic status. AIDS knowledge was also positively associated with the number and length of messages regarding AIDS that the respondent had heard through the media. Non-Christian men and women were less knowledgeable about AIDS, as were rural women.

Almost one-half of the male respondents and almost two-thirds of the female respondents believed themselves to be at no risk for AIDS. Men and women were more likely to view themselves as at risk if they had more education, were of higher socioeconomic status, knew someone who had died of AIDS, had heard more media messages about AIDS, or had multiple or extramarital sexual partners. In addition, men were more likely to perceive themselves as at risk if they were younger or were either Catholic or Protestant. Women with one steady partner were more likely than women without such a partner to view themselves as at risk for AIDS.

Sexual and Contraceptive Behavior

Among men and women who had had intercourse, the mean age at first intercourse was 17 and 16 years, respectively. Sixty percent of women and 66 percent of men said they had had sex during the previous month; those who had done so had had intercourse on 1.3 days during the prior week, on average.

Almost one-quarter of married men (compared with one percent of married women) said they had had extramarital intercourse in the six months preceding the interview. About half of those men and nearly all of the women claimed they had been with only one extramarital partner.

Younger men, those who were more educated, those of higher socioeconomic status, those who had lived in an urban area during adolescence and those who believed there to be a vaccine against HIV were all more likely to have engaged in extramarital intercourse. Young age and urban residence during adolescence were apparently associated with an increased likelihood of extramarital sexual activity among women as well.

The respondents were all asked about their knowledge and use of condoms. Knowledge was greater among men than among women, and married women were more likely than single women to have heard of this method. Only 12 percent of married men had ever used a condom with their wives. Although eight percent of married men and seven percent of married women said they were currently using condoms, less than two percent of either men or women said they regularly did so. Pregnancy prevention was the primary reason given for using a condom with a spouse, followed by prevention of sexually transmitted diseases and prevention of AIDS.

Kinshasa residents are more likely to use a condom with an extramarital partner than with their spouse: Twenty-four percent of the men who had sexual partners other than their spouse and 12 percent of comparable women said they used a condom with that partner. Among the men who said they used a condom with an extramarital partner, 35 percent did so all the time and 15 percent did so most of the time. The prevalence and frequency of condom use among unmarried men was similar to that among married men involved with an extramarital partner.

When asked about their beliefs about condoms, more than 52 percent of the men said they thought that condoms tear easily, can remain in the vagina after sex and can diminish sexual pleasure. Unmarried men had slightly more favorable attitudes toward condoms than did married men. Women also tended to view condoms negatively, with 30–50 percent mentioning the above problems.

Men with a positive attitude toward condoms were more likely to be young, to have engaged in extramarital activity during the preceding six months and to have had no steady partner. Those who viewed condoms positively were also more likely both to use condoms and to be aware of their value in preventing HIV.

The researchers, concerned about the many misconceptions they found among the men and women of Kinshasa regarding both AIDS and condoms, believe that their findings can provide areas of emphasis for an ongoing educational campaign. Particularly important are the misconceptions about how HIV is transmitted, the belief that there is a cure for AIDS and the negative perceptions about condoms. The investigators also stress the importance of aiming educational campaigns at teenagers as well as adults, since about one-half of adolescents in Zaire have had sexual intercourse by age 17.—*P. Rind*

Reference

1. J. T. Bertrand et al., "AIDS-Related Knowledge, Sexual Behavior, and Condom Use Among Men and Women in Kinshasa, Zaire," *American Journal of Public Health*, **81**:53, 1991.

Compliance with AID's Mexico City Policy Has Been Careful and Complete, Recent Analysis Concludes

International family planning organizations have complied carefully with the policy forbidding recipients of U.S. population funding from supporting nongovernmental organizations that perform or promote abortions, according to an evaluation conducted for the U.S. Agency for International Development (AID).[1] Grantees have also "taken reasonable steps to verify that their subgrantees are in compliance" with the policy (known as the Mexico City policy); in fact, the evaluators describe a number of cases in which subgrantees have interpreted the policy too conservatively and have halted activities that were not in violation of the policy. The report recommends several changes in the way the policy is explained. The director of AID's Office of Population had earlier given an official sworn statement offering clarifications of what activities are or are not permitted.[2]

The Mexico City policy, so named because it was announced at the United Nations–sponsored International Population Conference in Mexico City in 1984, says that the United States will not contribute to family planning programs that include abortion services. Thus, the U.S. government required national programs to segregate U.S. funds in special accounts separate from any abortion-related expenditures, and declared that it would not "contribute to separate nongovernmental organizations [that] perform or actively promote abortion as a method of family planning." A standard clause was later inserted into all agreements between AID and nongovernmental organizations, stating that AID funds may not be used to finance or support activities supporting the use of abortion "as a method of family planning" (i.e., to space births or terminate unwanted pregnancies).

Although the clause forbids grantees and subgrantees from actively advising women about abortion, it does permit recipients in countries where the procedure is legal to discuss abortion with a pregnant woman if she brings up the subject and says she intends to obtain an abortion (termed "passive" referral). It also allows recipients to counsel on abortion or perform the procedure when a woman's life is endangered and to treat women suffering from the effects of illegal abortion. In addition, the clause states that "epidemiologic or descriptive research to assess the incidence, extent or consequences of abortions is not precluded."

In 1990, AID commissioned a study to determine if grantees and subgrantees understand and have been complying with the terms of the Mexico City Policy, and what the policy's impact has been on the operation of family planning programs.

DIGEST

The activities of five major grantees (or cooperating agencies) were reviewed during the course of the study.* Staff members at these agencies were interviewed to determine how they were monitoring subgrantees' compliance with the policy, and files were examined for the documentation required by the clause. The investigators also made field visits to 49 subprojects—12 in Brazil, 10 in Pakistan, eight each in Bangladesh and Kenya, seven in Turkey and four in Egypt. More than 100 clinic staff were interviewed in depth during these visits.

The investigation revealed that all of the cooperating agencies were taking "reasonable steps" to ensure their compliance with the Mexico City Policy. In addition, most subgrantees had instituted procedures to help their staffs understand and comply with the policy, and nearly all were also carrying out some sort of informal internal monitoring, usually by the director of the subproject or by a senior staff member. The investigators observe that "all of the subprojects reviewed were found to be in complete compliance with the Mexico City Policy; there was no indication that any of the subprojects is carrying out or promoting abortion."

Most senior personnel at the cooperating agencies "had a good understanding of AID's procedures for implementing the Mexico City Policy," the investigators comment, although some mentioned that the clause's language was so complex that they had had to seek the help of a lawyer to interpret it. And while senior staff of the subgrantees also generally understood the policy, the investigators observe that "most do not have a grasp of the fine details." For example, one-third of those interviewed did not know that under some circumstances they are allowed to refer patients for abortion without violating the policy.

The investigators also note that although the Mexico City Policy has had little effect on the operation of most AID-funded projects, some project staff have "overreacted" to the restrictions. In some cases, program managers in countries where abortion is legal have prohibited clinicians from ever discussing abortion with clients, even when the client brings up the subject: "One subproject director explained these prohibitions by stating that if any exceptions were made, 'Someone might someday say that we are in violation of the clause because of something one of our staff members did or said with regard to referrals. It is better to limit all referral activities than be put in this situation.'"

Another unanticipated effect of the policy has been on the monitoring of health-related information. Some clinics in Bangladesh and Pakistan have stopped recording abortion-history data on a client's medical form, even when the information is volunteered by the woman, apparently because of fear over the potential impact if the word "abortion" appears on a client's records. In addition, an organization in Bangladesh that before the announcement of the Mexico City Policy had been collecting data on abortion trends has ceased to do so, assuming that such activities violate the policy. Other subprojects have instructed employees never to discuss abortion, even on their own time, and have forbidden staff physicians from performing abortions in their private practices or anywhere else outside the clinic. Finally, in some countries, the policy has hindered cooperation between nongovernmental organizations that receive AID funds and others that do not and that are involved in abortion-related activities.

The investigators conclude by recommending several clarifications of the Mexico City clause in AID agreements. First, they recommend that it be "revised to clarify what is permitted in important areas, such as research and the treatment of septic abortion cases." In addition, they say, the clause might be modified to read that if a grantee or subgrantee were to violate the policy inadvertently, it would be permitted to correct the problem before having its agreement terminated. The investigators also urge cooperating agencies to give more help to subgrantees in understanding the requirements of the clause. Finally, they recommend the provision of a "short, easy-to-read publication providing examples of what is and is not permitted under the standard clause. . . . This publication should 1) be targeted toward subproject administrative and clinic personnel, 2) be printed in a number of languages, and 3) cover a number of subjects related to the policy, e.g., monitoring, referral and equipment procurement."

On June 15, 1990, Duff G. Gillespie, director of the Office of Population of AID, gave a sworn statement in response to testimony in a U.S. court case challenging the constitutionality of the eligibility clause used to implement the Mexico City policy. Gillespie explained that the purpose of the policy was to "prevent foreign abortion advocates from representing the United States in foreign countries by excluding them from AID's population assistance program and allocating federal funds to foreign nongovernmental organizations whose activities are consistent with the values and principles the President has decided to promote."

Gillespie further noted that U.S. recipients of federal monies may fund foreign nongovernmental organizations so long as abortion-related activities are limited to those "that would not make foreign nongovernmental organizations ineligible under the clause: counselling and referrals when the life of the mother is threatened or in cases of rape or incest; abortion research; training and equipment to deal with incomplete or septic abortions, which are health problems at that point and not family planning actions; [and] postabortion counseling for women who have an obvious need for contraceptive family planning services." The director also observed that recipients' involvement in abortion-related activities depends to a large extent on the legality of abortion in a particular country: In countries where abortion is legal, agencies wishing to be involved in abortion can cooperate with governmental organizations (which are not affected by the Mexico City policy) using non-AID funds; in other countries, abortion-related activities would violate the law and therefore could not be undertaken responsibly.—*M. Klitsch*

References

1. J. Blane and M. Friedman, *Mexico City Policy Implementation Study*, Population Technical Assistance Project, Occasional Paper No. 5, Arlington, Va., Nov. 1990.

2. D. G. Gillespie, "Supplemental Declaration of Duff G. Gillespie," in re *The Pathfinder Fund et al.* v. *Agency for International Development et al.*, U.S. District Court for the District of Columbia, Civil Action No. 89–0133, Washington, D.C., June 15, 1990.

---

*The Association for Voluntary Surgical Contraception, the Centre for Development and Population Activities, Family Health International, International Planned Parenthood Federation—Western Hemisphere, and The Pathfinder Fund.

Note to Authors

International Family Planning Perspectives is a peer-reviewed quarterly journal publishing research articles about the developing world that are intended to be of assistance to professionals in the fields of fertility and family planning, maternal and child health and population policy. The editors invite researchers, policymakers and program operators from around the world to submit articles on such topics as contraceptive practice and research; population growth; fertility levels, trends and determinants; childspacing; pregnancy termination; public policies and legal issues affecting family planning and childbearing; family planning program operation, development and evaluation; information, education and communication activities; sexually transmitted diseases; and reproductive, maternal and child health. Manuscripts should be sent to the address below, and should include the affiliation, address, telephone number and Fax number of the corresponding author.

Manuscripts may be submitted in English, French or Spanish, and are read with the understanding that they neither are under consideration elsewhere nor have been published previously. All submissions are reviewed by the editorial staff and, if deemed of interest, undergo anonymous peer review. Manuscripts not accepted for publication will not be returned. Upon acceptance, all manuscripts are edited to the extent necessary to conform to the style of the journal. Authors will have two opportunities to review their article after editing. Authors must assign copyright to the journal.

Selected articles appear on an annual basis in the Spanish edition of the journal, *Perspectivas Internacionales en Planificación Familiar*, and in the French edition, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial*.

Manuscripts should be typed double-spaced, with all pages numbered and with a title page that includes the names and affiliations (at the time of the work reported) of all authors. Submissions should run no more than 30–35 pages, with no more than 7–8 tables; only one copy need be sent. Manuscripts should include a summary of up to one page in length.

Each table and chart should be on a separate page. Authors should check previous issues of *International Family Planning Perspectives* to gain an idea of how tables are to be styled. Authors must supply data points for all line graphs and charts; final art work will be done by the journal's staff.

International Family Planning Perspectives es una revista trimestral que publica monografías sobre el mundo en desarrollo destinadas a asistir a profesionales en las áreas de fecundidad y planificación familiar, salud materno-infantil y políticas de población. Invitamos a investigadores y responsables de políticas y programas de todo el mundo a que presenten artículos sobre temas tales como práctica e investigación en materia de anticonceptivos; crecimiento demográfico; niveles, tendencias y determinantes de la fecundidad; espaciamento de los hijos; terminación de embarazo; políticas oficiales y cuestiones jurídicas que afecten la planificación familiar y la fecundidad; aplicación, elaboración y evaluación de programas de planificación familiar; actividades de información, instrucción y comunicación; enfermedades transmitidas sexualmente y salud reproductiva y materno-infantil. Los originales deberán enviarse a la dirección que figura abajo, debiendo constar en ellos la filiación completa, domicilio postal, teléfono y, de ser posible, número de Fax del remitente.

Los originales pueden ser escritos en español, francés o inglés. Serán aceptados en la inteligencia de que son inéditos y no están siendo considerados por ninguna otra publicación. El personal de edición examinará todos los trabajos presentados y, de hallarlos interesantes, los hará evaluar por otros especialistas sin divulgar el nombre del autor. No se devolverán los originales rechazados. Los que se acepten serán revisados en la medida necesaria para conformarlos al estilo de la revista. Los autores tendrán dos oportunidades de examinar sus monografías revisadas y deberán ceder los derechos de autor a la revista.

Algunos artículos se seleccionarán para la edición anual en español, *Perspectivas Internacionales de Planificación Familiar*, o para la edición francés, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial*.

Los originales deberán presentarse mecanografiados a doble espacio. Las páginas deberán estar numeradas, debiendo figurar en la primera, nombre y filiación (al momento de escribirse el trabajo) de todos los autores. Los artículos no podrán exceder de 30–35 páginas ni incluir más de ocho cuadros. No hace falta enviar sino un ejemplar. Los originales deberán ir acompañados de un resumen de hasta una página.

Cada cuadro o gráfico deberá ir en hoja por separado. Conviene que los autores consulten números anteriores de *International Family Planning Perspectives* para formarse una idea del respectivo formato. Deberán suministrar también todas las cifras y datos necesarios para cada gráfico o cuadro. La revista se encargará del diseño gráfico.

La revue trimestrielle *International Family Planning Perspectives* publie des articles présentant des résultats de recherche sur les pays en développement et destinés à éclairer les spécialistes en matière de fécondité, planification familiale, protection maternelle et infantile et politiques démographiques. La rédaction invite tout chercheur, dirigeant ou administrateur de programme à soumettre des articles sur les sujets suivants: pratique contraceptive et recherche dans le domaine de la contraception; croissance démographique; niveaux, tendances et facteurs déterminants de la fécondité; espacement des naissances; interruption de grossesse; questions juridiques et d'ordre public influant sur la planification familiale et la procréation; administration, élaboration et évaluation de programmes de planification familiale; activités relatives à l'information, l'éducation et la communication; maladies sexuellement transmissibles; hygiène sexuelle et comportement reproducteur; et protection maternelle et infantile.

Les auteurs devraient adresser les manuscrits à l'adresse ci-dessous et mentionner l'affiliation complète, adresse, numéro de téléphone et numéro de télécopieur (si possible) de la personne avec qui nous devons communiquer.

Les manuscrits peuvent être rédigés en français, en anglais ou en espagnol et ne seront acceptés qu'à la condition qu'ils n'aient été soumis à aucune autre publication, ni déjà publiés. Tous les articles sont évalués par la rédaction et s'ils sont jugés intéressants, présentés, à titre anonyme, à l'appréciation de spécialistes. Les manuscrits non publiés ne seront pas renvoyés à leur(s) auteur(s). Une fois acceptés, les manuscrits seront éventuellement révisés afin de les adapter au style et présentation propres à la revue. Les auteurs auront ensuite, à deux reprises, l'occasion de revoir leur article. Ils devront céder les droits d'auteur à la revue.

Certains articles retenus sont également publiés dans la version annuelle de la revue, en espagnol, *Perspectivas Internacionales en Planificación Familiar*, ou en français, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial*.

Tous les manuscrits devraient être préparés de la manière suivante: dactylographiés en double interligne, avec un maximum de 30–35 pages; chaque feuillet doit être soigneusement paginé. La première page doit fournir les noms de tous les auteurs ainsi que leur affiliation (au moment où travaux ou recherches ont été effectués). Les manuscrits ne doivent pas comporter plus de 7–8 tableaux et doivent inclure un résumé ne dépassant pas une page. L'auteur ne doit soumettre qu'un seul exemplaire.

Tableaux et graphiques devront figurer chacun sur un feuillet séparé. Les auteurs sont priés de consulter les numéros précédents de la revue afin de voir comment les tableaux doivent être présentés. Ils devront également fournir les points de données pour tous diagrammes et graphiques. La rédaction se chargera du dessin graphique.

Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg
Editor-in-Chief
International Family Planning Perspectives
The Alan Guttmacher Institute
111 Fifth Avenue
New York, NY 10003
USA

International Family Planning Perspectives
Published quarterly by The Alan Guttmacher Institute

Editorial Office: 111 Fifth Avenue,
New York, N.Y. 10003, United States of America

Editorial Advisory Committee

Barbara M. Boland, Trinidad and Tobago

John C. Caldwell, National Centre for Epidemiology and Population Health, The Australian National University, Canberra

John Cleland, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, England

Mercedes B. Concepcion, The Population Institute, University of the Philippines, Manila

Ronald Freedman, The Population Studies Center of the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor

Noreen Goldman, Office of Population Research, Princeton University, Princeton, New Jersey

Roushdi A. Henin, Department of Sociology, University of Zimbabwe, Harare

Maria Helena Henriques-Mueller, Brazil

Shireen J. Jejeebhoy, Bombay, India

Gavin W. Jones, The Research School of Social Sciences, The Australian National University, Canberra

Lin Lean Lim, International Labor Office, United Nations, Bangkok, Thailand

Wolfgang Lutz, International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis, Laxenburg, Austria

Edith Alejandra Pantelides, Centro de Estudios de Población, Buenos Aires, Argentina

Allan G. Rosenfield, School of Public Health, Columbia University, New York

Nafis Sadik, United Nations Population Fund, New York

Mpembele Daniel Sala-Diakanda, Institut de Formation et de Recherche Démographiques, Yaoundé, Cameroon

Zeba Sathar, Pakistan Institute of Development Economics, Islamabad

Claudio Stern, El Colegio de México, The Population Council, Mexico City

Léon Tabah, Comité International de Coopération dans les Recherches Nationales, Paris, France

Martin Vessey, Department of Public Health and Primary Care, University of Oxford, England

Subscriptions are $22 a year for individuals, $32 a year for institutions, and $29.80 a year for subscription agencies. Back issues are available for $8.00 per copy.

This publication is partly supported by the U.S. Agency for International Development (AID) through contract No. DPE-3032-Z-00-7061-00 with the Population Information Program of The Johns Hopkins University (JHU). The contents of this publication do not necessarily reflect the views or policies of AID or JHU.

Credits
Cover design: Sheldon Cotler + Associates

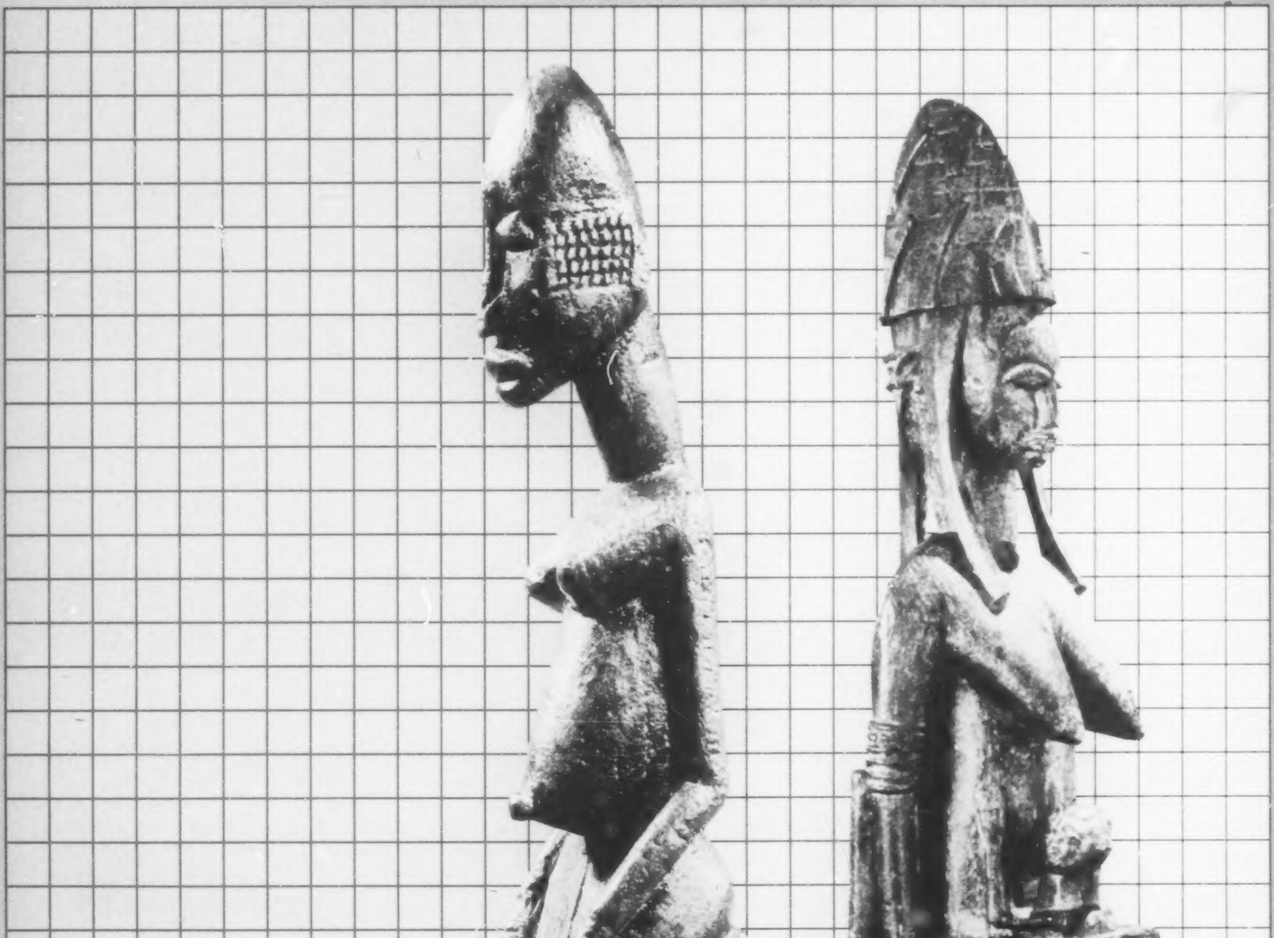
Volume 17, Number 3, September 1991

A5160-6A

International Family Planning Perspectives

Family Planning in Mali

Sterilization Among Women in Zaire
Effectiveness of the Symptothermal Method
Providing Contraception at a Mine in Peru



A Publication of
The Alan Guttmacher Institute

International Family Planning Perspectives

ISSN 0162-2749
Volume 17, Number 3, September 1991

Published quarterly by
The Alan Guttmacher Institute

President: Jeannie I. Rosoff
Director of Publications and Editor-in-Chief:
Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg

Executive Editor: Jeanette H. Johnson
Editor: Michael Klitsch
Associate Editor: Frances A. Althaus
Assistant Editors: Lisa Remez, Patricia Rind,
Rebecca M. Turner
Copy Editor: Donna Cohen
Production Manager: Valerie Morris
Senior Production Assistants: Elizabeth LaPorta,
Georges Louis-Jacques
Production Assistant: Paul Blaser
Administrative Assistant: Ruth A. Zlotnick

Contributing Editor, Law and Public Policy:
Susan Cohen

Consulting Editor:
Charles Westoff

Editorial Office:
111 Fifth Avenue
New York, N.Y. 10003
United States of America

© 1991 by The Alan Guttmacher Institute, An Independent, Nonprofit Corporation for Research, Policy Analysis and Public Education; all rights, including translation into other languages, reserved under the Universal Copyright Convention, the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works and the Inter- and Pan American Copyright Conventions (Mexico City and Buenos Aires).

Second-class postage paid at New York, N.Y., and additional mailing offices.
Postmaster: Send address changes to Family Planning Perspectives, 111 Fifth Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10003.

Table of Contents

		Page
Update		82
Articles		
Family Planning in Bamako, Mali	Francine van de Walle and Mariam Maiga	84
Costs and Benefits of Implementing Family Planning Services at a Private Mining Company in Peru	Karen G. Foreit, Delia Haustein, Max Winterhalter and Ernesto La Mata	91
Use-Effectiveness Among Users Of the Symptothermal Method Of Family Planning	Robert T. Kambic, Ronald H. Gray, Richard St. Mart, Claude A. Lanctot and Mary C. Martin	96
Social and Psychological Aspects Of Tubal Ligation in Zaire: A Follow-Up Study of Acceptors	Jane T. Bertrand, Chibalonza Kashwantale, Djunghu Balowa, Nancy C. Baughman and Chirhamolekwa Chirwisa	100
Comment		
South Asia's Future Population: Are There Really Grounds for Optimism?	Richard Leete and Gavin Jones	108
Books in Review		
The Population Wars	Rodolfo A. Bulatao	114
Digest		
Most Zimbabwean Men Approve of Family Planning After the First Birth		115
Thai Children from Small Families Generally Attain More Education		116
Paraguay DHS Reveals Moderately High Fertility and Low Child Mortality		117
Early Marriage and Childbearing Remain Common in Developing World		119
Corrections		95

The wood fertility sculptures pictured on the cover are from Mali. The pregnant woman is of Dogon origin; the photograph, courtesy of the Center for African Art, New York, is by Jerry L. Thompson. The mother and child is a Bamana figure, from the collection of The Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York; it was photographed by Lee Boltin.

UPDATE

Risky Sex in Nigeria

Premarital and extramarital intercourse are relatively common among Yoruba men and women living in the Ekiti District of Nigeria, according to the results of an intensive, in-depth survey, with the men reporting consistently more sexual partners and more frequent intercourse than the women.[1] Researchers asked 200 hundred men and 200 women about their past and present sexual behavior. Forty-nine percent of rural men and 36 percent of urban men had had five or more premarital sexual partners, compared with 21 percent of rural women and 24 percent of urban women. (Thirteen percent of rural men and 19 percent of urban men said they had had too many premarital partners to remember.) Forty-seven percent of rural men and 41 percent of urban men had had at least three different sexual partners in the preceding year, as had 22 percent of rural women and 15 percent of urban women. The researchers also estimate that 55–60 percent of men in monogamous unions and 27–41 percent of women in monogamous unions had had at least one nonmarital partner over the year preceding the study. Overall, about 60 percent of all of the men and about 40 percent of all of the women were having intercourse with more than one partner around the time of the interview. The investigators comment that this "level of sexual networking . . . is so high that the society is dangerously exposed to sexually transmitted disease."

1. I. O. Orubuloye, J. C. Caldwell and P. Caldwell, "Sexual Networking in the Ekiti District of Nigeria," *Studies in Family Planning*, **22**:61, 1991.

China's "Missing" Girls

Females are underrepresented in all second and higher order births in China, according to a recent analysis, especially when these births occur without official approval.[1] Researchers using three large independent data sets analyzed the ratio of reported male births to reported female births, and confirmed that the sex ratios reported for China over the past decade are well in excess of the expected ratio of 105 or 106 males per 100 females. For example, a 1988 survey revealed sex ratios of 111 and 112 per 100 over the period 1985–1987; the sex ratio was about 107 per 100 for first births but grew to 113 per 100 for second births and 118–119 per 100 for third and fourth births. After an exhaustive analysis of a variety of data sources, the investigators conclude that about half of the "missing" girls are given up for adoption by their biological parents and are not reported as live births to authorities. In addition, according to the researchers, the sex ratio of infant deaths (114 male infant deaths per 100 female infant deaths) is substantially lower than the normal ratio of 130 per 100, "implying some excess female infant deaths."

1. S. Johansson and O. Nygren, "The Missing Girls of China: A New Demographic Account," *Population and Development Review*, **17**:35, 1991.

Do Babies Need Extra Water?

Even in tropical areas, infants who are being exclusively breastfed do not need to be given additional drinks of water to prevent dehydration; in fact, babies who are given supplemental water appear to consume less breast milk.[1] An in-depth study conducted in India during the summer involved 45 infants about 10 weeks old; 22 were breastfed and given supplementary water and 23 were breastfed but were not given additional water. (The former received about 11 percent of total fluids as water.) There were no significant differences between the two groups in the concentration of their urine, in their weight change or in their body temperature. However, the infants who received water supplements consumed significantly less breast milk than the infants who received no water. The researchers conclude that "exclusively breastfed infants can adequately maintain water homeostasis during summer months. . . . Water supplementation is unnecessary and offers no additional advantage for maintaining hydration status."

1. H. P. S. Sachdev et al., "Water Supplementation in Exclusively Breastfed Infants During Summer in the Tropics," *Lancet*, **I**:929, 1991.

Abortifacient Requests in Paraguay

Many pharmacies in the Paraguayan capital of Asunción receive 10 or more requests each week for abortifacients, and women who seek them are much more likely than contraceptive customers to be unmarried or from poor neighborhoods.[1] Researchers examined the frequency with which abortifacients (some of them harmless and ineffective, some effective, and some effective but dangerous) were sought at 80 pharmacies in and around Asunción. They found that employees at 45 percent of the clinics reported that they received at least 10 such requests each week. After comparing 56 women who purchased contraceptives at these pharmacies with 51 who purchased abortifacients, the investigators found that women from low-income neighborhoods were almost five times as likely as others to buy an abortifacient; furthermore, unmarried women were nearly three times as likely as married women to do so. The researchers attribute the busy market for abortifacients and pseudoabortifacients in Asunción in part to the absence of any government-sponsored contraceptive services.

1. N. K. de Oddone et al., "Paraguayan Pharmacies and the Sale of Pseudo-Abortifacients," *Journal of Biosocial Science*, **23**:201, 1991.

Why Women Breastfeed

The most important factors affecting whether a Filipino woman breastfeeds her baby appear to be socioeconomic, according to a new analysis of breastfeeding behavior.[1] Data were collected on 3,005 women who

---

Update was compiled and written by Michael Klitsch, editor of *Family Planning Perspectives*.

gave birth at some time during a one-year period in 1983 and 1984; more than 90 percent elected to breastfeed their baby. A multivariate analysis revealed that the strongest determinants of whether a woman intended to breastfeed her baby were personal and economic factors: Better-educated Filipinos were significantly less likely to intend to breastfeed, as were women with relatively higher family income, those who had worked during pregnancy and those whose husband was relatively highly educated. Although women who were exposed to mass-media campaigns promoting breastfeeding were significantly more likely to intend to breastfeed, those who had heard about formula feeding from the mass media were no more or less likely to intend to breastfeed. More highly educated women were also significantly less likely to have actually breastfed their baby, as were women who gave birth at a private health facility. The investigators conclude that "most of the factors that result in the largest predicted reductions in the likelihood of breastfeeding seem to be related to family economics."

[1] J. F. Stewart et al., "Influences on the Extent of Breast-Feeding: A Prospective Study in the Philippines," *Demography*, **28**:181, 1991.

Maternal and Child Health in Bolivia

The Bolivian infant mortality rate was about 96 deaths per 1,000 live births during the 1980s, while the overall mortality rate among children under five years of age was 142 deaths per 1,000 live births, according to an analysis of data from the 1989 Demographic and Health Survey. These rates are among the highest seen in Latin America. The survey results also indicated that infant mortality in Bolivia has probably declined by about 20 percent over the past 15 years. Three-quarters of the children who died before age five died at home, and only half had received any medical treatment. The report also reveals that 28 percent of all children under five had had diarrhea sometime in the two weeks preceding the survey, and 20 percent had suffered from an acute respiratory infection during that period. Only 19 percent of children 1–2 years old were fully immunized. Fifty-three percent of women who gave birth between 1984 and 1988 received no prenatal care, and 60 percent gave birth at home, almost all with no doctor, nurse or midwife present. The maternal mortality rate for the period 1975–1988 was estimated at 332 maternal deaths per 100,000 live births.

[1] A. E. Sommerfelt et al., *Maternal and Child Health in Bolivia: Report on the In-Depth DHS Survey in Bolivia, 1989*, Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., Columbia, Md., 1991.

Affordable, High-Quality Care

Over the past decade, a single clinic in Dhaka founded by the Bangladesh Women's Health Coalition has grown into a network of seven clinics providing a wide range of high-quality health services for extremely low fees.[1] The seven clinics served nearly 100,000 women between July 1989 and June 1990, providing services ranging from contraception and menstrual regulation to child immunization and general adult health care. According to a recent report on the clinics, their success can be attributed in part to their client-oriented perspective and in part to their objective of providing high-quality care. For example, employee salary increases and promotions are determined not simply by the number of patients employees see but also by the quality of the care they dispense. Two clinics in urban areas of Bangladesh charge clients a fee based on a sliding scale, and although the fees are extremely low, the clinics have become about 35 percent self-sufficient. The report's authors conclude that several lessons can be drawn from these Bangladeshi clinics. First, "high quality services are not a luxury. . . . Simple gestures such as treating clients with respect, keeping clinics clean and cheerful and ensuring privacy cost very little yet are highly valued by clients." Other lessons are that counseling entails much more than simply providing information, that satisfied clients will often make use of other services, and that well-treated staff members are more likely to treat clients with respect.

[1] B. J. Kay, A. Germain and M. Bangser, "The Bangladesh Women's Health Coalition," *Quality/Calidad/Qualité*, No. 3, The Population Council, New York, 1991.

Reducing Maternal Deaths

Providing high-risk pregnant women with a nearby place to stay during the last few weeks before delivery produced a marked reduction in maternal mortality and a clear improvement in infant health at one Ethiopian hospital.[1] The hospital, serving 300,000 people, set up a 15-bed maternity waiting home (or *tukul*) to provide temporary quarters for pregnant women who lived so far away that they would not be able to reach the hospital in an emergency. The women were usually referred to the tukul by traditional birth attendants or village health workers. In 1987, 151 pregnant women stayed at the tukul, 111 of them because they were judged to be at high risk—72 of these because of an unfavorable obstetric history and 39 because they had experienced complications. A total of 116 traveled from at least 12 miles (20 km) away. Even though the majority of women who stayed at the tukul were considered at high risk, none died during or following delivery; in contrast, 13 women admitted directly to the hospital during 1987 died as a result of childbirth, for a maternal mortality rate of 21.2 deaths per 1,000 live births. The stillbirth rate in the general hospital population (253.5 per 1,000 births) was nearly 10 times greater than it was among women who had stayed at the tukul (28.2 per 1,000). The authors of the report observe that a maternity waiting home located near a rural hospital "is vital where women have to travel long distances, transport is poor and obstetric disasters are frequent."

[1] P. Pooven, F. Kifle and B. E. Kwast, "A Maternity Waiting Home Reduces Obstetric Catastrophes," *World Health Forum*, **11**:440, 1990.

Teen Pregnancy Programs Worldwide

In the developing world, about two-thirds of programs aimed at preventing teenage pregnancy are operated by nongovernmental organizations, most of which rely heavily on international donors and receive relatively little support from their governments.[1] A total of 103 organizations with adolescent pregnancy prevention programs responded to a mail survey sent in 1989. An analysis of the responses revealed that 66 percent were nongovernmental organizations, 21 percent were governmental projects, six percent were church organizations and seven percent had other sponsors. Thirty-nine percent of the organizations relied on private international organizations for at least some of their funding, 23 percent received government money, 23 percent charged fees, 22 percent were funded by multilateral organizations such as the United Nations or the World Health Organization, 18 percent relied on donations or bequests and smaller proportions received funding from a wide variety of other sources. Eighty-four percent of the programs were serving youths who were in school, and 73 percent were helping young people who were no longer in school. About one-third reported using peer educators in their programs; half said that young people helped develop materials used in their programs, and more than half involved adolescents in implementing the programs. Nearly three-quarters provided contraceptive services to teenagers. The analysts observe that these programs "are doing an impressive job of reaching hundreds of thousands of adolescents around the world. The challenge of the 1990s will be to reach out to the next generation of youth—a generation even larger than today's—at even earlier ages."

[1] G. Barker, J. Hirsch and S. Neidell, *Serving the Future: An Update on Adolescent Pregnancy Prevention Programs in Developing Countries*, International Center on Adolescent Fertility, Washington, D.C., 1991.

Family Planning in Bamako, Mali

> **"The area of 'decision-making' on the number of children is a no-man's-land that is generally defined by culture. . . . and it may well be that each spouse believes the other wants more children but that neither bothers to verify that assumption."**

By Francine van de Walle and Mariam Maiga

Summary

Despite the general availability of modern contraceptives in Bamako, Mali, contraceptive practice remains very limited. Indepth interviews with 78 women who had recently given birth revealed a high level of knowledge of methods along with low levels of current and past use. Although women in the sample often complained of being tired of childbearing, they tended to view having children as the purpose of marriage, and the number of children they had as the measure of its success. While the demand for contraceptive use for spacing births may be growing, the demand for methods to limit births appears to be virtually nonexistent.

Introduction

In 1971, the government of Mali decided to establish a two-year pilot project to gather data necessary for the formation of a national family planning program.[1] In doing so, Mali became the first Francophone country in Sub-Saharan Africa to commit itself to such a program. Its stated purpose was to promote maternal and child health. Family planning was meant to be "humane, oriented towards the health of the mother and child, the happiness of the couple, and the well-being of the entire society."[2]

French legislation on family planning had remained in effect in Mali even after the country's independence in 1958, but in June 1972, through a decree on "practices of voluntary birthspacing in the Republic of Mali," the government authorized the practice of voluntary birth regulation, thus abrogating articles 3 and 4 of the French law of July 1920. That infamous law forbade the manufacture, importation, advertising and sale of contraceptives not only in France but in the French colonies.

The Association Malienne pour la Promotion et la Protection de la Famille (AMPPF) established a small family planning pilot project in Bamako, the capital city, in 1967. The objective of educating the population on family planning was controversial; to avoid conflict with the Islamic religious authorities, the government of Mali did not officially acknowledge AMPPF's existence until 1983.[3] Still, an official interest in family planning was developing on the basis of the needs expressed by the urban population. The Union Nationale des Femmes du Mali (UNFM) has played a leading role in promoting the condition of women in the country and collaborated with the AMPPF.

A fundamental premise of the government was the desirability of a "spacing policy;" however, the need for limiting family size, or population control, was not recognized. In spite of the country's annual growth rate of 2.7 percent, the government believed that the levels of fertility and natural population increase were satisfactory and that Mali was still a sparsely populated country.[4] It argued that a larger population could easily be supported by the country's vast size and by what were considered substantially underutilized natural resources. In 1976, 90 percent of the population lived in rural areas, and the government saw no obvious problem of overpopulation at that point.[5] Thus, the Malian family planning program never developed in a context of demographic policy. Its spacing objectives fell within the framework of traditional values and were based on noncontroversial motives of health and family welfare.

Today, family planning is one of the health services provided by the government, and its growth is linked to the expansion of the network of national public health facilities. *Le planning*, as it is called in Bamako, is integrated into the 11 Protection Maternelle et Infantile units (PMIs), the equivalent of the Maternal and Child Health centers of Anglophone Africa. These units are established in every neighborhood of Bamako as well as in the regional towns. There are also a number of small private family planning centers in Bamako and in the rest of the country so that, according to the project coordinator of AMPPF, "these centers provide an opportunity for every person to freely find a family planning service close by and at the desired time."[6]

Besides the PMI units, which provide contraceptives free of charge (pills, injectables and IUDs), town pharmacies sell contraceptives (condoms and pills) to people with a medical prescription. In addition, single and divorced women, married men (usually having extramarital affairs) and older students (in high school or university) usually manage to buy contraceptives in urban pharmacies without medical or parental authorization. Finally, a parallel market exists for the sale of modern contraceptives (mostly outdated formulations of the pill) in the open markets of Bamako, where they form part of a pharmacopoeia that includes traditional contraceptives and aphrodisiacs as well.

Statistics for 1972–1980 provide some insight into the evolution of family planning in Mali.[7] A total of 16,299 clients of both sexes visited the facilities over that period but data on 989 clients (six percent) were unusable. The resulting number of family planning clients in the country was 15,310, with 80 percent living in Bamako. Among these clients were 439 men who were given condoms and 238 women who were treated for sterility. It is likely that some of these persons were in fact counted several times in the available statistics.

Francine van de Walle is research associate at the Population Studies Center, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia. Mariam Maiga is a staff member at the Centre d'Etudes et de Recherche sur la Population pour le Développement (CERPOD) in Bamako, Mali. The qualitative data for this article were collected under a grant from the Population Council's International Research Awards Program on the Determinants of Fertility, funded by the U.S. Agency for International Development. Francine van de Walle and Nassour Ouaidou, Director of CERPOD, were the principal investigators. The authors gratefully acknowledge the comments and suggestions of Cheikh Mbacké, Dominique Meekers and Etienne van de Walle on earlier drafts of this article.

Contraceptive discontinuation rates are difficult to estimate among these users. About half of the women were reported to have discontinued using their particular method or to have abandoned the use of contraceptives altogether; about 31 percent of those discontinuing or abandoning use had done so within three months of the initial visit and 77 percent within the first year. Among the other half, it was not clear what proportion of women still visited the clinic regularly and what proportion represented women with inactive files.[8]

By far the most widely used method in 1972–1980 was the pill, followed by the IUD. A large part of the demand for contraceptives in Bamako came from single women, mostly aged 20–24, who wanted to avoid pregnancy before marriage (48 percent of users). Married women were using contraceptives to space births rather than to stop childbearing. Abortion is illegal in Mali unless the pregnancy endangers the life of the mother. Although punishable by fines and imprisonment, according to articles 170 to 172 in the Code Pénal Malien,[9] abortion is thought to be widely practiced among young single women and particularly among school-age girls. However, a nationwide study of hospital facilities that was conducted in 1981–1982 revealed neither a high incidence of abortion nor a high demand for contraception.[10] That one-year study found 113 women who had been admitted for complications of induced abortions. Of these, 81 percent were unmarried, 45 percent had had a secondary education or more and 38 percent were students.

Another survey conducted in Bamako showed a similar low level of contraceptive prevalence. For example, among women attending the Hamdallaye maternity clinic in Bamako in 1980–1982, only 3.6 percent had used a contraceptive before their last pregnancy and for the most part, these women had had some education. However, 30 percent overall indicated that they intended to use contraception after their current delivery.[11]

The authors of the report on the 1987 Demographic and Health Survey (DHS) for Mali believe that fertility had recently been declining.[12] If so, is this the result of family planning activities? Their impact can be evaluated very roughly, based on the official statistics from the family planning program (which cover the nine-year period between 1972 and 1980) and the 1976 census results (which counted 419,239 people in the urban agglomeration of Bamako[13]). Assuming that the city's population remained close to the average for the nine-year period covered by the service statistics, that women in their childbearing years made up one-fourth of the population of Bamako, and that the 13,000 users in that city remained in the service for one year on average, less than 1.5 percent of women in Bamako were protected from the risk of conception over the period. This proportion is hardly enough to have had much of an impact.

Was the limited use of family planning services in Bamako a function of an inadequate supply of contraceptives or of weak public demand? Our impression of the family planning facilities we visited informally was one of openness and availability. Clients were usually served promptly, the facilities were well supplied and the staff was friendly. The network of clinics seemed to be sufficient for the needs of the population. Family planning centers, which women could use for both family health and family planning, were advertised well and were usually easy to find, even for new residents.

A 1984 statement by Abdoul Karim Sangaré, then president of the AMPPF, would seem to contradict our impressions. He referred to "the lack of information about family planning services, the prevalence of a great deal of incorrect information and the widespread opposition of the male partner as the three most formidable cultural barriers to fertility control in Mali."[14] As in other parts of Africa, there is a conflict between "demand" and "supply" explanations for the low prevalence of contraceptive use, and by extension, for the lateness of the onset of fertility decline. We turn to survey data to shed light on this debate for Bamako.

The Survey

In this article, we use a two-stage approach, combining quantitative data from a large-scale survey with in-depth interviews of a small subsample of respondents. The data come from the Enquête sur la Mortalité Infantile dans le Sahel (EMIS), a large multiround infant and child mortality survey that followed 12,000 women who gave birth in Bamako between April 1982 and March 1983. The survey, which concluded at each child's death or second birthday, was completed in March 1985. Of these women, 6,902 were followed for two full years. (Roughly 30 percent of the women were lost to follow-up, a fact that probably invalidates the mortality data but not the fertility data.) The survey included questions on a number of socioeconomic and cultural variables, as well as on the mother's postpartum behavior and subsequent pregnancies. Questions on knowledge and use of contraception were also asked in the baseline survey.

Our main source for this article consists of the in-depth interviews. Because of the superficial nature of the full survey, we were convinced that a more intensive approach to gathering data on culturally sensitive topics was needed. For example, we were puzzled by the low percentage of women reporting knowledge or use of contraceptives in the EMIS, despite the widespread availability of family planning services in Bamako. In late 1984, when the EMIS multiround survey was coming to a close, we selected for in-depth interviews a random subsample of 80 mothers among those who had already been followed by the EMIS survey for two full years.

The interviews were concentrated in two areas of Bamako: an older neighborhood in the center of the city and an outlying squatter district that had been recently settled. The women were visited at their homes and interviewed at length on the following: postpartum behavior; fertility; desired number of children; spacing preferences; status as a woman, wife and mother; knowledge of contraception; former and current contraceptive use; and intention to use contraceptives in the future. To investigate possible changes in attitude by age cohort, we divided the sample equally between women below age 30 (including seven single mothers) and those aged 30 and older. (It should be pointed out, however, that age reporting was not very precise for most of these women.) The interviews were conducted in Bambara (the main language spoken in Bamako) by one of two women interviewers, accompanied by the first author. Both of the interviewers were high school teachers: The older one was married with six children; the younger one was unmarried with one child. The younger and older cohorts were questioned by the younger and older interviewer, respectively.

We decided to use a loosely structured questionnaire focusing on specific topics and invited the women to talk freely, ask questions and participate. The interviews were recorded on tape and then translated into French by the interviewers and discussed at length the next morning. During the two-month course of the survey, we made some changes in the questionnaire, adding new subjects and eliminating others. During the summer of 1985, we made a last visit to the field to resolve some inconsistencies in the interviews. Although 80 women had been questioned by the end of the project, two interviews were lost due to tape damage.

A caveat is necessary regarding the selection of women in the EMIS survey and, consequently, in the interviews: All the women were fertile, and were eligible because they had had a child. They may have had con-

Table 1. Percentage distribution of women giving birth to a child who survived at least two years, by characteristic and survey sample, Bamako, 1982–1985

Characteristic	Full sample (N=6,902)	Interview sample (N=78)
Age		
<20	21.9	20.0
20–29	50.7	33.4
≥30	27.4	46.6
Education		
No schooling	67.5	73.3
At least some primary	15.9	9.3
At least some secondary	16.5	17.3
Marital status		
Married	86.3	89.3
Single	12.9	10.7
Separated, widowed, divorced	0.2	0.0
Unknown	0.6	0.0
Ethnicity		
Bambara	35.3	29.3
Malinke	16.1	14.7
Fulani	13.7	16.0
Sarakole	10.5	10.7
Others	24.4	29.3
Total	100.0	100.0

siderably more children than similar women who were less fecund or who were practicing contraception (and were thus less likely to have given birth at the time of the survey). Their attitudes toward family planning may have been different from those of the general population. While 78 women are obviously not representative of the population, their responses can contribute a wealth of cultural details not found in quantitative surveys.

Table 1 compares some of the background characteristics of the women selected for the in-depth interviews with those of the 6,902 women in the EMIS survey who had been followed for two full years. Women aged 30 and older were oversampled in the in-depth interviews, while those aged 20–29 were proportionately underrepresented. The similarity of the rest of the results is reassuring. A majority had never gone to school. Uneducated women, who are less likely to have any knowledge of contraceptive methods, were slightly overrepresented in the in-depth sample. Only 17 percent of women in either group had at least some secondary schooling. The great majority were married; most of the single mothers were engaged or hoped to marry the father of their child. Around 40 percent of both samples were in polygamous unions (not shown). An overwhelming majority of the women were Moslem; only a negligible fraction were Christian. In addition, only around seven percent of the women in both groups worked in the modern sector.

Traditional Methods

Local traditions and folklore influence the choice of contraceptive methods. Despite the acknowledged superiority of modern methods, traditional methods survive. In fact, folk methods are often used interchangeably or in tandem with modern ones. Bamako women who visit their mothers in the villages usually return to the capital with traditional contraceptives.

One of the most widely used traditional contraceptives in Bamako is the *taffo*, a cotton belt with knots that is said to owe its magical virtues to the incantations of a marabout (a dervish with supernatural powers). It is tied around the waist of a young girl wishing to avoid pregnancy or of a newly delivered woman who wants to prevent another birth. The *bakan*, consisting of amulets and charms, is also well-known. At the Bamako market these traditional methods sell for U.S. $1–4. Most women who were interviewed had heard of these methods but were skeptical about their efficacy. Four respondents told us they became pregnant while using a belt. The dominant sentiment was more likely to be a suspicion that the seller of the *taffo* was a quack, than a rejection of the principle of traditional contraception:

> The *taffo*, yes I know that, but here they are not good. If I go to the village and my mother ties it, then it is good.—*age 23, three births*

The interest in traditional methods suggests that there is a demand for "natural" methods of spacing births, rather than modern methods, which are perceived as foreign to the culture and dangerous to one's health. We did not expect, however, that rhythm would be widely used in a Moslem community such as Bamako, where it had not been promoted either in the PMI centers or among high school students, as is the case in many Catholic communities throughout Sub-Saharan Africa.* To our surprise, although we did not ask a question on the subject, *le calcul* (counting) was mentioned spontaneously by 11 women in our sample, and five women were currently practicing it. Results from the 1987 Mali DHS have confirmed the relative importance of the rhythm method: A total of 4.5 percent of married women in urban areas were practicing periodic abstinence at the time of the survey and it was the single most popular method. However, fewer than half of users (49 percent) could correctly identify the most fecund days of the menstrual cycle.[15]

Some references to the rhythm method in our survey were clearly based on a nonscientific understanding of the menstrual cycle:

> If you don't avoid pregnancy, you are doing it [seeking pregnancy] on pupose. Myself, after I have my period, I was told to skip 15 days—neither more nor less. By making this computation with the help of God, you have a chance not to become pregnant.... They often say "it comes from God, it comes from God," but if you count, you can escape. Adults and informed persons explained that to me, and this when I was still a young girl. In everything, one must pay attention.—*age 38, nine births*

Two other women also had inaccurate interpretations of the cycle, claiming that the fecund days were the three following menstruation, "when the body is cleanest and the uterus is open." Other women in our sample seemed to have had access to accurate information:

> I do *le calcul*. Now I am bleeding. When it is over I will count six days, during those I may go with my husband and my mind is at rest; after those six days I will tell my husband to wait for 13 days. When those are over, and until my "washing" comes, I know that there can be no belly and this until I have my period again.—*age 28, four births*

The women who knew about the rhythm method, especially those who practiced it correctly, were generally more educated; only two of these women had had no schooling and their husbands (a schoolteacher and a veterinarian, respectively) helped them to manage *le calcul*. The reasons most often given for adopting periodic abstinence rather than the widely available modern methods were the lack of side effects, pain, or danger to the health, followed by a desire to avoid losing time in visits to the PMI centers to get contraceptive supplies. Additional advantages were that the method was safe, private and in balance with the women's natural cycle.

As Table 2 shows, Bamako women observe relatively short periods of postpartum abstinence, lasting a median of three months. According to the work of early anthropologists, intercourse taboos following the birth of a child were longer in the past than they are now. For example, Abbé Joseph Henry reported in 1910 that postpartum abstinence lasted upward of three years among the

---

*Data from a survey we conducted in 1984 in Bobo-Dioulasso, Burkina Faso's second largest city, indicate that *le calcul* (counting) received more attention than the other family planning methods that had been integrated into the PMI program. *Le calcul* was taught in Catholic secondary schools and had been adopted by some midwives, nurses and physicians who promoted it among their clients.

Bambara people in Mali, observing that "most women gave birth only every four years."[16]

Sexual abstinence is often observed for longer than the norm, particularly among older women and co-wives. Various beliefs about the effect of intercourse on breast milk also persist—for example, that sex will pollute the milk or make it warm, and that the child is thus likely to become sick.[17] Most young women shared this traditional belief but believed that washing themselves after intercourse would resolve the problem:

> I am now giving the breast and . . . if I go with my husband . . . when it is finished, I wash my breast with water from the kettle; it removes the fat. —*age 26, four births*

The "forty days" taboo of Koranic law, after which time the father of the child has the right to resume sexual relations, is a common rule in Mali. Yet intercourse is said to be sporadic during the first months after delivery, when the new mother is confined with her baby and feeds it on demand. She is supposed to rest, gain strength and prepare herself to assume her multiple roles again. Many women also mentioned refusing the husband to avoid becoming pregnant again too soon:

> When I have a baby at the breast, my only method is *le refus* (refusal). I lock my door. He gets nervous, he is upset, then he leaves, but the next morning we have a fight.—*age 43, 14 births*

Refusing the husband is common and the women are given the right to do so. It was the main method of spacing births or avoiding another pregnancy for eight women in our sample; for four of the older women it was the only way they could stop having children. Many women also named sickness or tiredness as another resource, which they said usually worked if not used too often. A 40-year-old mother of nine said that the only contraceptive she knew was to "refuse the husband," and she added that she had done this so many times that she had been discussed in the family council. Most young women, however, felt that it was wrong to refuse one's husband and that intercourse was essential to married life:

> I gave myself to him; consequently, everything he wants is my desire.—*age 19, one birth*

Another said:

> Following the laws of God you cannot refuse the husband's entreaties even if it does not please you at all.—*age 25, three births*

The women we interviewed agreed that it was a difficult decision but that the well-being of the baby was more important than the husband's pleasure. It was much easier to refuse the husband if one had a co-wife or, better, two or three co-wives. As one respondent emphasized, " . . . if there is no other one, when the husband says so, it is a settled matter."

Table 2. Selected childbearing measures among women in Bamako, by survey sample

Measure	Full sample	Interview sample
Median age of mothers at last birth	25	26
Median age of fathers at last birth	36	38
Mean age of mother at first birth	18	18
Mean parity	4	5
Median months of breastfeeding	21	22
Median months of amenorrhea	12	12
Median months of abstinence	3	2

Age was also an important indicator of sexual activity for both women and men. As one 23-year-old with two births said, "It is much easier to space your births if you have an old husband." According to data from both the full and interview samples, the average age difference between husbands and wives in Bamako is about 12 years, and the average woman has her first birth at age 18 (Table 2).

Those couples who are more educated and modern may behave differently: Women working in the modern sector are usually more independent and inclined to make decisions on their own and to refuse their husband when they feel it is not the proper time. (They also ask their husband to have intercourse when desired.) Thus, traditional contraception has evidently not disappeared and, by any account, postpartum abstinence and "refusing the husband" have had an impact on spacing and fertility. The use of traditional contraceptive methods may open the way for the acceptance of more modern, efficient methods.

Knowledge of Modern Methods

The two samples yielded widely different results on the proportions of women who knew about modern methods. In the full EMIS sample, women were interviewed at the maternity clinic shortly after they had delivered; that may be an inappropriate time to discuss means to avoid pregnancy or to investigate whether a mother had tried, without success, to avoid the conception of her newborn. Ten percent of women in the full EMIS sample said they knew about a modern contraceptive and another three percent reported knowing at least one traditional method. Over half of these women (54 percent) had had some secondary education and 21 percent had attended primary school. The percentage of all women who reported having ever used any method was 3.4 percent.

However, knowledge of contraceptives turned out to be widespread among the 78 women who were interviewed in depth two years later (see Table 3, page 88). After they were prompted, only eight women said they did not know of any method. We believe that knowledge had spread somewhat since the EMIS baseline survey and that it continues to spread in Bamako. However, we also believe that the friendly atmosphere of the interviews encouraged openness from the women on a subject still perceived as foreign.

Our method was to make sure that the respondent fully understood the question. We first asked, "Do you know of something to postpone a pregnancy for a while?" If the woman said yes, we asked her, "What do you know?" If she answered negatively, we tried a second question such as, "Haven't you ever heard of something that can help you to wait for a while before another pregnancy?" If the woman said yes, we asked which methods she knew about and whether she had ever used any or was using one now. If she said no, we congratulated her on being able to space her births so well and went on to discuss safer ways of achieving it, such as using contraceptives.

In response to our question, one woman said:

> No, I do not know any method because the methods I know, I do not like them.—*age 40, 11 births*

Knowledge in this sense may be linked to the belief that the method will work for the respondent.

The results of the Mali DHS indicate that 74 percent of married women in Bamako knew of at least one modern contraceptive method.[18] This proportion is lower than that found in our interviews in 1984–1985 where 70 out of 78 women (90 percent) said they had heard of at least one modern method. Furthermore, most of these were able to cite all the modern contraceptives that were available in Bamako (the pill, injectables and the IUD). Interestingly, over half of the women who said they knew of a method did so only after some probing (see Table 3). The following quote illustrates how persistent probing by an interviewer may eventually elicit a response:

> Q. Have you heard of something that prevents a woman from becoming pregnant for a while?
> A. No.
> Q. Haven't you ever met someone who talked to you about that?
> A. No.

Table 3. Number of women who knew about and used modern contraceptive methods and who used traditional methods, by age-group

Age	N	Modern methods*				Use of traditional methods†	
		Knowledge		Use			
		Spontaneous	Prompted	Past	Current	Past	Current
15–19	5	1	4	1	0	4	0
20–24	19	6	11	0	0	7	2
25–29	18	9	7	2	2	8	0
30–34	12	6	5	2	1	5	0
35–39	12	5	7	3	2	5	6
40–44	12	7	2	1	1	2	0
Total	**78**	**34**	**36**	**9**	**6**	**31**	**8**

*Includes pills, injectables and the IUD.
†Includes belts, charms, "refusing the husband" and rhythm.

> Q. You never heard people talking about this on the radio?
>
> A. Eh! . . . I have too much work to listen to the radio. . . .
>
> Q. All right, you told me that you were not pleased to discover this pregnancy, don't you know anything to space the bellies?
>
> A. No.
>
> Q. If somebody would give you something to space your pregnancies, would you be pleased?
>
> A. Yes, . . . I would be pleased.
>
> Q. You just said that you don't know where the Missira PMI clinic is located. Well, you should know it is not far from here. They organize talks there; many women told us that they have been there and they get pills there. Haven't you heard about that?
>
> A. Yes, I have heard about that.
>
> Q. Who told you about it?
>
> A. We, the women, we talk a lot. To tell the truth, I have heard about these pills. . . . *—age 24, three births*

Most women appeared to be more willing to admit having heard of *le planning* than of a specific contraceptive method. They seemed to identify the word when it was cited by the interviewer as a cue. When asked about contraception one young woman answered, "The method that I know is *le planning*." It has become a generic word for a concept that has no simple equivalent in the Bambara language. A majority of women were aware of the existence of *le planning* and were happy to discuss it with us or to learn more about it. Most of them said they were even considering practicing it one day, perhaps after they had had a few more children. The near-complete acceptance of family planning as a option for the future was striking.

It is not surprising that so many women in our survey knew about modern methods of contraception; the topic of birthspacing is widely discussed. In a culture where the traditional length of postpartum abstinence has been greatly reduced, there should be a market for effective and acceptable methods of spacing births. We asked the women who had ever heard of contraception how they first found out about it. Most (34 women) said they learned about family planning from friends and family, usually from an "older sister" (who may have been a real sister, a sister-in-law or a co-wife). Twenty-five women mentioned health services or personnel (PMI units, midwives and nurses) as their source of information. The radio was also a major source: Many knew about the daily morning radio broadcast on the subject of family and health, and the weekly evening program called "The Facts of Life," aired in both Bambara and French. (There is usually at least one radio in the large compounds of Bamako.) As one young woman pointed out:

> How could I not know about *le planning?* Nowadays, they talk about it every day on the radio; and we, the women, we chat about it a lot on our way to the market and at the market.*—age unknown, three births*

Women often walk together to the market in the early morning, and back home again in the afternoon. They spend part of the day engaging in petty trade, taking care of their young children, and chatting about the problems of pregnant schoolgirls, family planning, the price of millet and the health of their children.

Use of Modern Methods

Results from the Mali DHS indicate that six percent of married women in Bamako were using a modern method, and 10 percent a traditional method, at the time of the survey.[19] (The proportions for Mali as a whole were one percent and three percent, respectively.) The DHS report suggests that contraceptive use in Bamako may be significant enough to have influenced the level of fertility. Even if this conclusion is warranted, however, the demand for contraceptives remains low: Among the 70 women in our survey who had some knowledge of contraception (many of them citing four or five modern methods), only six women were using a modern method at the time of the interview, nine women had used a modern method at some time in the past, and after probing, 55 women admitted that they had never used a modern method.

Thus, despite the substantial majority in our sample who were aware of the existence of family planning methods, method use remained very limited. This situation warrants explanation. Only rarely did we encounter a fundamental objection to the principle of fertility regulation on religious grounds. Any religious opposition to contraception based on an ancestors' cult or fear of sterility, as proposed for Africa by John and Pat Caldwell,[20] did not seem to be present in this population. Rather, the very frequent invocation of God appeared to refer to the acceptance of a preordained fate:

> Q. Can you tell why you don't want to go to *le planning?*
>
> A. Why? Isn't this the business of God? If God gives you the child, you bear it, and if He does not give you another one, that's it [His work] too. Why then go for *le planning?—unknown age, seven births*

Other responses, however, were more defiant:

> I am not afraid of the words of God or those of the people, I want to go, and I will go to the PMI center to have contraception. I want to stop having children for good.*—age 34, 10 births*

Although a few women believed it would be sinful to avoid a birth or that their husband would be opposed on religious grounds, these women were in the minority:

> I would like to go to *le planning* . . . but if I tell my husband, he will never accept it.*—age 22, three births*

However, the husband's opposition was more often seen as an obstacle to actually visiting the family planning clinic—where marital approval was required*—than as a justification for nonuse among the women themselves. Moreover, several women were convinced that husbands are always suspicious of their wives:

---

*Women can now receive family planning services in Bamako without their husband's authorization.

> I tell you, I do not want to go to *le planning;* I got married only to have children. The men of today, if you don't make children with them, they say that their wife is behaving like a bitch and that is why she is not making children for him.—*age 27, three births*

At least in one instance the religious objection came from the wife herself. One respondent's husband later told the interviewer that he had tried to convince his wife to use family planning:

> Husband: I asked her to go [to *le planning*], and she started being difficult. There is the issue of religion, this is anchored in her mind.
>
> Interviewer: Yes, the issue of religion, this can be an obstacle.
>
> Husband: She says that one should not stop childbearing without the consent of God; this is the problem that we are unable to resolve.—*age 50, 10 children*

As in the results of our research in 1984 in Bobo-Dioulasso,[21] we found a profound lack of communication between spouses in Bamako, a national capital with a higher number of educated couples than elsewhere in Mali. Interestingly, women in Bamako were more likely to have discussed birth control with a female friend, a sister-in-law or a co-wife than with their husband:

> Q. And your husband, does he want many children?
>
> A. In fact, he likes many children.
>
> Q. Do you ask him about a number?
>
> A. He is not the kind of man who talks.
>
> Q. Then, you do not talk with him?
>
> A. Myself, I have never talked about a number of children since I am married . . . he and I we never had such a conversation.—*age 38, nine births*

Although this woman had heard about family planning, she never mentioned it to her husband. She had no idea whether he even knew about contraception, felt she did not dare ask him, and was convinced that he would never allow her to use it even if she did ask him. This example demonstrates the extent of the current lack of communication between spouses as well as the wife's inability to decide about childbearing. (When asked how many children they would like their daughters to have, the women we interviewed disclaimed any involvement in that decision, which they felt should be settled by the daughter and her husband.)

Paradoxically, this vacuum in decision-making coexists with a strong societal norm in favor of spacing births properly. Women who do not space their children adequately are looked upon as bad mothers and are said to be "women who like men too much, so much that they cannot refuse them." Malian mothers are highly conscious of the importance of birthspacing for their own health and their baby's. In fact, birthspacing was the main reason for the expressed interest in family planning:

> *Le planning*, yes, I like *le planning*, I like that very much. When I will have another child, I will do *le planning* until he walks and then, I will stop.—*age 21, three births*

All 78 women were asked about their preferred interval between births. The most commonly mentioned birth interval was 24 months (28 women), followed by 36–48 months (26 mainly older women), 24–36 months (19 women), 48–60 months (four older women) and 18 months (one woman).

A number of women said that they were not interested in contraception since they had had no problem spacing their births naturally. (As mentioned earlier, the official objective of the family planning centers in Bamako is birthspacing.) As Table 2 (page 87) shows, half the women in Bamako breastfed their child for more than 21 months, and the median length of amenorrhea was 12 months among both the full EMIS sample and our interview sample. However, many older and higher parity women reported postpartum amenorrhea lasting up to two years. In contrast, other women believed that their period of postpartum amenorrhea was naturally brief and that they would be at risk of another pregnancy soon after giving birth:

> As soon as the blood of delivery is over, I see my period, women like me are said to be *seremuso*.*—*age 22, four births*

Among women who believed their amenorrheic period was short, the need for spacing was often cited to legitimize the practice of contraception.

The concept of stopping childbearing all together was rarely specified among the women we interviewed. Older women often welcomed the natural end of their childbearing years and seemed to be eager to hasten it. They hoped that the intervals between births would be so long that they would have no more children—or perhaps just one more in a few years. When a desire to end childbearing was clearly expressed, the reasons were mostly related to the woman's health:

> At the hospital, they told me that my uterus was old, but the doctor said that I could still have more pregnancies. I told my husband about it and asked him if I could stop. He did not answer me . . . he is a Wahhabi [member of a strict religious sect].—*age 42, 14 births*

Among the other reasons cited for wanting to stop childbearing were physical exhaustion and old age:

> I refuse the husband, I do not want another child, I am tired, I am old enough to stop, I am beyond the age to have children, I do not want one more pregnancy. I refuse the husband.—*age 43, 11 births*

In one or two cases a conflict with the husband was the motivation for wanting no more children. Economic reasons (hard times, the high cost of living and the burden of large families) were cited as the motivation for spacing as well as stopping births, with no clear distinction between the two objectives.

If the concept of birthspacing is widely accepted, how can the low attendance at family planning clinics be explained? We observed widespread dissatisfaction among former users; discontinuation was widespread among the few women who did use a method; and others said they simply could not remember to take their pills regularly. Furthermore, we found extensive fear of the side effects of modern contraceptives among never-users:

> I went to the PMI center to get pills, I took them for two days but I got dizzy both evenings. I went back to the center to tell them about my dizziness. They checked me and said "Madame, the pills are really not good for you, don't take them anymore." Then, they told me to come back later on to have a *manani* [IUD] put in my body. First, I agreed, but later I got scared; nowadays people talk a lot and many say that the *manani* gets lost in your body and sometimes cuts your intestines. There were too many rumors. . . I left, I went home and did not go back to the PMI center. Then, I got pregnant with this child.—*age 40, 11 births*

Many women said that it was exhausting to be pregnant, that it hurt to deliver a baby and that it took all their strength. Yet the rumored or real inconveniences of modern contraceptives— that they cause nausea, provoke excessive bleeding or may render women sterile in the future—seemed to be enough to deter their use, perhaps because motivation to control family size is not very strong.

**Seremuso* comes from the Bambara *muso* meaning woman, but the etymology of *sere* is unclear; it may have come from the French *serré*, meaning tight as in tightly or closely spaced births. The word *sere* is also used for the disease suffered by children who have been born too closely together, the local equivalent of kwashiorkor (severe malnutrition). On the other hand, women who can easily space their children are called *sigimuso*, with sigi meaning sitting or waiting (as in for the next birth).

Discussion

Seventy-eight women selected from two Bamako neighborhoods are obviously not a fully representative sample of the city's population. They can, however, give us insight into women's opinions and beliefs and thus be more instructive than results from larger and more representative but more general surveys of contraceptive knowledge and practice. Although the women often contradicted themselves—jumping from one subject to another and being imprecise about numbers and dates—they contributed a wealth of unsolicited cultural details. The full EMIS survey and the smaller interview survey were meant to complement each other, with the full survey yielding quantitative data and the in-depth interviews yielding cultural and personal explanations of those data.

Our conversations with Bamako women revealed a great deal about their reproductive behavior and the reproductive decisions they make or, rather, do not make. What light does this evidence throw on some of the current controversies surrounding fertility and the resistance to the introduction of family limitation in Africa? First, Bamako may provide an example of a situation where the availability of contraceptive supplies by itself will not generate a large demand. As far as we could establish, the family planning services were efficient and responsive to the needs of women; our respondents did not complain that clinics were too far away or had long lines or unfriendly staff. While the required permission of the husband was a common complaint, that obstacle had been removed by the middle of our study.

A reference to the European fertility decline might further clarify the issue of supply and demand. European fertility declined early in the 19th century in France and in the late 19th century in other European countries—almost a full century before modern contraception became available. This decline, achieved through abstinence and withdrawal, took place because of strong incentives toward smaller families.[22] In contrast, modern contraceptives are available in Bamako today, and yet their use remains limited because motivation is so limited.

Our interviews revealed both widespread knowledge of contraceptives and family planning services and restricted use of them. Is there a discrepancy between contraceptive knowledge and use, a "KAP-gap," as proposed by Charles Westoff?[23] It seems to us that demand for contraception was lukewarm at best. There seemed to be few women who, in retrospect, were thoroughly dissatisfied with the number of their offspring. No doubt a large number of children (and the prospect of more) was a source of inconvenience and a cause for complaint (which our survey tapped into) but the drawbacks of high fertility were not felt intensively. Although children represented an economic burden, especially in times of hardship, they were also a potential source of economic security. When asked about the advantages of motherhood, most women answered that they expected their children to look after them in old age. For the time being, they felt that children were the very reason for marriage; having children is thus the wife's side of the deal they strike with their husbands. This conclusion confirms the work of several researchers in other Sub-Saharan countries.[24]

Only when she becomes a mother is the Malian woman recognized by her society—"through marriage she will find the contentment of her material and sexual needs, some emancipation, the possibility of becoming an adult, the confirmation of her status as a woman and of course, the promise of many children."[25] Thus, men and women still tend to view high fertility as the goal of marriage and as a measure of its success.

We agree with Odile Frank and Geoffrey McNicoll in their assessment that there are some countries in which women still gain access to economic security through their children, although it is more doubtful that the husbands themselves derive the nearly cost-free economic or social benefits that would lead them to want many children.[26] The area of "decision-making" on the number of children is a no-man's-land that is generally defined by culture. Little communication takes place between spouses, and it may well be that each spouse believes the other wants more children but that neither bothers to verify that assumption. According to the 1987 Mali DHS, among the currently married men surveyed in Bamako who knew about contraception, 44 percent said they had discussed it with their wife at least once in the year preceding the survey.[27] While interest in the topic is growing in Mali, that interest probably lies more in birthspacing than in family limitation. By any account, few real decisions are ever made in this area.

Most Malian women do not challenge their place in society or their dependence on a husband, nor do they consider that it might be within their power to change the system or to leave it. Their reproductive life appears to be largely regulated by the fatalistic belief that whatever happens is unavoidable. The interviewees invoked Allah as an incarnation of fate, not as a power imposing particularly large or small families but as an unpredictable force beyond human control. Although the drawbacks of a large family were occasionally acknowledged, they were not sufficiently negative to modify accepted behavior.

Birthspacing continues to be important culturally, but contraceptive use for limiting births is unacceptable unless a woman is in bad health or of exceptionally high parity. Most respondents want to space their children by three or four years, but not many succeed in doing so. Most women said that they do not want many children; five or six were the numbers most often quoted, although many of the older women gave a nonnumerical response ("up to God"). Although high-parity women stated a strong desire to "stop their births," many appeared to do little toward that end; instead, they hoped that God would help them.

John and Pat Caldwell have recently written two articles on the role of religion in regulating fertility behavior in Sub-Saharan Africa.[28] However, the cult of ancestors, which is so important in the Caldwells' accounts as a motivator of fertility, does not appear in our interviews. Furthermore, we do not see how the cult of the ancestors fits among the reasons given by women for not using contraceptives in the DHS survey for Mali, as only 6.5 percent of urban women who cited a reason invoked religion.[29]

There were indications of change in the demand for limiting births. Some women in our interviews had become skeptical of men's motives and viewed the large family as a burden:

> The men of today, they like many children because children are wealth; work, fatigue and exhaustion is for the woman.—*age 21, three births*

Female roles are currently being reshaped and educated women are increasingly speaking out: Many of the more educated women in our sample no longer wanted to share a husband with a co-wife; they wanted to have jobs in the modern sector, to use modern contraceptives and to have fewer children. These women no longer believe that a large family gives them status or that children come from God alone. They assume that the conditions of life are changing, and that four educated children are enough. However, even though improvements in education and in access to employment in the cash economy could hasten the social and economic development of Malian women, these improvements remain the privilege of a tiny minority.

References

1. A. Laplante, F. Samaké and G. F. Brown, *Family Planning in Mali*, International Development Research Center, Ottawa, Canada, 1975.

(Continued on page 99)

Costs and Benefits of Implementing Family Planning Services at a Private Mining Company in Peru

A cost-benefit analysis of family planning services offered by a mining company in Peru projected that the program would achieve a positive cash flow in its fourth year of operation, and would pay back its initial investment in the sixth year.

By Karen G. Foreit, Delia Haustein, Max Winterhalter and Ernesto La Mata

Summary

The wives of miners at a private mining company in Peru were found to have high fertility, low levels of contraceptive use and widespread interest in limiting childbearing. An analysis of potential costs and benefits of providing family planning services projected that the savings resulting from births averted would more than compensate for the costs of providing those services. Consequently, the company added maternal and child health and family planning services to its medical center, which had provided predominantly curative services. Within 18 months of program implementation, contraceptive prevalence among miners' wives had risen by 41 percent, and the percentage of women relying on modern methods had increased from 16 percent to 40 percent. The results of the program have convinced two other mines in the area to offer similar services.

Introduction

As public resources for primary health care services stagnate or decrease, developing countries are being forced to seek alternative sources for financing health care and family planning. A potentially significant but generally underutilized resource is the private commercial sector, especially those companies that already provide health and social benefits for employees and their dependents.[1]

Employer-subsidized family planning is not a new idea. In India, such programs date back to the 1950s, and the International Labour Office has been providing worldwide assistance to employer-based family planning initiatives since 1970.[2] Retrospective cost-benefit analyses have demonstrated the financial returns possible with large-scale family planning programs: The Mexican social security system showed a benefits-to-cost ratio of 9:1 for family planning services provided during the period 1972–1985 (using the present discounted value methodology to account for the time value of money).[3] However, the retrospective methodology is of limited value to employers considering whether to begin supporting family planning.

The Technical Information on Population for the Private Sector (TIPPS) Project, funded by the U.S. Agency for International Development, was designed to assist private, for-profit companies in deciding whether to invest in family planning services by analyzing the costs and benefits of such services for the company.[4] This article presents the results of a prospective cost-benefit analysis that was performed at a private mining company in Peru to help management determine whether to add integrated maternal and child health and family planning services to their existing medical plan. It also reports on the costs and the impact of the first two years of providing family planning services in the workplace.

Country Setting

Since the restoration of civilian rule in 1980, the policy environment in Peru has become increasingly favorable toward family planning. In 1980, the government created the National Population Council to formulate and implement population policy guidelines. In 1985, the National Population Law, which guarantees couples the right to determine the number and spacing of their children, and explicitly recognizes all voluntary contraceptive methods except sterilization, was passed. In 1987, a Presidential Population Commission was formed; shortly thereafter, the Commission formed the National Population Program 1987–1990, which called for a reduction in the total fertility rate (TFR) from 4.3 lifetime births per woman in 1985 to 2.5 lifetime births per woman in 2000. The National Family Planning Program was created within the Ministry of Health and was made responsible for coordinating public and private sector efforts.

Temporary contraceptive methods are available from public and private outlets, including the Ministry of Health and Social Security, voluntary organizations and commercial providers such as pharmacies and physicians. Voluntary sterilization is available only to those women at high reproductive health risk. The 1986 Demographic and Health Survey reported that 46 percent of women in union who were aged 15–44 were practicing contraception, with about half of them using traditional methods.[5] Pronounced regional differences were found, with contraceptive prevalence in metropolitan Lima estimated at 63 percent, and in the Sierra (the interior highlands) at 31 percent.

The mining industry in Peru employs approximately five percent of the country's formal labor force and produces nearly 50 percent of the country's traditional exports. Most mines provide curative health care and other benefits to employees and dependents. They seldom offer preventive health services or family planning, and are usually located in isolated rural areas in the Sierra, far from other health outlets that might provide such services.

Milpo mine is located northeast of the capital city of Lima. The mining community's resident population includes approximately 800 workers and 4,000 dependents, plus others who moved into the area to escape terrorists. Government regulations and collective bargaining contracts require the company to pay for a substantial number of fam-

---

Karen G. Foreit is senior research analyst with The Futures Group, Delia Haustein is senior associate with the Asociación Benéfica Prisma, Max Winterhalter is family planning coordinator with the Instituto Marcelino and Ernesto La Mata is staff physician and maternal and child health program director with Milpo Mining Company.

The research on which this article is based was supported by a contract between John Short & Associates and the U.S. Agency for International Development, under the auspices of the Technical Information on Population for the Private Sector Project. This paper is dedicated to the memory of Bruno Lesevic. The authors wish to thank the Milpo Mining Company for offering unlimited access to records and facilities. They also acknowledge the participation of Carlos Aramburú, Miriam Rojo, Salvador Baldizón and Elizabeth Aliaga.

Table 1. Baseline fertility and ideal family size data among wives of miners, by woman's age, Peru, 1985

Type of data	Woman's age					
	20–24	25–29	30–34	35–39	40–44	45–49
Age-specific fertility rate	.360	.338	.305	.193	.133	.013
Mean no. of children ever born	2.6-	4.4	5.2	7.5	8.5	9.4
Mean no. of surviving children	2.0	3.8	4.5	6.0	6.4	6.9
Mean ideal family size	2.5	2.5	2.6	2.7	2.8	3.7

ily-related benefits, including salary supplements for wives and dependent children and free housing for workers and their families. Electricity, water and sewage services are provided free of charge and without limit; each family also receives a monthly ration of kerosene for cooking.

The company has invested approximately U.S. $10 million in housing and social welfare and medical services (with housing representing 83 percent of the total). It maintains a hospital and outpatient clinic for the workers' families. (The workers themselves are covered by national social security, and their medical services are provided in social security outlets.) The employer also maintains a preschool and provides a full primary and secondary education. Students are entitled to one free uniform per year, plus pens and notebooks; the school also furnishes a daily snack to all students. All these medical and educational expenses are assumed directly by the company.

Nevertheless, company officials were aware that workers' families had high levels of morbidity and required continual medical attention. In addition, high birthrates were straining available housing and were increasing company outlays for domestically consumed electricity and water.

The TIPPS Project was interested in the mining sector because of its national strategic importance and its potential to realize significant savings from family planning services. Project officials approached the directors of the mining company to conduct a prospective cost-benefit study of family planning and child survival services.

Methodology

As part of the project, baseline fertility among miners' wives and the costs associated with maternity were assessed in 1986. Data sources included company financial records, family registers and a household survey that was conducted during July 1986 and consisted of a random sample of 220 miners' wives aged 15–49. Mothers were asked about their recent fertility, their knowledge and use of contraceptives and their interest in receiving family planning services from the company clinic.

Potential costs and benefits of family planning service provision were projected in a sequential fashion, beginning with an analysis of base-period fertility and contraceptive use. Using women's expressed reproductive intentions and interest in accepting family planning, age-specific targets were established for contraceptive prevalence and method mix. Births averted by the improvement in contraceptive use were calculated along the principles of the births averted[6] and proximate determinants of fertility[7] techniques.

Using the TIPPS cost-benefit model,[8] we entered the number of women in union, the number of births and of contraceptive users in the baseline year and the target level of contraceptive prevalence and the target method-mix. The model provides default values for method-specific continuation rates and use-effectiveness, as well as for outpatient visits generated and commodities consumed by different kinds of family planning clients.

To complete the analysis, we used information from the company's financial records to enter annual fixed costs and variable (unit) costs, plus costs forgone per birth averted (program benefits). We obtained unit costs by prorating the costs of housing, water, electricity, medical care, schooling and other services by child's age. Costs forgone include the value of medical care, housing, schooling and other benefits provided to dependents. These vary by child's age: For example, maternity costs averted are entered in the year that the birth was averted, child health costs in the following 18 years and education costs beginning in the sixth year after the averted birth. Thus, total savings in any given year include those arising from births averted both in that year and in previous years.

Like benefits, program costs are entered on a yearly basis. Capital and start-up expenditures (such as training) are typically entered during the first year. Recurring expenditures, both fixed (e.g., salaries) and variable (e.g., supplies), are entered annually. Since yearly expenditures are calculated, the program manager can study both annual cash flows and the time needed to recoup the initial investment. If capital investments are a major cost component, the projection period can be lengthened to approximate the useful life expectancy of the assets.[*] In addition, the model computes a benefits-to-cost ratio with present discounted values of total program expenditures and savings, and the internal rate of return on the family planning investment.

Because the study demonstrated the need for and the financial benefits of providing family planning at the mine site, management added an integrated package of maternal and child health and family planning services to existing company-provided medical care in 1988; an evaluation of these integrated services was conducted in 1989. The evaluation was based on routine service statistics, a camp-wide census conducted by the program medical director in July 1989, and a follow-up clinical study of 305 outpatient visits conducted in November 1989.

Baseline Conditions

Birthrates for 1985 were calculated from family registers for the entire population. As shown in Table 1, age-specific fertility rates were high and did not decline until age 35. Women aged 45–49 had had more than nine births, with about seven of these children surviving. The TFR was 6.7 lifetime births per woman (not shown).

Contraceptive prevalence was consistent with observed fertility: Only 34 percent of the wives surveyed reported having used a family planning method in the past 30 days. Traditional methods, primarily rhythm, were used by 18 percent of the women in the sample, while 16 percent reported using a modern method (the pill, injectables, the IUD or sterilization). These rates were similar to those reported for the region in the 1986 Peru Demographic and Health Survey,[9] with the exception that the miners' wives reported greater reliance on hormonal methods and virtually no use of barrier methods.

Declared ideal family size among women under 45 ranged from 2.5 to 2.8 children. However, given the low use of effective contraceptives, achieved fertility quickly surpassed ideal family size. As seen in Table 1, by the time the average miner's wife finishes her reproductive life, she will have had 3–4 more children than she considered ideal.

Most of the women surveyed (86 percent) wanted no more children, and half of the remainder wished to delay their next birth by at least two years. Nevertheless, 62 percent of the former group and 81 percent of the latter were using no method of family planning. Over two-thirds of the women interviewed indicated that they would be interested in receiving contraceptives from the company clinic. Although most of the potential users wished to terminate childbearing, women currently using family planning were somewhat more interested than women who were not currently using (79 percent vs. 67 percent).

---

[*] It would also be possible to use accounting costs, which would include capital utilization of the program rather than the current year's expenditures on capital. However, this procedure would not permit a cash-flow analysis, and is ultimately obviated by including the entire operating period and benefit horizon in the benefits-to-costs ratio and the internal rate of return.

Table 2. Projected annual and cumulative costs and benefits of family planning services provided to miners' wives (nondiscounted and expressed in constant U.S. dollars), and difference between benefit and cost, for first five years of program operation and for year 23*

Year	Annual			Cumulative		
	Costs	Benefits	Difference	Costs	Benefits	Difference
1	$11,562	$0	–$11,562	$11,562	$0	–$11,562
2	7,197	740	–6,457	18,759	740	–18,019
3	7,048	4,579	–2,469	25,807	5,319	–20,488
4	8,724	11,232	2,508	34,531	16,551	–17,980
5	7,623	20,359	12,376	42,154	36,910	–5,244
23	na	na	na	42,154	797,362	755,208

*Year 23 is presented to show the cumulative results of outlays averted over the 18 years following the births averted in years 1–5.

Program Projections

Given the existing unmet need for family planning and the wives' declared interest in receiving family planning from the company clinic, we estimated that within five years, a family planning program could raise contraceptive prevalence from 34 percent to 75 percent and increase the effectiveness of the method-mix, both by reducing the use of traditional methods (from 18 percent to six percent) and by increasing reliance on hormonal methods (from 12 percent to 39 percent) and on the IUD (from one percent to 25 percent). Achieving these targets would reduce the number of expected births by 80 percent in the sixth year after program launch, assuming that all other factors (lactation and induced abortion) remained constant.

The results of the baseline survey had also demonstrated a pressing need for child survival services such as vaccination, growth monitoring and appropriate treatment of diarrheal and acute respiratory infection. Therefore, we recommended that family planning services be added in the context of an integrated maternal and child health and family planning module. The marginal costs of adding this module to the existing medical service were calculated and prorated between the family planning and child survival components.[10]

The existing clinic facility was large enough to house the new services, and equipment needs were minimal. Thus, program costs consisted basically of salaries and benefits for two additional staff members, training and supervision, and contraceptive commodities and supplies. Since the population lives at the mine site, there were no transportation or promotion costs.

Table 2 presents the results of the cost-benefit projection for the first five years of program operation. The cost of family planning services was estimated at approximately U.S. $11,500 in the first year and at between U.S. $7,000–$8,700 in each of the next four years. Births are considered to be averted in the second year following family planning acceptance, and births continue to be averted for as long as the women used their methods. Benefits from births averted begin in the year after the birth was averted and continue to accrue for the next 18 years. The total value of savings, in terms of salary supplements, medical care, welfare, education and housing, was estimated at U.S. $4,300 (nondiscounted value) per birth averted.

For simplicity, Table 2 shows annual costs and benefits only for the first five years, the years in which the costs were incurred. The family planning program component was projected to achieve a positive cash flow in its fourth year of operation, as indicated by the positive value of the difference between annual costs and benefits (line 4, column 3). It would pay back its initial investment in the sixth year (not shown). The last line of the table corresponds to year 23 of the projection (18 years following the end of the five- year period of study), and summarizes the value of benefits accruing after the fifth year. The benefits-to-costs ratio and the internal rate of return are calculated on these total costs and benefits. Assuming an annual discount rate of 10 percent for dollar investments, the first five years of program operations would net a benefits-to-cost ratio of 7.4:1 (present discounted value), and an internal rate of return of more than 50 percent.

Implementation and Impact

On the basis of the projections, the company's board of directors decided to implement integrated maternal and child health and family planning services at the company clinic. An additional physician and nurse were hired, and two private institutions were contracted for training and on-site supervision.

Before starting the new services, the training and supervision consultants conducted an on-site needs assessment and met with management, human services staff and labor union leaders to explain the services. To increase the program's acceptability, a staggered implementation strategy was developed. The program began with well-baby care and maternal health services in May 1988,* in coordination with a national vaccination campaign conducted by the Ministry of Health. The family planning component began two months later, starting with the promotion of Pap smears to help prevent uterine cancer.

Program planning and implementation were the responsibility of the program physician and nurse.† All medical staff collaborated, and most of the family planning activities (especially IUD insertions) were carried out by clinic midwives. Promotional activities focused on interpersonal communication, including house-to-house visits by nurses to vaccinate, weigh and measure children, as well as group talks and individual orientation. Mothers seeking care for their children were also routinely counseled on family planning. Given the age of the population and the high proportion who wished to terminate childbearing, use of the IUD was encouraged. Few voluntary sterilizations were performed, due in part to Ministry of Health restrictions and in part to management's reluctance to perform voluntary surgery in the company hospital for fear of complications and potential problems with the labor union.

Early cancer detection received high priority. During 1989, 46 percent of miners' wives of reproductive age received a Pap smear; at baseline, only 11 percent had ever had one. Contraceptive services proved to be extremely popular, especially among younger women with some previous family planning experience. During the first 18 months of the program, total contraceptive prevalence among women of reproductive

---

*The program was not fully operating until 1989. The first year was hampered by a series of unexpected and unavoidable events, including local and national labor strikes that closed the mine for 104 days during 1988.

†Community participation might have further enhanced program acceptability. However, management policies limit contact with union and community leaders to strictly contractual issues because of the sensitivity of labor relations in the mining industry, which has experienced strikes and other unrest.

Table 3. Baseline, projected and actual percentages of married women using contraceptives, by method, according to time period

Time	Total	Traditional	Modern		
			All	IUD	Other
Baseline	34	18	16	1	15
Projected					
12-month target	42	18	24	4	20
24-month target	51	17	34	8	26
Actual					
18-month prevalence	48	9	40	31	9

age rose by 41 percent over the baseline levels (Table 3), and use of modern methods more than doubled. These achievements compare very favorably with the targets developed for the family planning program. In 18 months, total contraceptive prevalence had almost reached the level projected for 24 months, and the method-mix that was achieved was much more effective than the target method-mix.

Fertility rates did not decline during the first year of the program. TFRs calculated from the 1989 camp-wide census were virtually identical to those at baseline (6.6 vs. 6.7 lifetime births per married woman). This was expected, however, since a pregnancy lasts nine months, and family planning cannot begin to avert births until at least that long after the acceptance of the method. It appeared likely that fertility declines would begin in the second year, since despite increased coverage for pregnant women, the percentage of all clinic visits among women of reproductive age that were devoted to prenatal care declined from 11 percent at baseline to six percent at the end of 1989.

Associated Costs

The costs of offering the new services were primarily the salaries and benefits paid to the additional personnel and their training and supervision. Milpo contracted for four weeks of theoretical and clinical training in child survival and reproductive health and family planning from two Lima-based private voluntary organizations specializing in these areas. In addition, the mine paid for quarterly supervision by two physicians, one from each training organization, consisting of three-day site visits followed by meetings with management in Lima.

Commodities were purchased by the company—hormonal contraceptives from pharmaceutical laboratories and IUDs from local family planning organizations. Laboratory services (for Pap smears) were purchased from private voluntary organizations at a price higher than cost, but lower than commercial rates. Small amounts of equipment (e.g., uterine elevators) were also purchased.

Program staff divided their time about equally between child health and reproductive health and family planning. Therefore, half of their salaries and benefits were assigned to family planning. Table 4 presents actual expenditures in U.S. dollars compared with the original cost projections. As shown, first-year costs were lower than projected, and second-year costs were higher. Salaries and benefits more than doubled from Year 1 to Year 2 as a result of Peru's hyperinflation, which outstripped the devaluation of the local currency. Training and supervision costs were higher in Year 2 than originally projected because of the company's decision to continue on-site supervision for a second year. Equipment and commodity expenditures were lower than projected.

Discussion

Milpo was among the first prospective cost-benefit studies conducted under the TIPPS Project, and the first service delivery program to be evaluated. Although an unmet need for family planning was clearly demonstrated at baseline, it was not certain that the population would accept modern family planning methods or that the prevalence targets upon which the cost-benefit analysis was predicated could be achieved.

Promotion of family planning encountered little resistance among women or their husbands, despite expectations that machismo and traditional attitudes towards fertility regulation might hamper program progress. Rumors about the negative health consequences of modern contraceptive methods (cancer, birth defects and psychological problems, among others) were prevalent throughout the population. Focus group interviews revealed that IUD users and nonusers of contraceptive methods shared the same health fears. This suggests either that negative attitudes are not a significant barrier to using family planning or that women feared another pregnancy more than they feared using family planning, a finding that has been reported elsewhere in Peru.[11]

Table 4. Projected and actual costs of family planning services, by year and by service component (in U.S. dollars)

Year and item	Projected	Actual
Year 1	**$10,062**	**$5,981**
Salary & benefits	4,500	2,844
Training & supervision	2,500	2,587
Equipment & materials	3,062	550
Year 2	**6,697**	**9,454**
Salary & benefits	4,500	6,674
Training & supervision	250	1,995
Equipment & materials	1,947	785

The significance of the Milpo experience has been recognized by both the public and private sectors. In 1989, Milpo accounted for 11 percent of all IUD insertions in its health region. This is striking in light of Milpo's small size relative to the rest of the region—fewer than 1,000 women out of an estimated 65,000 women of reproductive age. The accomplishment led the regional administrative coordinator for the Child Survival Program to report that "the percentage increase in IUDs [in Pasco department] is due to the collaboration of personnel from the private mining sector with [Ministry of] Health personnel."[12] In addition, the program medical director was asked to join the departmental coordinating committee for the National Family Planning Program.

Milpo has made maternal and child health and family planning services a permanent part of its benefits package, even though it was not required to do so under its union agreement, and has contracted for a second year of quarterly on-site supervision. The company president has actively promoted the concept among the other mines in the area. In November 1989, two other private mines initiated integrated services and contracted for training and supervision of their medical staff. Other mines have indicated interest in beginning similar programs when the economy improves.

The Milpo experience is important for several reasons. It was the first company in the TIPPS Project to decide to provide family planning on the basis of a prospective cost-benefit analysis. Aside from the analysis and the follow-up survey, Milpo received no government or donor subsidies: All program costs have been borne by the company. Moreover, as an industry leader, Milpo convinced two other companies to follow its example without conducting further cost-benefit analyses, which demonstrates the multiplier effect of the original study.

Financial considerations may not be necessary or sufficient to convince a given company to begin to underwrite family planning, but they are critical in sustaining a program over a long term. For example, one literature review found that relatively few of the companies that had received donor subsidies to offer family planning had "graduated" to supporting the programs with their own funds, and that many of these had continued to receive commodity support from government or nongovernmental organizations.[13] A review of the Enterprise Project was more positive, listing 17 subprojects that had begun to sustain family planning after subsidies ended and only two that had not. Employers' contributions had ranged from 12 percent to 164 percent of donor subsidies; the median contribution among the sustainable group had been 49 percent of the donor subsidy, and the mean was 66 percent (standard deviation of 55).[14]

Few employers can afford to sustain economic losses, even for the most socially desirable outcomes. Depending on what benefits these employers provide, not all will be able to underwrite family planning without outside support. If governments and donors are serious about enlisting the private sector in developing countries to provide family planning, they must pay serious attention to the bottom line. Efforts should begin with those employers who already pay substantial maternity-related benefits and therefore have the potential to realize significant savings through family planning. The Milpo experience meets these criteria and demonstrates how even a relatively small work site can have a major regional impact.

References

1. M. Lewis and G. Kenney, "The Private Sector and Family Planning in Developing Countries," Policy, Planning and Research Working Paper, No. 96, World Bank, Washington, D.C., 1988; and D. Logan, M. Friedman and M. Lown, "Mobilizing the Resources of the For-Profit Sector to Support the Expansion of Family Planning Services in the Developing World," Population Technical Assistance Project, Occasional Paper No. 3, Dual and Associates, Inc., Arlington, Va., 1989.

2. W. Rinehart, R. Blackburn and S. H. Moore, "Employment-Based Family Planning Programs," *Population Reports*, Series J, No. 34, 1987.

3. D. Nortman, J. Halvas and A. Rabago, "A Cost-Benefit Analysis of the Mexican Social Security Administration's Family Planning Program," *Studies in Family Planning*, **17**:1, 1986.

4. K. G. Foreit and J. Novak, "Stimulating the Commercial Sector to Invest in Family Planning Through Cost-Benefit Projections," paper presented at the annual meeting of the Population Association of America, New Orleans, La., 1988.

5. Instituto Nacional de Estadística (INE), *Encuesta Demográfica y de Salud Familiar: Informe General*, Lima, Peru, 1988.

6. D. Nortman et al., *Birth Rates and Birth Control Practices*, The Population Council, New York, 1978.

7. J. Bongaarts and R. G. Potter, *Fertility, Biology, and Behavior: Analysis of the Proximate Determinants*, Academic Press, New York, 1983.

8. K. G. Foreit and J. Bennett, *The TIPPS Model for Projecting Costs and Benefits of Family Planning Services Delivery: A User's Manual*, John Short & Associates, Columbia, Md., 1989.

9. INE, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 5).

10. K. G. Foreit et al., "Costs and Benefits of Implementing Child Survival Services at a Private Mining Company in Peru," *American Journal of Public Health*, **81**:1055, 1991.

11. A. L. Fort, "Investigating the Social Context of Fertility and Family Planning: A Qualitative Study in Peru," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **15**:88, 1989.

12. U.S. Agency for International Development, regional administrative coordinators' quarterly reports, Child Survival Action Project, Lima, Peru, Oct.-Dec. 1989.

13. W. Rinehart, R. Blackburn and S. H. Moore, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 2).

14. J. P. Skibiak, "Employment-Based Family Planning in the Private Sector: Lesson of Enterprise," draft report, John Snow, Inc., Arlington, Va., 1991.

Resumen

Las esposas de los mineros de una empresa privada del Perú evidenciaron una alta fecundidad, bajos niveles de uso de anticonceptivos y un interés generalizado por tener menos hijos. Según un análisis de los costos y beneficios potenciales que entrañaría la prestación de servicios de planificación familiar, la economía resultante de los embarazos evitados compensaría con creces el coste de los servicios. En consecuencia, la empresa instituyó servicios de salud materno-infantil y planificación familiar en su centro médico, que prestaba hasta entonces atención fundamentalmente terapéutica. A los 18 meses de aplicación del programa, la prevalencia de anticonceptivos entre las esposas de los mineros había aumentado en un 41 por ciento, mientras que la cantidad de mujeres que empleaban métodos modernos pasaba del 16 al 40 por ciento. Los resultados del programa han inducido a dos otras minas de la región a ofrecer servicios similares.

Résumé

Une étude menée sur les épouses des ouvriers d'une exploitation minière privée au Pérou a révélé parmi elles un taux de fécondité élevé, une faible prévalence contraceptive et un intérêt répandu à la limitation des grossesses. L'analyse des coûts et avantages potentiels de la prestation de services de planification familiale ayant indiqué que les économies réalisées grâce à la limitation des naissances feraient probablement plus que compenser les coûts de ces services eux-mêmes, la société minière décida d'agrémenter son centre médical—qui s'était jusque-là essentiellement limité aux soins curatifs—d'un programme de santé maternelle et infantile et de services de planification familiale. Moins de 18 mois après la mise en oeuvre du programme, la prévalence contraceptive parmi les épouses des mineurs avait augmenté de 41 pour cent et le pourcentage des femmes ayant recours aux méthodes modernes était passé de 16 à 40 pour cent. Les résultats du programme ont convaincu deux autres exploitations minières de la région d'offrir à leur main-d'oeuvre des services similaires.

Corrections

In the review of *The Causes of Demographic Change: Experimental Research in South India* [**17**:38, 1991], a book by John C. Caldwell, P. H. Reddy and Pat Caldwell, the statement is made that the primary research responsibilities "were shouldered by non-Indians and Indian students and researchers acted as assistants." However, the principal investigator in charge of the field program was P. H. Reddy, director of the Population Centre, Bangalore, India. The project was based at the Centre, to which John C. Caldwell and Pat Caldwell were temporarily attached. Coresearchers were the professional staff of the Centre and not students.

The boldface caption at the beginning of "Contraceptive Failure Rates in Developing Countries: Evidence from the Demographic and Health Surveys" [**17**:44, 1991] contains an incorrect percentage. It should read "Overall failure rates—inclusive of sterilization—vary substantially across countries, ranging from low values of two percent in Thailand and three percent in Indonesia to high values of 16 percent in Peru and almost 20 percent in Bolivia."

Use-Effectiveness Among Users of the Symptothermal Method of Family Planning

"Although [the symptothermal method] is less effective than methods such as the pill or the IUD, it may provide a satisfactory [alternative] for women who are concerned about the side effects of medical contraceptives."

By Robert T. Kambic, Ronald H. Gray, Richard St. Mart, Claude A. Lanctot and Mary C. Martin

Summary

A 1987 retrospective study examined effectiveness and continuation rates for the symptothermal method (STM) of family planning among a group of 507 women in Mauritius who had completed a training period and were considered to be autonomous users. Women who had been using STM to space their births and those who had been using it to limit births were equally likely to have experienced an unplanned pregnancy after 24 months of use (12 per 100 women). An additional 40 women per 100 who were spacing births reported a planned pregnancy, compared with six per 100 who said they were using STM to limit births. Continuation rates after two years were 51 per 100 for spacers and 80 per 100 limiters. Women who had discontinued use to become pregnant were more likely to resume use than were those who had an accidental pregnancy or who discontinued use for other reasons.

Introduction

Mauritius is a small island nation in the Indian Ocean with a population of approximately one million. In the 1960s, concern over population growth led to the development of a national family planning program in which promoting the use of natural family planning (NFP) was a major part. Action Familiale, the official NFP provider agency in Mauritius, was established in 1963. The agency teaches only the symptothermal method (STM), which involves monitoring changes in both cervical mucus and basal body temperature.[1] The 1985 Mauritius contraceptive prevalence survey found that 86 percent of reproductive-age women had ever used and 75 percent were currently using contraceptives. It also found that 34 percent of reproductive-age women had ever used and 17 percent were currently using either STM or the calendar rhythm method.[2]

Action Familiale clients can be divided into learners and autonomous users. A client learning STM is taught to recognize, chart and interpret signs of the various stages of the menstrual cycle; an autonomous user no longer needs such instruction. The concept of autonomy was developed in the Mauritius program in the 1960s,[3] and is now used as a client management tool by NFP programs around the world.

Although there are different definitions of STM autonomy, all use the following criteria for designating a client as autonomous: The client must be able to correctly chart daily fertility indicators; understand the fertile and infertile days of the cycle and be able to recognize a change in fertility patterns and to seek help when needed; be able, with her partner, to adjust sexual behavior to coincide with family planning intention; and feel satisfied with the method.[4] Some NFP programs may delay designating a client an autonomous user to provide additional education beyond NFP, and some autonomous users may need further support from time to time.[5]

According to estimates derived from Action Familiale service statistics, over 30,000 Mauritian women had been taught STM by 1985, and the cumulative number of women classified as autonomous users was around 13,000.[6] Client autonomy is an important goal for NFP programs. An autonomous user does not need resources for instructional follow-up or chart review, both of which consume time and money. Moreover, if autonomous users continue NFP over an extended period, the initial high cost of the method, primarily due to instructors' time, is distributed over many years, thus reducing the overall cost per couple-year of protection.[7]

This retrospective study assesses efficacy among autonomous STM users and characterizes discontinuing autonomous clients so that they can be targeted for intervention and support. It was conducted by Action Familiale, in collaboration with The Johns Hopkins University School of Hygiene and Public Health and The International Federation for Family Life Promotion.

Methods

The study sample was selected from among 2,308 Mauritian women in 16 Action Familiale service areas who had become autonomous users in 1984–1985. Married women aged 19–35 who had had at least one pregnancy were stratified by service area and year. Within each cell, 20 percent of the women were chosen at random. Of 536 women selected, 89 had moved and could not be traced, one had died and one was no

Table 1. Characteristics of autonomous users of the symptothermal method, by birth intention, Mauritius, 1984–1985

Characteristic	All	Spacers (N=242)	Limiters (N=265)
Respondents' mean age	26.8	25.2	28.4*
Husbands' mean age	32.4	30.6	34.0*
Mean years married	6.0	3.9	7.9*
Mean live births	2.0	1.3	2.6*
% Catholic	37.1	36.8	37.4
% Hindu	47.3	49.6	45.3
% Muslim	12.8	12.8	12.8
% housewives	62.1	64.0	60.4
% with ≥ secondary education	56.4	66.5	47.2*
% husbands with remunerative work	84.6	86.8	82.6

*p<.001.

Robert T. Kambic is a research associate, and Ronald H. Gray is a professor in the Department of Population Dynamics, The Johns Hopkins University, School of Hygiene and Public Health, Baltimore. Richard St. Mart is administrative secretary, Action Familiale, Rose Hill, Mauritius. Claude A. Lanctot is executive director, and Mary C. Martin is a former coordinator of education, training and evaluation, International Federation for Family Life Promotion (IFFLP), Washington, D.C. Support for this study was provided by the IFFLP under cooperation agreement DPE-0632-A00-3049-00 with the United States Agency for International Development (AID), and a subagreement with the Institute for International Studies in Natural Family Planning of the Georgetown University, Washington, D.C., under Cooperative Agreement DPE-3040-A-00-5064-00 with AID. The views expressed by the authors do not necessarily represent those of AID.

Table 2. Cumulative continuation rates (and standard errors) per 100 autonomous users of the symptothermal method; and discontinuation rates, by reason for discontinuing; according to birth intentions and time period

Intention and time period	N	Continuers	Discontinuers		
			Personal	Accidental pregnancy	Planning a pregnancy
Spacers					
12 months	186	73.5 (2.8)	1.0 (0.7)	7.3 (1.8)	20.5 (3.1)
24 months	99	51.0 (3.3)	4.6 (1.8)	11.6 (2.6)	39.9 (4.9)
Limiters					
12 months	240	89.8 (1.9)	0.8 (0.6)	6.2 (1.6)	3.5 (1.2)
24 months	167	79.5 (2.6)	4.5 (1.4)	11.7 (2.3)	5.7 (1.6)

longer married. These 91 women were replaced by the next client in the sample cell. All of the women agreed to participate and were visited by trained interviewers between May 9 and August 12, 1987.

The women were questioned about their use of STM from the time they were classified as autonomous users to the time of the interview. They were asked about their intention to space or limit births and about their breastfeeding status at the point that they completed the training period or after any ensuing pregnancies. Women fully breastfeeding were not considered to be exposed to the risk of pregnancy and were not entered into the analysis* until they started supplementation.

Women who discontinued use of STM were asked the date and the reason they did so. The possible reasons for discontinuation were: having no need for family planning, wanting to become pregnant, having an accidental pregnancy or other reasons. Discontinuers were also asked if they had subsequently resumed use of NFP, adopted other contraceptive methods or used no method.

Our analyses looked only at the interval of use between the beginning of autonomy and either discontinuation or the interview. Some clients returned to STM after a discontinuation of autonomous use, but only first intervals of use were considered in the analysis. Life-table methods were used to estimate continuation and discontinuation rates for autonomous use. Clients were stratified by family planning intention at the start of autonomous use into women who wished to space births (spacers) and women who wanted no further births (limiters). The rates of discontinuation for personal reasons, for unplanned pregnancy and for women planning a pregnancy were compared by single-decrement rates.†

Results

Of the 536 women who were interviewed, seven were excluded because they said they had discontinued STM use prior to autonomy. Among the remaining 529 women, 507 wanted to avoid pregnancy and 22 were using the method for other reasons. The 507 women trying to prevent pregnancy were the study population.

Table 1 presents characteristics of these respondents at the time they were classified as autonomous in 1984–1985. The sample was almost evenly divided into spacers (N=242) and limiters (N=265). On average, limiters were significantly older than spacers (age 28 vs. age 25), had been married longer (eight years vs. four years) and had had more live births (2.6 vs. 1.3). Limiters were also less educated: Forty-seven percent had a secondary education or higher, compared with 67 percent of spacers. There were, however, no significant differences between spacers and limiters in religion or employment, and for both groups, the median STM learning time had been 12 months (not shown).

Sixty-three percent of the women used STM during the entire interval between the beginning of autonomous use and the interview. Table 2 shows life-table single-decrement rates of continuation and discontinuation. The two-year continuation rates for women spacing births (51 per 100 women) were significantly lower than for women wishing to limit fertility (80 per 100 women). Among spacers, wanting to become pregnant was the primary reason for having discontinued use (40 per 100 women at 24 months), while having an unplanned pregnancy was the most common reason among limiters (12 per 100 women). Limiters were no more likely than spacers to have discontinued use because of an unplanned pregnancy at either 12 months or 24 months of autonomous STM use. Not surprisingly, however, spacers were far more likely than limiters to have discontinued at 12 months (21 vs. four per 100 women—$p<.001$) and at 24 months (40 vs. six per 100 women—$p<.001$) because they wanted to become pregnant.

Of the 186 women who had discontinued use at some point, 17 percent were pregnant at interview, 42 percent had resumed autonomous STM use, 24 percent had adopted another method of family planning and 17 percent were using no method.‡ Some of the women using no method were probably in need of family planning. Among the women who had discontinued use to become pregnant, 55 percent resumed STM use after their pregnancy, a proportion significantly higher ($p<.01$) than the 28 percent of women who began using STM again after an accidental pregnancy.

Using maximum likelihood procedures,[8] we estimate that the mean duration of autonomous use over the period was 2.2 years. Couple-years of protection for the cohort was estimated by multiplying mean duration of use by the number of autonomous users in the total cohort.[9] Of the 2,308 women in the 1984–1985 cohort of autonomous users in Mauritius, we estimate that 95 percent (2,183) began autonomy with the intention of avoiding pregnancy. After three years they would have accumulated 4,803 couple-years of protection.

---

*Six women were fully breastfeeding when they graduated to autonomy. They breastfed for an average of 3.2 months before introducing supplements. They were entered into the life-table analysis at the introduction of supplements. Twenty-three women were partially breastfeeding when they graduated to autonomy. These women were entered into the analysis at autonomy. The contraceptive prevalence survey points out that breastfeeding is not intensive in Mauritius and "thus breastfeeding provides relatively little protection against conception in Mauritius" (see: Mauritius Ministry of Health, 1987, reference 2).

†Multiple-decrement life-table rates allow a subject to discontinue for a variety of reasons. The rates sum to the total discontinuation rate and can be compared within strata. Single-decrement rates allow a subject to discontinue for only one reason. All other reasons for discontinuation are treated as withdrawals. Single-decrement rates are used to compare discontinuation between separate groups or strata. These latter rates are higher than multiple-decrement rates, and single-decrement rates cannot be summed within a group to equal the discontinuation rate. There is differing terminology for multiple- and single-decrement life-table rates. Some earlier authors called multiple-decrement rates "net rates" and single-decrement rates "gross rates" (see: C. Tietze and S. Lewit, "Statistical Evaluation of Contraceptive Methods: Use-Effectiveness and Extended Use Effectiveness," *Demography* 5:931, 1968; and J. Sinquefield, *Single and Multiple Decrement Life Table Procedures for the Analysis of the Use Effectiveness of Contraception*, Community and Family Study Center, University of Chicago, 1973). More recent authors (see: S. P. Azen et al., "Some Suggested Improvements to Current Statistical Methods of Analyzing Contraceptive Efficacy," *Journal of Chronic Disease*, 29:649, 1976; and T. M. M. Farley, "Life Table Methods for Contraceptive Research," *Statistics in Medicine*, 5:475, 1986) call multiple-decrement rates "crude rates" and single-decrement rates "net rates," following Chiang (see: C. L. Chiang, *Introduction to Stochastic Processes in Biostatistics*, Wiley & Sons, New York, 1968). For more discussion of this issue, see: reference 11.

‡There may be a few women who were unknowingly pregnant and were classified as continuing users. However, because STM users are aware of their fertile time and intercourse patterns, we believe the degree of any misclassification would be minimal.

Discussion

This study has shown high use-effectiveness among autonomous STM users wishing to space or limit their births: Only 12 per 100 women in each group experienced accidental pregnancy within 24 months of beginning autonomous use. Furthermore, women averaged about 2.2 years of continuous STM use over the three years examined in this study. These findings suggest that autonomous users can successfully avoid unwanted pregnancy for protracted periods of time. In addition, since autonomous couples make no continuing demands on the program, the long-term STM use implies no ongoing service delivery costs.

At least one study has reported similar results among autonomous users in the United States.[10] James Trussell and Kathryn Kost showed a wide variation in NFP 12-month unplanned pregnancy rates—from 12.6 up to 35.0 per 100 woman-years—but these rates included both learning and autonomous users of a variety of NFP methods.[11] The autonomous STM users in the current study are a select group of women who were well trained by the Action Familiale program and were highly motivated. Among such women, STM can clearly be used effectively and over a long period.

The median learning time of the clients in this study was 12 months, which is relatively long. In a 1981 World Health Organization study of 848 women learning NFP, 94 percent had an "interpretable ovulatory" pattern by the third cycle and 97 percent had a good or excellent understanding of NFP.[12] A six-year U.S. study ending in 1982 found a median learning time of eight months among a group of STM users.[13] The learning time in Mauritius may be longer because of more stringent requirements for autonomy.

The 31 STM dropouts who did not subsequently use other family planning methods represent a group that may benefit from further contact with Action Familiale. Most of them will need family planning and some may wish to return to STM.

We found that family planning intention was the main predictor of continuation: Women who expressed an intention to limit further pregnancies were more likely to continue use than women who used the method to space births (80 vs. 51 per 100 women at two years). Moreover, women who discontinued use to have a planned pregnancy subsequently resumed use more frequently than women who stopped because of an accidental pregnancy (55 percent vs. 28 percent). This suggests that a majority of women who stop for a planned pregnancy are satisfied with the method.

The 1985 Mauritius contraceptive prevalence survey (CPS) permits some comparison of this autonomous cohort with NFP users in the general population.[14] The CPS found that 17 percent of 3,020 women currently practicing contraception were using NFP, and that among NFP users, 24 percent were using STM and 63 percent the calendar method. While Action Familiale trained the majority of those using STM, only 36 percent of all NFP users had been Action Familiale clients. Although the CPS did not determine the use-effectiveness of the calendar rhythm method, reviews of the literature show that STM is generally more effective for preventing pregnancy than other NFP methods.[15]

The autonomous STM users in this study are better educated than the general population of women in Mauritius. Fifty-six percent of the study women had a secondary school education, compared with 24 percent of all women age 15–50. According to the CPS, women with more than a primary education were two times as likely to have ever used NFP as women with less than a primary education. It seems that STM appeals to the better-educated women in Mauritius, but it is not clear why. Further investigation is warranted.

Although STM is less effective than methods such as the pill or the IUD, it may provide a satisfactory option for women who are concerned about the side effects of medical contraceptives. One study has found that the choice of contraceptives is viewed by women as a balance of risks and benefits, and that the principal trade-off is between safety and effectiveness.[16] Another found that after a pregnancy, Malaysian women are more likely to return to the less-effective methods (rhythm, abstinence and withdrawal) than to the pill, because they are concerned about the side effects of the latter method.[17] Women in the Philippines point to medical safety and convenience as reasons for preferring rhythm to other methods.[18]

Thus, the long-term user of STM may feel that the side effects associated with other, more effective methods outweigh the higher risk of pregnancy they face with STM. Moreover, autonomous users develop accurate and detailed knowledge of their menstrual cycle, and successful use of this knowledge to plan and avoid pregnancy can provide a sense of control and ability to cope with life.[19] These additional benefits increase satisfaction with STM as a family planning method, and therefore may reduce method-switching.[20]

References

1. G. Conner and N. Veeder, *Action Familiale: Program Review and Evaluation*, Action Familiale, Rose Hill, Mauritius, 1981.

2. Mauritius Ministry of Health, *Mauritius Contraceptive Prevalence Survey, 1985*, final report, Evaluation Unit Family Planning/Maternal Health Division, Port Louis, Mauritius, 1987.

3. F. Guy and M. Guy, *Ile Maurice, Regulation des Naissances et Action Familiale*, Editions Xavier Mappus, Lyon, France, 1968.

4. R. T. Kambic and M. C. Martin, "Evaluating Client Autonomy in Natural Family Planning," *Advances in Contraception*, **4**:221, 1988.

5. C. A. Lanctot, "Development of Natural Family Planning in the 21st Century," paper presented at St. John's Medical College and Hospital International Conference on Welfare of Women and Fertility Awareness, Bangalore, India, Jan. 1990; and R. St. Mart, Action Familiale, personal communication, Mauritius, 1990.

6. Action Familiale, *Service Statistics*, Rose Hill, Mauritius, 1987.

7. R. T. Kambic and M. C. Martin, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 4); and J. E. Laing, "Natural Family Planning in the Philippines," *Studies in Family Planning*, **15**:49, 1984.

8. P. M. Kulkarni and R. G. Potter, "Extrapolation of IUD Continuation Curves," *Population Studies*, **30**:353, 1976.

9. S. M. Wishik and K. Chen, *Couple Year of Protection: A Measure of Family Planning Program Output*, International Institute for the Study of Human Reproduction, Columbia University, New York, 1973.

10. R. T. Kambic and M. C. Martin, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 4).

11. J. Trussell and K. Kost, "Contraceptive Failure in the United States: A Critical Review of the Literature," *Studies in Family Planning*, **18**:237, 1987.

12. World Health Organization, "A Prospective Multicentre Trial of the Ovulation Method of Natural Family Planning, I. The Teaching Phase," *Fertility and Sterility*, **36**:152, 1981.

13. R. T. Kambic and M. C. Martin, 1988, op. cit. (see reference 4).

14. Mauritius Ministry of Health, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 2).

15. R. H. Gray and R. T. Kambic, "Epidemiological Studies of Natural Family Planning," *Human Reproduction*, **3**:693, 1988.

16. D. Yankelovich, F. Skelly and A. White, "A Study of Women's Attitudes Towards Contraceptive Alternatives," unpublished study prepared for the Upjohn Company, Yankelovich, Skelly, and White Inc., New York, 1982.

17. J. DaVanzo et al., "Contraceptive Choice and Method Switching in Malaysia," *Fertility Determinants and Research Notes*, Vol. 20, The Population Council, 1987, pp. 4–5.

18. J. E. Laing, 1984, op. cit. (see reference 7); and ——, "Periodic Abstinence in the Philippines: New Findings from a National Survey" *Studies in Family Planning*, **33**:32, 1987.

19. A. Tolor, F. J. Rice and C. A. Lanctot, "Personality Patterns of Couples Practicing the Temperature-Rhythm

Method of Birth Control," *The Journal of Sex Research*, **11**:119, 1975; and J. Bardwick, "Psychological Aspects of Implementing Natural Family Planning Programs," published proceedings of the International Seminar on Natural Methods of Family Planning, Department of Health, Dublin, Ireland, with the World Health Organization, Cahill, Dublin, 1979, pp. 42–56.

20. G. Boys and R. Ediger, *Natural Family Planning Nationwide Survey: Final Report to the National Conference of Catholic Bishops Diocesan Development Program for Natural Family Planning*, Irvington, N.J., 1989.

Resumen

En 1987 se realizó un estudio retrospectivo de las tasas de eficacia y continuación del método sintotermal (MST) de planificación familiar entre 507 mujeres de Mauricio que habían completado el período de capacitación y se consideraban usuarias autónomas. Las que habían venido utilizando el MST para espaciar los hijos y las que lo habían usado para dejar de tenerlos resultaron igualmente propensas a haber tenido un embarazo no deseado al cabo de los 24 meses de practicar el método (12 por 100 según un análisis de tabla de vida). Cuarenta por 100 de las que procuraban espaciar los embarazos informaron de un embarazo planificado, contra seis por 100 de las que dijeron estar utilizando el MST para no tener más hijos. Las tasas de continuación después de los dos años eran del 51 por 100 para las que querían espaciar los hijos y del 80 por 100 para las que no deseaban tener más. Las mujeres que habían dejado de usar el método para quedar embarazadas eran más propensas a reanudarlo que aquellas que habían quedado accidentalmente embarazadas o dejado de emplearlo por otras razones.

Résumé

Une enquête rétrospective effectuée en 1987 s'est penchée sur la question des taux d'efficacité et de persévérance de la méthode symptothermique de la planification familiale parmi 507 Mauriciennes qui avaient été soumises à une période de formation complète et étaient considérées utilisatrices autonomes. Les femmes qui avaient eu recours à la méthode pour espacer ou pour arrêter les naissances présentaient un taux égal de probabilité de grossesse non planifiée après 24 mois d'usage (12 pour cent). Quarante pour cent des femmes utilisant la méthode pour espacer les grossesses ont signalé une grossesse planifiée, par rapport à six pour cent parmi celles qui voulaient n'en avoir plus. Les taux de persévérance après deux ans s'élevaient à 51 pour cent parmi les femmes qui voulaient espacer les grossesses et à 80 pour cent parmi celles désireuses de les arrêter. Les femmes qui avaient abandonné la méthode parce qu'elles désiraient devenir enceintes étaient plus susceptibles de la reprendre que celles qui avaient connu une grossesse accidentelle ou qui avaient abandonné la méthode pour d'autres motifs.

Family Planning in Bamako, . . .

(Continued from page 90)

2. A. Tounkara, *Analyse des données de service de l'Association Malienne pour la Protection et la Promotion de la Famille*, Association Malienne pour la Promotion et la Protection de la Famille (AMPPF), Bamako, and Family Health International, N.C., 1982.

3. A. Kader Boye et al., "La condition juridique et sociale de la femme dans quatre pays du Sahel," *Etudes et Travaux de l'Unité de Statistiques et d'Etudes Démographiques*, No. 9, Bamako, Mali, 1987.

4. Westinghouse Social Science International, *Population Policy Review: Mali Demographic Data for Development*, Columbia, Md., 1984.

5. A. Kader Boye et al., 1987, op. cit. (see reference 3).

6. A. Tounkara, 1982, op. cit. (see reference 2).

7. Ibid.

8. M. E. Dalmat, J. S. Friedman and N. N. Burton, *Evaluation des services de planning familial pour le Ministère de la Santé Publique et des Affaires Sociales du Mali*, mimeo, Bamako, Mali, 1981.

9. A. Kader Boye et al., 1987, op. cit. (see reference 3).

10. N. J. Binkin et al., "Women Hospitalized for Abortion Complications in Mali," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **10**:8, 1984.

11. J. Henderson Lewis et al., *Breastfeeding, Contraception and Birth Spacing in Mali*, Division of Family Health, Ministry and Social Affairs, Bamako, Mali, 1983.

12. B. Traoré, M. Konaté and C. Stanton, *Enquête Démographique et de Santé au Mali*, Centre d'Etudes et de Recherches sur la Population pour le Développement, Bamako, Mali, and Institute for Resource Development/Westinghouse, Columbia, Md., 1989.

13. Department of International Economic and Social Affairs, Statistical Office, *Demographic Year Book 1986*, United Nations, New York, 1986.

14. D. Wulf, "The Future of Family Planning in Sub-Saharan Africa," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **11**:1,1985.

15. B. Traoré, M. Konaté and C. Stanton, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 12).

16. A. J. Henry, "L'âme d'un peuple africain: les Bambara, leur vie psychique, ethnique, sociale et religieuse," Munster, France, 1910.

17. E. van de Walle and F. van de Walle, "Breastfeeding and Popular Etiology in the Sahel," *Health Transition Review*, **1**:69, 1991.

18. B. Traoré, M. Konaté and C. Stanton, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 12).

19. Ibid.

20. J. C. Caldwell and P. Caldwell, "The Cultural Context of High Fertility in Sub-Saharan Africa," *Population and Development Review*, **13**:409, 1987.

21. F. van de Walle and B. Traoré, *Attitudes of Women and Men Towards Contraception in Bobo-Dioulasso*, African Demography Working Paper No. 13, Population Studies Center, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, 1986.

22. J. Knodel and E. van de Walle, "Lessons from the Past: Policy Implications of Historical Fertility Studies," *Population and Development Review*, **52**:217, 1979.

23. C. F. Westoff, "Is the KAP-Gap Real?" *Population and Development Review*, **14**:225, 1988.

24. E. Boserup, "Economic and Demographic Interrelationships in Sub-Saharan Africa," *Population and Development Review*, **11**:383, 1985; O. Frank and G. McNicoll, "Fertility and Population Policy in Kenya," *Population and Development Review*, **13**:209, 1987; and E. R. Fapohunda and M. P. Todaro, "Family Structure and Demand for Children in Southern Nigeria," *Population and Development Review*, **14**:571, 1988.

25. D. Bazin-Tardieu, *Femmes du Mali*, Editions Lemeac, Ottawa, Canada, 1975.

26. O. Frank and G. McNicoll, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 24).

27. B. Traoré, M. Konaté and C. Stanton, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 12).

28. J. C. Caldwell and P. Caldwell, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 20); and ——, "Is the Asian Family Planning Program Model Suited to Africa?" *Studies in Family Planning*, **19**:19, 1988.

29. B. Traoré, M. Konaté and C. Stanton, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 12).

Resumen

Pese a que en Bamako, Malí, hay disponibilidad general de anticonceptivos modernos, la práctica de la planificación familiar se mantiene muy limitada. Una encuesta a fondo de 78 mujeres que habían dado recientemente a luz reveló un alto nivel de conocimiento de métodos unido a niveles reducidos de uso actual o anterior. Si bien las encuestadas con frecuencia se decían estar cansadas de tener hijos, tendían a considerar que una se casaba para tenerlos y que su cantidad permitía medir el éxito del matrimonio. Si bien es posible que la demanda de anticonceptivos a fines de espaciar los embarazos vaya en aumento, la de métodos para dejar de tener hijos parece casi inexistente.

Résumé

Malgré la disponibilité générale des méthodes modernes à Bamako, au Mali, la pratique contraceptive demeure très limitée. Des entrevues approfondies tenues avec 78 femmes qui avaient récemment donné naissance y ont révélé un haut niveau de connaissance des méthodes mais de faibles niveaux d'usage actuel ou passé. Bien que beaucoup de femmes dans l'échantillon aient exprimé leur lassitude de se trouver enceintes, elles avaient tendance à voir dans la maternité le but même du mariage, et à mesurer la réussite du leur dans le nombre d'enfants qu'elles avaient portés. Si la demande de méthodes à retarder les naissances apparaît en hausse, celle de méthodes à les arrêter semble virtuellement inexistante.

Social and Psychological Aspects of Tubal Ligation In Zaire: A Follow-Up Study of Acceptors

Only half of the Zairian acceptors had talked to others about their sterilization. To compensate for this lack of informal communication, future programs must be designed with a strong information-education-communication component.

By Jane T. Bertrand, Chibalonza Kashwantale, Djunghu Balowa,
Nancy C. Baughman and Chirhamolekwa Chirwisa

Summary

A 1987–1988 survey of 453 Zairian women who had had a tubal ligation found that, on average, the women were 37 years old and had seven living children at the time of the operation. Ninety-two percent were married, and of these, 95 percent had consulted with their husbands before undergoing the procedure. Only 40 percent of the women had spoken with another woman who had undergone tubal ligation before having the operation themselves, and less than 25 percent had discussed their operation with other family members or friends. The two main reasons for having had the operation were "health" and "had enough children." Most of the women said they had experienced no change at all or a change for the better in their health, ability to do physical labor and marital relations. However, 14 percent admitted having some regret over the operation; regret was associated with having five or fewer children, feeling pressured into the decision, and believing their husband had tried to have children with another woman. Although the women who had undergone the operation were generally positive about the sterilization, they were reluctant to discuss it openly with friends and neighbors.

Introduction

Voluntary surgical sterilization is currently the most widely practiced method of family planning in the world.[1] As permanent methods of contraception have grown in popularity, researchers have become increasingly interested in both their clinical and social aspects. As of 1985, over 200 studies had been conducted on the social and psychological aspects of sterilization in both developed and developing countries,[2] but only six pertained specifically to countries in Sub-Saharan Africa.

Some researchers have argued that the potential acceptance of permanent forms of contraception in Africa is very limited,[3] while others claim that interest in such methods is increasing.[4] Empirical data addressing this question are lacking. A number of knowledge, attitude and practice studies have been conducted to assess the potential acceptability of sterilization in specific African countries.[5] In addition, a few reports are available from selected African countries on the demographic characteristics of clients or on clinical aspects of the sterilization procedure.[6] However, little else is available on this topic.

The scarcity of information from Sub-Saharan Africa is particularly notable with regard to the social and psychological aspects of sterilization: Studies on sources of information, factors in the decision-making process, attitudes toward the quality of service, perceived consequences of tubal ligation on health and marital relations, and satisfaction (or regret) over the operation are lacking. The only published data on these topics come from focus-group research conducted in Zaire[7] and Kenya.[8] Yet because of the nature of focus groups, one cannot derive quantitative results on any of the variables studied.

This article is one of the first quantitative follow-up studies of acceptors of tubal ligation to focus on the social and psychological aspects of female sterilization in a Sub-Saharan country. However, it should be taken as a case study from one country; its results cannot necessarily be generalized to other parts of the African continent.

We must consider our findings in the context of the social and political climate for family planning in Zaire. The country is strongly pronatalist. Women aspire to have and do have, on average, at least six live births.[9] Zaire is typical of Sub-Saharan Africa in that fertility is highly valued.

John Caldwell and Pat Caldwell contend that traditional African religious values have helped to sustain high fertility in two ways.[10] First, in the traditional value system, fertility is equated with both virtue and spiritual approval, and reproductive failure or cessation of fertility is associated with sin. Second, filial piety and material homage to the older generation are emphasized, so that high fertility is rarely disadvantageous.

This pronatalist attitude is reinforced by a number of factors, including high rates of infant mortality, low levels of female education, the high social status associated with large families and the positive economic value of children, particularly in rural settings. While some change in attitudes has occurred, and young people in urban areas rarely aspire to the 10–12 children their parents may have had, few would voluntarily limit fertility to 2–3 children. Among the very poorest, one hears the claim that "children are our only wealth."

In 1972, President Mobutu Sese Seko publicly voiced support for the concept of birthspacing for health reasons. This led to the formation of a private family planning association (affiliated with the International Planned Parenthood Federation) in 1973 and to a government-supported national family planning program in 1983. These efforts were complemented by the work of Protestant missionary groups in selected sites throughout Zaire during the late 1970s and 1980s.

By 1990, modern contraceptives were

Jane T. Bertrand is an associate professor, and Nancy C. Baughman is a research associate, Tulane University School of Public Health and Tropical Medicine, New Orleans. Chibalonza Kashwantale is the former head of the applied studies section in the operations research unit, Djunghu Balowa is a programmer-analyst and the head of computer services, and Chirhamolekwa Chirwisa is the former director, Projet des Services des Naissances Désirables, Kinshasa, Zaire. This research was conducted by the Tulane University Family Planning Operations Research Project in Zaire under U.S. Agency for International Development (AID) Cooperative Agreement DPE-3030-A-4051-00. The authors are grateful to the field personnel at each site for data collection, as well as to Nlandu Mangani, Diatewa Mavambu, Muhemeri Chirezi and Desiree Loeb for their assistance in different aspects of the research process. The authors also thank William Martin and Beth Stanford (AID/Zaire) and Carol Dabbs (AID/Washington) for their administrative support of this research.

available from clinic-based programs in the principal cities of the country, as well as in a substantial number of rural health zones served by a large rural health project and other, pilot projects. The concept of birthspacing as a health intervention has been so widely promoted that *naissances désirables* (the local term for family planning, which means "desirable births") has become a household term in many parts of the country.

Nonetheless, the family planning movement is still in its infancy. Although the government voices support for birthspacing, it has stopped short of establishing an official population policy. A lack of infrastructure, combined with administrative difficulties, has diminished the potential effectiveness of efforts to increase access to modern methods. It is not uncommon, for example, for clinics to run out of contraceptives.

Data from several studies conducted in widely dispersed locations in Zaire since 1980 confirm that the population is generally aware of family planning. In some 10 sites studied to date, over 80 percent of the female respondents had heard of at least one modern contraceptive method; with one exception, two-thirds or more had heard of female sterilization.[11] Actual use of modern contraceptives is still very low among this population, however. According to the 1982–1984 prevalence survey, use of modern methods ranged from two percent to 11 percent of married women of reproductive age in the four urban and two rural sites studied; one percent of women at each of five of the sites had undergone tubal ligation.[12] There is evidence of a slightly higher prevalence of female sterilization in areas where the operation has been most readily available (Vanga, six percent in 1983; Matadi, eight percent in 1989).[13] However, these are clearly the exceptions and not the rule.

Methodology

• *Sampling*. Strict random sampling was not feasible in our study for three reasons: the large size of the country, communication difficulties resulting from the various languages and dialects spoken, and the lack of centralized data on sterilization procedures performed at various sites.

Instead, we first identified all hospitals and clinics in Zaire where at least 50 tubal ligation procedures were performed between January 1984 and December 1986 (i.e., 1–4 years prior to the study), and where the names and addresses of the clients were on record. A list of such institutions was drawn up, based on information obtained from local organizations working in family planning and from individuals familiar with health programs throughout Zaire; this informal approach was used in the absence of any official listing. Twelve such sites were identified, half of which were urban (cities of 100,000 inhabitants or more) and half rural (a 13th emerged, but too late to be included in this study).

At each site, a list containing the names and addresses of the eligible respondents was compiled; women who lived in remote areas were excluded for logistic reasons. Women whose last births were by cesarean section were also excluded, because their decision to have a tubal ligation may have been based on compelling medical reasons. In sum, the eligible respondents were women who had undergone tubal ligation approximately 1–4 years before the interview, who lived a reasonable distance from the selected hospital and whose last delivery was not by cesarean section.

• *Organization of Fieldwork*. The logistics of conducting the fieldwork were challenging for two reasons: The 12 sites were geographically scattered throughout this vast country, and nine different languages (or dialects) were spoken at the 12 sites under study. The questionnaire was developed in French by the Projet des Services des Naissances Désirables (PSND, the national family planning program), with technical assistance from Tulane University in the United States.

At each site, one supervisor and one female interviewer were selected to work on the study. These two-person teams were brought to Kinshasa (the capital city) for a two-week training course on general study procedures and interviewing techniques. This training took place in two shifts—the first in December 1987, the second in February 1988.

Once trained, the teams returned to their sites to translate the questionnaire into the local language and to pretest it. After necessary modifications, the interviewer attempted to contact all eligible respondents. The interviewing was conducted in private in the respondent's home. If a potential respondent was away from her home at the initial visit, the interviewer tried again later the same day or the next day (although this was not possible if an eligible respondent living in a fairly isolated area was traveling at the time of the first contact). The fieldwork schedule varied by site, with interviewing conducted during 1988.

Although the interviews were conducted in the local language at each site, the interviewers wrote the responses to open-ended questions in French. Moreover, the structure of the questionnaires (numbering and layout of questions) was identical for all sites. The questionnaires were verified in the field by the supervisor and then sent to Kinshasa for coding, editing and analysis at the PSND.

Of the 12 initial sites, 10 completed the data collection (i.e., attempted to contact all eligible respondents), one partially completed it and one did not provide data within the time limits of the study.

Sample Characteristics

A total of 453 women who underwent tubal ligation were interviewed from 11 sites throughout Zaire (Table 1, page 102). About one-third of these women had never attended school, and about one-half had attended or completed primary school or homemaker school. Only 15 percent had gone beyond primary school. Of the total group, 58 percent said they were able to read.

Most acceptors were either Protestant (57 percent) or Catholic (34 percent). The proportion of respondents who were Protestant is higher than the proportion of total Zairians who are Protestant. This reflects the fact that many of the sterilization programs in Zaire have been developed in conjunction with Protestant mission hospitals.

Just over 60 percent of the women reported having some type of remunerative work, which could include agricultural work or selling items in a marketplace. Ninety-two percent were married or living in union, and six percent were previously married; only two percent had never been married. Of the 415 women married or in a union, 77 percent were in monogamous unions, compared with 23 percent in polygamous unions. The husband's level of education was, on average, much higher than the wife's (not shown): Only nine percent of husbands had never attended school, and 32 percent had attended secondary school or gone further.

Calculations from data collected indicate that the average age at first pregnancy was 17.6 and the average age at sterilization was 36.9. By the time of their sterilization procedure, acceptors had had an average of 8.5 live births. Over half had experienced the death of at least one child, bringing to 7.3 the average number of living children. As Table 1 shows, 64 percent of the respondents had 5–8 living children. Almost all respondents (98 percent) had at least one son and at least one daughter. In addition, 52 percent had at least one other (foster) child in their care.

About three-quarters of the women had undergone the sterilization postpartum, while about one-quarter had had an interval procedure (not shown). The proportion of postpartum versus interval cases differed markedly by site. On average, women wait-

Table 1. Among women who had had a tubal ligation, number and percentage distribution of background characteristics, Zaire, 1984–1986

Characteristic	N	%
Total	**453**	**100.0**
City/town (site)		
Kananga	47	10.4
Karawa	74	16.3
Kaziba	31	6.8
Kikwit	11	2.4
Kimpese	57	12.6
Kinshasa	23	5.1
Lubumbashi	45	9.9
Matadi	51	11.3
Nyankunde	42	9.3
Oicha	30	6.6
Vanga	42	9.3
Education		
None	153	33.8
1–3 years primary	92	20.3
4–6 years primary	101	22.3
Homemaker school	40	8.9
1–2 years secondary	31	6.8
3–6 years secondary	33	7.3
Beyond secondary	3	0.7
Literate		
Yes	263	58.1
No	190	41.9
Religion		
Protestant	256	56.5
Catholic	156	34.4
Kimbanguiste	14	3.1
Muslim	5	1.1
Other/None	22	4.8
Remunerated work		
Yes	280	61.8
No	169	37.3
No information	4	0.9

Characteristic	N	%
(continued)		
Marital status		
Currently married/in union	415	91.7
Monogamous	321	70.9
Polygamous	94	20.8
Previously married	29	6.3
Never-married	9	2.0
Age at interview		
20–24	2	0.4
25–29	2	0.4
30–34	55	12.1
35–39	133	29.4
40–44	165	36.4
45–49	51	11.3
≥50	6	1.3
Don't know	39	8.6
No. of living children		
0–2	9	2.0
3–4	35	7.7
5–6	102	22.5
7–8	187	41.3
9–10	100	22.1
≥11	20	4.4
Sex of living children		
At least one son	445	98.2
No sons	8	1.8
At least one daughter	445	98.2
No daughters	8	1.8
Number of foster children		
0	216	47.7
1	82	18.1
2	79	17.4
≥3	76	16.8

ed 3.3 days between delivery and the operation; however, five percent had it the same day they delivered. One-half of the postpartum group decided to have their babies at the hospital so they could have the tubal ligation done at that time. One-quarter of women who had had an interval procedure said their hospital stay was less than 24 hours, one-fifth had to stay 25–47 hours and over one-half, 48 hours or more. Two respondents reported that the operation had failed and that they had subsequently become pregnant.

Making the Decision

Sixty percent of the women reported that their last pregnancy was wanted, while 10 percent said that it was mistimed and 30 percent said it was not wanted.

Half of the acceptors had first learned about tubal ligation from medical personnel: a nurse (20 percent), some other health worker (21 percent) or a doctor (nine percent). Among other sources of information were another woman who had had a tubal ligation (17 percent), a friend (14 percent), their husband (seven percent) or some other family member (seven percent). Less than four percent had first heard of sterilization through the mass media. In fact, the proportion who had ever seen or heard about tubal ligation in the media was low, with 22 percent citing the radio as the most common media source for information. About 19 percent indicated that they had ever seen or heard about tubal ligation on posters and less than nine percent each cited brochures, television or newspapers.

The vast majority of married women (95 percent) discussed the operation with their husbands before having it done. This is not surprising, considering that most hospitals in Zaire require the husband's signed consent before the procedure can be done. Ninety-five percent reported that their husbands supported the idea and one percent said their husbands were indifferent. Among the four percent of husbands who did not support the idea, the main objection was a desire for more children.

Forty percent of the women talked to at least one other sterilized woman before having their own operation. On average, one or two women were consulted, and 93 percent of the women who were consulted described their experience in positive terms.

Most of the respondents had also discussed tubal ligation with a doctor (73 percent) or a nurse (69 percent). They perceived these health personnel to be favorable to tubal ligation in almost all cases. Some 25–28 percent each had discussed the operation with a friend, an older brother or their mother, and lesser proportions had discussed it with older relatives such as a father, aunt, uncle or in-law. In the majority of these cases, the person who was contacted responded favorably to the idea of sterilization, but most women did not consult relatives, perhaps because they felt they would disapprove.

The respondents were asked why they had decided to have a tubal ligation. In an effort to get the most accurate responses possible, the question was asked in three steps. The first part was open-ended: "For what reason did you decide to have a tubal ligation?" After obtaining the response, the interviewer asked the respondent, "Besides the reason you just mentioned, were there other things that prompted you to have the operation, for example . . ."; she then listed the 10 items shown in Table 2 and waited for the participant to respond to each one. After completing the list and registering the responses, the interviewer asked, "You gave one reason for having the operation and I just listed some others. Of all these, which was really the one that convinced you to have the operation?" The reason for this lengthy probing was to get beyond the socially acceptable response of "health reasons" and identify other factors that might have played a role in the decision.

Table 2 shows the proportions of women giving the various responses to all three questions. Columns 1 and 3 are percentage distributions of all women, whereas column 2 adds to more than 100 percent because the women could cite more than one reason in response to the second question. One-half of the respondents initially cited health reasons as their primary motivation, and almost one-third stated that they had decided they had enough children. The third most commonly given reason—economic difficulties—was cited by only 10 percent of the women. When asked to respond to the list of factors that might have influenced their decision, over 60 percent of the respondents cited each of those three factors as either their first reason or a contributing reason. Other reasons, mentioned by 25–47 percent of the women, were complications with the last pregnancy, the last pregnancy being unwanted, inability to tolerate other contraceptive methods, the recommendation of their doctor and lack of access to other methods.

Table 2. Among women who had had a tubal ligation, percentage who gave particular reasons, by priority of reason

Reason	Priority		
	Main reason	Contributing factors	Final reason
Health reasons	50.3	86.5	38.9
Had enough children	31.3	67.8	29.8
Economic difficulties	9.9	61.6	8.4
Doctor recommended it*	1.1	25.8*	4.4
Complications with last pregnancy	0.0	47.2	13.2
Couldn't tolerate other methods	0.0	28.0	0.2
Last pregnancy was unwanted	0.0	29.1	0.2
Lack of access to other methods	0.0	24.9	0.4
Lack of knowledge of other methods	0.0	13.0	0.0
No husband	0.0	4.6	2.9
Other	6.7	na	1.5
Don't know	0.4	na	0.0
Total	100.0	na	100.0

*This item was intended to identify those women who received a strong recommendation from their doctor. In contrast, "health reasons" included those cases where the woman felt it was good for her health but was not necessarily directed by her doctor.

Note: na=not applicable.

Interestingly, this extensive probing for the motive for the operation had little effect on the responses given to the final question. "Health reasons" and "had enough children" still emerged as the two main reasons.

Obtaining the Operation

For women deciding to have a tubal ligation, three principles are basic to informed consent: that the woman know the operation is permanent and that she will not be able to have more children; that she know of other contraceptive options; and that she make the decision of her own free will. We examined the extent to which our sample had the opportunity to practice informed consent, as measured by these three factors.

To determine whether they recognized the permanent nature of tubal ligation, all the respondents were asked if they believed they could have more children; if they believed it was necessary to use another contraceptive method to avoid pregnancy; and if they thought their sterilization was permanent. Almost all the women (97–99 percent) gave answers indicating that they understood the permanent nature of the operation; 1–2 percent of women gave the wrong answer on each of the questions, and on two questions, one percent said they did not know.

Ninety-six percent of the women had heard of at least one other contraceptive method; 91 percent knew of at least one modern method, and 85 percent knew of at least one traditional method (Table 3). However, only 38 percent had ever used a modern method, and only 46 percent had ever used a traditional one. Among women who had ever used a contraceptive, the methods most commonly used prior to sterilization were the pill (22 percent), withdrawal (20 percent) and injectables (15 percent).

To test the voluntary nature of the decision, women were asked who had recommended that they have the operation: Sixty-five percent of the respondents said that it was their own idea, 19 percent cited their husband, four percent considered it to have been a joint idea with their husband and seven percent said it was their doctor's idea (Table 4, page 104). Among women who said it was solely their own idea, 67 percent said the first person they consulted was their husband, 13 percent said they had first consulted a nurse and nine percent, a doctor.

Eighty-six percent of the women reported that they had felt no pressure to have a tubal ligation and that their decision had been made freely. Of the 14 percent who had felt pressured, 56 percent said their husband had insisted on the procedure and 37 percent reported that the pressure had come from their doctor. For 83 percent of these women, the reason for this pressure was previous difficulties with childbearing. In fact, of those who felt pressured, 75 percent agreed with the person trying to convince them. Among the few who did not, the primary reasons were the desire for more children and the fear of the operation. None of the women had received any type of monetary compensation for undergoing the operation (not shown).

In Zaire, as in many other countries, women who have a tubal ligation may not be able to obtain the operation as quickly as they would like. In the present study, the mean time between making the decision and having the operation was 4.5 months. About one-third (36 percent) of the women in our sample had had the operation within a month of the time they had made their decision; 56 percent waited 1–12 months after making the decision, and the remaining eight percent waited more than a year.

Most women who waited more than a month did so because they were pregnant (64 percent). Other reasons—none of which were mentioned by more than six percent of those who had waited—were ill health, the need for more information, child care problems, the need for rest (recuperation), economic barriers and the desire to have another child.

However, when asked specifically if they had experienced any of a list of problems in

Table 3. Among women who had had a tubal ligation, percentage who knew of or had ever used a method, and percentage distribution of ever-users, by the last method used

Method	Knew of a method (N=453)	Ever used a method (N=453)	Last method used (N=335)
Any method	**96.0**	**67.1**	**100.0**
Modern method	**90.4**	**37.5**	**48.1**
Pill	85.4	21.9	21.8
Injectables	79.3	13.2	14.9
IUD	73.1	8.6	8.1
Condom	58.7	5.1	2.4
Vaginal tablets	30.4	2.4	0.9
Foam, cream	25.8	0.2	0.0
Vasectomy	23.2	0.0	0.0
Traditional	**84.8**	46.1	**51.9**
Abstinence	84.1	18.1	12.5
Withdrawal	68.4	23.6	20.0
Rhythm	64.1	12.4	9.5
Traditional belt	58.5	3.1	1.2
Other	0.0	0.0	8.7

obtaining the operation, 27 percent mentioned a lack of money to pay for the operation; 24 percent, the problem of child care while gone; 18 percent, transportation to the hospital; four percent, a long wait at the hospital; and three percent, having to come back several times before being served.

Forty-two percent of the women lived within 30 minutes of the hospital where they had had the operation; however, one-quarter lived more than three hours away. On average, it had taken the women about two hours to get to the hospital. Their modes of transportation had included some combination of walking (46 percent), taking a taxi (26 percent), taking a bus or taxi-bus (14 percent), using personal transportation (seven percent) and taking a hospital vehicle (five percent).

Service and Side Effects

Respondents who had had an interval operation were asked about any complications they had experienced. (Because those who had had the procedure postpartum might have had difficulties differentiating between complications or pain attributable to the operation and attributable to childbirth, they were not asked this question.) Of the 122 women who had had an interval procedure, one-third had had complications in the first few days after the operation, including abdominal pain, fever, muscular contractions and severe headaches. Of those reporting complications, 80 percent had consulted clinical personnel regarding the problem.

Thirteen percent had complications that had persisted at least one month; these included heavy menstrual bleeding, abdominal pain and amenorrhea. Three-quarters of the women with these complications had consulted a doctor or nurse.

All the respondents were asked their impressions of the quality of service given by the doctors and nurses during their operation. A positive bias is inherent in this question, but we felt it important enough to include in this type of survey. Thirty-five percent judged their doctor's service to be "very good" and 64 percent said it was "good." Only one percent (six women) felt it was less than good or did not answer. The ratings for nurses were similar: 32 percent "very good;" 67 percent "good." Of the two percent (seven women) who considered the nurses to be fair or poor, five women complained primarily of their bad dispositions or attitudes.

Table 4. Among women who had had a tubal ligation, number and percentage distribution of variables affecting voluntary decision-making

Variable	N	%
Person who recommended the operation		
Respondent	293	64.7
Husband	85	18.8
Doctor	31	6.8
Respondent and husband together	16	3.5
Friend	9	2.0
Nurse	6	1.3
Other health personnel	3	0.6
Other	10	2.2
Total	453	100.0
First person with whom the respondent discussed the idea		
Husband	195	66.6
Nurse	37	12.6
Doctor	26	8.9
Sterilized woman	16	5.5
Friend, neighbor	8	2.7
Other family member	5	1.7
Other	6	2.0
Total	293	100.0
Respondent felt pressured		
No	389	85.9
Yes	63	13.9
Don't know	1	0.2
Total	453	100.0
Person who pressured respondent		
Husband	35	55.6
Doctor	23	36.5
Mother	1	1.6
Father	1	1.6
Husband's family	1	1.6
Oldest son	1	1.6
Don't know	1	1.6
Total	63	100.0
Reason for pressure		
Difficult delivery/pregnancy	52	82.5
Had enough children	5	7.9
Economic reasons	2	3.2
Other	4	6.4
Total	63	100.0
Respondent agreed with reason for pressure		
Yes	47	74.6
No	16	25.4
Desired more children	9	14.3
Fear of the operation	6	9.5
Don't know	1	1.6
Total	63	100.0

As mentioned in the discussion on informed consent, 96 percent of the women in this study knew of at least one other method. However, in response to the question "Did someone at the hospital explain about other contraceptive methods to you before the operation?" only eight percent of the women responded affirmatively, suggesting minimal communication between the patient and those providing medical services. Among the few women answering yes, the nurse gave the information in almost two-thirds of the cases.

When the respondents were asked if they had posed questions to either the doctor or nurse about tubal ligation prior to the operation, only 15 percent responded affirmatively, and virtually all of these respondents felt their questions were satisfactorily answered. When asked how the service might be improved, 73 percent of the respondents had no suggestions or recommendations. Among the remaining 27 percent, the most frequently mentioned suggestions had to do with "professional conscience" (four percent), meaning, for example, that health personnel should be on time, respect commitments and be attentive to patient's needs. Between two percent and three percent of the respondents had each of the following suggestions: avoid failures, have tubal ligation patients isolated from other patients, make the hospital cleaner, reduce the cost of the operation and ensure adequate equipment and supplies. One percent mentioned that the incision should be made smaller.

Perceived Consequences

All respondents were asked a series of questions to determine if they had noticed any changes after the operation with regard to their health, marital situation and general well-being (Table 5). While such changes might have resulted from totally independent causes, the question was intended to identify *perceived* effects. The possible responses to most of these questions were "better," "worse" or "the same" (and "don't know," if the respondent volunteered this answer). In the large majority of cases across all these variables, the respondents reported that they had experienced no change or a change for the better. This was true for 90 percent regarding general health, 86 percent regarding capacity to do physical work and 92 percent regarding their disposition. Almost one-half of the women reported a weight gain after the operation, which in Zaire (especially in rural areas) could be considered positive; 17 percent reported weight loss.

Over one-half of the respondents had experienced no change in their menstrual cycles, and those reporting change were about evenly divided in the direction of the change. For example, 18 percent reported that their cycles were now shorter, compared with 23 percent who said they were longer; 22 percent claimed their period lasted more days than before, while 18 percent said it now lasted fewer days; and 23 percent said that their flow had increased since the operation, while 22 percent claimed it had decreased.

Approximately two-thirds of the women reported that the frequency of their sexual relations had not changed, while about one in five stated that they now had intercourse more frequently, and one in seven said they had intercourse less frequently. In addition, one in five women found sex more satisfying than before the operation, while one in 10 said it was less satisfying.

The focus-group research on attitudes toward tubal ligation pointed to an underlying fear among women that if they underwent the procedure, they risked losing their husbands.[14] Among the 415 married women in this study, 93 percent reported that there had been no change in their husbands' behavior toward them. Nonetheless, 13 percent of the married respondents said that their husbands had tried to have or had had more children with other women following the tubal ligation, and another six percent said they did not know if their husbands had tried to do so.

Women in polygamous unions were more likely to report that their husbands had tried to have children with other women than were women in monogamous unions. Older women were no more likely than younger women to perceive a change in their husbands' behavior or to have husbands who had had children with other women.

The respondents were asked two questions regarding their general satisfaction with the procedure: "Are you glad you had a tubal ligation?" and "Do you have any regret?" Of the total sample, 88 percent claimed to be glad, but in response to the second question, 14 percent said they had some regret. (The discrepancy may result from a woman's being generally satisfied with the operation but having some small regret over it.) The 62 women who expressed some regret were asked the reason (an open-ended question). The most common answers were that they had fewer children than they would have liked (57 percent); they felt it was against God's will (eight percent); they had been sickly since the operation (seven percent); their husband did not love them anymore (five percent); they had experienced pain (five percent); and other/did not know (19 percent).

The factors associated with regret are shown in Table 6 (page 106). Women were significantly more likely to experience regret if any of the following conditions existed: they had five or fewer children; they had wanted their last pregnancy; the idea to have the operation was someone else's; the operation was recommended by their doctor; they had felt pressured into having the operation; they felt their health was worse; their ability to do hard work had decreased; they felt that their husbands' behavior towards them had changed; or their husbands had tried having children with another woman.

Two other variables approached significance: Women who had no education and who had not talked with a woman who had had the operation were probably more likely to experience regret. Age, religion and marital status of the woman at the time of the operation were not associated with regret.

Table 5. Among women who had had a tubal ligation, number and percentage distribution of perceived effects

Effect	N	%
General state of health		
Better	219	48.3
Worse	47	10.4
Same	187	41.3
Don't know	0	0.0
Capacity for physical work		
Stronger	174	38.4
Less strong	63	13.9
Same	216	47.7
Don't know	0	0.0
Disposition		
Better	109	24.1
Worse	32	7.1
Same	307	67.8
Don't know	5	1.1
Weight change		
Gained	222	49.0
Lost	78	17.2
Stayed the same	152	33.6
Don't know	1	0.2
Duration between menstrual cycles		
Shorter	82	18.1
Longer	102	22.5
Same	261	57.6
Don't know	8	1.8
Number of days of bleeding		
Greater	101	22.3
Less	80	17.7
No change	264	58.3
Don't know	8	1.7
Menstrual flow		
Increased	103	22.7
Decreased	99	21.9
No change	239	52.8
Don't know	12	2.6
Frequency of intercourse		
More frequent	93	20.5
Less frequent	64	14.1
Same	279	61.6
Don't know	17	3.8
Satisfaction with sex		
Greater	95	21.0
Less	43	9.5
No change	297	65.6
Don't know	18	4.0
Husband's behavior toward wife*		
Changed	27	6.5
Didn't change	384	92.5
Don't know	4	1.0
Husband tried to have children elsewhere*		
Yes	52	12.5
No	339	81.7
Don't know	24	5.7
Total	453	100.0

*Percentages are based on the 415 married respondents.

The variables that were significant (and that approached significance) were entered into a multiple logistic regression analysis (Table 6, column 2). Women who were still found to be at significant risk for regret after other variables in the model were controlled for were those who had five or fewer children; those who did not consider the operation to have been their own idea; those who had felt pressured into having the operation; and those whose husbands had tried to have children with other women after the operation. Interestingly, women whose husbands had recommended the operation were at least as likely to experience regret as those whose doctors had recommended it.

Almost two-thirds of the women interviewed had told other people (besides their husbands) that they had had the operation (not shown). One-half had recommended it to others. Among those who had not, the main reason was that they considered the matter to be private (48 percent). Other reasons given were that they did not want to be responsible for causing problems in other households (nine percent), did not approve of tubal ligation themselves (five percent) or were afraid of being mocked (three percent). Nine percent of those who had not discussed their tubal ligation said they would provide information if they were asked about it.

Discussion

The findings from this survey constitute one of the first studies on the social and psychological aspects of tubal ligation in Africa. Given the dearth of information on this topic from Africa, there may be a tendency to generalize these results to other countries in the region. We want to emphasize that this is not appropriate, given that the climate for contraceptive sterilization differs greatly among countries. For example, previous focus-group research showed that there is much less acceptance of tubal ligation as a contraceptive method in Zaire than in selected districts of Kenya.[15] However, the present study may reflect social and psychological processes related to sterilization in other cultural contexts.

The results provide a number of insights into the factors leading to and the consequences of tubal ligation for women in Zaire. Acceptors tend to be relatively advanced in the reproductive cycle (with a mean age of 36.9) and have an average of 7.3 living children at the time of the operation. The primary reason women gave for their tubal ligation was their health. Even when probed, less than 10 percent of the women stated that their primary motivation was economic difficulty.

Table 6. Among women who had had a tubal ligation, percentage who experienced regret and odds ratio after multiple logistic regression, by selected variables

Variable	%	Odds ratio
Total	**14.0**	**na**
Age at sterilization		
20–24	50.0	na
25–29	18.8	na
30–34	17.2	na
35–39	11.5	na
40–44	12.2	na
≥45	7.1	na
Education		
None	19.6*	1.0
1–3 years primary	12.0	0.7
4–6 years primary	8.9	0.5
Beyond primary	11.2	0.5
Religion		
Catholic	11.5	na
Protestant	13.7	na
Other	22.0	na
Marital status		
Married/in union	14.2	na
Single	7.9	na
No. of living children		
1–2	22.2***	5.4§,**
3–5	26.6***	§
6–8	12.2	1.6
≥9	7.5	1.0
Attitude toward last pregnancy		
Wanted	18.4***	1.0
Mistimed	11.1	0.7
Unwanted	5.1	0.6
Person who recommended the operation		
Respondent (with or without husband)	5.8	1.0
Medical personnel	25.0***	5.3**
Husband	35.1***	6.1**
Don't know	10.0	na
(continued)		
Had spoken to other woman with tubal ligation		
Yes	9.4	1.0
No	16.5*	1.5
Don't know	0.0	na
Reason for the operation		
Doctor recommended	30.0***	1.0
Health reasons	17.4	2.6
Had enough children	6.6	2.9
Other	5.6	1.4
Don't know	42.9	2.0
Respondent felt pressure		
No	8.0	1.0
Yes	49.2***	2.8
Health status after the operation		
Better	12.8	1.0
Worse**	25.5***	1.7
Same	11.8	1.9
Capacity for physical work		
Increased	11.5	1.0
Decreased	27.0***	1.3
Same	11.6	2.0
Husband's behavior toward wife†		
Changed	40.7***	1.0
Didn't change	12.5	0.4
Husband tried to have children elsewhere†		
Yes	40.4	1.0
No	9.1***	0.3**
Don't know	30.4	na

*Statistically different from other options at p<.10 by Pearson's chi-square test.

**Statistically different from other options at p<.05 by likelihood ratio estimate.

***Statistically different from other options at p<.001 by Pearson's chi-square test.

†Percentages are based on married women only.

§The categories for 1–2 children and 3–5 children were combined for odds ratio analysis.

Note: na=not applicable.

Because female sterilization is relatively new as a contraceptive option in Zaire, less emphasis has been given to the issue of informed consent in that country than in those where the method is widely accepted. Even so, the acceptors in this study did relatively well on two of the three indicators of informed consent: Over 96 percent knew tubal ligation was a permanent method and knew of at least one other contraceptive method.

However, 14 percent of the acceptors reported that they had felt pressured into having the operation, either by their doctors (which may indicate that there were compelling medical reasons) or by their husbands, who are traditionally the chief decision-makers in Zairian households. Future training of health personnel needs to emphasize the informed consent issue. The importance of reviewing alternative contraceptive methods prior to the operation (even if the client says she has already decided on the operation or knows of other methods already) should also be stressed.

The current study confirms the finding in the focus-group research that there is relatively little information on sterilization circulating through either the mass media or informal communication channels of Zaire.[16] Only 40 percent of the acceptors consulted with a woman who had undergone tubal ligation prior to the operation, compared with 80 percent in a similar study conducted among sterilization acceptors in El Salvador in 1984.[17] Moreover, only 50 percent of the Zairian acceptors had recommended the operation to others. In short, until sterilization becomes integrated into ongoing family planning programs and is more widely accepted by the population, the information, education and communication burden falls squarely on the shoulders of the service providers. Future programs in Zaire (and other African countries where contraceptive tubal ligation is just being introduced) must be designed with a strong information-education-communication component to compensate for the scarcity of information available through the mass media or informal communication channels.

In the majority of follow-up studies of sterilized women conducted in Latin America or Asia, the mean number of living children at the time of the operation averaged 3–4, compared with 7.3 in the current study. This confirms Odile Frank's contention that tubal ligation as currently practiced in Sub-Saharan Africa has little demographic impact on that region.[18] It also casts a slightly different light on the issue of choosing to undergo a sterilization procedure. This study does not describe a group of women who deliberately sought out a means of limiting family size to conform to an emerging small family norm. Rather, it describes the experience of a group of women who for the most part had had seven or more live births and who for health reasons believed it was best to stop bearing children. From the vantage point of some societies, this would be an easy decision, but these women live in a society that strongly disapproves of the unnecessary or premature cessation of childbearing.

In general, the women in this study were very positive about their operation. Most reported no change or a change for the better in their health, disposition and marital relations. The large majority were glad they had had the operation. However, the results regarding the 14 percent who had at least some regret over the operation deserve serious attention in future sterilization programs in Zaire. Future training courses should heighten awareness among health professionals that women who do not feel the operation was their own idea are more likely to experience regret. The two main sources of pressure in this study were the husband and the doctor.* Health personnel should be trained to look out for such cases and to provide additional counseling, aimed either at postponing the final decision until the woman is psychologically ready or at assisting her in accepting the reasons offered by her doctor or husband (which in this study primarily had to do with her own health, not with economic difficulties).

---

*It is ironic that in the previous focus-group research, the husband (and his family) was cited as a barrier to sterilization, whereas in this study pressure from the husband to have the operation emerges as an issue. While this factor is associated with regret, it should be stressed that it was reported by a very small fraction of the total number of women.

The earlier focus-group research in Zaire indicated the generally negative attitudes that prevail with regard to contraceptive tubal ligation in this country. However, participants in those focus groups who had undergone the operation were generally positive about their experience. The current study provides quantitative results that confirm the favorable experiences of sterilization acceptors expressed in the focus groups.

This study was conducted prior to any systematic effort on the part of the national family planning program to integrate tubal ligation into the ongoing contraceptive services available at the different sites studied. It will be interesting to follow changes in the attitudes of women who undergo tubal ligation as services are expanded and the method becomes more readily accessible.

References

1. W. P. Mauldin and S. S. Segal, "Prevalence of Contraceptive Use: Trends and Issues, *Studies in Family Planning*. **19**:335, 1988.

2. S. G. Philliber and W. W. Philliber, "Social and Psychological Perspectives on Voluntary Sterilization: A Review," *Studies in Family Planning*, **16**:1, 1985.

3 J. Caldwell and P. Caldwell, "The Cultural Context of High Fertility in Sub-Saharan Africa," *Population and Development Review*, **13**:409, 1987; and O. Frank, "The Demand for Fertility Control in Sub-Saharan Africa," *Studies in Family Planning*, **18**:181, 1987.

4. E. O. Otolorin, A. A. Adetunji and J. Dwyer, "Will Voluntary Sterilization Be Accepted in Africa?" *Communiqué*, **8**:3, 1987; and J. C. Dwyer and J. M. Haws, "Is Permanent Contraception Acceptable in Sub-Saharan Africa?" *Studies in Family Planning*, **21**:322, 1990.

5. J. M. Namboze and M. L. Kakande, "Some Aspects of Knowledge and Attitudes Toward Family Planning and Sterilization on the Peri-Urban Area of Kampala, Uganda," in N. Mwaniki et al., eds., *Surgical Contraception in Sub-Saharan Africa*, Pathfinder Fund, Chestnut Hill, Mass., 1979; M.K. Mwaniki, "Perceptions and Psychological Barriers Toward Contraception," in N. Mwaniki et al., eds., *Surgical Contraception in Sub-Saharan Africa*, Pathfinder Fund, Chestnut Hill, Mass., 1979; C. D. Lwanga, "Interval Voluntary Surgical Contraception Has Advantages of Sub-Saharan Africa, *Communiqué*, **5**:6, 1984; E. O. Otolorin et al., "Attitudes of Nigerians to Voluntary Sterilization: A Survey of an Urban Population," paper presented at Surgical Contraception Quality Assurance Conference, Jos, Plateau State, Nigeria, Oct. 19–22, 1987; A. E. Omu and F. Akagbosu, "VSC attitudes, knowledge and practices, University of Benin Teaching Hospital," paper presented at Surgical Contraception Quality Assurance Conference, Jos, Plateau State, Nigeria. Oct. 19–22, 1987; and E. Landry et al., "Pilot Information and Education Project to Increase Knowledge About Vasectomy," paper presented at the 116th Annual Meeting of the American Public Health Association, Boston, Nov. 13–17, 1988.

6. J. K. Mati, "Voluntary Sterilization at Kenyatta National Hospital, Nairobi," in N. Mwaniki et al., eds., *Surgical Contraception in Sub-Saharan Africa*, Pathfinder Fund, Chestnut Hill, Mass., 1979; S. Vohra, "The Place of Female Sterilization in a Developing Country," *Ethiopian Medical Journal*, **15**:5, 1977; and Family Health International, "Surveillance of Female Sterilization in Karawa, Zaire," paper presented at the United States Agency for International Development Health/Population and Nutrition Conference, Gettysburg, Pa., June 19–20, 1984.

7. K. Chibalonza, C. Chirhamolekwa and J. T. Bertrand, "Attitudes Toward Tubal Ligation Among Acceptors, Potential Candidates and Husbands in Zaire," *Studies in Family Planning*, **20**:273, 1989.

8. J. T. Bertrand et al., "Attitudes Toward Voluntary Surgical Contraception in Four Districts in Kenya," *Studies in Family Planning*, **20**:281, 1989.

9.B. Makani, N. Kinavwidi and A. Way, *Planification Familiale, Fécondité et Santé Familiale au Zaïre 1982–1984*, Institut National de la Statistique and Westinghouse Public Applied Systems, 1985.

10. J. Caldwell and P. Caldwell, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 3).

11. Tulane University, unpublished data sets from the Zaire Family Planning Operations Research Project, New Orleans, 1985–1990.

12. B. Makani, N. Kinavwidi and A. Way, 198[illegible], op. cit. (see reference 9).

13. Ibid.; Tulane University, Family Planning Operations Research Project in Zaire, final report, New Orleans, Sept. 1990.

14. K. Chibalonza, C. Chirhamolekwa and J. T. Bertrand, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 7).

15. Ibid.; and J. T. Bertrand et al., 1989, op. cit. (see reference 8).

16. K. Chibalonza, C. Chirhamolekwa and J. T. Bertrand, 1989, op. cit. (see reference 7).

17. J. T. Bertrand, E. G. Landry and J. D. A. Zelaya, "Is Female Sterilization Voluntary in El Salvador?" *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **12**:40, 1986.

18. O. Frank, 1987, op. cit. (see reference 3).

Resumen

Según una encuesta realizada entre 1987 y 1988 entre 453 mujeres del Zaire que se habían hecho ligar las trompas, en el momento de la intervención las entrevistadas tenían una edad promedio de 37 años y siete hijos vivos. El 92 por ciento eran casadas. De ellas, el 95 por ciento había consultado al marido antes de hacerse la operación. Sólo el 40 por ciento había hablado con otra mujer que había tenido el procedimiento y menos del 25 por ciento había conversado con otros familiares o amigas sobre la operación. Las dos razones principales aducidas para la operación fueron "salud" y "tengo suficientes hijos". La mayoría de las mujeres dijo que su salud, capacidad física y relaciones matrimoniales no habían cambiado en absoluto, o incluso habían mejorado. Sin embargo, el 14 por ciento admitió cierto arrepentimiento. El sentimiento se relacionaba a haber tenido cinco hijos o menos, haber decidido esterilizarse bajo presión, y creer que el marido había tratado de tener hijos con otra mujer. Si bien las mujeres se manifestaban en general a favor de la esterilización, se mostraban renuentes a hablar abiertamente del tema con amigas y vecinas.

Résumé

Une enquête menée en 1987–1988 auprès de 453 Zaïroises ayant subi une opération de ligature de trompes a établi que ces femmes, en moyenne, étaient âgées de 37 ans et avaient sept enfants vivants au moment de l'opération. Quatre-vingt-douze pour cent d'entre elles étaient mariées et, de ces femmes mariées, 95 pour cent avaient consulté leur époux avant de se soumettre à la procédure. Quarante pour cent seulement des femmes interrogées avaient consulté d'autres femmes qui avaient subi l'opération avant de s'y soumettre elles-mêmes, et moins de 25 pour cent avaient discuté l'opération avec d'autres membres de leur famille ou avec des amies. Les deux raisons principales avancées pour justifier l'opération étaient des raisons de "santé" et de "nombre d'enfants suffisants". La plupart des femmes interrogées ont affirmé n'avoir perçu aucun changement, sinon une amélioration pour certaines, au niveau de leur état de santé général, de leur résistance à l'effort physique et de leurs relations matrimoniales. Cependant, 14 pour cent ont toutefois admis avoir éprouvé un certain regret après l'opération; ce regret était associé au fait d'avoir au plus cinq enfants, le fait de se sentir forcées de prendre leur décision ou à l'impression que leur époux avait essayé d'avoir des enfants avec d'autres femmes. Bien qu'envisageant la stérilisation de manière généralement positive, ces femmes étaient toutefois peu disposées à en parler ouvertement.

International Family Planning Perspectives is available in microform through University Microfilms International, 300 North Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, Michigan 48106, USA, and is indexed in the following sources:

Abstracts on Hygiene and Communicable Diseases
Current Literature in Family Planning
Excerpta Medica
PAIS Bulletin
Population Index
Studies on Women Abstracts
Tropical Diseases Bulletin

Comment

South Asia's Future Population: Are There Really Grounds for Optimism?

By Richard Leete and Gavin Jones

Introduction

South Asia—Bangladesh, India, Nepal, Pakistan and Sri Lanka—totals over one billion people, more than one-fifth of mankind, and its countries contribute more than those of any other geographic subregion to world population growth. South Asia contains the bulk of the world's poor, and thus is an area of major concern. Even the most optimistic forecasts indicate huge growth to be almost certain over the coming decades. About 200 million persons will be added by the year 2000, even if fertility declines rapidly. Some consider that South Asia's growth rate will moderate thereafter as fertility moves toward replacement level, but evidence that the demographic transition will have run its course by then is far from convincing.

In South Asia, endemic poverty, social conservatism, the low status of women, and ethnic and religious conflicts constrain government policies, severely reducing the possibility of sustained economic growth or the development of strong family planning programs. Freedom from this combination of factors has been a major reason for the successful fertility transitions of countries in East Asia and Southeast Asia. In this article, we assess the United Nations (UN) and World Bank population projections* for this region against the realities of the South Asian context and present an alternative scenario. We conclude by considering some of the more important socioeconomic effects of rapid population growth and the implications for family planning programs.

Methodological Issues

The starting point in projecting the population is the base-year age and sex distribution, generally taken from the most recent census. Any errors contained in these data persist throughout the projection period and can seriously distort the results; age misreporting and underenumeration were severe in the 1981 censuses in South Asia. Although problems of age misreporting can be reduced using smoothing techniques,[1] problems of census underenumeration are less readily overcome.† Postenumeration surveys frequently understate levels of underenumeration, mainly because the methodology is not entirely independent of the census itself; hence, groups that are particularly difficult to enumerate, such as babies and young migrants, tend to be missed in both.‡

The UN and the World Bank use the latest census-derived age distribution and correct it for errors in age reporting. However, the World Bank corrects only for official estimates of underenumeration, if these are made, whereas the UN further adjusts on the basis of its own assessment of coverage completeness. Short-term differences between their population forecasts are almost entirely the result of differences in base population figures.

- *Assumptions.* Formulating assumptions about the components of population change becomes increasingly speculative the longer into the future one looks.[2] No single model should be applied without considering its contextual appropriateness. Nevertheless, a common approach is to assume that mortality rates continue to improve, although at a declining pace, until reaching some upper asymptote, and that fertility declines to replacement level. Net migration is presumed to follow recent trends. Although international labor migration and refugee movements have important social and economic consequences (for Sri Lanka and Pakistan in particular), they have hardly any impact on population growth in South Asia taken as a whole, and are not considered here.
- *Mortality.* Projections of mortality require judgments about the pace of improvement and the pattern that underlies the assumed level. The UN and the World Bank project mortality on the basis of life expectancy at birth and sets of model life-table survivorship ratios.[3] The UN assumes that, given a level of life expectancy at birth in the base year, there will be a five-year improvement of 2.5 years until life expectancy reaches 55 years, after which it assumes a progressively slower quinquennial gain.[4] The World Bank also assumes that future gains decrease with increasing life expectancy, with the pace determined by its current level.[5] The mod-

---

Richard Leete is an adviser in demography in the Economic Planning Unit, Prime Minister's Department, Malaysia. Gavin Jones is coordinator of the Demography Program in the Division of Demography and Sociology at The Australian National University, Canberra. The authors are grateful for the helpful comments of Kwok Kwan Kit, Warwick Neville and Jerry Huguet. The views expressed in this paper are solely those of the authors.

*The UN makes biennial population projections for about 45 years into the future, its central projections being flanked by two variants. (See: UN, *World Population Prospects as Assessed in 1980,* Population Studies No. 78, New York, 1981; ——, *World Population Prospects: Estimates and Projections as Assessed in 1982,* Population Studies No. 86, New York, 1985; and reference 4.) The World Bank makes annual population projections for the short term and the medium term, and for up to the year 2150. (See, for example, World Bank, *World Development Report 1988,* Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1988; for a detailed account, see K. C. Zachariah and M. T. Vu, *World Population Projections, 1987–88 Edition: Short- and Long-Term Estimates,* The John Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, Md., 1988.) Although the World Bank's projections draw on statistics compiled and estimated by the UN, the benchmark data, approach and methodology differ somewhat.

†For example, in the official 1981-based projections for India, the large adjustments made for census undercoverage among 0–4-year-olds were compensated for by a downward adjustment of the population totals at older ages. (See: V. S. Verma, *Population Projections for India, 1981–2001,* Census of India 1981, Series 1, New Delhi, 1984.) Although this type of approach avoids age distortions in the projected age distribution, it also gives rise to errors in the projected totals.

‡Severe age misreporting and underenumeration of young children have important implications for fertility estimates for South Asian countries made using reverse survival techniques. These problems are not fully overcome simply by using smoothed populations, and frequently underestimate true fertility levels. (See J. R. Rele, "Fertility Levels and Trends in India, 1951–81," *Population and Development Review,* 13:513, 1987.)

eled rate of change is similar to the UN assumption, but is allowed to vary according to whether more or less than 70 percent of females are enrolled in primary school.

Table 1. United Nations and World Bank projections of life expectancy at birth and total fertility rate, by period being forecast and year forecast was made, according to sex and country

Sex and country	Forecast period and year it was made											
	1985–1990				1995–2000				2020–2025			
	1980	1982	1984	1987–1988	1980	1982	1984	1987–1988	1980	1982	1984	1987–1988
LIFE EXPECTANCY												
United Nations												
Males												
Bangladesh	50	50	50	51	55	54	54	55	65	62	62	65
India	54	55	58	58	59	59	62	62	67	67	70	70
Nepal	49	49	49	52	53	53	53	57	64	62	62	67
Pakistan	55	53	53	57	59	57	57	61	67	66	66	70
Sri Lanka	66	68	68	68	68	70	70	71	71	73	73	75
Females												
Bangladesh	49	49	49	50	54	53	53	55	66	63	63	66
India	53	54	58	58	58	58	63	63	69	69	74	74
Nepal	47	47	47	50	52	51	51	56	64	62	62	68
Pakistan	54	51	51	57	58	56	56	62	69	66	66	72
Sri Lanka	70	71	72	73	72	74	75	75	77	78	79	79
World Bank												
Males												
Bangladesh	u	u	50	51	u	u	54	54	u	u	63	63
India	u	u	57	57	u	u	61	61	u	u	67	67
Nepal	u	u	48	48	u	u	51	51	u	u	60	60
Pakistan	u	u	53	53	u	u	56	56	u	u	64	64
Sri Lanka	u	u	69	68	u	u	71	69	u	u	74	72
Females												
Bangladesh	u	u	51	50	u	u	56	55	u	u	67	66
India	u	u	57	57	u	u	62	62	u	u	71	71
Nepal	u	u	47	47	u	u	52	52	u	u	64	64
Pakistan	u	u	51	51	u	u	56	56	u	u	67	67
Sri Lanka	u	u	73	73	u	u	75	75	u	u	78	78
TOTAL FERTILITY RATE												
United Nations												
Bangladesh	5.7	5.5	5.5	5.5	4.5	4.3	4.3	4.7	2.3	2.5	2.5	2.3
India	3.9	3.8	3.7	4.5	3.1	2.9	2.9	3.7	2.0	1.9	1.9	2.1
Nepal	5.8	5.8	5.8	5.9	4.9	4.9	4.9	5.1	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.3
Pakistan	5.2	5.3	5.3	6.5	3.9	4.1	4.1	5.2	2.3	2.3	2.2	2.3
Sri Lanka	3.1	2.9	2.9	2.7	2.4	2.3	2.2	2.3	2.0	1.8	1.8	2.1
World Bank												
Bangladesh	u	u	6.3	5.3	u	u	5.4	3.9	u	u	2.8	2.3
India	u	u	4.2	4.2	u	u	3.1	3.2	u	u	2.2	2.2
Nepal	u	u	6.2	6.2	u	u	5.5	5.6	u	u	3.1	3.1
Pakistan	u	u	5.8	6.3	u	u	5.0	5.1	u	u	2.8	2.8
Sri Lanka	u	u	3.1	3.0	u	u	2.4	2.4	u	u	2.1	2.1

Note: u=unavailable

The UN and World Bank forecasts of life expectancy at birth for a particular country can differ sharply (see Table 1). The main differences in their most recent assessments, the more optimistic UN forecasts for Nepal and Pakistan, are only partly explained by differences in their base-period estimates. In general, the UN mortality projections for South Asia have become more optimistic, and envisage a modernization of mortality levels over the next three decades.

Is such optimism justified? Although public health measures have controlled some infectious diseases, such as malaria and tuberculosis, other diarrheal and infectious diseases are still prevalent in parts of South Asia. Forecasts of further improvements implicitly assume better nutrition, sanitation and housing, as well as a progressive reduction in poverty through general welfare gains. However, although the economies of India and Pakistan have performed better in recent years, the South Asian economies as a whole may not be strong enough to sustain continuous and rapid welfare gains. Moreover, their health and welfare programs are not as far-reaching as those that have been responsible for low levels of mortality in China, for example. The available data are insufficiently robust to establish how much the South Asian populations were affected by economic recessions and by localized droughts and famines during the 1980s. Future gains in life expectancy may well be checked at times, and even reversed.

- *Fertility.* Projections of fertility require one to make judgments about the pace of change and about the age pattern of the underlying fertility rates. In South Asia, fertility is more important in the growth equation and generally more difficult to forecast than is mortality. A given proportionate error in fertility estimates has a far greater impact on subsequent population size than the same proportionate error in mortality estimates.

The UN uses tables of model paths of decline in the gross reproduction rate,[*] with replacement-level fertility as a normative target.[6] The length of time needed to reach replacement is determined by considering factors such as fertility in the base year, the level of socioeconomic development, cultural and value systems, population size and the extent of contraceptive use. Given a particular path of decline in the gross reproduction rates, the underlying pattern of age-specific fertility rates for the assumed levels is determined from a regional model.

The World Bank's starting point is an assumption about the year in which a country's net reproduction rate[†] will reach unity. In its 1987–1988 assessment, this was determined on the basis of female life expectancy at birth and the estimated total fertility rate (TFR) during 1985–1990, changes in the birthrate between 1970 and 1980, and contraceptive prevalence. Fertility decline is projected to be slow at first, when levels are high, and to pick up when levels are somewhat lower. The underlying age pattern is determined through the use of the World Bank's model.

In the fertility projections prepared in

---

[*] The gross reproduction rate represents the average number of daughters born to women of reproductive age, subject to currently prevailing age-specific female birthrates. It is a measure of the extent to which the population of females of childbearing ages is replacing itself, without taking into account the effects of mortality.

[†] The net reproduction rate (NRR) represents the average number of daughters born to women of reproductive age, subject to currently prevailing age-specific female birthrates and female survivorship rates. It is a measure of the extent to which the population of females of childbearing ages is replacing itself, taking into account mortality up to the end of the reproductive ages. When the NRR equals 1.0, this means that a generation of mothers is producing sufficient daughters to exactly replace itself.

Table 2. Population projections (in millions) for countries of South Asia by the United Nations and World Bank, by year of assessment, according to country

Country	Projection year and year of assessment											
	1985				2000				2025			
	1980	1982	1984	1987–1988	1980	1982	1984	1987–1988	1980	1982	1984	1987–1988
UNITED NATIONS												
South Asia	**987**	**997**	**993**	**1,007**	**1,293**	**1,294**	**1,294**	**1,399**	**1,722**	**1,681**	**1,717**	**2,007**
Bangladesh	101	101	101	101	148	146	146	151	223	219	219	235
India	753	761	759	769	961	962	964	1,043	1,234	1,189	1,229	1,446
Nepal	16	16	16	17	23	23	23	24	34	34	34	35
Pakistan	100	102	100	103	140	143	141	162	206	213	210	267
Sri Lanka	16	16	16	16	21	21	20	19	27	26	24	24
WORLD BANK												
South Asia	**u**	**u**	**994**	**994**	**u**	**u**	**1,336**	**1,326**	**u**	**u**	**1,871**	**1,825**
Bangladesh	u	u	103	101	u	u	157	140	u	u	266	205
India	u	u	765	765	u	u	994	996	u	u	1,309	1,312
Nepal	u	u	17	17	u	u	24	24	u	u	40	41
Pakistan	u	u	93	96	u	u	140	146	u	u	229	242
Sri Lanka	u	u	16	16	u	u	21	20	u	u	27	25

Note: u=unavailable.

1984, the World Bank assumed substantially higher TFRs for Bangladesh, Nepal and Pakistan around the year 2000 than did the UN (Table 1), partly because it estimated higher base-year TFRs and partly because it assumed a less rapid decline. In its 1987–1988 projections, the World Bank sharply lowered its estimates of Bangladeshi fertility, both for the late 1980s and for the year 2000, bringing the former (but not the latter) in line with UN estimates.

The fertility levels assumed by the UN were subject to considerable revisions between 1984 and 1987–1988. Its overoptimistic 1984 assessments of the probable level of fertility in India and Pakistan at the year 2000 have been revised sharply upward in the light of slower-than-expected fertility declines. (Indeed, in the case of Pakistan, there has been no proven fertility decline at all.) In its 1988 assessment, the UN assumes that most South Asian couples will be having an average of about 3.5 children or more by the year 2000. But the upward revision in fertility projections to the end of this century has not been carried forward to the period 2020–2025, for which earlier fertility projections remain essentially unchanged. In other words, the statistically tidy progression to replacement level has been maintained, through the assumption that the pace of fertility decline would quicken in the first quarter of the next century. The World Bank's fertility assumptions are similar, except that it forecasts significantly greater declines by the year 2000 in Bangladesh and India. Both organizations give credence to the idea that fertility will tend towards a two-child norm in the first quarter of the next century.

Analyzing the Projections

The effect of the upward revisions in the UN's assumed future fertility (and life expectancy) is that the more recent the assessment, the larger South Asia's population is expected to be (see Table 2). Thus, in its 1980 assessment, the UN forecast that India's population would be 40 million short of 1 billion in the year 2000, while in its most recent assessment it projected India's year-2000 population to be 1.043 billion. The proportionate increase in the forecasts for Pakistan over the same period is even greater. As a result of the revisions made over the past eight years, South Asia's population is now forecast to be more than 100 million larger by the year 2000, and almost 300 million larger by 2025, than had been projected in 1980.

Differences in projections for South Asia in the most recent assessments are brought into sharper focus in Table 3. In the base year of 1985, there is little difference between the two projections except that the World Bank's population base for Pakistan is a remarkable seven million (seven percent) smaller. The World Bank's assumption of a more rapid drop in fertility in Bangladesh and India leads to an increasing disparity between its projections and those of the UN.

The UN and World Bank projections imply that annual growth rates will fall sharply for each of the countries in South Asia between 1985 and 2025. Although replacement-level fertility will be attained sometime during the first quarter of the next century, annual population growth rates will remain at or above one percent, because of age-structure effects. This, of course, means that the population will continue to grow significantly for several decades after 2025.

Although population projections are not predictions, projections prepared by international agencies are frequently used as "most likely" scenarios, since these agencies are in a better position than most to evaluate the trends in the components of population change and their underlying determinants. The UN and World Bank projection models assume progression towards a stationary state, but is the application of such optimistic and mechanical models to each of the countries of South Asia appropriate? Could it reflect an unwillingness to entertain the serious implications of higher fertility scenarios? Although it is commendable to maintain a dispassionate perspective and avoid alarmism, creating a false sense of inevitability is not necessarily desirable.

For example, it is not self-evident that South Asian fertility trends are on a path that will inevitably lead to replacement level within a few decades. For some of the South Asian countries, that level appears inconsistent with prevailing value systems, as well as with the political and religious contexts within which family planning programs and population policies are being implemented. Considerable diversity in fertility levels in the short and medium term is at least as likely an outcome as convergence on replacement level.

Women's status and their lack of opportunity to engage in fulfilling roles other than childbearing is generally accepted as a crucial

Table 3. Difference between World Bank and United Nations population projection for South Asia,* by projected year, according to country

Country	1985		2000		2025	
	Diff. (in millions)	% diff.	Diff. (in millions)	% diff.	Diff. (in millions)	% diff.
Total	**–12.4**	**–1.3**	**–72.7**	**–5.2**	**–181.7**	**–9.1**
Bangladesh	–0.6	–0.5	–10.8	–7.2	–30.2	–12.9
India	–4.0	–0.5	–46.7	–4.5	–133.8	–9.3
Nepal	–0.4	–2.3	0.4	1.7	6.1	17.5
Pakistan	–7.1	–6.8	–16.3	–10.0	–25.2	–9.4
Sri Lanka	–0.3	–1.7	0.7	3.7	1.5	5.9

*Expressed as UN projections subtracted from World Bank projections (1987–1988 assessment).

Table 4. Selected socioeconomic indicators, by country, according to year

Country	% of labor force in agriculture		% urban		% of women enrolled in secondary schooling		GNP per capita (in $U.S.)	% of married women 15–49 using a method	Infant deaths per 1,000 live births
	1965	1980	1965	1985	1965	1985	1986	1985	1986
Bangladesh	84	75	6	18	3	10	160	25	121
India	73	70	19	25	13	24	290	35	86
Nepal	94	93	4	7	2	11	150	15	130
Sri Lanka	56	53	20	21	35	67	400	62	29
Pakistan	60	55	24	29	5	9	350	11	111

Source: World Bank, *World Development Report 1987*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1987; and ——, *World-Development Report 1988*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1988.

determinant of fertility levels. Throughout most of South Asia, females have little freedom for independent action. Arranged marriages at young ages to husbands often considerably older, cultural proscriptions against working outside the home, reliance on men (father, husband and sons) throughout their lives and the likelihood of destitution if they are left without sons after widowhood are powerful pronatalist forces throughout Pakistan, Bangladesh and most of India.[7]

What is the theoretical basis for the "inescapable progression to replacement level" that underlies assumptions of World Bank and UN projections? Conventional demographic transition theory would imply that fertility depends on factors such as urbanization, an expanded role of nonhousehold enterprise, the growth of education, and the effect of consumerism in increasing the demand for goods that may compete with children. Likely trends in these variables in countries such as Pakistan, Bangladesh and Nepal do not in themselves justify the assumption that replacement fertility will be attained in the foreseeable future. The assumptions are no doubt also influenced by diffusion theories, often cited to explain the sharp fertility declines in many East Asian and Southeast Asian countries.[8] Such theories emphasize the dissemination of innovations and of new ideas, assisted by developments in transport and communications. Although the potential for such dissemination is certainly increasing in the region, the impact on fertility is probably muted because of the familial and social structure and the lack of female autonomy.

Other factors frequently mentioned to explain Southeast Asian fertility declines, notably institutional factors and the independent impact of government-organized family planning programs, seem unlikely because family planning program performance has been disappointing up to this point.[9] Despite the early start on official family planning programs in India and Pakistan, a strong and meaningful institutional basis for fertility decline (observed, for example, in Indonesia[10]) seems to be lacking. In India, government backing for population control and family planning has been an integral part of each of its seven Five-Year Plans for social and economic development.[11] However, the program's uniform application across the country, its overemphasis on sterilization and its preoccupation with targets has meant that it has been least successful in those parts of the country where it is most needed.* A combination of developments, although modest, regarding a number of factors could lead to the kinds of fertility trends assumed in the UN and World Bank projections. This appears reasonable for Sri Lanka and some Indian states (such as Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Punjab and Maharastra), but for the mass of the South Asian populations it seems overoptimistic.

Has the take-off point for sustained fertility reduction been reached? The World Bank categorizes Bangladesh and Nepal among the five poorest countries of the world; India, Pakistan and Sri Lanka are somewhat better off, but are still ranked as low-income economies in the company of the 20 poorest nations of the world. World Bank indicators also show South Asian populations to be overwhelmingly rural and engaged primarily in agriculture (Table 4). Except for Sri Lanka, infant mortality rates are high and female literacy is low, as is the proportion of married women practicing contraception. Very few people are covered by old-age pensions.

Further, urbanization, the structure of employment and the extent of female education have not altered radically over the past 15–20 years. By 1985, levels of female education in Pakistan, Bangladesh and Nepal were similar to those reached 20 years earlier in Indonesia and Thailand, and were well below those reached in Malaysia and the Philippines two decades ago. Indonesia and Thailand launched their impressive fertility declines from relatively low educational thresholds, but the South Asian countries lack many of their favorable preconditions. Nor can it be assumed that once a fertility decline starts, it will necessarily continue. An initial decline, perhaps in response to later marriage caused by the growth in education, does not always lead to a continuous and sustained reduction in expected and achieved family size, as shown by the Malays in Malaysia[12] and, to a lesser extent, by countries such as Costa Rica.[13]

Family planning programs in South Asia, which have attempted to reduce fertility by increasing the availability of modern forms of birth control, have a fairly long history.[14] However, outside of Sri Lanka and some states of India, the programs have been largely ineffectual and organizationally weak, and have had little impact on fertility.† The reasons are complex, although one—the still high levels of mortality, particularly in the early years of life—is obvious enough. In the religious, social and familial context of most South Asian societies, planners and politicians, as well as the wider public, appear to be ambivalent about the more radical changes needed in the social structure and in the status of women to bring fertility rates down.‡

---

*Recognition of this fact was made in 1989 by Rajiv Gandhi, then Indian Prime Minister, in his inaugural address to the 21st General Conference of the International Union for the Scientific Study of Population. (See: R. Gandhi, "Inaugural Address to the 21st International Population Conference," New Delhi, Sept. 20, 1989; excerpted in "Gandhi Addresses the World on Family Planning," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, 15:106, 1989.) In that address, Gandhi called for a de-emphasis on uniform targets throughout the country and for a greater focus on area-specific projects for reducing fertility.

†Of course, the efficacy of family planning programs cannot be assessed simply by looking for correlations between trends in contraceptive prevalence rates and crude birthrates. The divergent trends in these indicators in India between 1978 and 1985, for example, indicated the growing weight of spacing methods in the aggregate prevalence rates, but told little else. (See: W. C. Robinson, "Rising Contraceptive Prevalence and Constant Fertility: A Paradox from the Indian Programme," paper presented at the Registrar General of India/East-West Population Institute South Asia Population Conference, New Delhi, Mar. 14–20, 1989.)

‡This point is relevant in considering whether the outstanding success of the Matlab family planning project in reaching almost 50 percent contraceptive prevalence in a poor rural area of Bangladesh in just eight years is replicable in the government program. (See: J. F. Phillips et al., "Determinants of Reproductive Change in a Traditional Society: Evidence from Matlab, Bangladesh," *Studies in Family Planning*, 19:313, 1988.) The answer is unlikely to be positive. Besides commanding an impressive array of resources, the Matlab project used a carefully designed organizing strategy, fieldworkers whose level of training and dedication cannot be matched in the government program, and supervisory and management staff committed to making the program a success.

Table 5. Alternative assumptions for life expectancy and total fertility in South Asia, by country, according to year

Country	Life expectancy				Total fertility rate	
	1985		2010		1985	2010
	Males	Females	Males	Females		
Bangladesh	50.8	50.1	59.8	60.1	5.5	4.0
India	57.4	56.7	66.4	66.7	4.5	3.5
Nepal	48.3	47.2	57.3	57.2	6.2	4.5
Sri Lanka	52.5	51.3	61.3	61.3	6.5	4.5
Pakistan	68.0	72.5	72.5	77.0	3.0	2.1

A recent review of the fragile data available for three of the countries of South Asia finds evidence of some decline in fertility in Bangladesh, but not in Nepal or Pakistan; a possible rise in fertility in Pakistan could not be ruled out.[15] The review observes that there is considerable ambivalence concerning family planning among the predominantly Islamic populations of Pakistan and Bangladesh, and concludes that even with the acceptance of birth control, women in these countries would still want an average of around four children.

An Alternative Scenario

What might the population of South Asia total over the next two decades under less optimistic, although plausible, assumptions about fertility and mortality? An illustrative projection (not necessarily a "most likely" outcome projection) covering the period 1985–2010 was run for each of the countries of South Asia, with assumptions as shown in Table 5. According to our projection, one-quarter of the decline in fertility and the increase in life expectancy is projected to occur by the midpoint of the period, and the remaining three-quarters in the second half. In other words, only very modest declines in fertility and improvements in life expectancy are assumed over most of the 1990s.

The results indicate that South Asia's population would grow from just over one billion in 1985 to 1.4 billion in 2000 and to almost 1.8 billion in 2010 (Table 6). The projection for the year 2000 is some 100 million greater than that of the World Bank and 27 million greater than that of the UN. Thereafter, the differential widens: By 2010, the respective differences become a staggering 230 million and almost 100 million.

Thus, slower fertility decline than forecast by the UN and the World Bank inevitably means that the population of South Asia will both become much larger and contain within itself the momentum for larger increases as the 21st century progresses. In our projections, the annual growth rates of South Asia are still above two percent after the first decade of the next century.

A continuing feature of these populations, except for Sri Lanka's, is their young age-structures, which give rise to exceptionally high child-dependency burdens. Throughout the period 1985–2010, more than 50 percent of the people in Bangladesh, Nepal and Pakistan will be children and youths below 21 years of age. Moreover, South Asia will have 72 children and elders for every 100 working-age people (aged 15–64) in the year 2000, and 67 per 100 in 2010, which are very high dependency levels.

Socioeconomic Implications

South Asia's population will increase massively over the coming decades whichever of the scenarios discussed occurs. This increase will entail continued high government expenditures to improve levels of education and health.[16] In the sphere of education, the countries of South Asia will continue to compare unfavorably not only with more industrialized countries but with most of East Asia and Southeast Asia. At present, South Asian countries have both lower mean school expenditures per child and fewer teachers per pupil than either of these groups of countries. Their much younger age-structure means that they will continue to have almost twice the proportion of their population in the younger ages, compared with western countries and several East Asian countries. They will require continued high government expenditures to improve levels of education—expenditures that have a high cost in lost opportunities in other areas of potentially productive investment.

T. Paul Schultz has shown that over a wide cross-section of countries, the proportion of a nation's gross domestic product that is devoted to education is not related to the relative size of the school-age population, thus implying that larger school-age cohorts are associated with lower expenditures per pupil.[17] When this finding is placed in a human resource development context, it might appear to conflict with the argument that rapid population growth poses difficult resource issues in relation to educational expenditures. However, the key is educational quality. The expansion of enrollment at a modest cost per head hides a multitude of educational problems facing South Asian countries: ill-equipped schools, low-paid and poorly trained teachers, rote learning and high dropout rates, all making for a repetitive cycle of educational mediocrity. This is in dramatic contrast with what can be achieved by investing a steady share of the government budget in education, as is the case in Thailand, where economic growth is rapid and fertility has declined sharply.[18]

Over the coming two decades, the growth rate of the labor force of South Asia will be at least as high as that of the population. Even if fertility starts to decline rapidly, the initial effect will be on the primary school population, and there will be no short-term slowing in the growth of the labor force. The question is not so much whether the economies of South Asia will be able to generate sufficient employment to cope with the ever-growing working-age population, but what sort of employment it will be, and with what sort of earnings. Even if increases in the gross national product can reach a healthy figure of around five percent per year on a sustained basis, this will barely manage to absorb increments to the labor force of three percent per year, allowing for modest increases in labor productivity.

South Asian countries have access to readily transferable capital-intensive technologies, and despite labor surpluses, much of their investment in recent years has been capital intensive—for example, in the petrochemical and heavy electrical sectors. Industrial employment will be able to absorb only a small part of the growth in labor supply, given its present low share of total employment and the enormous potential for labor shedding in some sectors (such as textiles) as a result of the adoption of new techniques. Government employment is also unlikely to grow rapidly, as efficiency considerations require a reduction in the numbers of redundant clerks and messengers.

The urban informal sector and the agricultural sector will therefore be required to play an important role in employing new entrants to the labor force, thus maintaining a dualistic labor market characterized by very wide differences in earnings. In the case of agriculture, further labor absorption will require either an expansion in the land base or an increase in labor intensity per hectare through increased irrigation, double-cropping and other labor-intensive technology. In practice, the ability of the agricultural sector to employ huge labor increases in food grain production appears limited, and the prospects for significant increases in productivity (and income) per worker in agriculture appear bleak, as long as the numbers seeking work in this sector continue to grow.

These educational and employment problems can be expected to produce undesirable effects, delaying fertility reduction by hindering the movement of women into the paid labor force. Perpetuation of a surplus labor situation, along with the strong cultural and normative objections to an expanded role for women, is hardly conducive to a rapid movement of women into modern-sector employment.

Continued rapid population growth and urbanization can also be expected to interact in ways that will be detrimental to development. Given the huge rural population of South Asia and low urbanization levels, massive urban growth will result from adding only a modest rate of rural outmigration to the natural increase of urban populations.[19] This will be enough to cause great difficulties in the provision of urban infrastructure and even a minimal standard of housing; at present, 30–40 percent of the population of large Indian cities such as Calcutta, Bombay, Delhi, Madras and Ahmadabad are estimated to live in slums or as pavement dwellers.[20] Yet, because these countries have such large and growing rural populations, massive growth of the cities will not result in a very rapid rise in the overall level of urbanization.

Conclusion

In general, continued substantial population growth in South Asia will inhibit the shift toward an urban-industrial economy by generating increases in the labor force too rapid to be absorbed into modern-sector employment, therefore requiring further "piling up" of a large proportion of new job seekers in agriculture and in the informal sector.

Meanwhile, the high-technology niches, as modern as any in the world but absorbing relatively little labor, will continue to expand in countries such as India and Pakistan. Although they will undoubtedly generate some further employment opportunities, many of these developments are of an enclave character, and will serve to heighten prevailing stark income disparities.[21] These disparities are not only interpersonal and interclass, but interregional, and their exacerbation is likely to heighten ethnic and communal differences and lead to political tensions.

Table 6. Alternative population projections for South Asia, by country and year

Country	1985 (base)	2000	2010
South Asia	**1,007**	**1,426**	**1,764**
Bangladesh	101	150	192
India	769	1,066	1,300
Nepal	17	25	32
Pakistan	103	164	216
Sri Lanka	16	21	24

Source: Projections computed by the authors, based on assumptions in Table 5.

In painting this relatively bleak scenario, we are aware that 20 years ago, pessimists might have predicted continued rapid population growth and slow economic growth in countries such as Thailand and Indonesia, but these countries have instead undergone remarkable transformations. Even so, the preconditions were arguably different, in terms of factors such as the scope for settlement of new lands, the ability of the government to impose its will at the village level, the strength of entrepreneurial groups and, perhaps most important, the relative autonomy of women. We acknowledge that our pessimistic scenario is no more than a foil to the more optimistic UN and World Bank scenarios, and we would be delighted if it were proved wrong. However, such a scenario is sufficiently plausible to be taken more seriously than it has been up to this time by international organizations preparing population projections.

Policy will need to move in concerted fashion on a number of fronts in South Asia if rates of population growth are to be brought close to a balance between low fertility and low mortality within the next few decades. Unfortunately, the less perseverance shown now in tackling the underlying social and institutional obstacles to rapid fertility decline, the more likely it is that more draconian population policies will eventually be contemplated.

References

1. K. Hill, H. Zlotnik and J. Durch, *Procedures for Reducing the Effects of Age Errors on Indirect Demographic Estimation Techniques*, Laboratories for Population Statistics, Scientific Report Series No. 35, Chapel Hill, N.C., 1982.

2. P. Demeny, "A Perspective on Long-Term Population Growth," *Population and Development Review*, **10**:103, 1984.

3. United Nations (UN), *Model Life Tables for Developing Countries*, Population Studies No. 77, New York, 1982; and A. Coale and P. Demeny, *Regional Model Life Tables and Stable Populations*, 2nd ed., Academic Press, New York, 1983.

4. UN, *World Population Prospects 1988*, Population Studies No. 106, New York, 1989.

5. M. T. Vu, *World Population Projections 1984: Short- and Long-Term Estimates by Age and Sex with Related Demographic Statistics*, The World Bank, Washington, D.C., 1984.

6. Y. C. Yu, "The Use of the United Nations Computer Programme for Population Projections," in UN Department of Technical Cooperation for Development, *Population Projections: Problems and Solutions*, New York, 1981.

7. M. Cain, "Perspectives on Family and Fertility in Developing Countries," *Population Studies*, **36**:159, 1982; T. Dyson and M. Moore, "On Kinship Structure, Female Autonomy and Demographic Behaviour in India," *Population and Development Review*, **9**:35, 1983; W. B. Arthur and G. McNicoll, "An Analytical Survey of Population and Development in Bangladesh," *Population and Development Review*, **4**:23, 1978; J. C. Caldwell, *Theory of Fertility Decline*, Academic Press, New York, 1982; and Economic and Social Council on Asia and the Pacific, Population Division, "Female Autonomy and Fertility: An Overview of the Situation in South Asia," *Asia-Pacific Population Journal*, Vol. 2, No. 4, 1987, p. 43.

8. J. C. Cleland and C. Wilson, "Demand Theories of Fertility Transition: An Iconoclastic View," *Population Studies*, **41**:5, 1987.

9. W. C. Robinson, M. A. Shah and N. M. Shah, "The Family Planning Program in Pakistan: What Went Wrong?" *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **7**:85, 1981; Z. A. Sathar, "Pakistan's Fertility Control Policy," in K. Mahadevan, ed., *Fertility Policies of Asian Countries*, Sage Publications, New Delhi, 1989; B. E. Khuda, "Population Control in Bangladesh: The Prospects," in G. W. Jones, ed., *Demographic Transition in Asia*, Maruzan Asia, Singapore, 1984; and D. Banerji, "Population Policies and Programmes in India During the Last Ten Years," and P.S. Bhatia, "India's Family Planning Programme: Emerging Issues," in S. N. Singh et al., eds., *Population Transition in India*, Vol. 1, B.R. Publishing Corp., Delhi, 1989.

10. T. H. Hull, "Fertility Decline in Indonesia: An Institutionalist Interpretation," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **13**:90, 1987.

11. S. K. Alok, "Family Planning in India: Policies, Goals and Programmes," paper presented at the Registrar General of India/East-West Population Institute South Asia Population Conference, New Delhi, Mar. 14–20, 1989.

12. R. Leete, "Dual Fertility Trends in Malaysia's Multiethnic Society," *International Family Planning Perspectives*, **15**:58, 1989.

13. M. Gendell, "Stalls in the Fertility Decline in Costa Rica, Korea and Sri Lanka," World Bank Staff Working Papers No. 693, Washington, D.C., 1985.

14. G. D. Ness and H. Ando, *The Land is Shrinking: Population Planning in Asia*, Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, Md., 1984.

15. J. C. Cleland and H. I. Shah, "High Fertility in Bangladesh, Nepal, and Pakistan: Motives vs. Means," paper presented at the International Union for the Scientific Study of Population seminar on Fertility Transition in Asia: Diversity and Change, Bangkok, Thailand, Mar. 1988.

16. World Bank, *World Development Report 1984*, Part II, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1984.

17. T. P. Schultz, "School Expenditures and Enrollments, 1960–1980: The Effect of Income, Prices and Population Growth," Discussion Paper No. 487, Economic Growth Center, Yale University, New Haven, 1985.

18. G. W. Jones, "Population Dynamics and Educational and Health Planning," background paper for Training in Population, Human Resources and Development Planning, International Labor Office, Geneva, 1990.

19. R. Mohan, "Urbanization in India's Future," *Population and Development Review*, **11**:619, 1985.

20. S. L. Kayastha, "Sustainability of Metropolitan Centres in Third World Countries," in S.N. Singh et al., 1989, op. cit. (see reference 9).

21. G. Rogers, ed., *Population Growth and Poverty in Rural South Asia*, Sage Publications, New Delhi, 1989.

Books in Review

The Population Wars

Nature Against Us: The United States And the World Population Crisis, 1965–1980

by Peter J. Donaldson, The University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1990, $29.95, 207 pp.

Reviewed by Rodolfo A. Bulatao

Peter J. Donaldson tells the story of how the U.S. Agency for International Development (AID) became a missionary for family planning around the world and considers what difference the agency has made. His story has no real villains, because Donaldson appears sympathetic to both the proselytizers and the proselytized, as well as to both the Washington bureaucrats seeking to expand their reach in the service of a greater good and the local government officials saving face by turning aside foreign diktats. But the tale does appear to have a hero, albeit a tragic one.

The story is a great dialectic, involving two opposing ideas: that population growth can and will take care of itself; and that the world can be saved by widespread contraceptive use. Donaldson weaves these concepts through a discussion of American ideology, bureaucratic development, world reaction to the American impetus and the results of AID's activities. To those on one side, the population crisis required going to war, with no hostages taken, no holds barred and American population officers in the vanguard of a worldwide coalition. To those on the other, development had to be given time to work; patient diplomacy respectful of local prerogatives and village cultures was the only approach that held out any hope of ultimate success.

Donaldson sets the stage by discussing the conservative Catholic opposition to contraception, a force that might have been expected to impede an American initiative in this area. He questions not why Catholics opposed "unnatural" contraception but why they did not oppose it more strongly. His answer lies in the popular acceptance among Catholics of John Courtney Murray's theory of civic culture in which different faiths coexist by respecting each other's beliefs.

But why, then, did American culture adopt an aggressive population policy? The susceptibility was rooted in "our national self-confidence" [p. 19] in the ability to control one's environment, the thinking that almost all problems around the world are merely technical or administrative. The goad was concern about strategic American interests threatened by rapid population growth. Thus, population control was a sacred crusade to bring contraceptives to the masses, but it also shared of the snobbery of the privileged. Unfortunately, this part of the story is somewhat obscured by the author's moving back and forth over time, selecting appropriate quotes. (He is sometimes vague on chronology.)

Next, Donaldson explains how population growth was transformed from the "preoccupation of a band of enthusiasts" [p. 31] to an extensive federal bureaucracy with mutually supportive links among universities and nonprofit organizations. He begins with the birth of AID in 1961 and traces the evolution of the population program from the $2 million it provided in international population assistance in 1965 to the $185 million it provided by 1980.

The story has elements of Greek tragedy. The concern of the population crusaders seems to have been, from the first, to find and rally around "a zealot of the sort the population control lobby would find praiseworthy" [p. 36]. The early AID effort, in contrast with their desires, was "never overwhelming in its enthusiasm" [p. 39]. By the late to mid-1960s, world food shortages and other critical events had put population control high on the agenda for development aid, and advisory committee reports and even presidential statements had acknowledged its importance. Nevertheless, "supporters of a more interventionist role for the U.S. government remained disappointed by the limited concern that the problem of rapid population growth caused among senior AID officials" [p. 41]. Donaldson consistently describes official statements and activities throughout this period as cautious.

The population crusaders got their wish when Reimert Ravenholt took over and built up the population effort. With strong convictions, a talent for promoting programs and no inclination to be reasonable, Ravenholt singlemindedly turned AID into the leading supplier of contraceptives in the developing world. Ravenholt is the only person Donaldson profiles in the book. Although the contributions of other players as varied as William H. Draper, Jr., Frank Notestein, John D. Rockefeller 3d, David Bell, Philander Claxton and Bernard Berelson are mentioned—their memos apparently scrutinized and their most relevant quotes extracted—Donaldson does not attempt to bring them to life. In contrast, we are told about Ravenholt's Dutch ancestry, his early career in public health and medical school, his edge of wildness and his capacity for physical intimidation (the author describes one incident where Ravenholt burst into a population official's office "screaming at very close range and . . . flailing [his] arms" [p. 101]).

We are also told of Ravenholt's substantial accomplishments as seen by many who were there. His dictum was "'ordering contraceptives is like ordering bullets for a war. You don't want to run out'" [p. 106]. He followed this rule doggedly and to excess, ruffling sensitivities and accumulating critics and enemies. The endgame began in 1977 with one of those reorganizations that run like earthquakes through public bureaucracies. Ravenholt's program was being sliced into pieces for the regional AID bureaus, and within a few years he was pushed, kicking and screaming to the end, out of the agency.

Donaldson goes on to describe world reaction to the U.S. population program, particularly at the world population conferences in 1974 and 1984. These conferences featured ideological battles and striking reversals of position by both the United States and a large group of developing countries. However, lacking a focus on a central figure, this story does not come as vividly to life as the earlier bureaucratic battles. There is more to say about actors and actions in the population field outside the United States, but this is not the book in which to find such descriptions.

In reflecting on what good the American population program did, Donaldson takes a detour. He first recounts the Population Council's role in the Korean family planning program, giving pieces of the broad picture. However, his focus is heavily on Korea's initial problems in procuring materials for the manufacture of IUDs and on the American role in finding the money. (This is an interesting echo of his discussion of Ravenholt's predominant focus on providing commodities.) The Korean episode is supplemented by a short analysis that suggests that greater foreign aid is associated with better family planning programs and by a review of the scientific arguments on whether fertility responds to family planning or to socioeconomic development.

(Continued on page 120)

Rodolfo A. Bulatao is a demographer in the Population and Human Resources Department at the World Bank, Washington, D.C.

DIGEST

Most Zimbabwean Men Approve of Family Planning, But Believe It Should Wait Until After the First Birth

Married men in Zimbabwe are likely to know about contraceptives, to have used them at some time and to approve of their use, according to a recent survey.[1] Yet most believe that a woman should not use family planning until after the birth of her first child, and that men should make the primary decision about whether a couple should use a contraceptive method. Over half of the sample felt that it was the woman's responsibility to obtain both family planning information and methods. Most respondents said they used family planning for spacing births rather than limiting them.

Data for the study came from the Zimbabwe Male Fertility Survey (ZMFS), conducted in 1988. A total of 711 respondents from 11 representative regions—four communal farming areas, three commercial farming areas and four urban areas—were interviewed. Respondents' mean age was 38 years; 52 percent were aged 20–24, 28 percent were aged 35–39 and 21 percent were older than 50. Twenty-four percent of respondents—mostly older men—did not know their wife's age; for the 531 couples for which the wife's age was known, the respondents' mean age was 35 and that of their wives was 28. Most respondents had had six years of education; most of their wives had had five. Twelve percent of respondents and 15 percent of their wives had had no formal education. Fifty-six percent of men worked in agriculture, 13 percent were in blue-collar occupations, eight percent were in professional, technical or managerial positions, six percent were in clerical jobs, nine percent worked in the service sector and seven percent had other types of jobs. (Very small percentages reported being retired or unemployed.) The mean number of children among the respondents was 4.0; 30 percent had 1–2 living children, 30 percent had 3–5, 30 percent had more than five and 10 percent had no living children.

Unprompted, nearly 79 percent of the men knew of at least one contraceptive method. The pill was the most frequently mentioned method (75 percent), followed by the condom (38 percent) and injectable contraceptives (20 percent). When prompted and unprompted responses were combined, about 98 percent of the respondents knew of at least one method. The least-known methods were vaginal foam, male sterilization and the diaphragm. Ever-use of a contraceptive method was reported by 80 percent of the sample. Men who had used a method were more likely to be older (85 percent of those 40 or older, compared with 79 percent of those younger than 40); they were also more educated (91 percent of those with some secondary or higher education vs. 77 percent of those with an elementary school education or less) and were more likely to live in urban areas rather than rural (88 percent vs. 78 percent).

Fifty-three percent of the sample (and 66 percent of those who had ever used family planning) said that their main reason for using a contraceptive method was to space births; only 12 percent of the sample (and 15 percent of those who had ever used a method) did so to limit births. Seven percent said they were using a method for both of these reasons. Six percent were doing so for economic reasons; two percent did not specify a reason, and less than one percent said they used a method to protect their wife's health.

Among those who had ever used family planning, 59 percent said that in a relationship, men should have the "major say" in deciding whether to use a contraceptive method. Forty-eight percent of ever-users said they alone made the decision to practice family planning, and 54 percent said they alone decided how many children to have. (Overall, 78 percent of all respondents—either alone or with their wives—were involved in the decision to use a contraceptive method.)

Sixty-two percent of ever-users and 60 percent of the total sample said that it is the woman's responsibility to obtain information on family planning; moreover, 63 percent of ever-users' wives and 50 percent of the general sample wives obtained the methods. Wives also obtained supply methods 78 percent of the time—reflecting a high reliance on the pill, which constitutes 90 percent of modern contraceptive use among couples.

Slightly more respondents said they approved of using contraceptive methods than actually used them (84 percent vs. 80 percent). Seventeen percent said they either did not approve of contraceptive methods or could not decide if they did. Urban men were more likely than rural men to approve of family planning (91 percent vs. 80 percent); men with some secondary or higher education were more likely to approve than were men with an elementary education or less (93 percent vs. 80 percent).

Among those who said they approved of family planning, 62 percent said that a woman should not use it until after the birth of her first child. Twenty-two percent said it should not be used until after a second or a later birth, while less than 20 percent said a woman should use family planning before her first birth. In other words, more than four in five respondents who generally approved of the use of contraceptive methods nevertheless believed that they should not be used until a woman had had at least one child. Seventy percent of men younger than 40 said a woman should use family planning before her first birth, compared with only 30 percent of men older than 40.

Fifty-seven percent of the total sample said they had talked with their wives about family planning at least once in the past year, including 71 percent of respondents whose wives were under 45 years old. Men with some secondary education or more and urban men communicated with their wives to a greater extent (81 percent and 74 percent, respectively) than did men with an elementary education and rural men (48 percent and 50 percent, respectively).

The men who were surveyed gave a mean ideal family size of 4.6 children. Mean ideal family size was significantly smaller among urban respondents than among their rural counterparts (3.9 vs. 5.0 children). Among rural residents, respondents from communal farming areas wanted more children (5.3) than did those from commercial farming areas (4.6). There were no significant differences in ideal family size by age of respondent; this further supports the finding that spacing is the main reason for contraceptive use among the sample.

Use of contraceptive methods is relatively high in Zimbabwe: Other research has shown that 43 percent of women in Zimbabwe practice contraception, with 36 percent using modern methods and seven using traditional methods. Yet fertility remains high, with the total fertility rate at 5.7 lifetime births per woman.[2] In addition, the mean ideal family size reported in the survey was smaller than the nation's fertility rate. The researchers note that these findings might indicate a substantial unmet need for family planning, but might also indicate that those who say they want no more children nevertheless fail to practice contraception. It may be that husbands want more children, and exert greater control over the reproductive process. The researchers suggest that some men may assume that not all of their children will survive, and may therefore aim to exceed their desired family size.—*R. Turner*

References

1. M. T. Mbizvo and D. J. Adamchak, "Family Planning Knowledge, Attitudes, and Practices of Men in Zimbabwe," *Studies in Family Planning*, **22**:31, 1991.

2. Central Statistical Office, Government of Zimbabwe, and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., *Zimbabwe Demographic and Health Survey, 1988*, Harare, Zimbabwe, and Columbia, Md., 1989.

Thai Children from Small Families Generally Attain More Education than Those from Large Families

In Thailand, family size has a substantial effect on children's educational attainment: Children who have no siblings are almost twice as likely to attend secondary school as children with six or more siblings. This relationship is particularly strong among middle-income and high-income rural residents. Few low-income rural residents seem to have the means to send their children to secondary school, even if they have small families.[1]

In the Thai educational system, there are three levels of preuniversity education—primary (which is compulsory), lower secondary and upper secondary. Parents are responsible for the costs of educating their children. Using data from the 1987 Thailand Demographic Health Survey (TDHS), researchers examined the relationship between family size and children's educational attainment in Thailand. Since most children finish primary school, the researchers looked only at the proportions of children entering lower and upper secondary schools.

In the 1987 TDHS, 6,775 ever-married women aged 15–49 had been sampled. The study analyzed information that the women provided about children aged six and over who were from Thai-speaking families and from families in which both parents were present. The analysis was further restricted to children who were age 12 or older when it focused on entrance into lower secondary school and to children age 15 or older when it focused on entrance into upper secondary school. The investigators used three measures of educational attainment: the proportion of all eligible children (N=6,256) entering lower secondary school; the proportion of all eligible children (N=4,537) entering upper secondary school; and the proportion of all eligible children who had attended lower secondary school (N=1,913) who went on to upper secondary school.

Before they estimated the relationship between family size and education, the researchers wanted to determine whether Thai couples were consciously and successfully choosing their family size based on their educational desires for their children. They were able to answer this question in two ways. First, they found little to no correlation between family size and the value that the mother placed on having more than a lower secondary education. Second, despite a high level of contraceptive use among women with more than one child, actual family sizes were often higher than fertility preferences, particularly among women with five or more children. Thus, even if many couples did want to restrict family size to increase their children's educational attainment, family size control was imperfect.

A univariate analysis showed that child's age and sex, parent's education, socioeconomic status, father's work, mother's opinion about secondary education, urban residence and school accessibility in rural areas all had some effect on family size. Therefore, the researchers used a logistic regression analysis to control for these factors when measuring the effect of family size on children's education.

Table 1 Adjusted percentages of children entering lower and upper secondary school, Thailand, 1987 DHS

No. of living children	% entering lower	% entering upper	
		All children	Lower entrants
	(N=6,256)	(N=4,537)	(N=1,913)
Total	**38**	**28**	**78**
1	54	39	77
2	50	37	81
3	41	30	78
4	42	33	80
5	34	27	79
6	33	23	75
≥7	29	20	72

The adjusted proportion of children overall who entered lower secondary school was 38 percent (Table 1). There was a clear negative association between family size and the likelihood of entering lower secondary school: Fifty-four percent of only children entered lower secondary school, while just 29 percent of children from families with at least seven children did so.

Twenty-eight percent of all the children entered upper secondary school. The association between family size and the likelihood of starting upper secondary school was also clear: While 39 percent of only children went on to upper secondary school, just 20 percent of those who were one of at least seven children did so. Thus, the probability of going beyond primary school was almost half that for children from the largest families than for those from the smallest.

There was a weak correlation between family size and entry into upper secondary school when only those who entered lower secondary school were considered. The authors suggest that this was because "a greater proportion of children from large families have left the educational system by the end of the primary grades, [and] those from large families who enter secondary schools are more selective than children from smaller families."

The researchers also sought to determine the effects of urban vs. rural residence and household wealth on the relationship between family size and education. They divided the wealth category into low, middle and high for rural residents and into lower and higher for urban residents. The analysis of the probability of entering upper secondary school was conducted only for all eligible children, since family size had already been shown to have a weak effect when analyses were restricted to those who had entered lower secondary school.

Among the poorest rural families, the relationship between family size and entry into lower secondary school was minimal, and family size and the likelihood of entering upper secondary school were unrelated. According to the authors, poor families with even one or two children most likely do not have the means to send their children beyond primary school. However, among middle-income and high-income rural residents, the effect was much stronger: Fifty percent of only children from middle-income households and 65 percent of those from high-income households entered lower secondary schools, compared with 20 percent and 32 percent, respectively, of children from families with seven or more children. The relationship was also much stronger for entry into upper secondary school: Thirty-nine percent of children from the smallest middle-income families and 44 percent of children from the smallest high-income families went to upper secondary school; in contrast, 11 percent and 24 percent, respectively, of children from the largest middle-income and high-income families entered upper secondary school.

In urban areas, most children entered lower secondary school. Among urban families, the relationship between family size and entry into lower secondary school was fairly weak, particularly for higher income households. The authors point out that this is "probably attributable to the generally higher levels of wealth characterizing urban households, the general availability of schools, and the lower opportunity costs involved in comparison with the situation for rural children."

Among urban residents, the effect of family size on entry into upper secondary school was somewhat greater: The proportion of only children from lower income households who entered upper secondary school was 59 percent, while the comparable proportion among children who were one of at least seven children was 37 percent. Among higher income families, 86 percent of children with no siblings and 70 percent of children with at least six siblings entered upper secondary school.

The researchers believe that their findings are supported by the fact that in Thailand, parents are responsible for all childrearing costs. They conclude that "the dilution hypothesis, whereby lesser material resources are available per child, is a plausible mechanism by which family size becomes an important determinant of the schooling that parents provide for their children." They also point out that the current fertility decline in Thailand—evidenced by comparisons of data from the 1980 census and the 1987 TDHS—is likely to have a substantial impact on the proportion of Thai children who attend lower and upper secondary school.—*P. Rind*

Reference

1. J. Knodel and M. Wongsith, "Family Size and Children's Education in Thailand: Evidence from a National Sample," *Demography*, **28**:119, 1991.

Paraguay Survey Shows Moderately High Fertility And Low Child Mortality

Fertility in Paraguay is moderately high, with women having nearly five children over their lifetime, one more child than they consider to be ideal. The fertility levels and desires among Paraguayan women have changed very little in recent years. Nearly half of those in union currently use a method of family planning, with just over one-third using a modern method. Moreover, in the Latin American context, infant and child mortality levels in Paraguay are relatively low, and fully 90 percent of women received some kind of prenatal care. These are a few of the highlights of the 1990 Paraguay Encuesta Nacional de Demografía y Salud (ENDS), which surveyed 5,827 women aged 15–49 between May and August of 1990.[1]

Paraguay is near the center of the South American continent, between Brazil, Bolivia and Argentina. Its Occidental zone, also known as Chaco, covers nearly 60 percent of the country; this region is very sparsely populated and was not surveyed by the 1990 ENDS. The territory included in the survey—the more densely populated Oriental zone—consists of four regions: the capital and surrounding metropolitan areas of Asunción, the North, the Central South and the East. Roughly half of the Paraguayan population is bilingual (speaking both Spanish and the indigenous language of Guaraní), while 40 percent speak Guaraní only and seven percent Spanish only. (The ENDS questionnaire was administered in Spanish and translated for respondents who spoke only Guaraní.)

The characteristics of the sample confirm that advances in education have taken place: Forty-one percent of the youngest women (aged 15–19) have completed secondary school, compared with just 13 percent of the oldest women (aged 44–49). Gains in higher education are strongest in urban areas, where women are more than three times as likely to have completed secondary school as are their rural counterparts (43 percent vs. 13 percent).

Marriage and Fertility

At the time of the survey, 33 percent of the sample of women aged 15–49 were single and 61 percent were in a union (47 percent in legal unions and 14 percent in consensual unions); the remaining six percent were either separated, widowed or divorced. As Table 1 shows, the median age at first marriage is 21 years, and has remained virtually unchanged in Paraguay over the past two decades. The median age at marriage among urban women is two years greater than that among rural women, a difference that has also been long-standing. While the data indicate that women have their first sexual experience, on average, two years before marriage, the age at first intercourse tends to be lower among the younger cohorts (e.g., 20 among women aged 30 or more and 19 among women under age 30). Moreover, differences in educational attainment and place of residence contribute to this trend, since younger, less educated women usually begin sexual activity the earliest and more educated women living in metropolitan Asunción begin the latest.

Women begin childbearing at a relatively young age in Paraguay. One-third of the sample had their first child before age 20, and one-half before age 22. Among women aged 25–49, the median age at first birth (22 years), applies across all age-groups, and thus has not changed much over time. However, the median age at which women start childbearing varies according to urban or

Table 1. Selected findings from the 1990 Paraguay Encuesta Nacional de Demografia y Salud

Measure	Median, rate or avg.
Median age at marriage (in yrs.)*	20.9
Median age at first intercourse (in yrs.)*	19.3
Median age at first birth (in yrs.)*	21.7
TFR (lifetime births per woman)	4.7
No. of children considered ideal	3.9
% of married women currently using any contraceptive method	48.4
% of married women currently using a modern method	35.2
% of married women with unmet need for family planning	20.0

*Based on women aged 25–49

rural residence (22 years vs. 20 years), region (23 years in Asunción, compared with 21 years in the other three regions) and educational level (24 years for the most educated women, 21 years for women who have completed primary school and 18 years for the least educated women).

The total fertility rate (TFR) is 4.7 lifetime births per woman, which places Paraguay among the higher fertility countries in Latin America (where the regional average is currently 3.7 births per woman). The TFR has remained essentially unchanged since the 1979 Encuesta Nacional de Fecundidad (ENF). However, age-specific fertility rates in each age-group were lower five years before the 1990 survey than 10 years before, suggesting the beginning of a fertility decline.

Fertility differentials are especially pronounced by area of residence and education: Rural women have 2.5 more children than urban women, and women with only 0–2 years of schooling have 3.5 more children than those with secondary schooling or more. The TFRs also vary greatly by region, with women in the capital city of Asunción having the fewest lifetime births (3.5) and women in the North having the most (6.7).

Paraguayan women, on average, consider the ideal number of children to be four. This measure is highest (six children) among the oldest women with the least education; their ideal family size is twice as large as that mentioned by women aged 15–24 in all education subgroups.

Seventy-three percent of births occurring in the last five years to women in the sample were planned, 16 percent were mistimed and just seven percent were unwanted. If women in Paraguay were to have only those children that they intended to have, the TFR of 4.7 would be reduced by 25 percent, yielding a total wanted fertility rate of 3.5 children.

Contraceptive Knowledge and Use

Knowledge of a contraceptive method is nearly universal. Among women in union, the two most widely known modern methods are the pill (94 percent) and injectables (89 percent); the two least commonly known are barrier methods (46 percent) and vasectomy (17 percent). Moreover, roughly similar proportions (85 and 86 percent) are familiar with the IUD and with the traditional folk method of *yuyos* (native herbs), which have no proven contraceptive effect.

Although 43 percent of Paraguayan women in union have ever used a traditional method, 58 percent have tried a modern method. Overall, the method that most women have ever used was the pill (40 percent of women in union), and the second most popular method was *yuyos* (25 percent).

At the time of the survey, 48 percent of married women were using contraceptives—35 percent a modern method and 13 percent a traditional method. The pill is by far the most popular method, currently used by 14 percent of women in union. Female sterilization (seven percent), the IUD (six percent) and injectables (five percent) were the next most commonly used methods. Three percent of married users relied on rhythm; a slightly higher proportion (four percent) said they were using *yuyos* at the time of the survey. The proportion of women sterilized almost doubled in the short interval between the 1987 Encuesta de Planificación Familiar and the 1990 ENDS. Moreover, the median age at which women decide to be sterilized seems to have increased recently: Among women who were sterilized in the two years before the survey, the median age was 32 years, compared with 29 years among women who underwent the operation five or more years before the survey.

Modern method use varies by area and region of residence, educational level and parity. For example, use of modern methods is most common among urban women, those living in Asunción, those who have completed primary school and those who have three children. While there is comparatively little variation in pill use among subgroups of women, reliance on the IUD varies greatly: It is highest in Asunción (11 percent, compared with three percent in each of the other regions) and among the most educated (11 percent, compared with two percent among the least educated). Use of female sterilization, which increases with age and parity, varies little by urban or rural residence but greatly by region (i.e., 10 percent in the East vs. three percent in the North).

The data indicate that Paraguayan women are starting to use contraceptives earlier: Nearly half of 20–24-year-old users started use before they had their first child, compared with just 13 percent of those aged 45–49.

The private sector is the major provider of contraceptives in Paraguay, supplying 70 percent of modern methods, and several methods are predominantly distributed in pharmacies. Roughly four-fifths of women who use condoms and injectables and nearly three-quarters of pill users rely on pharmacists for their method.

According to the 1990 ENDS, the median duration of postpartum amenorrhea is five months, and postpartum abstinence lasts for two months; thus, the total period of postpartum infecundability is roughly five months. It is longest among women who are most likely to breastfeed for prolonged periods—those living in the North and in rural areas and those with the least education.

Nearly 40 percent of women in union who do not practice contraception have no intention of doing so in the future. Among those under age 30, the principal reasons for nonuse are not liking contraception (24 percent), not being sexually active (22 percent) and wanting to become pregnant (21 percent). Nonusers who do plan to try a method in the future are most inclined to use the pill.

Thirty-six percent of women in union want no more children, and thus have a potential demand for methods to limit childbearing; 26 percent want children sometime in the future and can be said to have a demand for spacing. Thus, 62 percent of Paraguayan women are potentially in need of family planning. The desire for limiting future births is fairly uniform across regions and urban or rural residence, but rises consistently with parity among all subgroups. Moreover, this proportion varies substantially by education, with the least educated women (who tend to have more children) most likely to say they want no more children. The desire to space births is highest among the youngest women (57 percent of 15–19-year-olds).

Twenty percent of Paraguayan women of reproductive age have an unmet need for family planning; that is, they are fecund, sexually active and not using a method, did not want their current or most recent pregnancy and also do not want another child for at least two years. This total breaks down to 12 percent who want to limit births and eight percent who want to space them.

Maternal and Child Health

According to the 1990 ENDS, the infant mortality rate in Paraguay is 34 deaths per 1,000 live-born infants and the child mortality rate is 43 per 1,000 children under age five. These rates are the lowest among the Latin American nations that have participated in the Demographic and Health Surveys program to date.* The authors suggest that some underestimation may have occurred, and a comparison with mortality data from the 1979 ENF for the same years revealed that the 1990 ENDS estimates were 22 percent lower. Nevertheless, the 1990 data point to real declines in infant mortality in Paraguay, since levels decreased by nearly one-quarter from 1975–1980 to 1985–1990.

---

*Bolivia, Brazil, Colombia, the Dominican Republic, Ecuador, El Salvador, Guatemala, Paraguay, Peru and Mexico.

Infant mortality differentials vary most by region of residence, education and receipt of prenatal and delivery care. For example, infants born to the least educated women are twice as likely to die in their first year as those born to the most educated women (45 per 1,000 vs. 23 per 1,000). In addition, the infant mortality rate among infants born to women who have no prenatal care or medical attention during delivery is nearly double that among women who have both (50 per 1,000 vs. 27 per 1,000).

Overall, 91 percent of women who gave birth in the past five years received some prenatal care (59 percent from a doctor, 25 percent from a nurse-midwife and seven percent from a traditional birth attendant). Furthermore, the vast majority of mothers (84 percent) received at least one dose of the tetanus toxoid vaccine. While 53 percent of Paraguayan women delivered their most recent baby in a health facility, 46 percent delivered at home.

Consistent with the relatively low infant and child mortality rates, from 57 percent to 87 percent of Paraguayan toddlers have received at least one vaccination for tuberculosis (BCG), measles, polio, and diptheria-pertussis-tetanus (DPT), and one-third have complete vaccination coverage. Furthermore, only eight percent of children under five had diarrhea in the two weeks before the survey; of these, over half (52 percent) were taken to a medical facility.—*L. Remez*

Reference

1. República del Paraguay, *Encuesta Nacional de Demografía y Salud, 1990,* Centro Paraguayo de Estudios de Población and Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., Columbia, Md., 1991.

Early Marriage and Childbearing Remain Common In Much of Developing World, Even as Fertility Falls

Fertility has declined in recent years in most countries in the developing world, although it generally remains well above replacement level and intercountry variation is substantial. According to an analysis of Demographic and Health Survey (DHS) data from 25 countries in Africa, Asia, Latin America and the Caribbean, at current rates of childbearing, Thai women can expect to have about 2.3 children by the end of their reproductive years, while Ugandan women can expect to have about 7.2 children.[1] Teenage childbearing is still common, particularly in Sub-Saharan Africa, where the fertility rate for 15–19-year-olds in nine of the 10 countries ranges from 103 to 209 live births per 1,000 women; outside of Sub-Saharan Africa, fertility rates for that age-group exceed 100 live births per 1,000 only in the Dominican Republic and Guatemala.

Fertility Trends

The surveys found wide variations in fertility among regions. The highest levels were in Sub-Saharan Africa, where at current rates of childbearing, women in eight of the 10 countries surveyed can expect to have more than six children by the end of their reproductive lifetime. The three Asian countries had the lowest fertility, with 2–4 lifetime births per woman. Intermediate levels were found in North Africa, where the average woman will have 4–5 children, and in Latin America and the Caribbean, where women in every country except Guatemala can expect to have fewer than five children.

Table 1 shows the total fertility rate (TFR) for women aged 15–44 in each of 25 developing countries for the periods 4–7 years and 0–3 years before their respective surveys, and the magnitude and direction of change between the two periods. Fertility decreased in all countries except Uganda, which recorded an increase of one percent. Of the other 24 countries, 13 registered a fertility decrease of 15 percent or more; in five of those countries, fertility dropped by more than 20 percent.

In the nine Sub-Saharan African countries where fertility decreased, the decline ranged from less than six percent in Liberia and Ghana to almost 19 percent in Zimbabwe. Despite these almost universal declines, Botswana and Zimbabwe were the only two sub-Saharan countries with a TFR of less than six for the period 0–3 years before their surveys. The decreases in the three Asian countries surveyed were relatively large, and only Indonesia had a TFR exceeding three during the period 0–3 years before the survey. In Latin America, the relative decreases in Colombia, Ecuador and Peru were almost twice as large as those in Bolivia and Mexico (21 percent vs. 11 percent). In Trinidad and Tobago, where fertility was already low, the decline was only 2.4 percent.

Table 1. Total fertility rate for women aged 15–44 for the periods 4–7 and 0–3 years prior to the survey, and percentage change between those periods, Demographic and Health Surveys, 1986–1989

Country and year	TFR		
	4–7 yrs. prior to survey	0–3 yrs. prior to survey	% change
Sub-Saharan Africa			
Botswana (1988)	5.56	4.78	–14.0
Burundi (1987)	7.42	6.50	–12.4
Ghana (1988)	6.43	6.06	–5.8
Kenya (1988–1989)	7.09	6.46	–8.9
Liberia (1986)	6.79	6.39	–5.9
Mali (1987)	7.70	6.84	–11.2
Senegal (1986)	7.55	6.37	–15.6
Togo (1988)	7.17	6.22	–13.3
Uganda (1988–1989)	7.11	7.18	+1.0
Zimbabwe (1988–1989)	6.55	5.31	–18.9
North Africa			
Egypt (1988–1989)	4.94	4.58	–7.3
Morocco (1987)	5.63	4.58	–18.7
Tunisia (1988)	5.07	4.26	–16.0
Asia			
Indonesia (1987)	4.32	3.21	–25.7
Sri Lanka (1987)	3.31	2.72	–17.8
Thailand (1987)	2.94	2.25	–23.5
Latin America/Caribbean			
Bolivia (1989)	5.52	4.92	–10.9
Brazil (1986)	4.50	3.63	–19.3
Colombia (1986)	4.04	3.20	–20.8
Dom. Rep. (1986)	4.55	3.69	–18.9
Ecuador (1987)	5.16	4.08	–20.9
Guatemala (1987)	6.53	5.55	–15.0
Mexico (1987)	4.52	4.01	–11.3
Peru (1986)	5.28	4.20	–20.5
Trinidad and Tobago (1987)	3.39	3.12	–2.4

The large decreases in the TFR in Burundi, Mali, Senegal and Togo were unexpected, since fewer than four percent of married women in those countries use modern methods of contraception. The investigators found no consistent decline in cohort fertility and little change in any of these countries (except Senegal) in determinants of fertility such as age at first birth or age at first marriage; however, they did find indications of considerable misreporting of birth dates. In light of this evidence, the investigators concluded that "the declines recorded in the DHS surveys in these countries are most likely the result of both period changes in fertility rates and data errors."

Between the periods 4–7 years and 0–3 years before the survey, fertility among 15–19-year-olds fell in all countries except Ghana, where there was a 5.7 percent increase. In Liberia and Mali, the decrease was less than three percent, compared with 39 percent and 43 percent, respectively, in Burundi and Indonesia. In 21 countries (all but Ghana, Liberia, Uganda, and Trinidad and Tobago), age-specific fertility rates decreased across the board, and in three countries—Indonesia, Peru and Zimbabwe—declines of at least 14 percent occurred in every age-group.

During the 15 years preceding the surveys, the fertility of women younger than 35 declined in most of the Latin American and

DIGEST

Caribbean countries included in the analysis.* The decreases in Bolivia, Guatemala, and Trinidad and Tobago between the periods 12–15 and 0–3 years before the survey were relatively small (13–15 percent) in comparison with declines of 24–34 percent in the other countries in those regions. The rate of change seems to have been fairly constant in the Dominican Republic, Ecuador and Mexico, while it has accelerated sharply in recent years in Brazil, Colombia and Peru. Levels of fertility in the three Asian countries fell sharply during that period, with Thailand recording a drop of 46 percent and Indonesia and Sri Lanka experiencing decreases of 39 percent and 28 percent, respectively. In Thailand, the rate of decrease was steady; in Indonesia and Sri Lanka, the greatest part of the decline occurred in the eight years preceding the survey.

In Egypt, Morocco and Tunisia, the decrease in fertility among 15–34-year-olds during the 15 years preceding the surveys occurred at steady rates of 23–35 percent. In Sub-Saharan Africa, however, the picture is much more complex. Three countries—Botswana, Kenya and Zimbabwe—experienced long-term declines of 18–25 percent, and two others—Uganda and Ghana—showed smaller decreases (nine percent and 11 percent, respectively). In each of the other five countries, the TFR for the period 4–7 years before the survey was higher than the rates for the periods immediately before and after it. According to the researchers, "it is possible that a temporary increase in fertility actually occurred, . . . [but] it is more likely that birth displacement is the principal factor. Hence, some caution should be used in evaluating these data."

Completed Fertility

Women aged 45–49 at the time of the respective surveys had borne from a low of 4.9 children in Sri Lanka to a high of 7.8 in Uganda. In Africa, Latin America and the Caribbean, the mean number of children ever born exceeded six in all countries except Botswana (5.7), Bolivia (5.9), Brazil (4.7)† and Trinidad and Tobago (5.0); in Asia, however, Indonesia was the only country in which the number of children ever born was greater than five (5.6).

Although infant and child mortality rates have generally improved in the developing world, they remain high in many countries. The DHS analysis found that at the time of each country's survey, women aged 45–49 had lost between six percent (in Trinidad and Tobago) and 39 percent (in Mali) of their children. Survival rates were lowest in Sub-Saharan Africa: The only three countries in the analysis in which the proportion of children surviving was 70 percent or lower were in that region. In none of the Sub-Saharan countries did more than 90 percent of the children ever born survive. The situation was somewhat better in North Africa, where the proportion surviving was between 76 percent and 82 percent of children ever born to women who were 45–49 at the time of the survey. The proportion of children surviving ranged from 77 percent in Bolivia to 94 percent in Trinidad and Tobago, with the figure in most countries falling between 82 percent and 89 percent.

Age at First Birth

The median age at first birth among women aged 40–44 ranged from 18.3 years in Uganda to 23.1 years in Sri Lanka. In general, women in Sub-Saharan Africa were about two years younger than women in other regions when they had their first child. The median age at first birth was younger than 19 in six of the 10 Sub-Saharan countries, but it was at least 20 years in all but two of the countries in other regions. First births occurred comparatively late in Sri Lanka and Tunisia: At the time of the survey, fewer than one-third of the women aged 20–24 and fewer than two-thirds of those aged 25–29 had given birth to their first child.

For each country, the investigators compared the median age at first birth among women aged 25–29 and among those aged 40–44 at the time of the respective surveys. Trends in the age at which women had their first birth varied markedly by region. Little change occurred in Sub-Saharan Africa during the 20 years preceding each survey: Only in Ghana did age at first birth rise by even one year. In most of Latin America and the Caribbean, median age at first birth remained fairly stable, but it increased by more than six months in Colombia and Peru, and by over a year in the Dominican Republic and Trinidad and Tobago. In North Africa, the median age at first birth rose by about 1.7 years in Egypt, by 2.3 years in Morocco and by 3.0 years in Tunisia. In Asia, the smallest increase in the median age at first birth—half a year—was in Indonesia; in Thailand and Sri Lanka, the median rose by 1.1 years and 1.6 years, respectively.

As these figures indicate, childbearing still begins early in much of the developing world. The proportion of women who have their first child during their teenage years is particularly high in Sub-Saharan Africa, where 54–69 percent of the women aged 20–49 in every country except Burundi had given birth before age 20. In Latin America and the Caribbean, about one-third of the women were teenagers when they had their first birth. In Tunisia, Sri Lanka and Thailand, the proportion of women who started childbearing that early was much smaller (20–27 percent), while in Burundi, Egypt and Morocco, the proportion (35–41 percent) was similar to the Latin American average.—*F. Althaus*

Reference

1. F. Arnold and A. Blanc, *Fertility Levels and Trends*, DHS Comparative Studies, No. 2, Institute for Resource Development/Macro Systems, Inc., Columbia, Md., 1990.

The Population Wars

(Continued from page 114)

In the debate over development and family planning, Donaldson's heart is clearly with the family planners. He judges the AID program, presumably after changes built on the Ravenholt years, to be "remarkably humane, well designed, effectively implemented, and useful" [p. 176]. And yet, coming down to specifics, he sees "little evidence that Korea genuinely required what the United States had to offer" [p. 151]. He identifies the key factor in the Korean fertility decline as the "growing desire on the part of men and women to avoid the physical and financial burden of too many children" [p. 152], which he in turn attributes to the spread of education. So development, after all, could have been the critical factor.

The patient historian should commit himself, and after painstaking research, favor the reader with some opinion about the effectiveness of opposing tactics. But this is not a dispassionate recounting of the last war (though Donaldson does spend some surprising pages trying to draw parallels between the growth of the population program and the Vietnam buildup). It is closer to a report from the battlefield, with some skirmishes completed and some objectives won but with new battles still to be fought. Thus, the fog of war still hangs over the book's final postmortems.

---

*The investigators limited this analysis to women aged 15–34 to avoid truncation bias (caused by the inability to include the experience of women who were 35–49 years old 15 years before the survey); however, this approach tends to underestimate the rate of decline because it excludes data on older women, whose fertility has generally decreased the most.

†The DHS sample for Brazil did not include women aged 45–49; therefore, this number represents children ever born to women aged 40–44.

Note to Authors

International Family Planning Perspectives is a peer-reviewed quarterly journal publishing research articles about the developing world that are intended to be of assistance to professionals in the fields of fertility and family planning, maternal and child health and population policy. The editors invite researchers, policymakers and program operators from around the world to submit articles on such topics as contraceptive practice and research; population growth; fertility levels, trends and determinants; childspacing; pregnancy termination; public policies and legal issues affecting family planning and childbearing; family planning program operation, development and evaluation; information, education and communication activities; sexually transmitted diseases; and reproductive, maternal and child health. Manuscripts should be sent to the address below, and should include the affiliation, address, telephone number and Fax number of the corresponding author.

Manuscripts may be submitted in English, French or Spanish, and are read with the understanding that they neither are under consideration elsewhere nor have been published previously. All submissions are reviewed by the editorial staff and, if deemed of interest, undergo anonymous peer review. Manuscripts not accepted for publication will not be returned. Upon acceptance, all manuscripts are edited to the extent necessary to conform to the style of the journal. Authors will have two opportunities to review their article after editing. Authors must assign copyright to the journal.

Selected articles appear on an annual basis in the Spanish edition of the journal, *Perspectivas Internacionales en Planificación Familiar*, and in the French edition, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial*.

Manuscripts should be typed double-spaced, with all pages numbered and with a title page that includes the names and affiliations (at the time of the work reported) of all authors. Submissions should run no more than 30–35 pages, with no more than 7–8 tables; only one copy need be sent. Manuscripts should include a summary of up to one page in length.

Each table and chart should be on a separate page. Authors should check previous issues of *International Family Planning Perspectives* to gain an idea of how tables are to be styled. Authors must supply data points for all line graphs and charts; final art work will be done by the journal's staff.

International Family Planning Perspectives es una revista trimestral que publica monografías sobre el mundo en desarrollo destinadas a asistir a profesionales en las áreas de fecundidad y planificación familiar, salud materno-infantil y políticas de población. Invitamos a investigadores y responsables de políticas y programas de todo el mundo a que presenten artículos sobre temas tales como práctica e investigación en materia de anticonceptivos; crecimiento demográfico; niveles, tendencias y determinantes de la fecundidad; espaciamiento de los hijos; terminación de embarazo; políticas oficiales y cuestiones jurídicas que afecten la planificación familiar y la fecundidad; aplicación, elaboración y evaluación de programas de planificación familiar; actividades de información, instrucción y comunicación; enfermedades transmitidas sexualmente y salud reproductiva y materno-infantil. Los originales deberán enviarse a la dirección que figura abajo, debiendo constar en ellos la filiación completa, domicilio postal, teléfono y, de ser posible, número de Fax del remitente.

Los originales pueden ser escritos en español, francés o inglés. Serán aceptados en la inteligencia de que son inéditos y no están siendo considerados por ninguna otra publicación. El personal de edición examinará todos los trabajos presentados y, de hallarlos interesantes, los hará evaluar por otros especialistas sin divulgar el nombre del autor. No se devolverán los originales rechazados. Los que se acepten serán revisados en la medida necesaria para conformarlos al estilo de la revista. Los autores tendrán dos oportunidades de examinar sus monografías revisadas y deberán ceder los derechos de autor a la revista.

Algunos artículos se seleccionarán para la edición anual en español, *Perspectivas Internacionales de Planificación Familiar*, o para la edición francés, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial*.

Los originales deberán presentarse mecanografiados a doble espacio. Las páginas deberán estar numeradas, debiendo figurar en la primera, nombre y filiación (al momento de escribirse el trabajo) de todos los autores. Los artículos no podrán exceder de 30–35 páginas ni incluir más de ocho cuadros. No hace falta enviar sino un ejemplar. Los originales deberán ir acompañados de un resumen de hasta una página.

Cada cuadro o gráfico deberá ir en hoja por separado. Conviene que los autores consulten números anteriores de *International Family Planning Perspectives* para formarse una idea del respectivo formato. Deberán suministrar también todas las cifras y datos necesarios para cada gráfico o cuadro. La revista se encargará del diseño gráfico.

La revue trimestrielle *International Family Planning Perspectives* publie des articles présentant des résultats de recherche sur les pays en développement et destinés à éclairer les spécialistes en matière de fécondité, planification familiale, protection maternelle et infantile et politiques démographiques. La rédaction invite tout chercheur, dirigeant ou administrateur de programme à soumettre des articles sur les sujets suivants: pratique contraceptive et recherche dans le domaine de la contraception; croissance démographique; niveaux, tendances et facteurs déterminants de la fécondité; espacement des naissances; interruption de grossesse; questions juridiques et d'ordre public influant sur la planification familiale et la procréation; administration, élaboration et évaluation de programmes de planification familiale; activités relatives à l'information, l'éducation et la communication; maladies sexuellement transmissibles; hygiène sexuelle et comportement reproducteur; et protection maternelle et infantile.

Les auteurs devraient adresser les manuscrits à l'adresse ci-dessous et mentionner l'affiliation complète, adresse, numéro de téléphone et numéro de télécopieur (si possible) de la personne avec qui nous devons communiquer.

Les manuscrits peuvent être rédigés en français, en anglais ou en espagnol et ne seront acceptés qu'à la condition qu'ils n'aient été soumis à aucune autre publication, ni déjà publiés. Tous les articles sont évalués par la rédaction et s'ils sont jugés intéressants, présentés, à titre anonyme, à l'appréciation de spécialistes. Les manuscrits non publiés ne seront pas renvoyés à leur(s) auteur(s). Une fois acceptés, les manuscrits seront éventuellement révisés afin de les adapter au style et présentation propres à la revue. Les auteurs auront ensuite, à deux reprises, l'occasion de revoir leur article. Ils devront céder les droits d'auteur à la revue.

Certains articles retenus sont également publiés dans la version annuelle de la revue, en espagnol, *Perspectivas Internacionales en Planificación Familiar*, ou en français, *Perspectives Internationales sur le Planning Familial*.

Tous les manuscrits devraient être préparés de la manière suivante: dactylographiés en double interligne, avec un maximum de 30–35 pages; chaque feuillet doit être soigneusement paginé. La première page doit fournir les noms de tous les auteurs ainsi que leur affiliation (au moment où travaux ou recherches ont été effectués). Les manuscrits ne doivent pas comporter plus de 7–8 tableaux et doivent inclure un résumé ne dépassant pas une page. L'auteur ne doit soumettre qu'un seul exemplaire.

Tableaux et graphiques devront figurer chacun sur un feuillet séparé. Les auteurs sont priés de consulter les numéros précédents de la revue afin de voir comment les tableaux doivent être présentés. Ils devront également fournir les points de données pour tous diagrammes et graphiques. La rédaction se chargera du dessin graphique.

Olivia Schieffelin Nordberg
Editor-in-Chief
International Family Planning Perspectives
The Alan Guttmacher Institute
111 Fifth Avenue
New York, NY 10003
USA

International Family Planning Perspectives
Published quarterly by The Alan Guttmacher Institute

Editorial Office: 111 Fifth Avenue,
New York, N.Y. 10003, United States of America

Editorial Advisory Committee

Barbara M. Boland, Economic Commission for Latin America and the Caribbean, Centro Latinoamericano de Demografía, Trinidad and Tobago

John C. Caldwell, National Centre for Epidemiology and Population Health, The Australian National University, Canberra

John Cleland, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, England

Mercedes B. Concepcion, The Population Institute, University of the Philippines, Manila

Ronald Freedman, The Population Studies Center of the University of Michigan, Ann Arbor

Noreen Goldman, Office of Population Research, Princeton University, Princeton, New Jersey

Roushdi A. Henin, Department of Sociology, University of Zimbabwe, Harare

Maria Helena Henriques-Mueller, Bethesda, Maryland

Shireen J. Jejeebhoy, Bombay, India

Gavin W. Jones, The Research School of Social Sciences, The Australian National University, Canberra

Lin Lean Lim, International Labor Office, United Nations, Bangkok, Thailand

Wolfgang Lutz, International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis, Laxenburg, Austria

Edith Alejandra Pantelides, Centro de Estudios de Población, Buenos Aires, Argentina

Allan G. Rosenfield, School of Public Health, Columbia University, New York

Nafis Sadik, United Nations Population Fund, New York

Mpembele Daniel Sala-Diakanda, Institut de Formation et de Recherche Démographiques, Yaoundé, Cameroon

Zeba Sathar, Pakistan Institute of Development Economics, Islamabad

Claudio Stern, El Colegio de México, The Population Council, Mexico City

Léon Tabah, Comité International de Coopération dans les Recherches Nationales, Paris, France

Martin Vessey, Department of Public Health and Primary Care, University of Oxford, England

Subscriptions are $22 a year for individuals, $32 a year for institutions, and $29.80 a year for subscription agencies. Back issues are available for $8.00 per copy.

This publication is partly supported by the U.S. Agency for International Development (AID) through contract No. DPE-3032-Z-00-7061-00 with the Population Information Program of The Johns Hopkins University (JHU). The contents of this publication do not necessarily reflect the views or policies of AID or JHU.

Credits

Cover design: Sheldon Cotler + Associates